

**THE BOOK WAS
DRENCHED**

OSMANIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY

Call No. 891.5/B882 Accession No. 17424

Author Braine Edwards

Title Literary History of Persia.

This book should be returned on or before the date last marked below.

A LITERARY
HISTORY OF PERSIA

IN FOUR VOLUMES

VOLUME I

Cambridge University Press

Fetter Lane, London

New York

Bombay, Calcutta, Madras

Toronto

Macmillan

Tokyo

Maruzen-Kabushiki-Kaisha

All rights reserved



*Persian (Sasanian) King, said to
be Khusraw Parwiz (A.D. 590-627),
going a-hawking, from a modern
bas-relief painting by Muhammad
Baqir called Ta'us ("The Peacock").*

A LITERARY HISTORY OF PERSIA

VOLUME I

*From the Earliest Times
until Firdawsi*

BY

EDWARD G. BROWNE

M.A., M.B., F.B.A., F.R.C.P.

SIR THOMAS ADAMS'S PROFESSOR OF ARABIC
AND FELLOW OF PEMBROKE COLLEGE
, IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

CAMBRIDGE
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS
1929

First edition (T, Fisher Unwin)	1902
Reprinted 1908, 1909, 1919, 1925	
Re-issue (Cambridge University Press)	1928
Reprinted	1929

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN

Preface

FOR many years I had cherished a desire to write a history of the intellectual and literary achievements of the Persians, somewhat on the lines of that most admirable work, Green's *Short History of the English People*, a work which any writer may be proud to adopt as a model, but which few can hope to rival and none to surpass. Considering the immense number of books which have been written about Persia, it is strange that so few attempts should hitherto have been made to set forth in a comprehensive yet comparatively concise and summary form the history of that ancient and most interesting kingdom. Excellent monographs on particular periods and dynasties do indeed exist in plenty ; but of general histories of Persia those of Sir John Malcolm and Clements Markham are still the chief works of reference in English, though they no longer represent, even approximately, the present level of knowledge (enormously raised in recent times by the unremitting labours of an ever-increasing band of students and scholars), in addition to which they both deal rather with the external political conditions of Persia than with the inner life of her people.

Conscious of the magnitude and difficulty of the task, and constantly engaged in examining and digesting the abundant and almost unexplored materials which every large collection of Oriental manuscripts yields, I might probably have continued to postpone indefinitely an attempt for which I felt

myself ever more rather than less unprepared, had I not received almost simultaneously two separate invitations to contribute a volume on Persian Literature or Literary History to a series which in each case was of conspicuous merit, though in plan, scope, and treatment the difference between the two was considerable. In choosing between the two, I was less influenced by priority of appeal, extent of remuneration, or personal predilection, than by the desire to secure for myself the ampler field and the broader—I had almost said the more philosophical—plan. The model placed before me in the one case was Jusserand's charming *Literary History of the English People*, the conception and execution of which (for reasons more fully explained in the Introductory chapter of the following work) so delighted me that I thereupon decided to make for the series to which it belonged the effort which I had long contemplated. For it was the intellectual history of the Persians which I desired to write, and not merely the history of the poets and authors who expressed their thoughts through the medium of the Persian language; the manifestations of the national genius in the fields of Religion, Philosophy, and Science interested me at least as much as those belonging to the domain of Literature in the narrower sense ; while the linguistic vehicle through which they sought expression was, from my point of view, indifferent. I trust that my readers will realise this at the outset, so that they may not suffer disappointment, nor feel themselves aggrieved, because in this volume more is said about movements than books, and less about books written in Persian than about those written in Pahlawi, Arabic, or some other language.

It was originally intended that the work should be completed in one volume, carrying the history down to the present day. But I soon convinced myself (and, with more difficulty, my publisher) that this was impossible without grave modification (and, from my point of view, mutilation) of my original plan. At first I hoped to carry this volume

down to the Mongol Invasion and the extinction of the Caliphate of Baghdad in the thirteenth century, which, as I have elsewhere observed (pp. 210-211 *infra*), is the great turning-point in the history of Islam ; but even this finally proved impracticable within the limits assigned to me, and I ultimately found myself obliged to conclude this part of my work with the immediate precursors of Firdawsi, the writers and poets of the Samanid and Buwayhid dynasties.

This division is, perhaps, after all the best, since the Prolegomena with which the student of Persian literature ought to be acquainted are thus comprised in the present volume, while the field of Persian literature in the narrower sense will, with the aid of one chapter of recapitulation, be entirely covered by the second, with which it is intended that this should be supplemented. Thus, agreeably to the stipulations imposed by my publisher, the two volumes will be independent one of the other, this containing the Prolegomena, and that the History of Persian Literature within the strict meaning of the term.

My chief fear is lest, in endeavouring to present to the general reader the results attained by Oriental scholarship, and embodied for the most part in books and periodicals which he is unlikely to read, or even to meet with, I may have fallen, so to speak, between two stools, and ended by producing a book which is too technical for the ordinary reader, yet too popular for the Orientalist by profession. To the former rather than the latter it is addressed ; but most of all to that small but growing body of amateurs who, having learned to love the Persian poets in translation, desire to know more of the language, literature, history, and thought of one of the most ancient, gifted, and original peoples in the world. In a country which offers so few inducements as England to what may be called the professional study of Oriental letters and languages, and which consequently lacks well-organised Oriental schools such as exist at Paris, Berlin, St. Petersburg,

myself ever more rather than less unprepared, had I not received almost simultaneously two separate invitations to contribute a volume on Persian Literature or Literary History to a series which in each case was of conspicuous merit, though in plan, scope, and treatment the difference between the two was considerable. In choosing between the two, I was less influenced by priority of appeal, extent of remuneration, or personal predilection, than by the desire to secure for myself the ampler field and the broader—I had almost said the more philosophical—plan. The model placed before me in the one case was Jusserand's charming *Literary History of the English People*, the conception and execution of which (for reasons more fully explained in the Introductory chapter of the following work) so delighted me that I thereupon decided to make for the series to which it belonged the effort which I had long contemplated. For it was the intellectual history of the Persians which I desired to write, and not merely the history of the poets and authors who expressed their thoughts through the medium of the Persian language; the manifestations of the national genius in the fields of Religion, Philosophy, and Science interested me at least as much as those belonging to the domain of Literature in the narrower sense ; while the linguistic vehicle through which they sought expression was, from my point of view, indifferent. I trust that my readers will realise this at the outset, so that they may not suffer disappointment, nor feel themselves aggrieved, because in this volume more is said about movements than books, and less about books written in Persian than about those written in Pahlawi, Arabic, or some other language.

It was originally intended that the work should be completed in one volume, carrying the history down to the present day. But I soon convinced myself (and, with more difficulty, my publisher) that this was impossible without grave modification (and, from my point of view, mutilation) of my original plan. At first I hoped to carry this volume

down to the Mongol Invasion and the extinction of the Caliphate of Baghdad in the thirteenth century, which, as I have elsewhere observed (pp. 210-211 *infra*), is the great turning-point in the history of Islam ; but even this finally proved impracticable within the limits assigned to me, and I ultimately found myself obliged to conclude this part of my work with the immediate precursors of Firdawsi, the writers and poets of the Samanid and Buwayhid dynasties.

This division is, perhaps, after all the best, since the Prolegomena with which the student of Persian literature ought to be acquainted are thus comprised in the present volume, while the field of Persian literature in the narrower sense will, with the aid of one chapter of recapitulation, be entirely covered by the second, with which it is intended that this should be supplemented. Thus, agreeably to the stipulations imposed by my publisher, the two volumes will be independent one of the other, this containing the Prolegomena, and that the History of Persian Literature within the strict meaning of the term.

My chief fear is lest, in endeavouring to present to the general reader the results attained by Oriental scholarship, and embodied for the most part in books and periodicals which he is unlikely to read, or even to meet with, I may have fallen, so to speak, between two stools, and ended by producing a book which is too technical for the ordinary reader, yet too popular for the Orientalist by profession. To the former rather than the latter it is addressed ; but most of all to that small but growing body of amateurs who, having learned to love the Persian poets in translation, desire to know more of the language, literature, history, and thought of one of the most ancient, gifted, and original peoples in the world. In a country which offers so few inducements as England to what may be called the professional study of Oriental letters **and** languages, and which consequently lacks well-organised Oriental schools such as exist at Paris, Berlin, St. Petersburg,

and other Continental capitals, it is chiefly with the amateur (and I use the word in no disparaging sense, but as meaning one whose studies are prompted by taste and natural inclination rather than by necessity) that the future extension and development of these studies lies. To him (or her), therefore, this book is especially addressed ; and should it prove of use to any of those whose interest in the East is more real and abiding than that of the ordinary reader, but who have neither the opportunity nor the apparatus of study necessary to the professional student, I shall deem myself amply rewarded for my labour in compiling it.

Concerning the system of transliteration of Oriental names and words here adopted little need be said ; it is essentially that approved by the Royal Asiatic Society for the transcription of the Arabic character, and will be readily understood by all who are familiar with that script. That consistency (or, as I fear may be said by some of my critics, pedantry) has compelled me to write Hafidh, Nidhami, 'Umar, Firdawsî, &c, for the more popular Hafiz, Nizâm, Omar, and Ferdousi may be regretted from some points of view, but will at least generally save the student from doubts as to the correct spelling in the original character of the names occurring in the following pages. I only regret that this consistency has not been more complete, and that I have in a few cases (notably Adharbayjan, Azarbayjan) allowed myself to be swayed by actual usage at the expense of uniformity. But at least the reader will not as a rule be puzzled by finding the same name appearing now as 'Uthman, now as 'Usman, and again as 'Osmin, according as it is sought to represent its Arabic, its Persian, or its Turkish pronunciation.

And so I commend my book to the benevolent reader, and, I hope I may add, to the not less benevolent critic. Of its many defects, alike in plan and execution, I am fully conscious, and to others, no doubt, my attention will soon be called. But "*whoso desireth a faultless friend remains friend-*

PREFACE

xi

less," says a well-known Eastern adage, and it is no less true that he who would write a flawless book writes nothing. I have admitted that I felt myself unprepared for so great a task ; but I should have felt equally unprepared ten or twenty years hence, the subject ever widening before our eyes more rapidly than the knowledge of it grows in our minds. Even the most imperfect book, if it breaks fresh ground, may, though itself doomed to oblivion, prepare the way for a better.

EDWARD G. BROWNE.

SEPTEMBER 14, 1902.

Contents

PREFACE	vii

BOOK I

ON THE ORIGINS AND GENERAL HISTORY OF THE PEOPLE, LANGUAGES, AND LITERATURES OF PERSIA

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTORY	3
II. THE DISCOVERY AND INTERPRETATION OF THE IN- SCRIPTIONS AND DOCUMENTS OF ANCIENT PERSIA, WITH OTHER PHILOLOGICAL MATTER	39
III. THE PRE-MUHAMMADAN LITERATURE OF THE PERSIANS, WITH SOME ACCOUNT OF THEIR LEGENDARY HIS- TORY, AS SET FORTH IN THE BOOK OF THE KINGS	88

BOOK II

ON THE HISTORY OF PERSIA FROM THE RISE OF THE SASANIAN TO THE FALL OF THE UMAI- YAD DYNASTY (A.D. 226-750.)

IV. THE SASANIAN PERIOD (A.D. 226-652) .	127
V. THE ARAB INVASION .	185
VI. THE UMAYYAD PERIOD (A.D. 661-749) .	209

BOOK III

*ON THE EARLY 'ABBASID PERIOD, OR GOLDEN
AGE OF ISLAM*

CHAPTER	PAGE
VII. GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GOLDEN AGE OF ISLAM (A.D. 749-847) FROM THE ACCESSION OF AS-SAFFAH TO THE DEATH OF AL-WATHIQ .	251
VIII. THE DEVELOPMENTS OF RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY IN THE GOLDEN AGE OF ISLAM	279
IX. THE GREAT PERSIAN HERESIARCHS OF THIS PERIOD .	308

BOOK IV

*ON THE FIRST PERIOD OF THE DECLINE OF THE
CALIPHATE, FROM THE ACCESSION OF AL-
MUTAWAKKIL TO THE ACCESSION OF SULTAN
MAHMUD OF GHAZNA
(A.D. 850-1000)*

X. THE GENERAL PHENOMENA OF THE FIRST PERIOD OF THE DECLINE OF THE CALIPHATE (A.D. 847-1000), FROM THE ACCESSION OF AL-MUTAWAKKIL TO THE ACCESSION OF MAHMUD OF GHAZNA	339
XI. THE STATE OF MUSLIM LITERATURE AND SCIENCE AT THE BEGINNING OF THE GHAZNAWI PERIOD .	377
XII. RELIGIOUS MOVEMENTS OF THIS PERIOD I. The Isma'ilis and Carmathians, or the " Sect of the Seven "	391
XIII. RELIGIOUS MOVEMENTS OF THIS PERIOD II. The Sufi Mysticism	416
XIV. THE LITERATURE OF PERSIA DURING THIS PERIOD .	445
BIBLIOGRAPHY.	481
INDEX	497

BOOK I

*ON THE ORIGINS AND GENERAL HISTORY
OF THE PEOPLE, LANGUAGES, AND
LITERATURES OF PERSIA*

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTORY

THIS book, as its title implies, is a history, not of the different dynasties which have ruled in Persia and of the kings who composed those dynasties, but of the Persian people. It is, moreover, the history of that people written from a particular point of view—the literary. In other words, it is an attempt to portray the subjective—that is to say, the religious, intellectual, and aesthetic—characteristics of the Persians as manifested in their own writings, or sometimes, when these fail, in those of their neighbours. It is not, however, precisely a history of Persian Literature; since, on the one hand, it will exclude from consideration the writings of those who, while using the Persian language as the vehicle of their thought, were not of Persian race; and, on the other hand, it will include what has been written by Persians who chose as their medium of expression some language other than their mother-tongue. India, for example, has produced an extensive literature of which the language is Persian, but which is not a reflex of the Persian mind, and the same holds good in lesser degree of several branches of the Turkish race, but with this literature we are in no wise concerned. Persians, on the other hand, have continued ever since the Muhammadan Conquest—that is to say, for more than twelve hundred years—to use the Arabic

language almost to the exclusion of their own in writing on certain subjects, notably theology and philosophy ; while during the two centuries immediately succeeding the Arab invasion the language of the conquerors was, save amongst those who still adhered to the ancient national faith of Zoroaster, almost the sole literary medium employed in Persia. To ignore this literature would be to ignore many of the most important and characteristic manifestations of the Persian genius, and to form an altogether inadequate judgment of the intellectual activity of that ingenious and talented people.

The term " Persian " as used by us, and by the Greeks, Jews, Syrians, Arabs, and other foreigners, has a wider signification than that which it originally bore.

Meaning of the
term Persian. The Persians call themselves *Irani* and their land *Iran*,¹ and of this land *Parsa*, the Persis of the Greeks, the modern *Fars*,² is one province out of several. But because that province gave birth to the two great dynasties (the Achaemenian in the sixth century before, and the Sasanian

¹ *Iran, Eran, Airan*, the *Airiyana* of the Avesta, is the land of the Aryans (*Ariya, Airiya* of the Avesta, Sanskrit *Arya*), and had therefore a wider signification than the term *Persia*, which is equivalent to *Iran* in the modern sense, has now. Bactria (Balkh), Sogdiana (Sughd), and Khwarazm were Iranian lands, and the Afghans and Kurds are Iranian peoples.

² The P-sound does not exist in Arabic, and is replaced by *f*. *Fars, Isfahan, &c.*, are simply the arabicised forms of *Pars, Ispahan*. The adjective *Farsi* (or *Parsi*) denotes the official language of Persia (which is at the same time the mother-tongue of the great majority of its inhabitants, and the national language in as full a sense as English is the national language of Great Britain and Ireland), and in this application is equivalent to *Irani*. As applied to a man, however, *Farsi* means a native of the province of *Fars*. In India *Parsi* (Parsee) means of the Persian (*i.e.*, the ancient Persian, or Zoroastrian) religion, and the term has been re-imported in this sense into Persia. To call the province of *Fars* " *Farsistan*," as is sometimes done by European writers, is quite incorrect, for the termination *-istan* (" place of," " land of ") is added to the name of a people to denote the country which they inhabit (*e.g.* Afghanistan, Baluchistan), but not to the name of a country or province.

in the third century after Christ) which made their arms formidable and their name famous in the West, its meaning was extended so as to include the whole people and country which we call Persian ; just as the tribe of Angles, though numerically inferior to the Saxons, gave their name to England and all that the term English now connotes. As in our own country Angles, Saxons, and Jutes merged in one English people, and the dialects of Northumbria, Mercia, and Wessex in one English language, so in Iran the inhabitants of Parthia, Media, and Persis became in course of time blended in one Persian people, and their kindred dialects (for already Strabo found them in his time "almost of the same speech," *ὁμόγλωττοι παρὰ μικρόν*)³ in one Persian tongue.

The Persian language of to-day, *Farsi*, the language of Fars, is then the lineal offspring of the language which Cyrus and Darius spoke, and in which the proclamations engraved by their commands on the rocks of Behistun (now called *Bi-situn*) and Naqsh-i-Rustam, and the walls and columns of Persepolis, are drawn up. These inscriptions of the Achaemenian kings, who ruled in Persia from B.C. 550 until the last Darius was overthrown by Alexander the Great, B.C. 330, are sufficiently extensive and well understood to show us what the Persian language was more than 2,400 years ago.

Remote as is the period from which the earliest written monuments of the Persian language date, they do not, unfortunately, present an unbroken series. On the contrary, their continuity is broken between the Achaemenian period and the present day by two great gaps corresponding with two great foreign invasions which shattered the Persian power and reduced the Persian people to the position of a subject race. The *first* of these, beginning with the Greek invasion under Alexander and ending with the overthrow of the Parthian by the Sasanian

The Persian language of Achaemenian times.

Interruptions in the series of written monuments of the Persian language.

³ Strabo, xv, 724.

dynasty, embraces a period of about five centuries and a half (B.C. 330-A.D. 226). The *second*, beginning with the Arab invasion and Muhammadan Conquest, which destroyed the Sasanian dynasty and overthrew the Zoroastrian religion, though much shorter, had far deeper and more permanent effects on the people, thought, and language of Persia. "Hellenism," as Noldeke says, "never touched more than the surface of Persian life, but Iran was penetrated to the core by Arabian religion and Arab ways." The Arab conquest, though presaged by earlier events,¹ may be said to have begun with the battles of Buwayb and Qddisiyya (A.D. 635—637), and to have been completed and confirmed by the death of the last Sasdnian king, Yazdigird III, A.D. 651 or 652. The end of the Arabian period cannot be so definitely fixed. In a certain sense it endured till the sack of Baghdad and murder of al-Musta'sim bi'llah, the last 'Abbasid Caliph, in A.D. 1258 by the Mongols under Hulagu Khan, the grandson of Changiz Khan, Long before this, however, the Arab power had passed into the hands of Persian and Turkish vassals, and the Caliph, whom they sometimes cajoled and conciliated, but more often coerced or ignored, had ceased to exercise aught beyond a spiritual authority save in the immediate neighbourhood of Baghdad. Broadly speaking, however, the revival of the Persian language proceeded *pari passu* with the detachment of the Persian provinces from the direct control of the Caliph's administration, and the uprising or local dynasties which yielded at most a merely nominal obedience to the 'Abbasid court. Or these dynasties the Tahirids (A.D. 820) are sometimes accounted the first; but they may more truly be considered to begin with the Saffarids (A.D. 867), Samanids (A.D. 874), and Buwayhids (A.D. 932), and to reach their full development in the Ghaznawids and Seljuqs.

² Notably by the Battle of Dhu Qar in the reign of Khusraw Parwiz A.D. 604-610).

PERIODS OF THE PERSIAN LANGUAGE 7

The history of the Persian language falls, therefore, into three well-defined periods, as follows :—

Periods in the
development of
the Persian
Language.

I. *The Achaemenian Period* (B.C. 550-330), represented by the edicts and proclamations contained in the Persian cuneiform inscriptions, which, though of considerable extent, are similar in character and style, and yield a vocabulary of not much more than 400 separate words.¹ The language represented by these inscriptions, and by them only, is generally called *Old Persian*.²

Old Persian.

II. *The Sasanian Period* (A.D. 226-652), represented by inscriptions on monuments, medals, gems, seals, and coins, and by a literature estimated as, roughly speaking, equal in bulk to the Old Testament.³ This literature is entirely Zoroastrian and almost entirely theological and liturgical. The language in which it is written, when disentangled from the extraordinary graphic system, known as *Huzvaresh* (*Zuwarishn*), used to represent it, is little more than a very archaic form of the present speech of Persia devoid of the Arabic element. It is generally known as *Pahlawi*, sometimes as *Middle Persian*. Properly speaking, the term *Pahlawi* applies rather to the script than the language, but, following the general usage, we shall retain it in speaking of the official language of Sasanian Persia. This script continued

Middle Persian,
or Pahlawi.

¹ Darmesteter, *Etudes Iraniennes*, vol. i, p. 7.

² The best editions of these inscriptions are those of Kossowicz (St. Petersburg, 1872) and Spiegel (Leipsic, 1862). In the former the texts are given both in the cuneiform and in the Roman character and the translation in Latin. In the latter the texts are transliterated and the translation is in German.

³ West, "On the Extent, Language, and Age of Pahlawi Literature" p. 402 ; also the excellent account of *Pahlawi Literature* by the same writer in Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie*, vol. ii, pp. 75-129. West divides the Pahlawi literature into translations of Avesta texts (141,000 words), texts on religious subjects (446,000 words), and texts on non-religious subjects (41,000 words): total, about 628,000 words.

to be used on the coins of the early Caliphs and the independent *Spahpats* or *hpahbadhs* of Tabaristan for more than a century after the Arab conquest; and for at least as long additions continued to be made by the Zoroastrians of Persia to the Pahlawi literature, but the latest of them hardly extend beyond the ninth century of our era.¹ Practically speaking the natural use of what we understand as Pahlawi ceased about a thousand years ago.

I I I. *The Muhammadan Period* (from about A.D. 900 until the present day). When we talk of "Modern Persian," we mean simply the Persian language as it reappears after the Arab Conquest, and after the adoption of the Muhammadan religion by the vast majority of the inhabitants of Persia. The difference between late Pahlawi and the earliest form of Modern Persian was, save for the Arabic element generally contained in the latter, merely a difference of script, and script in this case was, at this transition period (the ninth century of our era), mainly a question of religion. In the East, even at the present day, there is a tendency to associate written characters much more than language with religion. There are Syrian Christians whose language is Arabic, but who prefer to write their Arabic in the Syriac character; and these *Karshuni* writings (for so they are called) form a considerable literature. So also Turkish-speaking Armenians and Greeks often employ the

Modern or Neo-Persian."*

Dislike of written characters associated with other religions.

¹ West places the compilation of the *Dinkart*, *Bundahish*, and *Arda Viraf Namak* in the ninth century of our era (*loc. cit.*, pp. 433, 436, 437), and regards it as "unlikely that any of the commentators quoted in the Pahlawi translations of the Avesta could have written later than the sixth century." The compilation of the *Bahman Yasht*, however, is placed by Professor Darmesteter as late as A.D. 1099-1350 (*Etudes Iraniennes*, vol. ii, p. 69). The interesting *Gujastak Abdlish* (edited and translated by A. Barthelémy, Paris, 1887) describes a controversy between a Zoroastrian priest and the heretic Abalish held in the presence of the Caliph al-Ma'mun (A.D. 813-833), and therefore obviously cannot have been composed earlier than the ninth century.

DISUSE OF PAHLAWI SCRIPT

Armenian and Greek characters respectively when they write Turkish. Similarly the Jews of Persia have a pretty extensive literature written in the Persian language but in the Hebrew character, while Moors of Spain who had forgotten how to speak Arabic wrote Spanish treatises in the Arabic character.¹ The Pahlawi script was even more

Reasons why the Pahlawi script rapidly fell into desuetude.

closely associated in the Eastern mind with the Zoroastrian religion than was the Arabic character with the faith of Islam ; and when a Persian was converted from the former to the latter creed he gave up, as a rule, once and for all a method of writing which was not only cumbrous and ambiguous in the highest degree, but also fraught with heathen associations. Moreover, writing (and even reading) was probably a rare accomplishment amongst the Persians when the Pahlawi character was the means of written communication, save amongst the Zoroastrian *magopats* and *dastobars* and the professional scribes (*dapir*). We read in the *Karnamak-i-Artakhshir-i-Papakan*,² or *Book of the Deeds of Ardashir, the son of Papak* (the founder of the Sasanian dynasty)—one of the three Pahlawi romances or "historical novels" which time has spared to us in the original-form³—that when this prince "reached the age for the higher

¹ It is even said that a debased Arabic script is still used by the peasants inhabiting the valleys of the Alpuxarras mountains in their love-letters.

² Translated into German by Professor Noldeke of Strassburg, and published in vol. iv of the *Beitrage zur Kunde des Indogermanschen Sprachen* on the occasion of Professor Benley's attainment of the fiftieth year of his Doctorate, as well as in the form of the *tirage a part* (Gottingen, 1879) here cited (pp. 38-9, and n. 3 on former). The Pahlawi text in the original and in the Roman characters, with Gujarati translation, edited by Kaikobad Adarbad Noshervan, was published at Bombay in 1896.

The others are the *Book of Zarir* and the *Story of Khusrau Kawadhan and his Page*. The former has been translated by Geiger in the *Sibblings-berichte d. philos.-philolog. u. histor. Class*, 1890, and reviewed by Noldeke in vol. xlvii (1892) of the *Zeitschrift d. D. Morgenland. Gesellsch.*, pp. 136-145. See also Noldeke's *Persische Studien*, II, in vol. exxvi of the *Sitzungsber. d. K. Akad. in Wien, philos.-histor. Class*, pp. 1-11

education, he attained such proficiency in Writing, Riding, and other accomplishments that he became famous throughout all Pars." So also we read in the account which the great historian Tabari¹ gives of the reign of Shapur, the son and successor of Ardashir, that "when he came to the place where he wished to found the city of Gunde-Shdpur, he met there an old man named Bel, of whom he enquired whether it would be permitted him to build a town on this site. Bel answered, 'If I at my advanced age can learn to write, then is it also permitted thee to build a town on this spot,'" by which answer, as Noldeke has pointed out, he meant to imply (though in the issue he proved mistaken) that both things were impossible. To the Pahlawi script, in short, might well be applied the Frenchman's well-known definition of speech as "the art of concealing thought"; it had no intrinsic merits save as a unique philological puzzle; and, once deprived of the support of religion, ancient custom, and a conservative priesthood, it could not hold its own against the far more legible and convenient Arabic character, of which, moreover, a knowledge was essential to every Muslim. But the fact cannot be too strongly insisted upon that the peculiarity of Pahlawi (as will be more fully explained presently) lay in the script only, and that a Pahlawi book read aloud by a Zoroastrian priest or scribe of the ninth century of our era would have been perfectly intelligible to a contemporary Persian Muhammadan; and that if the latter had taken it down in the Arabic

² See the excellent article on *Tabari* (Abu Ja'far Muhammad b. Jarir of Amul in Tabaristan, b.A.D.839,d.A.D.923) in the ninth edition of the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*. The publication of the text of this immense and most precious chronicle by Professor de Goeje of Leyden and other distinguished Arabic scholars is one of the greatest recent achievements of Oriental learning. A German translation of the portion of this chronicle which deals with the history of the Sasanian period, accompanied by a most valuable Introduction and copious notes and appendices, has been published by Professor Noldeke (Leyden, 1879) under the title *Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden*. The story here cited will be found in its entirety at p. 41 of the last-named work.

character as he heard it read, what he wrote would have been simply "Modern Persian" in its most archaic form without admixture of Arabic words. Indeed, so comparatively slight (so far as we can judge) are the changes which the Persian spoken language has undergone since the Sasanian period, that if it were possible for an educated Persian of the present day to be suddenly thrust back over a period of fourteen or fifteen hundred years, he would probably be able to understand at least a good deal of what his countrymen of that period were saying. The gulf which separates that speech from Old Persian is far wider, and the first Sasanian king, notwithstanding the accomplishments which made him "famous throughout all Pars," if he could similarly have travelled backwards in time for some six centuries, would have comprehended hardly a word of what was said at the Achaemenian court,

It is impossible to fix a definite date at which Modern Persian literature may be said to have begun. Probably

Beginning of
Modern Persian
Literature. Persian converts to Islam began to write their language in the Arabic character very soon after the Arab Conquest—that is to say, some time in the eighth century of our era. The first attempts of this sort were probably mere memoranda and notes,

Prose. followed, perhaps, by small manuals of instruction in the doctrines of Islam. Fragmentary utterances in Persian, and even brief narratives, are recorded here and there in the pages of early Arabic writers, and these at least serve to show us that the Persian of late Sasanian and early Muhammadan times was essentially the same as that with which we meet in the earliest monuments of Modern Persian literature. Of actual books of any extent, the Persian translation of Tabari's history made for Mansur I, the Samanid prince, in A.D. 963 by his minister Bal'ami; the *Materia Medica* of Abu Mansur Muwaffaq b. 'Ali of Herat (preserved to us in the unique MS. of Vienna dated A.D. 1055,

of which a beautiful reprint was published by Seligmann in 1859) composed for the same royal patron ; and the second volume of an old commentary on the Qur'dn (Cambridge University Library, Mm. 4. 15) ¹ belonging, apparently, to about the same period, are, so far as is known, the oldest surviving specimens.

It is very generally assumed, however, that in Persian, as in Arabic, verse preceded prose. One story, cited by several of the native biographers (e.g., Dawlatshah in his Poetry. *Lives of the Poets*), ascribes the first Persian couplet to the joint invention of Bahrain Gur the Sasanian (A.D. 420-438), and his mistress Dil-aram.² Another quotes (on the authority of Abu Tahir al-Khatiini, a writer of the twelfth century of our era) a Persian couplet engraved on the walls of the *Easr-i-Shirin* ("Palace of Shirin," the beloved of Khusraw Parwiz, A.D. 590-628), said to have been still legible in the time of 'Adudu'd-Dawla the Buwayhid (tenth century of our era).³ Another tells how one day in Nishapur the Amir 'Abdu'llah b. Tahir (died A.D. 844) was presented with an old book containing the *Romance of Wamiq and 'Adhra*, "a pleasing tale, which wise men compiled, and dedicated to King Nushirwan" (A.D. 531-579); and how he ordered its destruction, saying that the Qur'an and Traditions of the Prophet ought to suffice for good Muslims, and adding, "this book was written by Magians and is accursed in our eyes."⁴ Yet another story given by Dawlatshah attributes the first line of metrical Persian to the

¹ See my *Description of an Old Persian Commentary* in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* for July, 1894, pp. 417-524; and my *Catalogue of the Persian MSS. in the Cambridge University Library*, pp. 13-37.

² Dawlatshah (ed. Browne), pp. 28-29. See also Blochmann's *Prosody of the Persians*, p. 2 ; Darmesteter's *Origines de la Poésie Persane*, first paragraph.

³ See A. de Biberstein Kazimirski's *Divan de Menoutchehri* (Paris, 1886), p. 7, and Dawlatshah, p. 29.

⁴ Kazimirski, pp. 6-7. Dawlatshah, p. 30.

gleeful utterance of a little child at play, the child being the son of Ya'qub b. Layth "the Coppersmith," founder of the Saffan ("Brazier") dynasty (A.D. 868-878).¹ Muhammad 'Awfi, the author of the oldest extant *Biography of Persian Poets** who flourished early in the thirteenth century of our era (A.D. 1210-1235), asserts that the first Persian poem was composed by one 'Abbas of Merv in honour of the Caliph al-Ma'mun, the son of Harunu'r-Rashid, on the occasion of his entry into that city in A.D. 809, and even cites some verses of the poem in question ; but, though this assertion has been accepted as a historical fact by some scholars of repute,³ the scepticism of others ⁴ appears to the writer well justified. All that can be safely asserted is that modern Persian literature, especially poetry, had begun to flourish considerably in Khurasan during the first half of the tenth century, especially during the reign of the Samanid prince Nasr II (A.D. 913—942), and thus covers a period of nearly a thousand years, during which time the language has changed so little that the verses of an early poet like Riidagi are at least as plain to a Persian of to-day as is Shakespear to a modern Englishman.

Most of the legends as to the origin of Persian poetry are, as we have seen, unworthy of very serious attention, and

¹ See A. de Biberstein Kazimirski's *Menoutchehri* (Paris, 1886), pp. 7-8, and Dawlatshah (ed. Browne), pp. 30-31.

² The *Lubdbu'l-Albab*, a very rare book, represented, so far as is known, only by two MSS., one (Sprenger 318 ; No. 637 of Pertsch's Catalogue) in the Berlin Library, the other in the possession of Lord Crawford and Balcarres, whose generosity has entrusted to my hands this priceless treasure, which I propose to publish in my series of Persian historical texts. This MS. formerly belonged to John Bardoe Elliot, by whom it was lent to Nathaniel Bland, who described its contents and scope in vol. ix of the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (1846), pp. 111-126. See also Sprenger's *Catalogue of the Libraries of the King of Oude*, pp. 1-6.

³ E.g., Dr. Ethe: *Rudagi's Vorlttufer und Zeitgenossen* (in the *Morgen-Idndische Forschungen* for 1873), pp. 36-38; also the article on *Modern Persian Literature* by the same scholar in vol. ii of Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie*, p. 218.

⁴ E.g., A. de Biberstein Kazimirski, *Menoutchehri*, pp. 8-9.

certainly merit little more credence than the assertion of serious and careful Arab writers, like Tabari (†A.D. 923), and Mas'udi (†A.D. 957), that the first poem ever written was an elegy composed in Syriac by Adam on the death of Abel, of which poem they even give an Arabic metrical rendering * to this effect:—

"The **lands** are changed and those who dwell upon them,
 The face of earth is marred and girt with gloom;
 All that was fair and fragrant now hath faded,
 Gone from that comely face the joyous bloom.
 Alas for my dear son, alas for Abel,
 A victim murdered, thrust within the tomb!
 How can we rest? That Fiend accursed, unfailing,
 Undying, ever at our side doth loom I"

To which the Devil is alleged to have retorted thus :—

" Renounce these lands and those who dwell upon them I
 By me was cramped in Paradise thy room,
 Wherein thy wife and thou were set and stablished,
 Thy heart unheeding of the world's dark doom!
 Yet did'st thou not escape my snares and scheming,
 Till that great gift on which thou did'st presume
 Was lost to thee, and blasts of wind from Eden,
 But for God's grace, had swept thee like a broom !"

Nevertheless there is one legend indicating the existence of Persian poetry even in Sasanian times which, partly from the persistency with which it reappears in various **old** writers of credit,² partly from a difference in **the** form of the minstrel's name which can hardly be explained save on the assumption that both forms

Barbad the
 Sasanian min-
 strel (A.D. 590-
 627.)

¹ Tabari, vol. i, p. 146; Mas'udi, *Muruju'dh-Dhahab* (ed. Barbier de Meynard), vol. i, pp. 65-67; Tha'alibi, *Qisasu'l-Anbiyd* (ed. Cairo, A.H. 1306), pp. 29-30; Dawlatshah (ed. Browne), p. 20.

² Amongst Arabic writers, the earliest mention of Bahlabad which I have found is made in a poem by Khalid b. Fayyad (circ. A.D. 718), cited by Hamadhani, Yaqut and Qazwini, and translated at pp. 59-60 of **the** J.R.A. S. for January, 1899. Accounts, more or less detailed, **are** given of

were transcribed from a Pahlawi original, appears to me worthy of more serious attention. According to this legend, one of the chief ornaments of the court of Khusraw Parwiz, the Sisanian king (A.D. 590-627), was a minstrel named by Persian writers Barbad, but by Arabic authors Bahlabad, Balahbad or Fahlabad, forms of which the first and third point to a Persian original Pahlapat. Bahlabad and Barbad when written in the Arabic character are not easily confounded ; but if written in the Pahlawi character, which has but one sign for A and H on the one hand, and for R and L on the other, they are identical, which fact affords strong evidence that the legends concerning this singer go back ultimately to books written in Pahlawi, in other words to records almost contemporary. Now this Barbad (for simplicity the modern Persian form of the name is adopted here, save in citations from Arabic texts) presents, as I have elsewhere pointed out,¹ a striking resemblance to the Samanid poet Rudagi, who flourished in the early part of the tenth century

him by Ibn Qutayba (†A.D. 889) in his *Uyunu'l-akhbar* (MS. of St. Petersburg Asiatic Museum, No. 691); al-Jahidh (†A.D. 869) in his *Kitabu'l-Hayawan* (Cambridge MS., Qq. 224); Hamadhani (circ. A.D. 903), ed. de Goeje ; the author of the *Kitabu'l-Mahasin wa'l-Addad* (ed. Van Vloten, pp. 363-64), probably al-Bayhaqi (circ. A.D. 925); Ibn 'Abd Rabbihi (†A.D. 940), vol. i, p. 192 or 188 of another edition ; Abu'l-Faraj al-Isfahani (†A.D. 957), in the *Kitabu'l-Aghani* ; Yaqut (†A.D. 1229), vol. iii, pp. 250 *et seqq.*; and al-Qazwini (†A.D. 1283), in his *Atharu'l-Bilad* (pp. 154-55, 230-231, 295-297). Of Persian writers who allude to him we may mention Sharif-i-Mujallidi (date uncertain: cited by Nidhami-i-Arudi-i-Samarqandi in the *Chahar Maqala*); Firdawsi (†circ A.D. 415), in the *Shahnama* ; Nidhami of Ganja (†circ. A.D. 1203) in his *Khusraw wa Shirin*, and the other Nidhami above cited (†circ. A.D. 1160); Muhammad 'A wfi (circ. A.D. 1228); and Hamdu'llah Mustawfi of Qazwin (circ. A.D. 1340) in the *Tarikh-i-Guzida*. I am indebted to Baron V. Rosen, of St. Petersburg, for calling my attention to several of the above references, which I had overlooked when writing the article referred to in the next note.

¹ See my article in the *J. R. A. S.* for January, 1899 (pp. 37-69), on *The Sources of Dawlatshah; with some remarks on the "Materials available for a Literary History of Persia, and an Excursus on Barbad and Rudagi.*

of our era; and indeed the two are already associated by an early poet, Sharif-i-Mujallidi of Gurgan, who sings :—

" From all the treasures hoarded by the Houses
Of Sasan and of Saman, in our days
Nothing survives except the song of Barbad,
Nothing is left save Rudagi's sweet lays."

For in all the accounts of Rudagi which we possess his most remarkable achievement is the song which he composed and sung in the presence of the Samdnid Amir Nasr b. Ahmad to induce that Prince to abandon the charms of Herat and its environs, and to return to his native Bukhara, which he had neglected for four years. The extreme simplicity of this song and its entire lack of rhetorical adornment, have been noticed by most of those who have described this incident, by some (*e.g.* Nidhami-i-'Arudi of Samarqand) with approval, by others, such as Dawlatshah, with disapprobation, mixed with surprise that words so simple could produce so powerful an effect. And indeed it is rather a ballad than a formal poem of the artificial and rather stilted type most admired in those decadent days to which Dawlatshah belongs, and in which, as he says, " If any one were to produce such a poem in the presence of kings or nobles, it would meet with the reprobation of all." To the musical skill of the minstrel, and his cunning on the harp wherewith he accompanied his singing, the simple ballad, of which a paraphrase is here offered, no doubt owed much :—

"The Ju-yi-Muliyān we call to mind,
We long for those dear friends long left behind.
The sands of Oxus, toilsome though they be,
Beneath my feet were soft as silk to me.
Glad at the friends' return, the Oxus deep
Up to our girths in laughing waves shall leap.
Long live Bukhara! Be thou of good cheer I
Joyous towards thee hasteth our Amir!
The Moon's the Prince, Bukhara is the sky;
O Sky, the Moon shall light thee by and by I
Bukhara is the Mead, the Cypress he;
Receive at last, O Mead, thy Cypress-tree !"

" When Rudagi reached this verse," adds the oldest authority for this narrative (Nidhami-i-'Arudi of Samarqand), "the Amir was so much affected that he descended from his throne, bestrode the horse of the sentinel on duty, and set off for Bukhara in such haste that they carried his riding boots after him for two parasangs, as far as Buruna, where he put them on; neither did he draw rein anywhere till he reached Bukhara; and Rudagi received from the army the double of that five thousand dinars [which they had promised him in the event of his success]."

Thus Rudagi was as much harper, ballad singer, and improvisatore as poet, resembling, probably, the minstrels whose *tasnifs*, or topical ballads, may be heard to-day at any Persian entertainment of which music and singing form a part; resembling also, as has been pointed out, that dimly visible Barbad or Bahlabad of the old Sasanian days. Of the ten men reckoned by the Persians incomparable each in his own way, he was one ; and herein lay his special virtue and merit, that when aught must be made known to King Khusraw Parwiz which none other dared utter for terror of the royal displeasure, Barbad would weave it dexterously into a song, and sing it before the king. Parwiz had a horse called Shabdiz, beautiful and intelligent beyond all others; and so greatly did the king love Shabdiz that he swore to slay that man who should bring the tidings of his death. So when Shabdiz died, the Master of the Horse prayed Bahlabad to make it known to the king in a song, of which Parwiz listening divined the purport and cried, " Woe unto thee! Shabdiz is dead !" " It is the king who sayeth it," replied the minstrel; and so escaped the threatened death and made the king's oath of no effect. Thus is the tale told by the Arab poet, Khalid b. Fayyad, who lived little more than a century after Khusraw Parwiz:—

"And Khusraw, King of kings, him too an arrow
Plumed from the wings of Death did sorely smite,
E'en as he slept in Shirin's soft embraces
Amidst brocades and perfumes, through the night
Dreaming of Shabdiz whom he used to ride,
His noble steed, his glory and his pride.

He with an oath most solemn and most binding,
 Not to be loosed, had sworn upon the Fire
 That whoso first should say, 'Shabdiz hath perished,'
 Should die upon the cross in torments dire;
 Until one morn that horse lay low in death
 Like whom no horse hath been since man drew breath

Four strings wailed o'er him, while the minstrel kindled
 Pity and passion by the witchery
 Of his left hand, and, while the strings vibrated,
 Chanted a wailing Persian threnody,
 Till the King cried, 'My horse Shabdiz is dead !'
 'It is the King that sayeth it,' they said."

Other minstrels of this old time are mentioned, whose names alone are preserved to us: Afarin, Khusrawani, Madharastani,¹ and the harper Sakisa,² beings yet more shadowy than Barbad, of whose notes not so much as an echo has reached our time. Yet can we hardly doubt that those old Sasanian halls and palaces lacked not this ornament of song, whereof some reflex at least passed over into Muhammadan times. For though the modern Persian prosody be modelled on that of the Arabs, there are types of verse—notably the quatrain (*ruba'i*) and the narrative poem in doublets [*mathnawi*]—which are to all appearance indigenous. Whether, as Darmesteter seems to think,³ there is sufficient evidence to warrant us in believing that romantic poetry existed in Persia even in Achaemenian times is too problematical a question to be discussed in this place.

Hitherto we have considered only the history of the Persian language and the Persian power in the narrower sense of the term. We have now to extend the field of inquiry so as to include the whole Iranian people and their literary remains. The ground on which we

Wider view of
 the Iranian
 people.

¹ Al-Bayhaqi's *Kitdbu'l-Mahasin* (ed. Van Vloten), p. 363.

² Nidhami of Ganja's *Khusraw wa Shirin*.

³ Darmesteter's *Origines de la Poésie Persane* (Paris, 1887), p. 2.

now enter is, unfortunately, much less sure than that which we have hitherto traversed ; the problems which we shall encounter are far more complicated, and their solutions are, in many cases, uncertain and conjectural.

The oldest Persian dynasty, the Achaemenian, with which we began our retrospect of Persian history, rose by the fall of a power not less famous than itself, that of
 The Medes. the Medes, whom from our earliest days we are accustomed to associate with the Persians. In the modern sense of the term, indeed, they were Persians, but of the West, not of the South, having their centre and capital at Ecbatana (*Hagmatana* of the Old Persian inscriptions, now *Hamadan*) not Persepolis (Sasanian *Istakhr*, near *Shiraz*, the present chief towxi of Fars). The actual boundaries of Media cannot be precisely defined, but, roughly speaking, it extended from the Mountains of Azarbayjan (Atropatene) on the north to Susiana (Khuzisrin) on the south, and from the Zagros Mountains on the east to about the line of the modern Tihiran-Isfahdn road, with a north-eastern prolongation including the whole or part of Mazandaran. In modern phraseology, therefore, it comprised Kurdistan, Luristan the northern part of Khuzisrin, the western part of 'Iraq-i-'Ajami, and the southern part of Azarbayjan. Amongst the hardy mountaineers of this wide region arose the Medic power. The name of Media does not, like that of Persia, still survive in the land to which it originally belonged, but, as has been shown by de Lagarde and Olshausen, it continued, even in Muhammadan times, under the form *Mah* (Old Persian *Mada*) to enter into certain place names, such as *Mah-Kufa*, *Mah-Basra*, *Mah-Nahawand*.¹

¹ Already, however, in A.D. 1700, the celebrated Cambridge scholar and pupil of Abraham Wheelock, Dr. Hyde, who in later life became attached to the University of Oxford as Professor of Hebrew, Laudian Professor of Arabic, and Keeper of the Bodleian Library, had recognised the identity of *Mah* with *Mada* (see *Vet. Pen. Relig. Hist.*, ed. 1760, p. 424).

The Medes, unfortunately, unlike the Persians, have left no records of their achievements, and we are consequently dependent for information concerning them on the records of other nations who had direct or indirect knowledge of them, notably the Assyrians, Jews, and Greeks. As regards the Assyrian records, Amadana (Hamadan), the capital of the Medes, is mentioned in an inscription of Tiglath Pileser (circ. B.C. 1100) as a subject territory¹; and it is again mentioned in an inscription of the ninth century before Christ. Salmonassar-Sargon (B.C. 731-713) boasts that he had made his name feared in distant Media, and the same region is referred to by his successor Sennacherib, and by Esar-haddon (B.C. 680-669). In 2 Kings xvii, 6 we read that "in the ninth year of Hoshea" (B.C. 722) "the King of Assyria took Samaria, and carried Israel away into Assyria, and placed them in Halah and in Habor by the river of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes ; " and this statement is repeated in verse 11 of the next chapter.²

Of the three Greek historians whose works are primary sources for this period, *Herodotus* merits the first mention, both on account of his veracity (to which the cuneiform inscriptions bear abundant testimony) and because his history alone of the three is preserved to us in its entirety. *Ctesias*, who flourished in the fifth century before Christ, was physician to Artaxerxes Mnemon, and professed to derive his information from the Persian royal archives. This statement at least affords evidence of the existence of such documents, which are also referred to in the Book of Esther, where we read (chap, vi, 1) that King Ahasuerus, being unable to sleep, "commanded to bring the book of records of the chronicles ;" and (chap, ii, 23) that the plot against the king's life devised by Bigthan and Teresh

Sources of
Medic history.

Assyrian
records.

Jewish records.

Greek records.
Herodotus.
Ctesias.

Spiegel, *Eranische Alterthumskunde*, ii, 246.

* Noldeke, *Aufsätze zur Persischen Geschichte* (Leipzig, 1887), p. 5.

THE ML

and disclosed by Mordecai "was
chronicles before the King,"
perfectly understood or deliber
records, or because the record
(a thing which modern analc
prevailing view is that little
narrative, which, moreover, :

fragmentary cond
Berosus. such as Photius (A.

Chaldaean priest who lived in
Great and his immediate successors
for his patron Antiochus of Syria,
Of his work also fragments only
writers, Polyhistor and Apollod
Christ), who are cited by Euse

The Medes, according to Hero'
peoples subject to Assyria who si
independence, after they had born

This took place abo
or two later Deioce
the four Medic kings mention
lished himself on the throne. An .
mentions a *Dayaukku* (=Deioces]
captive; and in B.c

Phraortes. Assyria subdued the B
Deioces." Phraortes (Fravartish in t
succeeded in B.C. 647, and extended
as well as his own

Cyaxares. He in turn was sue
Cyaxares (Huvakhshatara), who,
Babylonian king, destroyed Ninev
eluded peace with the Lydians in
of a total eclipse of the sun which
of that year, and which was rega
indication of Divine displeasure. I

DUCTORY

by his son Astyages, who was Cyrus the Achaemenian in B.C. power passed from the West-Iranian Persians.

edes, however, we are not here
ns in connection with them
ur present point of view are—
second, what was their religion ?
ed, in accordance with the most
inion of the writer, the most
that the Medes were an Iranian
an Irdnian language closely akin
1. This is the view taken, for
in concluding his account of

ns of the neighbourhood of Hamadin,
day bring to light other traces of that
the greatest value if inscriptions of
ce to be found; I should conjecture
and script, would be quite similar to

ws will be discussed at greater
ier, and declares that the language
Zend language, is the language of

se,' says he,* after adducing evidence
t que la tradition parsie et l'Avesta,
ges etrangers, voient le centre et le

(Leipzig, 1887), p. 12.

mes, vol. i, pp. 12, 13. M. de Harlez
ta, 1882, pp. xi, and *Introduction a l'itude
liene*, 1881, pp. xlv. et seqq.) takes the same
montre que l'Avesta doit etre attribue a la
les Mages. Toutefois, comme cette opinion
ment admise, nous preferons employer, a
' Avestique' exempt certainement de tout
est preferable a 'Vieux-Bactrien,' parce
n dont l'emploi ne prejuge nen."

THE MEDES

berceau du Zoroastrisme, soit en Atropatene, soit a Rai, dans Tun et l'autre cas en Medie. . . . Je crois que les droits de l'Atropatene sont mieux etablis, et que c'est de la que le Zoroastrisme a pris sa course de l'Ouest a l'Est. En tout cas, *le Zoroastrisme est une chose medique, et l'Avesta est l'oeuvre des pretres medes*. . . . Il suit . . . par le temoignage externe des classiques joint au temoignage intrinseque des livres zends et de la tradition native, que l'Avesta est l'oeuvre des Mages, que *le zend est la langue de la Medie ancienne*, et que Ton aurait le droit de remplacer le nom improprie de *langue zende* par le terme de *langue medique*."

A totally different view, which ought not to pass unnoticed, is held by Oppert, and set forth at length in his work *Le Peuple et la Langue des Medes*, The inscriptions of the Achaemenian kings, as is well known, are drawn up in three different languages, of which the first is Old Persian and the third Assyrian.

Oppert's view
that the Medes
were a Turanian
race.

As to the second, concerning the nature of which much doubt has prevailed, M. Oppert holds that it is Medic, and that it is not an Aryan but a Turanian tongue ; which astonishing opinion he supports by many ingenious arguments. The very name of Media (*Mada*) he explains by a Sumerian word *mada*, meaning "country"; and the names of the Medic kings given by Ctesias he regards as the Aryan equivalents of the Aryanized Turanian names given by Herodotus and in the Old Persian inscriptions. Thus, for instance, in his view, the name of the first Medic king of Herodotus was compounded of *daya* (other) and *ukku* (law), the Aryanized or Persianized form of which was probably *Dahyuka*, "le reunisseur des pays" ; while the Persian translation of the same was the form given by Ctesias, *Apiatooy* which "recalls to us the Persian *Artayu*, from *arta*, 'law,' and *ayu*, 'reuniting.'"⁹ Of the six tribes of the Medes mentioned by Herodotus (bk. i, ch. ci), Oppert admits that the names are Aryan ; but he contends that in the case of two at least, the Bourcu and the Srioieux we have to do with Aryan translations of the original names, which he believes

to have been Turanian, and to have denoted respective "autochthones" and "vivant dans les tentes."

There are but very few scholars who are qualified to survey the ground traversed by M. Oppert and to form an independent judgment of his results in matters of detail; but, as regards his general conclusions, we ^{Darmesteter's view.} concur with Darmesteter in the summary statement of objections to M. Oppert's theory wherewith he closes his review of the book in question¹ :—

" Nous ne voyons donc pas de raison sumsante pour abandonner l'opinion traditionnelle, que la langue des Medes etait une langue aryenne, opinion qui a pour elle, en somme, le temoignage direct de Strabon, er le temoignage indirect d'Herodote, sans parler des raisons tres fortes qui font de la Medie le lieu d'origine du Zend Avesta et par suite la patrie du zend."

In the absence of further discoveries, the theory that the Medes were an Iranian people speaking an Iranian language closely akin to Old Persian is the view which we must continue to regard as most probable.

It has already been said that the Medic kings, unlike the Achasmenians, left no records of their achievements ; while, as regards their language, some scholars, like Noldeke,

The Avesta think that , though specimens of it may be brought to light by future discoveries, none are at present accessible ; others, like Oppert, find such specimens in the cuneiform inscriptions of the second class; while others, like Darmesteter, believe that we possess in the ancient scriptures of the Zoroastrians, the Zend-Avesta, an ample specimen not only of the language, but also of the literature, of the Medes. That the language of the Avesta is an Iran ian language, standing to Old Persian in the relation of sister, not of daughter or mother, is proved beyond all reasonable doubt. As to the part of Into where it flourished, there is not, however, the

² *Etudes Irantennes*, ii, p. 14 ; reprinted from the *Revue Critique* for June 21, 1880.

same unanimity; for while Darmesteter, as we have seen, regards it as the language of Media, the opinion prevalent in Germany is that it was the language of Bactria, and it has even become fashionable to speak of it as " Old Bactrian " and " East Iranian." Darmesteter, in his usual clear and concise way, sums up the arguments of the East Irdnian or Bactrian theory before proceeding to refute them, as follows¹ :—

(1) Zend is not the language of Persia.

(2) It is in Bactria that, according to tradition, Zoroaster made his first important conquest, King Gushtasp.

(3) The geography of the Avesta only knows the east of Iran.

" The first fact," he continues, " is correct, but purely negative ; it excludes Persia [i.e., Persis proper] from the question, but leaves free all the rest of Iran.

" The second fact is correct, but only proves that Bactria plays a great part in the religious Epic of Zoroastrianism; the struggles maintained by the Iranians against the idolatrous Turanians, of which Bactria, by its geographical position, was the natural theatre, must necessarily have drawn the thoughts of the faithful to this part of Iran, where the worshippers of Ahura Mazda were at death-grips with the worshippers of the *daevas*, and which formed the frontier-post of Ormazd against barbarous idolatry ; it is even very probable that the legends concerning the conversion of Bactria and of King Gushtasp bequeath to us a historic recollection of the conquests of Zoroastrianism in the East. Nowhere, however, is Bactria represented as the cradle of Zoroaster and Zoroastrianism; Parsi tradition is unanimous and consistent in placing this cradle, not in the East, in Bactria, but in the West, in Atropatene ; and not only Parsi tradition, but the Avesta itself, for—

" The third fact adduced is incorrect: the Avesta knows the North and West of Iran as well as the East: the first chapter of the Vendidad, which describes Iran as it was known to the authors of the Vendidad, opens the enumeration of the Iranian regions by the *Eran-Vej*, washed by the Good Daitya (I, 3); now the *Eran-Vej* is on the borders of Atropatene, and the Good Daitya is the Araxes.² It is equally familiar with the North, for it cites Rhagae, the 'Payai Of the Greeks, the Ray of the moderns, in Media."

¹ *Etudes Iraniennes*, vol. i, pp. 10-12.

² This view is by no means universally admitted. Geiger, for instance, places the *Airyana Vaeja*, or *Eran-Vej*, in the region of the Pamirs.

One piece of philological evidence is adduced by Darmesteter in support of his opinion that the language of the Avesta is the language of the Medes. The modern Persian word for dog, *sag*, implies, says he,¹ the existence of an Old Persian form *saka* (not actually occurring in the meagre documents on which we depend for our direct knowledge of the ancient language of Pars). Herodotus, however, mentions (I, 110) that in the language of the Medes the dog was called *nraica*, which rather resembles the Avestic word *span* (Sanskrit *svan*, Greek *KAV*). And it is curious that this word, in the form *ispa*, still exists² in some of the Persian dialects, such as those of Qohrud (near Kashin) and Natanz. M. Clement

Huart, who has contributed to the *Journal Asiatique* 3 a number of very ingenious and interesting papers on various Persian dialects, such as those of Yazd, Siwand, and the curious *Jawida'n-i-Kabir* (the principal work of the heretical Hurufi sect,⁴ which arose in Persia in the fifteenth century of our era), has still further developed Darmesteter's views, and has endeavoured to show that several of the dialects spoken in remote and mountainous places in Persia (especially in the West, i.e., in Media) are descended from the language of the Avesta; and to these dialects he proposes to apply the term "Modern Medic," or

Huart's development of Darmesteter's view.

According to his interpretation of the data contained in ch. i of the *Vendidad*, the most western regions known to the Avesta are *Vehrkanā* (Hyrcania, the modern Gurgan or Jurjan), *Rangha* (Rhagae, or Ray, near Tihiran, the modern capital), and *Varena* "the four-cornered," corresponding, according to his view, to the eastern portion of Mazandaran.

¹ *Loc. cit.*, p. 13.

² Cf. my *Year amongst the Persians*, p. 189; Polak's *Persien*, vol. i, p. 265.

³ *J.A.* for 1885, vol. vi, pp. 502-545, *les Quatrains de Baba Tahir*; *ibid.*, for 1888, vol. xi, pp. 298-302, *Note sur le prétendu Diri des Parsis des Yezd*, *ibid.* 1889, xiv, pp. 238-270, *Notice d'un manuscrit Pehlevi-Musulman*; *ibid.* 1893, vol. i, pp. 241-265, *Le Dialecte Persan de Siwend*.

⁴ See my article on the *Literature and Doctrines of the Hurufi Sect* in the *J.R.A.S.*, for January, 1898, pp. 61-94.

PERSIAN DIA

"Pehlevi-Musulman."¹ He remarks differences, the root *kar-* underlies signifies "to do," "to make," in the in Old Persian the aorist, or imperative (as in Modern Persian) is *kun-*; and signifying "to speak," "to say," in A in Old Persian it is *gaub-*, Now (which, as we have seen, is the Persian) the verbs signifying "to (imperative *kun*) and *gujtan* (imperfect dialects which he calls "Modern preserved throughout (aorist *karam* and words denoting "speech," "to root *vaj-* or some similar basis corresponding to *aoj-y vach-*. This test is employed in a given dialect as "Medic" or "Pehlevi" ingenious theory the language of the in Persia by a number of dialects, quatrains of *Baba* "Tahir" (beginning in the *Jawidan-i-Kabir* (fifteenth century, in the districts of Qohrud and 'oroastrians of Yazd and Kirman. The word for "I" in the Talisman Sere'sine,² *az*, which appears to be *azem* (Old Persian *adam*). It is the most and more exhaustive study of the various parts of Persia (which, from materials collected, and in part previously still inadequately known to us) will question. Darmesteter, however, in

¹ "They are, in fact, commonly called Pahlavans, so early as the fourteenth century of our era, in the *iahyfi* of Qazwin. Cf. Polak, *loc. cit.*

² *Recherches sur les Dialectes Persans*, K

³ *Materialy did izuchema Persidskikh* Kashan, Vanishun, Qohrud, Keshe, and Z

RODUCTORY

lxii-lxv), has endeavoured to show language of Afghanistan represents lant of the old Avestic tongue, which against the view set forth in his *Etudes*

however, that the two are really er, of the Medic tribe of the Magians etrine from Atropatene (Azarbayjin)

of Iran to Bactria in the extreme eved his first signal success by con- (Gushtisp) ; that the dialects of nd, indeed, of all North Iran, were n the Avesta, as suggested by De ha dialect represents the latter, and he Vendiddd the former. All this, :ture, which at best can only be pothesis.

to speak with certainty as to the as to their language; nay, in spite rous inscriptions it has not yet been er or no the Achasmenians who m did or did not hold the faith of to whose personality, date, and most various opinions have been y existence of a historical Zoroaste. rs his personality has been found . in the Gathas, which they hold to ranees, at least the words of his)me his date has been fixed in the o, even 6,000 years before Christ, iced in the seventh century B.C. seen, regarded as of Bactria, in ia, by others of Atropatene, in the too with the Avesta, the sacred which Darmesteter in his *Tra-* -- *Musee Guimet*, vols, xxi-xxiv,

DATE OF THE A VESTA

Paris, 1892-3) has striven to drag down—at least in part—from a remote antiquity even into post-Christian times. Not only has opinion varied thus widely; feeling has run high ; nay, in the opinion of that eminent scholar and courageous traveller, M. Halevy, expressed in conversation with the writer, the calm domain of Science has been invaded by racial prejudices and national antipathies. We had been discussing the views set forth in Darmesteter's work above mentioned, at that time just published; and I had expressed surprise at the very recent date therein assigned to the Avesta, and inquired whether those numerous and eminent scholars who maintained its great antiquity had no reason for their assertion. " Reason enough," was the answer ; " their hatred of the Semitic races, their pride in their Aryan descent. Loath to accord to the Jews any priority or excellence over the Aryan peoples, they belittle Moses to glorify Zoroaster, and with one hand drag down the Pentateuch while with the other they raise up the Avesta! " Sad enough, if true, that this accursed racial feeling, responsible for so many crimes, should not leave unmolested even these high levels where passion should have no place!

To enter these lists is not for those who, like the writer, have devoted themselves to the literature and thought of Muhammadan times, a field sufficiently vast and sufficiently unexplored to satisfy the most ambitious and the most industrious; preferable, moreover, in this, that here we stand on firm historic ground, and deal not with dates which oscillate over centuries and scenes which swing from Bactria to Atropatene. Yet all honour to those who so courageously labour in those arid fields of a remote antiquity, striving with infinite toil and tact to bring history out of legend, and order out of chaos! From such must we needs choose a guide in forming our views about that time and those events which, though strongly appealing to our curiosity, lie beyond the range of our own studies. Sanest and skilfullest of such guides, trained in

the profundity of the German school, yet gifted with something of that clearness as to the issues and alternatives of every question which gives so great a charm to French science, and adding to these that combination of fairness and decision with which we are wont to credit the Anglo-Saxon genius, is Professor A. V. Williams Jackson of Columbia University, New York. In a series of admirable papers published in the *Proceedings of the American Oriental Society*, the *American Journal of Philology*, &c, he has successively dealt with most of the difficult questions above alluded to, and with many other points connected with the history and doctrine of Zoroastrianism ; and has finally summed up his views in a work, at once most scholarly and most readable, entitled *Zoroaster, the Prophet of Ancient Iran* (New York, 1899). His principal conclusions are as follows :—

1. That Zoroaster was a perfectly historical personage, a member of the Median tribe of the Magi.

2. That he flourished about the middle of the seventh century before Christ—that is, during the dominion of the Medes and before the rise of the Achaemenian power—and died about B.c. 583, aged 77.

Professor
Williams Jackson's
conclusions.

3. That he was a native of Western Persia (Atropatene or Media), but that his first notable success was gained in Bactria (Balkh), where he succeeded in converting King Vishtaspa (Gushtasp).

4. That the Gathas (admittedly the oldest portion of the Avesta) reflect with fidelity the substance of his original preaching in Balkh.

5. That from Bactria the religion of Zoroaster spread rapidly throughout Persia, and was dominant in Pars (Persis proper) under the later Achaemenians, but that the date of its introduction into this part of Iran and its adoption by the people and rulers of Pars is uncertain.

Though these conclusions are not universally accepted, the evidence, in the opinion of the writer, is strongly in their favour, more particularly the evidence of native tradition in the period immediately succeeding the Muhammadan Conquest, which is derived mainly from the tradition current in

Sasanian times. And it may be remarked that since it is not the habit of writers of this class to understate facts, it

Reasonableness of these conclusions. appears unlikely that they should concur in assigning to Zoroaster too modern a date. As regards the Medic origin of Zoroastrianism, Geiger, who

is in full accord with both Darmesteter and Jackson on this point, remarks that though the language of the Avesta belongs, in his opinion, to the north-east of Persia (Bactria), the doctrines were, as all Parsi tradition indicates, introduced there by Medic *athravans*, or fire-priests, these *athravans* being uniformly represented as wanderers and missionaries in the north-east, whose home was in Ragha (Ray) and Media. Darmesteter,¹ in this connection, has called attention to the interesting fact that the word *Moghhu* (from which we get "Magian")

Noteworthy use of the term "Magian" in the Avesta. only occurs in one passage in the Avesta (Yasna xliv, 25), in the compound *Moghutbish*, "a hater" or "injurer of the Magi"; for it was as Magi of

Medic race, not as *athravans* of Zoroastrian faith, that they were exposed to the hatred and jealousy of the Persians proper, whose power succeeded that of the Medes, and whose supremacy was threatened from time to time in early Achaemenian days by Medic insurrections, notably by that of

The Pseudo-Smerdes.

Gaumda the Magian (*Magush*), the impersonator of Bardiya (Smerdes) the son of Cyrus, whom Darius slew, as he himself relates in his inscription at Behistun in the following words :—

" Says Darius the King: Thereafter was a man, a Magian, Gaumata by name; from Pisiyauvada did he arise, from a mountain there named Arakadris. In the month of Viyakhna, on the fourteenth day, then was it that he rose. Thus did he deceive the people [saying], ' I am Bardiya, son of Cyrus (*Kuru*), brother of Cambyzes (*Kambujiya*)! Thereupon all the people revolted against Cambyses, they went over to him, both Persia and Media, and likewise the other

¹ Translation of the Avesta (vol. i, pp. li-iii) in the Sacred Books of the East (Oxford, 1880)

provinces. He seized the Throne : in the month of Garmapada, on the ninth day, then was it that he seized the Throne. Thereupon Cambyses died, slain by his own hand.

" Says Darius the King : This Throne which Gaumata the Magian took away from Cambyses, this Throne was from of old in our Family.

Citation from
the inscription
of Darius.

So Gaumata the Magian took away from Cambyses both Persia and Media and the other provinces, he appropriated them to himself, he was king.

" Says Darius the King: There was no one, neither Persian, nor Mede, nor any one of our family, who could wrest the kingdom from this Gaumata the Magian : the people feared him, for many people did Bardiya slay who had known him formerly : for this cause did he slay the people, 'lest they should recognise me [and know] that I am not Bardiya the son of Cyrus.' None dared say aught concerning Gaumata the Magian until I came. Then I called on Ahuramazda for help: Ahuramazda brought me help : in the month of Bagayadish, on the tenth day, then it was that I with a few men slew that Gaumata the Magian, and those who were the foremost of his followers. In Media is a fortress named Cikathauvatish, in the district named Nicaya: there slew I him: I took from him the kingdom ; by the Grace of Ahuramazda I became King; Ahuramazda gave to me the kingdom.

" Says Darius the King : The kingdom which had been alienated from our house, that I restored : in its place did I establish it: as [it was] before, so I made it: the temples which Gaumata the Magian overthrew I restored to the people, the markets, and the flocks, and the dwellings according to clans which Gaumata the Magian had taken away from them. I established the people in their [former] places, Persia, Media, and the other provinces. Thus did I restore that which had been taken away as it was before : by the Grace of Ahuramazda have I done this, I laboured until I restored this our clan to its position as it was before, so, by the Grace of Ahuramazda, did I restore our clan as [it was] when Gaumata the Magian had not eaten it up.

" Says Darius the King : This is what I did when I became king."

Of the nine rebel kings whom, in nineteen battles, Darius defeated and took captive, Gaumata the Magian, who " made Persia (Pars) revolt," was the first but not the only Mede. Fravartish (Phraortes), who "made Media revolt," and was taken prisoner at Ray, mutilated, and finally crucified at Hamadan (Ecbatana, the old Medic capital), claimed to be "of

the race of Huvakhshatara " (Cyaxares, the third Medic king of Herodotus), and so did Chitratakhma, who rebelled in Sagar-tia, and was crucified at Arbil (Arbira). We find, Other Medic pretenders suppressed by Darius. it is true, Medic generals and soldiers fighting loyally for Darius, but nevertheless between the Mede and the Persian at this time such antagonism must have existed as between Scotch and English in the days of the Edwards. Almost the same in race and language—*δμόγλωττοι παρὰ μικρόν*—and probably the same in religion, the jealousy between Mede and Persian was at this time a powerful factor in history, and, as Darmesteter says, the Magian priest of Media, though respected and feared in his priestly capacity, and even held indispensable for the proper celebration of religious rites, was none the less liable to the hatred and enmity of the southern Persian.

As it is the aim of this book to trace the developments of post-Muhammadan literature and thought in Persia, or in other words the literary history of the last thousand years, Periods earlier than the Medic distinguishable in the history of the Persian race. with only such reference to earlier times as is requisite for a proper understanding of this subject, a more detailed discussion of the ancient times of which we have been speaking would be out of place. In this chapter we have gone back to the beginning of the Medic power (about B.C. 700), at which point the historical period may be said to commence ; but it is possible to distinguish, in the dim light of antiquity, still earlier periods, as has been done by Spiegel in his excellent *Eranische Alterthumskunde* (3 vols., Leipzig, 1871-78). Putting aside the vexed question of an original Aryan race spreading outwards in all directions from a common centre, it at least seems pretty certain that the Indians and Persians were once united in a common Indo-Iduiian race located somewhere in the Panjab. The pretty theory as to the causes which led to the cleavage of this community which was so ingeniously advanced by Max Muller¹

¹ See Max Muller's *Selected Essays* (London, 1881), vol. ii, pp. 132-134.

is, I believe, generally abandoned, but it is so attractive that it seems a pity to pass it over.

Briefly stated, this theory hinges upon the occurrence in the Vedas of the Hindus and the Avesta of the Zoroastrians of certain theological terms, which, though identical as regards etymology, are here diametrically opposed. *Deva* in Sanskrit means "bright," and he *Devas*, or "Bright ones," are the Hindu gods. In the Avesta, on the other hand, the *daevas* (Modern Persian *dlv*) are devils, and the Zoroastrian, in his confession of faith, solemnly declares : " I cease to be a worshipper of the *daevas*; " he renounces these *daevas*, *devas*, or Hindu gods, and becomes the servant of *Ahura Mazda*. Now it is a phonetic law that Persian *h* corresponds to Sanskrit *s* (e.g.. Hind, whence we get our name for India, represents Sind, that being naturally the part of India best known to the Persians), so the *Ahura* of the Avesta is equivalent to *asura* in Sanskrit, which means an evil spirit or devil. And so, from these two little words, Max Muller conjures up a most convincing picture of Zoroaster, the reformer and prophet, rising up amongst the still united Indo-Iranian community to protest against the degradation of a polytheistic nature-worship which had gradually replaced the purer conceptions of an earlier time ; emphasising his disapproval by making the gods of the system he laboured to overthrow the devils of his own ; and finally, with his faithful following, breaking away in an ancient *hijra* from the stiff-necked " worshippers of the *daevas* " to find a new home in that more Western land to which we now give the common name of Persia. This theory, it may be remarked, depended in great measure on the Bactrian hypothesis of Zoroaster's origin, which, based on Fargard I of the Vendidad, so long held sway, especially in Germany.

Concerning the composition of the Avesta we shall say something in another place ; for the present it is sufficient to state that the Vendidad is that portion of it which contains

the religious **laws** and the mythology—a sort of Zoroastrian Pentateuch—and that it is divided into twenty-two Fargards, or chapters. Of these the first describes the creations of Ahura Mazda, and the counter-creations of Anra Mainyu, the Evil Spirit (Ahriman), and includes an enumeration of the following sixteen lands created by the former: (1) "*The Airyana Vaejo, by the good river Daitya*" (a mythical region, identified in Sasanian times with the region of the River Araxes, that is, with the modern Azarbayjan); (2) *Sughda* (Sogdiana, Sughd); (3) *Moura* (Margiana, Merv); (4) *Bakhdi* (Bactria, Balkh); (5) *Nisaya* (?Nroia, the capital of Parthia, the modern Nasa in Khurasan, two days' journey from Sarakhs and five from Mery); (6) *Haroyu* (Herat); (7) *Vaekereta* (identified with Kabul in the Pahlawi commentary); (8) *Urva* (identified with Tus); (9) *Vehrkana* (Hyrcania, the modern Gurgan or Jurjan); (10) *Harahwaiti* (**Ἀράχωρος**), and (11) *Haetument*) both in the region of the Helmand river; (12) *Ragha* (Ray, 'Payai, near the modern capital, Tihiran); (13) *Chakhra* (?Shargh or Jargh of Ibn Khurdadbeh,¹ four parasangs from Bukhara); (14) "*the four-cornered Varena* (?Elburz region); (15) the *Hapta-Hendu*, or Seven Rivers (the Panjab); (16) "the land by the floods of the Ranha, where people live without a head" (i.e., a ruler).

In this list Geiger and some other scholars suppose that we have an itinerary of the migrations of the Irinians on their entry into Persia after the fission of the original Indo-Irdnian community, which was located in the region of the Pamirs, whence the first stream of migration flowed mainly westwards to Sughd, Mery, Balkh, Nasa, and Herat; another stream south and south-west to the Panjab, Kabul, and the Helmand region; while some adventurous spirits continued the westward migration as far as Gurgan and Ray. But it is doubtful if much stress can be laid on the order observed in this

¹ Ed. de Goeje (vol. vi of *Bibl. Geog. Arab.*), pp. 25, 203.

enumeration, that order being in any case almost indefensible (even excluding all doubtful identifications) on geographical grounds. And it seems at least possible that it may represent the conquests of the Zoroastrian faith rather than of the Iranian people, which hypothesis would be much strengthened if the identification of the Airyana Vaejo with Atropatene (Azarbayjan) could be established more surely : we should then have a fairly clear confirmation of that theory which we regarded as most probable : to wit, a religion having its source and home in the extreme north-west, but making its first conquests in the extreme north-east. Did we need any proof that a prophet is often without honour in his own country, the history of Islam would supply it, and Balkh may well have been the Medina of the Zoroastrian faith.

Another period, subsequent alike to the Indo-Iranian and the primitive Iranian epochs, has been distinguished and discussed with care and acumen by Spiegel,¹ who places its beginning about B.C 1000, namely, the period of Assyrian influence—an influence salient to all eyes in the sculptures and inscriptions of the Achaemenians, and discernible also, as Spiegel has shown, in many Persian myths, legends, and doctrines reflecting a Semitic rather than an Aryan tradition. It is a remarkable thing how great at all periods of history has been Semitic influence on Persia; Arabian in the late Sasanian and Muhammadan time ; Aramaic in earlier Sasanian and later Parthian days ; Assyrian at a yet more ancient epoch. And indeed this fact can scarcely be insisted upon too strongly; for the study of Persian has suffered from nothing so much as from the purely philological view which regards mere linguistic and racial affinities as infinitely more important and significant than the much deeper and more potent influences of literary and religious contact.

¹ *Eranische Alterthumskunde*, vol. i, pp. 446-485, "Beginn der eranischen Selbständigkeit. Die ältesten Berührungen mit den Semiten."

Greek is far more widely studied in England than Hebrew, but for the understanding of the motives and conduct of a Scottish Covenanter or English Puritan, not to mention Milton's verse, a knowledge of the Bible is at least as necessary as a familiarity with the Classics; and in Persia, where both literary and religious influences have generally been in large measure Semitic, the same holds good to a much greater extent. If, as an adjunct to my equipment for the study of Persian thought and literature, I were offered my choice between a thorough knowledge of the Semitic and the Aryan languages, I should, from this point of view alone, unhesitatingly choose the former. A good knowledge of the Aramaic languages is essential for the study of Pahlawi, and a fruitful investigation of the post-Muhammadan literature and thought of Persia is impossible without a wide acquaintance with Arabic books; while in both these fields a knowledge of Sanskrit is practically of very little use, and even in the interpretation of the Avesta it must be employed with some reserve and due regard to the Pahlawi tradition.

In concluding this introductory chapter it may be well to recapitulate the periods in Persian history of which

we have spoken.

- I. The Indo-Iranian period.
 - II The early Iranian period.
 - III. The period of Assyrian influence (B.C. 1000).¹
 - IV. The Medic period (B.C. 700).
 - V. The Old Persian (Achaemenian) period (B.C. 550).
 - VI. Interregnum, from the Invasion of Alexander to the Sasanian Restoration (B.C. 330—A.D. 226).
 - VII. The Sasanian period (A.D. 226-652).
 - VIII. The Muhammadan period, extending from the fall of the Sasanian Dynasty to the present day.
- It is with the last of these periods that we are principally

² Or even earlier. See p. 20, *supra*.

concerned, and, as will in due time appear, it comprises numerous important subdivisions. Before approaching it, however, something more remains to be said of the older Persian literature and its discovery, and sundry other matters germane thereto, which will be discussed in the next chapter.

CHAPTER II

THE DISCOVERY AND INTERPRETATION OF THE INSCRIPTIONS
AND DOCUMENTS OF ANCIENT PERSIA, WITH OTHER
PHILOLOGICAL MATTER.

T H E language of Modern, that is to say of Post-Muham-
madan, Persia, was naturally, for practical reasons, an object of
interest and study in Europe long before any
serious attempt was made to solve the enigmas
presented by the three ancient languages of which
this chapter will briefly trace the discovery and
decipherment: to wit, the *Old Persian* of the Achsemenian
inscriptions, the *Avestic* idiom, and the *Pahlawi* of Sasanian
times. The study of Modern Persian, again, was preceded
by that of Arabic; which, as the vehicle whereby the
Philosophy of the Greeks, especially of Aristotle, first
became clearly known to Western Europe, commanded
in a far higher degree the attention and interest of men
of learning. The first translations from the Arabic into
European languages were made about the be-
ginning of the twelfth century of our era by
Jews and Moors converted to Christianity,¹ who were

¹ A great deal of interesting information concerning the early Oriental-
ists is contained in the *Gallia Orientalis* of Paul Colomes (*Opera*, Hamburg,
1709, pp. 1-272), and also in the excellent *Esquisse Historique* prefixed by
Gustave Dugat to his useful *Histoire des Orientalistes de l'Europe du XII
au XIX, siecle* (Paris, 1868), to which I am largely indebted in this portion

soon followed by native Europeans, such as Gerard of Cremona (b. A.D. 1114)⁵ Albertus Magnus (b. A.D. 1193), who, dressed as an Arab, expounded at Paris the teachings of Aristotle from the works of al-Faribi, Ibn Sina (Avicenna), and al-Ghazzali; and Michael Scot, who appears to have studied Arabic at Toledo in A.D. 1217. Roger Bacon

Thirteenth
century.

and Raymond Lull (thirteenth century) also called attention to the importance, for philosophic and scientific purposes, of a study of Oriental languages. In

Fourteenth
century.

A.D. 1311-1312 it was ordained by Pope Clement the Fifth that Professorships of Hebrew, Chaldean, and Arabic should be established at Rome, Paris, Bologna, Oxford and Salamanca, whose teaching, however, was soon afterwards (A.D. 1325) placed by the Church under a rigorous supervision, lest it should tend to endanger Christian orthodoxy. At each of these five seats of learning there were to be two professors, paid by the State or the Church, who were to make faithful Latin translations of the principal works written in these languages, and to train their pupils to speak them sufficiently well for missionary purposes.

It does not appear, however, that these laudable proposals met at first with any great measure of success, or that much was actually done to further the study of Arabic until the establishment of the College de France in A.D. 1530 by Francis the Fifth. Armegand of Montpellier¹ had already, in A.D. 1274, translated portions of the works of Avicenna and Averroes into Latin, but that remarkable scholar and traveller, Guillaume Postel² may,

Sixteenth
century.

of my subject. See also M. Jourdain's *Recherches critiques sur l'age et l'origine des traductions latines d'Aristote et sur les commentaries grecs ou arabes employes par les docteurs scholastiques*.

¹ This is the first biography given in the *Gallia Orientalis*. " Gallorum primus," says the author, " quod sciam, qui Linguas Orientales ab anno millesimo ctycentesimo excoluerit, fuit Armegandus Blasii, Doctor Medicus, regnante Philippo, Ludovici cognomine Sancti filio."

² He died in 1581 at the age of 95 or 96. See *Gallia Orientalis*, pp. 59-66.

ARABIC CHAIRS FOUNDED

according to M. Dugat, be called " the first French Orientalist "; and he, apparently, was the first who caused Arabic types to be cut. In A.D. 1587 Henry the Third founded an Arabic chair at the College de France, and a few years subsequently Savary de Breves, who is said to have had a fine taste in Oriental literature, and who later brought to Paris excellent founts of type which he had caused to be engraved in the East, was appointed French Ambassador at Constantinople. On his death these founts of type (Arabic, Syriac, Persian, Armenian, and Æthiopic), together with his Arabic, Turkish, Persian, and Syriac MSS., were bought by Louis the Thirteenth (assisted financially by the clergy), and passed into the possession of the Imprimerie Royale.

The full development of Oriental studies in Europe, however, may be said to date from the seventeenth century, since which epoch progress has been steady and continuous. This century saw, for example, in England the establishment, by Sir Thomas Adams and Archbishop Laud respectively, of Arabic chairs at both Cambridge (A.D. 1632) and Oxford (A.D. 1636), of which the latter was filled by the illustrious Pococke and the former by the equally illustrious Abraham Wheelock, who, with the teaching of Arabic and Anglo-Saxon, combined the function of University Librarian. Amongst his pupils was that distinguished scholar, Thomas Hyde, afterwards Professor of both the Hebrew and the Arabic languages at Oxford, whose work on the *History of the Religion of the Ancient Persians, Parthians, and Medes*, published in 1700, little more than a year before his death,¹ may be taken as representing the high-water-mark of knowledge on this subject at the close of the seventeenth century and, indeed,

Seventeenth
century.

Thomas Hyde.

¹ He died on February 18, 1702, having resigned the Librarianship of the Bodleian in April, 1701. The second edition of his *Veterum Persarum . . . Religionis Historia*, published in 1760, is that which reference is here made.

Until the publication of Anquetil du Perron's epoch-making memoirs (1763-1771), of which we shall shortly have to speak. A brief statement, therefore, of Hyde's views may appropriately form the starting-point of this survey ; for his industry, his scholarship, and his linguistic attainments, added to the facilities which he enjoyed as Librarian of the Bodleian, rendered his work as complete and comprehensive an account of the ancient Persian religion as was possible with the materials then available. Hyde not only used the works of his predecessors, such as Barnaby de Brisson's *De Regio Persarum Principatu Libri Tres* (Paris, 1606)—a book based entirely on the statements of Greek and Latin authors,—Henry Lord's *Religion of the Parsees* ¹ (1630), Sanson's *De hodierno statu Persia* (1683), and the narratives of the travellers Pedro Texeira (1604), Pere Gabriel de Chinon (1608-1650), Tavernier (1629-1675), Olearius (1637-1638), Thevenot (1664-1667), Chardin (1665-1677), Petits de la Croix (1674-1676), and Samuel Flower (1667), but also a number of Arabic, Persian, Turkish, Hebrew, and Syriac manuscripts, which he manipulated with a skill deserving of the highest praise; and the knowledge thus acquired was supplemented in some cases by information verbally obtained by his friends in India from the Parsees. His work, in short, is a monument of erudition, most remarkable when we consider the time at which it was written and the few facilities then existing for research of this kind ; and in some cases his acumen anticipated discoveries not confirmed till a much later date. Thus he recognised the name of Media in

The full title of this tract (for it comprises but 53 pages) is *The Religion of the Persees, as it was Compiled from a Booke of theirs, containing the Forme of their Worshipp, written in the Persian Character, and by them called their Zundavastaw, wherein is shewed the Superstitious Ceremonies used amongst them, more especially their Idolatrous Worshipp of Fire.* The author's information was derived from a Parsi of Surat " whose long employment, in the Companies service, had brought him to a mediocrity in the English tongue." The book contains but meagre information concerning the oroastrian tenets, and indicates not even an indirect knowledge of the contents of the Avesta.

the Arabic *Mah* prefixed to certain place-names (p. 424), was aware of the existence amongst the Zoroastrians of Persia of a peculiar "*gabri*" dialect (pp. 364, 429), knew the Hurufi sect as a revived form of Manichseanism (p. 283), made free use of the rare Arabic translation of the *Shah-nama* of al-Bundari, and was acquainted with the so-called Zend character, and with such later Parsi writings as the *Zaratusht-nama*, the *Sad-dar* (of which he gives a complete Latin translation), and the Persian translation of the *Book of Arda Viraf*.

On the other hand he had no knowledge whatever of the Avestic or Pahlawi languages, entirely misunderstood the meaning of the term *Zend Avesta* or *Avesta va Zend*) and endeavoured to prove that the Old Persian inscriptions were not writing at all, but mere architectural ornamentation. Anquetil du Perron at the end of his *Discours Priliminaire* (pp. cccclxxxix-ccccxcviii) is at some pains to prove the first of these statements, and points out that throughout Hyde's work the Zend character merely serves to cloak Persian sentences cited from late Parsi writings. But in fact proof is unnecessary, for Hyde had in his own possession a MS. of part of the Avesta, and was also acquainted with the MS. of the *Yasna* presented to Emmanuel College, Cambridge, by an English merchant named Moody about the middle of the seventeenth century;² and is quite certain that he would

Hyde had no knowledge of any one of the three ancient languages of

² It would appear from a remark of Sir W. Jones in the *Lettre a Monsieur A . . . du P . . .* hereafter cited (p. 602), that Dr. Hyde caused the "Zend" characters employed in his book to be cast for his own use. The fount is an excellent one—much more artistic than that used in the latest edition of the *Avesta* (Geldner's).

² See Hyde, *op. laud.*) p. 344 *ad calc.* The Emmanuel MS. now bears the class-mark 5. 2. 6., and contains the following inscription in English: "This Booke is called Ejessney, written in the language Jenwista, and containes ye Religion of ye Antient Parsyes." A note in German on a loose sheet of paper describes it as a copy of the *Yasna*, not quite complete, ending ch. 1. 2 (Westergaard), and lacking the last quarter; not dated; probably middle of the seventeenth century. Though not old, it is accu-

have made use of documents so important for his purpose had he been able to read them. Now since he was conversant with the character in which they were written, and even, as we have seen, employed it in his work, it is evident that he could make nothing whatever of the language. As regards the title of the sacred book of the Zoroastrians, he regarded it as "exotic and hybrid," supposing that it consisted of the Arabic word *Zend* (an Implement for kindling fire), and the Hebrew-Chaldean *eshta*, "fire" (*op. laud.*, pp. 335 *et seqq.*). Lastly, he regarded the Old Persian inscriptions as trifles, hardly worthy of attention but for the curiosity already aroused by them (p. 546), and declared in the most positive fashion that they were not Old Persian (p. 547), and, indeed, not inscriptions at all, but mere fanciful designs of the original architect (pp. 556-557). In the adjacent Pahlawi inscriptions of Naqsh-i-Rajab he equally refuses to recognise any form of Persian script. "As regards Nos. 1 and 4" (the Sasanian Pahlawi), he says, "I assert that these characters cannot be ancient Persian, which are perceived, in their ancient books, which I myself possess, to differ from them *toto coelo*" (p. 548.)

Such, then, was the state of knowledge in 1754. No further advance had been made towards the understanding of the Avesta, though several new MSS. had been brought to England : to wit, a MS. of the *Vendidad* obtained from the Parsis of India by George Bouchier (or Bowcher) in 1718, conveyed to England by Richard Cobbe in 1723, and presented to the Bodleian, where it is now preserved (BODL. OR. 321) ; and two MSS. of the *Yasna* bought at Surat by Frazer, who also endeavoured, but vainly, to induce the Zoroastrian priests to teach him the Avestic and Pahlawi languages. But in the

Anquetil du
Perron (1754~
1771).

rately written from a good MS. It agrees with the best MSS., but not entirely with any ; most closely with K. 11. The orthography is very consistent, and it is important for critical purposes, being an independent codex.

year above mentioned a facsimile of four leaves of the Bodleian MS. of the *Vendidad* fell into the hands of a young Frenchman, Anquetil du Perron, then not much more than twenty years of age; and he, with an impulsiveness and devotion to science truly Gallic, at once resolved to win for his country the glory of wresting from the suspicious priesthood who guarded them the keys to these hidden secrets of an old-world faith, and of laying before the learned world a complete account of the Zoroastrian doctrines, based, not on the statements of non-Zoroastrian or even modern Parsi writers, but on the actual testimony of the ancient Scriptures themselves. So eager was his haste that, though assured of help and pecuniary assistance in his projected journey to India, his impatience to begin his work impelled him to enlist as a common soldier of the French East India Company; so firm was his purpose and so steadfast his resolve that, in face of every kind of difficulty and discouragement, suffering, sickness, opposition, perils by sea and perils of war, he persevered for seven years and a half, until, on March 15, 1762, having at length regained Paris after his long and adventurous exile, he deposited his precious manuscripts, the fruits of his incredible labours, in the *Bibliothèque du Roi*. Yet still nine years' laborious, but now tranquil, work lay before him ere, in 1771, he was able to offer to the world the assured and final outcome of his endeavour—a great work in three volumes bearing the following cumbrous title: *Zend-Avesta, ouvrage de Zoroastre, contenant les idées théologiques, physiques, et morales de ce législateur, les cirimonies du culte religieux qu'il a itabli, et plusieurs traits importants relatifs a l'ancienne histoire des Perses, traduit en Français sur l'original Zend avec des Remarques: et accompagni de plusieurs traitis propres a eclaircir les matieres qui en sont l'objet* This work was in the fullest sense of the word epoch-making, or, as the Germans say, "bahn-brechend." Anquetil completely accomplished the great task he had set himself. Much remained to be done in detail by his successors, many inaccuracies are

naturally to be found in his work ;¹ yet we may fairly say that to him in chief belongs the merit of those discoveries as to the religion and language of the ancient Zoroastrians from which so many important results, literary, philological, ethnological, and philosophical, have since been drawn.

Of the details of Anquetil's journey this is hardly the place to speak. They are narrated with great minuteness in the first volume of his work (pp. i-ccccxxviii), and include, in truth, a mass of purely personal details which might, perhaps, as well have been omitted, and which certainly rendered the book an easier target for the derision to which it was destined shortly to be exposed. Briefly, Anquetil quitted Paris with his "petit equipage" (containing, except for a few books, only two shirts, two handkerchiefs and a pair of socks), without the knowledge or any one except his brother, who was bound to secrecy, on November 7, 1754, and marched with his company—men little to his taste, whom he speaks of as "ces brutaux"—to L'Orient, which he reached on the 16th. Here he was informed that the King had been graciously pleased to grant him an allowance of five hundred livres, and he was further accorded a first-class passage to India. Sailing from L'Orient on February 7, 1755, he reached Pondichery on August 9th of the same year, and there was hospitably received by M. Goupil, the Commandant of the troops. He at once set himself to learn Persian, which afterwards served as the means of communication between himself and the Zoroastrian priests. More than three years elapsed, however, ere he reached Surat (May 1, 1758), shortly before it passed into the hands of the English (March, 1759). This long delay in the prosecution of his plan was caused, apparently, partly by his insatiable curiosity as to the antiquities, religions, customs, and languages of India (for his original scheme extended far beyond what

¹ For an example, see Haug's *Essays on the Parsis*, edited by West (third edition, London, 1884), p. 24.

immediately concerned the Zoroastrian religion), partly by the political complications of that time. After numerous adventures, however, he ultimately arrived at Surat on the date indicated above. He at once put himself in relation with two Parsi *dasturs*, or priests, named Darab and Ka'us, from whom, three months later, he received, after many vexatious delays and attempts at extortion and evasion, a professedly complete copy of the Vendidad. Fully aware of the necessity for caution, he succeeded in borrowing from another *dastur*, Manuchihrji (who, owing to religious differences, was not on terms of intercourse with Darab and Ka'us) another good and ancient manuscript of the same work ; and, on collating this with the other, he was not long in discovering that his two *dasturs* had deliberately supplied him with a defective copy. They, on being convicted of this fraud, became at once more communicative, and less disposed to attempt any further imposition, and furnished him with other works, such as the *Persian Story of Sanjan* (of which Anquetil gives an abstract at pp. cccxviii-cccxxiv of his work), an account of the descent of all copies of the Vendidad and its Pahlawi commentary preserved in India from a Persian original brought thither from Sistan by a *dastur* named Ardashir about the fourteenth century of our era, and a further account of the relations maintained from time to time by the Zoroastrians of Persia with those of India.

On March 24, 1759, Anquetil completed his translation, of the Pahlawi-Persian vocabulary, and six days later began the translation of the Vendidad, which, together with Anquetil's work. the collation of the two MSS., he finished on June 16th of the same year. A severe illness, followed by a savage attack by a compatriot, interrupted his work for five months, and it was not till November 20th that he was able to continue his labours with the help of the *dastur* Darab. During this time he received much help and friendly protection from the English, notably from Mr. Spencer, of

whom he speaks in the highest terms (p. cccxvi), and Mr Erskine. Having completed the translation of the *Yasna*, *Vispered*, and *Vendidad*, the Pahlawi *Bundahish*, the *Si-ruza*, *Rivayats*, &c, and visited the sacred fire in its temple, and the *dakhmas*, or " towers of silence," Anquetil, again attacked by illness, and fearful of risking the loss of the precious harvest of his labours, resolved to renounce his further projects of travel, which included a journey to China. Again assisted by the English, to whom, notwithstanding the state of war which existed between his country and theirs, he did not fear to appeal, knowing them, as he says, " genereux quand on les prend par un certain coté " (p. ccccxix), he sailed from Surat to Bombay, where, after, a sojourn of more than a month, he shipped himself and his precious manuscripts (180 in number, enumerated in detail at pp. dxxix-dxli of the first volume of his work) on board the *Bristol* on April 28, 1761, and arrived at Portsmouth on November 17th of the same year. There he was compelled, greatly to his displeasure, to leave his manuscripts in the custom-house, while he himself was sent with other French prisoners to Wickham. As, however, he was not a prisoner of war (being, indeed, under English protection), permission was soon accorded him to return to France ; but, eagerly as he desired to see his native country after so long an absence, and, above all, to secure the safety of those precious and hardly-won documents which still chiefly occupied his thoughts, he would not quit this country without a brief visit to Oxford, and a hasty inspection of the Avestic manuscripts there preserved. "Je declarai net," he says (p. cccliv), " que je ne quitterais pas l'Angleterre sans avoir vu Oxford, puis qu'on m'y avait retenu prisonnier contre le droit des gens. Le desir de comparer mes manuscrits avec ceux de cette celebre Universite n'avait pas peu ajoute aux raisons qui m'avaient comme force de prendre, pour revenir en Europe, la voie Anglaise." Well furnished with letters of introduction, he arrived at Oxford on January 17, 1762,

SIR WILLIAM JONES

whence, after a stay of two days, he returned, by way of Wickham, Portsmouth, and London, to Gravesend, where he embarked for Ostend on February 14th. He finally reached Paris on March 14, 1762, and on the following day at length deposited his manuscripts at the *Bibliothèque du Roi*.

The appearance of Anquetil's work in 1771 was far from at once convincing the whole learned world of the great

Reception of
Anquetil du
Perron's work.

services which he had rendered to science. In place of the wisdom expected from a sage like Zoroaster, who, even in classical times, enjoyed so great a reputation for profound philosophic thought, the curious and the learned were confronted with what appeared to them to be a farrago of puerile fables, tedious formulae, wearisome repetitions, and grotesque prescriptions. The

Sir William
Jones.

general disappointment (which, indeed, Anquetil had himself foreseen and foretold, pp. i-ii), found its most ferocious expression in the famous letter of Sir William Jones, at that time a young graduate of Oxford.¹ This letter, written in French on the model of Voltaire, will be found at the end of the fourth volume (pp. 583-613) of his works (London, 1799). It was penned in 1771, the year in which Anquetil's work appeared, and is equally remarkable for the vigour and grace of its style, and the deplorable violence and injustice of its contents. The writer's fastidious taste was offended by Anquetil's prolixity and lack of style ; while his anger was kindled by the somewhat egotistic strain which, it must be admitted, runs through the narrative portion of his work, and by certain of his reflections on the English in general and the learned doctors of Oxford in particular ; and he suffered himself to be so blinded by these sentiments that he not only overwhelmed Anquetil with satire and invective which are not always in the best

¹ He was at this time about twenty-five years of age, a Fellow of University College, and a B.A. of three years' standing. He died in 1794, at the age of forty-eight.

taste, but absolutely refused to recognise the immense importance, and even the reality, of discoveries which might have condoned far more serious shortcomings. As Darmesteter happily puts it, "the Zend-Avesta suffered for the fault of its introducer, Zoroaster for Anquetil."

As a matter of fact Anquetil's remarks about the English are (when we remember the circumstances under which he wrote, in time of war, when he had seen his nation worsted by ours, and had himself been held captive, not being a prisoner of war, within our borders) extremely fair and moderate, nay, most gratifying, on the whole, to our *amour propre*, as may be seen in his glowing eulogy of Mr. Spencer (p. cccxvi), his remarks on the generosity of the English towards the unfortunate of even a hostile nation (p. cccxxxi), his recognition of their hospitality and delicacy of feeling (pp. cccxxxvii-xxxix), and the like ; while his railleries at one or two of the Oxford doctors—at the "mechant bonnet gras a trois cornes" of Dr. Swinton, the ill-judged pleasantry of Dr. Hunt, the haughty and magisterial bearing of Dr. Barton—are in reality very harmless, and quite devoid of malice. In short, there is nothing in Anquetil's book to justify Sir William Jones's bitter irony and ferocious invective, much less his attempt to deny the great services rendered to science by the object of his attack, and to extinguish the new-born light destined to illuminate in so unexpected a manner so many problems of history, philology, and comparative theology. Here are a few specimens sufficient to illustrate the general tone of his letter :—

"Ne soyez point surpris, Monsieur, de recevoir cette lettre d'un inconnu, qui aime les vrais talens, et qui sait apprecier les vôtres.

Specimens of
Sir W. Jones's
letter
to Anquetil. "Souffrez qu'on vous felicite de vos heureuses decouvertes. Vous avez souvent prodigue votre precieuse vie; vous avez franchi des mers orageuses, des montagnes remplies de tigres; vous avez fletri votre teint, que vous nous dites, avec autant d'elegance que de modestie, avoir ete compose

de lis et de roses ; vous avez essayé des maux encore plus cruels ; et tout cela uniquement pour le bien de la littérature, et de ceux qui ont le rare bonheur de vous ressembler.

"Vous avez appris deux langues anciennes, que l'Europe entière ignorait ; vous avez rapporté en France le fruit de vos travaux, les livres du célèbre Zoroastre ; vous avez charmé le public par votre agréable traduction de cet ouvrage ; et vous avez atteint le comble de votre ambition, on plutôt l'objet de vos ardens desirs ; vous êtes Membre de l'Académie des Inscriptions.

" Nous respectons, comme nous le devons, cette illustre et savante Académie ; mais vous méritez, ce nous semble, un titre plus distingué. . . . Plus grand voyageur que Cadmus, vous avez rapporté, comme lui, de nouveaux caractères, et de nouveaux dieux. . . . A parler franchement, ou doit vous faire pour le moins l'Archimage, ou grand prêtre des Guebres, d'autant plus que, dans ce nouveau poste, vous auriez l'occasion de mettre un peu plus de *feu* dans vos écrits.

" Voyageur, Savant, Antiquaire, Heros, *Libelliste*, quels titres ne méritez-vous pas ? . . .

" Permettez maintenant, Monsieur, qu'on vous dise sérieusement ce que des gens de lettres pensent de votre entreprise, de vos voyages, de vos trois gros volumes, et de votre savoir que vous vantez avec si peu de réserve. . . . On doit aimer le vrai savoir : mais toutes choses ne valent pas la peine d'être suées.

" Socrate disait, en voyant l'étalage d'un bijoutier, ' De combien de choses je n'ai pas besoin ! ' On peut de même s'écrier, en contemplant les ouvrages de nos érudits, Combien de connaissances il m'importe peu d'acquiescer !

" Si vous aviez fait cette dernière réflexion, vous n'auriez pas affronté la mort pour nous procurer des lumières inutiles. . . .

" Si ces raisonnemens, Monsieur, ne portent pas absolument à faux, il en résulte que votre objet était ni *beau* ni *important* ; que l'Europe éclairée n'avait nul besoin de votre Zende Vasta ; que vous l'avez traduit à pure perte ; et que vous avez prodigué inutilement pendant dix-huit ans un temps qui devait vous être précieux. . . . Quelle petite gloire que de savoir ce que personne ne sait, et n'a que faire de savoir ! . . . On veut même croire que vous avez dans la tête plus de mots Zendes, c'est-à-dire, plus de mots durs, trainants, barbares, que tous les savans de l'Europe. Ne savez-vous pas que les langues n'ont aucune valeur intrinsèque ? . . . D'ailleurs, êtes-vous bien sûr que vous possédez les anciennes langues de la Perse ? . . . On ne saura jamais, ne vous en déplaise, les anciens dialectes de la Perse, tandis qu'ils n'existent que dans les pré-

tendus livres de Zoroastre, qui d'ailleurs sont remplis de repetitions inutiles.

" 'Mais,' direz vous,' me soupconne-t-on d'avoir voulu tromper le public ?' Non, Monsieur, *on ne dit pas cela*. Vous vous etes trompe vous-meme. . . .

"Jusqu'ici, Monsieur, nous n'avons d'autre plainte envers vous, que celle de nous avoir endormis ; ce qui n'est pas certainement un crime en soi-meme : quant a ceux qui craignent ces vapeurs soporifiques, il est facile ou de ne pas lire un livre qui les donne, ou de l'oublier ; le remede est aussi naturel que la precaution est bonne.

"On ne dira rien de votre style dur, bas, inelegant, souvent ampoule, rarement conforme au sujet, et jamais agreable. . . . Nous aurons plus a dire sur la fin de votre discours. . . . Quelle punition votre Zoroastre ordonne-t-il pour les ingrats? Combien *d'urine de bæuf* sont ils obliges d'avalier ? On vous conseille, Monsieur, de prendre une dose de cette sainte et purifiante liqueur. . . .

" Nous avons, Monsieur, l'honneur de connaitre le Docteur Hunt, et nous faisons gloire de le respecter. Il est incapable de tromper qui que ce soit. // *ne nous a jamais dit*, il n'a pu vous dire, qu'il entendait les langues anciennes de la Perse. Il est persuade, aussi bien que nous, que personne ne les sait, et ne les saura jamais, a moins qu'on ne recouvre toutes les histoires, les poemes, et les ouvrages de religion, que le Calif e Omar et ses generaux chercherent a detruire avec tant d'acharnement; ce qui rend inutile la peine de courir le monde aux depens de l'eclat d'un *visage fleuri*. Il ne regrette pas a la verite son ignorance de ces langues ; il en est assez dedommage par sa rare connaissance du Persan moderne, la langue des Sadi, des Cashefi, des Nezamis, dans les livres desquels on ne trouve ni le Barsom, ni le Lingam, ni des observances ridicules, ni des idees fantastiques, mais beaucoup de reflexions piquantes contre l'ingratitude et la faussete. . . .

"Vous triomphez, Monsieur, de ce que le Docteur Hyde ne savait pas les langues anciennes de la Perse ; et vous ne dites rien de nouveau. . . . Vous reprenez le Docteur Hyde de ce qu'il ignorait que les cinq *gahs* signifiassent les cinq parties du jour; de ce qu'il dit *iou* au lieu de *ton* ; et de ce qu'il ne savait pas qu' *Aherman*, le nom de votre diable Persan, etait une abreviation du mot melodieux *Enghri meniosch* ; car vous savez qu'en changeant *Enghri* en *Aher* et *meniosch* en *man* on fait *Aherman*. De la meme maniere on peut faire le mot *diable* en changeant *Enghri* en *di*, et *menoisch* en *able*."

Sir William Jones then proceeds to make merry at the expense of Anquetil's translation—no difficult feat even with a better rendering of a work containing so much that is to us grotesque and puerile, as must, in some degree, be the case with what is produced by any people in its infancy—and thus sums up his reasonings:—

" Ou Zoroastre n'avait pas le sens commun, ou il n'ecrivit pas le livre que vous luiattribuez ; s'il n'avait pas le sens commun, il fallait le laisser dans la foule, et dans l'obscurite ; s'il n'ecrivit pas ce livre, il etait impudent de le publier sous son nom. Ainsi, ou vous avez insulte le gout du public en lui presentant des sottises, ou vous l'avez trompe en lui debitant des faussetes : et de chaque cote vous meritez son mepris."

Sir William Jones's letter, though it served to mar Anquetil du Perron's legitimate triumph, and (which was more serious) to blind a certain number of scholars and men of letters to the real importance of his discoveries, has now only a historic interest. Time, which has so fully vindicated the latter that no competent judge now fails to recognise the merit of his work, also took its revenge on the former; and he who strained at the gnat of the *Zend Avesta* was destined to swallow the camel of the *Desatir*—one of the most impudent forgeries ever perpetrated. With the original of this egregious work he was, indeed, unacquainted, for the only known manuscript of it, though brought from Persia to India by Mulla Ka'us about the year 1773, was only published by the son of the purchaser, Mulla Firuz, in 1818 ;¹ his knowledge or

Anquetil
avenged.

¹ Its full title is : *The Desalit or Sacred Writings of the Ancient Persian Prophets; in the Original Tongue; together with the Ancient Persian Version and Commentary of the Fifth Sasan; carefully published by Mulla Firuz bin Kaus, who has subjoined a copious Glossary of the Obsolete and Technical Persian Terms: to which is added an English Translation of the Dcsatit and Commentary. In two volumes.* (Bombay, 1818.) Particulars concerning the unique manuscript will be found at p. vii of the Preface to the second volume. The *Desatir* was examined, and the futility of its pretensions exposed, by de Sacy in the *Journal des Savants* (pp. 16-31 and

its contents was derived from a curious but quite modern Persian book (to which, however, it was his incontestable merit first to direct attention in Europe) entitled the *Dabistdn-i-Madhdhib* or "School of Sects," a treatise composed in India about the middle of the seventeenth century of our era.¹ Of this work Sir William Jones spoke in 1789² in the following terms of exaggerated eulogy :—

"A fortunate discovery, for which I was first indebted to Mir Muhammed Husain, one of the most intelligent Muselmans in India, has at once dissipated the cloud, and cast a gleam of light on the primeval history of Iran and of the human race, of which I had long despaired, and which could hardly have dawned from any other quarter.

Sir W. Jones's credulity equals his scepticism, and is as misplaced.

"This rare and interesting tract on *twelve different religions*, entitled the *Dabistdn*, and composed by a Mohammedan traveller, a native of *Cashmir*, named Mohsan, but distinguished by the assumed surname of Fani, or *Perishable*, begins with a wonderfully curious chapter on the religion of Hushang, which was long anterior to that of Zeratusht, but had continued to be secretly professed by many learned Persians even to the author's time ; and several of the most eminent of them, dissenting in many points from the *Gabrs*, and persecuted by the ruling powers of their country, had retired to India; where they compiled a number of books, now extremely scarce, which Mohsan had perused, and with the writers of which, or

Sir W. Jones's exaggerated idea of the value of the *Desatir* and *Dabistan*.

67-79) for January-February, 1821. See also Nos. 6, 12, 13, 18, and 20 of the *Heidelberger Jahrbucher der Litteratur* for 1823 (vol. i), by H. E. G. Paulus ; and Erskine in vol. ii. of the *Transactions of the Bombay Literary Society*. The most probable theory of its origin is that suggested by Stanislas Guyard on pp. 61-62 of the separate reprint of his admirable article *Un Grand Maitre des Assassins au temps de Saladin*, published in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1877, viz., that it was the work, and contains the doctrines, of the Isma'ilis.

¹ See pp. 141-142 of Rieu's *Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the British Museum*. There are several Oriental editions of the text, and an English translation by Shea and Troyer, printed at Paris in 1843 for the Oriental Translation Fund.

² In his Sixth Anniversary Discourse on the Persians, delivered at a meeting of the Asiatic Society, in Calcutta, on February 19, 1789 (*Works*, vol. i, pp. 73-94).

with many of them, he had contracted an intimate friendship : from them he learned that a powerful monarchy had been established for ages in Iran before the accession of Cayumers, that it was called the Mahabadian, for a reason which will soon be mentioned, and **that** many princes, of whom seven or eight only are named in the *Dabistan*, and among them Mahbul or Maha Beli, had raised their empire to the zenith of human glory. If we can rely on this evidence, which to me appears unexceptionable, the Iranian monarchy must have been the oldest in the world ; but it will remain dubious to which of the stocks, *Hindu*, *Arabian*, or *Tartar*, the first Kings of Iran belonged, or whether they sprang from a *fourth* race, distinct from any of the others ; and these are questions which we shall be able, I imagine, to answer precisely when we have carefully inquired into the *languages* and *letters*, *religion* and *philosophy*, and incidentally into the *arts* and *sciences*, of the ancient Persians.

" In the new and important remarks, which I am going to offer, on the ancient *languages* and *characters*, of Iran, I am sensible, that you must give me credit for many assertions, which on this occasion it is impossible to prove ; for I should ill deserve your indulgent attention, if I were to abuse it by repeating a dry list of detached words, and presenting you with a vocabulary instead of a dissertation ; but, since I have no system to maintain, and have not suffered imagination to delude my judgment, since I have habituated myself to form opinions of men and things from *evidence*, which is the only solid basis of *civil*, as experiment is of *natural*, knowledge ; and since I have maturely considered the questions which I mean to discuss ; you will not, I am persuaded, suspect my testimony, or think I go too far, when I assure you, that I will assert nothing positively, which I am not able satisfactorily to demonstrate."

Sir W. Jones's
notions about
the history of
Ancient Persia.

It will be seen from the above citation that Sir William Jones was just as positive in his affirmations as in his negations, and too often equally unfortunate in both. He confidently, and " without fear of contradiction," identified Cyrus with the entirely legendary Kay-Khusraw of the Persian Epic (the Kawa Husrawa or Husrawarih of the Avesta), and the legendary Pishdadi kings with the Assyrians ; derived the name of Cambyses (the Kambujiya of the Old Persian inscriptions) from the Modern Persian Kam-bakhsh, "granting desires," which he regarded as

Sir W. Jones's
blunders.

"a title rather than a name," and Xerxes (the *Khshayarsha* of the inscriptions) from *Shiru'l* (and this after his scornful rejection of Anquetil's correct derivation of *Ahriman* from *Ahra Mainyush* !); continued to see "strong reasons to doubt the existence of genuine books in Zend or Pahlawi," on the ground that "the well-informed author of the *Dabistdn* affirms the work of Zeratusth to have been lost, and its place supplied by a recent compilation ;" held "that the oldest discoverable languages of Persia were *Chaldaick* and *Sanscrit*[^] and that, when they had ceased to be vernacular, the *Pahlawi* and *Zend* were deduced from them respectively, and the *Pdrsl* either from the *Zend*, or immediately from the dialect of the Brahmins ;" believed (with the Persians) that Jamshid (the *Yima* of the Avesta and *Tama* of the Hindu mythology, a shadowy personality belonging to the common Indo-Iranian legend) built Persepolis, and that the Achaemenian inscriptions there visible "if really alphabetical, were probably secret and sacerdotal, or a mere cypher, perhaps, of which the priests only had the key" ; and finally accepted the absurd *Desatir*—"a sacred book in a heavenly language" (which proves, in fact, to be no language at all, but mere gibberish, slavishly modelled on the ordinary Persian in which the "Commentary" is written)—as an ancient historical document of capital importance, destined to throw an entirely new light on the earliest history of the Aryan people, and to prove "that the religion of the Brahmins . . . prevailed in Persia before the accession of Cayumers, whom the Parsis, from respect to his memory, consider as the first of men, although they believe in an *universal deluge* before his reign." Truly Anquetil was abundantly avenged, and the proposition that misplaced scepticism often coexists with misplaced credulity received a striking illustration !

But Sir William Jones, however greatly he may have fallen into error in matters connected with the ancient history and languages of Persia, was so eminent in his public career, so

catholic in his interests, so able a man of letters, and so elegant a scholar, that his opinion was bound to carry great weight, especially in his own country ; and consequently we find his scepticism as to the genuineness of the Avesta echoed in England by Sir John Chardin and Richardson (the celebrated Persian Lexicographer) and in Germany by Meiners and, at first, Tychsen, who, however, afterwards became one of Anquetil's strongest supporters, an attitude assumed from the first by another German scholar, Kleuker, who translated Anquetil's work into his own language, and added to it several appendices. In England, for the moment, Sir William Jones's opinion carried everything before it, and Anquetil's translation " was laid aside as spurious and not deserving any attention ; " ¹ while in France, on the other hand, it from the first commanded that general recognition and assent which are now universally accorded to it. To trace in detail the steps whereby this recognition was secured is not within the scope of this book, and we can only notice a few of the most important. Such as desire to follow them in detail will find all the information they require in the excellent accounts of Haug and Darmesteter referred to in the footnote on this page, as well as in Geldner's article, *Awestalitteratur*, in vol. ii (pp. 1-53, especially p. 40, *Geschichte der Awestaforschung*) of Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie* (Strassburg, 1896).

The first important step in the vindication of Anquetil was made by his illustrious compatriot, Sylvestre de Sacy, who, in 1793, published in the *Journal des Savants* his five celebrated *Memoires sur diverses Antiquites de la Perse*, which dealt chiefly with the Pahlawi inscriptions of the Sasanian kings, for the decipher-

Influence of
Sir W. Jones's
views.

De Sacy's
*Memoires sur
diverses Anti-
quites de la
Perse* (1793)-

¹ See West's third edition of Haug's *Essays on the Parsis*, pp. 16-53, and Darmesteter's *Introduction* to his translation of the *Avesta* in Max Miiller's *Sacred Books of the East* (Oxford, 1880), vol. iv, pp. xiii-xxv, to both of which I have been greatly indebted in this portion of my subject

ment of which he chiefly relied, apart from the Greek translations which accompany some of them, on the Pahlawi vocabulary given by Anquetil (vol. iii, pp. 432-526), "whose work," as Darmesteter well says, "vindicated itself thus—better than by heaping up arguments—by promoting discoveries." For the oldest extant manuscripts of the Avesta date only from the fourteenth century of our era, while the Sasanian inscriptions go back to the third, and could not, therefore, be set aside, even for a moment, as late forgeries; and if Anquetil's vocabulary furnished a key to these, it was manifest that the Pahlawi which he had learned from his *dasturs* was the genuine language of Sasanian times; and that the occurrence in it of Semitic words, such as *malka* "king," *shanat* "year," *ab* "father," *shamsa* "sun," *Ia* "not," which Sir William Jones, regarding them as Arabic¹ (though he afterwards recognised them as Chaldaean),² cited as proof of the fictitious antiquity of the language in which they occurred, of Anquetil's credulity, and of his Pars! instructor's fraud, was an indisputable fact, whatever might be its true explanation. Tychsen insisted strongly on this point.

"This," said he, "is a proof that the Pahlawi was used during the reign of the Sasanides, for it was from them that these inscriptions emanated, as it was by them—nay, by the first of them, Ardashir Babagan—that the doctrine of Zoroaster was revived. One can now understand why the Zend books were translated into Pahlawi. Here, too, everything agrees, and speaks loudly for their antiquity and genuineness."³

The Pahlawi inscriptions thus deciphered by de Sacy had been

¹ *Lettre a Monsieur A . . . du P . . .*, p. 610: "Lorsque nous voyons les mots Arabes corrompus . . . donnees pour des mots Zendes et Pehlevis, nous disons hardiment que ce charlatan [le reverend Docteur Darab] vous a trompe, et que vous avez tache de tromper vos lecteurs."

² Sir W. Jones's Works, vol. i, p. 81.

³ Cited, by Darmesteter in his Introduction (pp. xix-xx) to the Translation of the Vendidad (see n. 1 on the previous page).

known in Europe since Samuel Flower published in the *Philosophical Transactions* for June, 1693 (pp. 775-7) the copies of them which he had made in 1667, while further copies appeared in the works of Chardin (1711), Niebuhr (1778), and, at a later date, of other travellers ; ¹ but, though Hyde reproduced them in his book, de Sacy was the first to attempt with any success their interpretation.

Five years after the publication of de Sacy's *Memoires* (1798), the Carmelite father, Paul de St. Barthelemy, published at Rome his essay, *De antiquitate et affmitate lingua samscredamica et germanica*, in which he defended the antiquity of the Avesta, and even uttered a conjecture as to the affinity of the language in which it is written with Sanskrit.²

The first important step in the next, and perhaps the greatest, achievement of Persian scholarship—to wit, the decipherment of the Persian cuneiform inscriptions (writings of which the character and language were alike unknown)—was made early in the nineteenth century by Grotefend, whose papers on this subject—models of clear reasoning and acute insight—have only recently been unearthed from the Archives of the Gottingen Royal Society of Sciences and published in the *Nachrichten* of that Society (September 13, 1893, pp. 571-616) by W. Meyer. Of these papers the first was originally read on September 4, 1802, the second on October 2nd, the

¹ See West's account of the Sasanian Inscriptions in his article on Pahlawi Literature in Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss d. Iranischen Philologie*, vol. ii, pp. 76-79 ; and also Haug's *Essay on Pahlawi* (Bombay and London, 1870), which begins with a very full account of the progress of Pahlawi studies in Europe.

² Darmesteter (*op. cit.*), p. xxi. The same conception, now universally accepted (viz., that the Avestic language and Sanskrit were sister-tongues), was very clearly formulated by de Sacy in the *Journal des Savants* for March, 1821, p. 136.

third on November 13th of the same year, and the fourth on May 20, 1803. Till this time, though Tychsen and Miinter had made vain attempts at decipherment, it was, as we have seen when examining Hyde's work, very generally held, even by men of learning, that these characters were not writing at all, but were either architectural ornaments, the work of worms or insects, or mason's marks and numerical signs. Grotefend, primarily impelled to this inquiry by a dispute with his friend Fiorillo as to the possibility of arriving at the meaning of inscriptions whereof the script and language were alike unknown or buried in oblivion, arrived in his first communication at the following important general conclusions :

Grotefend's
general con-
clusions.

(1) That the figures constituting these inscriptions were graphic symbols; (2) that the inscriptions were trilingual, that is, that they consisted, as a rule, of three versions, each in a different language and script; (3) that the inscriptions which he proposed to explain, that is, those of the first class (the Old Persian) in particular, and also those of the second, consisted of actual *letters*, not of ideograms or logograms comparable to those employed in Assyrian and Chinese ; (4) that all known cuneiform inscriptions were constant in direction, being in every case written horizontally from left to right.

Grotefend's
method of
procedure.

From these general conclusions (all of which have since proved to be perfectly correct) Grotefend proceeded to examine more minutely two inscriptions of the first class, which he believed to be written in the so-called Zend (i.e., Avestic) language—a conjecture which, though not the truth, was near the truth—and which he correctly referred to "some ancient king of the Persians between Cyrus and Alexander," in other words, to the Achaemenians.¹ An examination of the Pahlawi inscriptions

¹ The fact that the inscriptions of the first class were in the language of the Achaemenian kings—in other words, in an Old Persian language—was suggested to Grotefend by the position of honour always occupied by them in the trilingual tablets.

of the Sisanians, already deciphered by de Sacy, suggested to him the probability that the first word in the inscription was the *name* of a king of this dynasty, and the second his *title*. He then observed that that name which stood at the *beginning* of the second inscription was in the first placed *after the title*, which (again guided by the analogy of the Sasanian inscriptions) he rightly assumed to signify "King of Kings," with a slight final modification, which he correctly conjectured to be the inflexion of the genitive case, from which he gathered that the two names in the first inscription were those of father and son. One of these names, which Tychsen had read *Malkeusch*, appeared to him to square best with Darius, whose name in the Books of Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah occurs in the form *Dariyavush* ("Darjavesch"); another, read by Tychsen as *Osch patscha*, with Xerxes ("Khschhersch"). For both these names consisted, in the Old Persian inscriptions, of seven separate characters (these being, as we now know, in the *first*, D. A. R. Y. V. U. SH, and in the *second*, K. SH. Y. A. R. SH. A), of which one (A) occurred three times, and three (R, Y, SH) twice, in the two names; and the assumption as to the reading of these names was confirmed by the order of the component letters of each. Now it was known from the accounts of the Greek historians that Darius was the son of Hystaspes, which name appeared in Anquetil's work in the native forms Gushtasp, Vishtasp, &c.; and, from the analogy of the inscription of Xerxes, it appeared probable that Darius also in his inscription would mention this, his father's name. And, in effect, there occurred in the proper place in this inscription of Darius a group of ten letters, of which the last three (now known to represent H. Y. A.) had already been recognised as the case-ending of the genitive. Of the remaining seven, two—the third (SH) and fifth (A)—were already known, while, from what was common to the Greek and Avestic forms of the name, the fourth, sixth, and seventh might fairly be assumed to

represent T, S, and P respectively. There remained the two initial letters, of which it was pretty evident that the first was a consonant (G or V), and the second a vowel (not U, already known, and therefore presumably I); but Grotefend actually read them as G. O. instead of V. I.

Such were the great and definite results of Grotefend's discoveries. Further than this he endeavoured to go; but, on the one hand, he was misled by his belief that the language of the inscriptions was identical with that of the Avesta, and by the fact that Anquetil's account of the latter was imperfect and in many details erroneous; and, on the other hand, the materials at his disposal were inadequate and did not supply sufficient data for full decipherment and interpretation. Hence his scheme of the values of the letters was, as we now know, scarcely even half correct, while his interpretations and transcriptions of the texts which he attacked were but approximations. Thus one of the Persepolitan inscriptions with which he especially dealt (Niebuhr, PI. xxiv; Spiegel's *Keilinschriften*, ed. 1862, p. 48, B), is now known to read as follows:—

Darayavush . Khshayathiya . vazraka . Khshayathiya . Khshayathiyanam . Khshayathiya . dahyunam . Vishtaspahya . putra . Hakhamanishiya . hya . imam . tacharam . akunaush.

That is to say:—

"Darius, the great king, the king of kings, the king of the provinces, the son of Vishtaspa, the Achaemenian, who made this temple."

Grotefend's transcription and translation were as follows:—

Darhcusch . Khshehioh . eghre . Khshehioh . Khshehiohetchdo . Khshehioh . Dahutchao . Goschtaspahe . bun , akheotchoschoh , Ah . 000 . Moro . ezutchusch.

"Darius, rex fortis, rex regum, rex Daharum (filius) Hystaspis, stirps mundi rectoris. In constellatione mascula. Moro rov Ized."

Yet, though Grotefend failed to accomplish all he attempted, few would have ventured even to attempt what he accomplished; and his method, and the discoveries to which it led, formed the starting-point of the further researches which ultimately resulted in the complete solution of this difficult enigma. De Sacy, whose discoveries had prepared the way for those of Grotefend, was the first to recognise the immense value of his results, and to make them more widely known, while the rival system of interpretation proposed by Saint-Martin met with but little acceptance.¹

Estimation of
Grotefend's
achievement.

The next great advances in decipherment were made almost simultaneously in the years 1836-1837 by Lassen, Burnouf, and Rawlinson, the last of whom, working independently in Persia, without knowledge of what had been effected by Grotefend, succeeded in reading the names of Arshama, Ariyaramna, Chaishpish, and Hakhamanish in the first paragraph of the great Behistun inscription of Darius. Burnouf had already made use of his knowledge of Sanskrit to elucidate the Avesta, both by the comparative method and by the use of Neriosengh's Sanskrit translation; and he now turned from the completion of his great work on the Yasna² to an examination of the Persian cuneiform inscriptions, for the study of which the labours of the unfortunate traveller Schultz had furnished him with fresh materials from Alvand and Van.³ His work was to some extent thrown

Work of
Rawlinson,
Burnouf, and
Lassen.

¹ For further details and references as to the progress of the decipherment, see Spiegel's *Kurze Geschichte der Entzifferung* at pp. 119-132, of the already-cited edition of his *Keilinschriften*; also Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie*, vol. ii, pp. 64-74, *Geschichte d. Entzifferung und Erklärung d. Inschriften*.

² *Commentaire sur le Yasna, l'un des livres religieux des Parses.- ouvrage contenant le texte zend expliqué pour la première fois, les variantes des quatre manuscrits de la Bibliothèque royale et la version sanscrite inédite de Neriosengh* (Paris, 1833-1835).

³ *Memoire sur deux Inscriptions cuneiformes* (Paris, 1836.)

into the shade by the more brilliant results of Lassen ; but, besides reading the name of the Supreme Being, Ahuramazda, and some other words, and pointing out that the language of the inscriptions, though akin to that of the Avesta, was not identical with it, and that the writing did not, as a rule, express the short vowels except when they were initial, he first called attention to the list of names of countries contained in the great inscription of Darius. This last indication, communicated to Lassen in the summer of 1835, was fruitfully utilised by the latter for the fuller and more accurate determination of the values of the letters, and the demonstration of the existence of an inherent short *a* (as in Sanskrit) in many of the consonants, so that, for example, S.P.R.D. was shown by him to stand for *Sparda*. Within the next four years (up to 1840) Lassen's results had been further extended, elucidated, and corrected by Beer and Jacquet, while new materials collected by the late Claude James Rich, British Resident at Baghdad, had been rendered available by publication, and Westergaard had brought back fresh and more accurate copies of the Persepolitan inscriptions.

It is unnecessary in this place to trace further the progress of this branch of Persian studies, or to do more than mention the later discoveries of Loftus (1852) and Dieulafoy (1884) at Susa ; the photographs taken at Persepolis in 1876 and the following years by Stolze, and published at Berlin in 1882 in two volumes entitled *Tersepolis* ; and the additional light thrown on the Old Persian language and script by such scholars as Bang, Bartholomae, Bollensen, Foy, Halevy, Hitzig, Hubschmann, Kern, Muller, Menant, Sayce, Thumb, and others. Nor need the wild theories as to the talismanic character of the inscriptions propounded by M. le Comte de Gobineau in his *Traite des krites cuneiformes* (Paris, 1864) detain us even for a moment. A few words must, however, be said as to Oppert's ingenious theory as to the origin and nature of the script.

Further progress
of the study of
Old Persian.

From the Old Persian character the Assyrian differs in one most essential respect, in spite of the superficial resemblance of these two cuneiform scripts. The former, as we have seen, is truly alphabetical (the alphabet consisting of forty-one symbols, whereof four are logograms, or abbreviations for the constantly-occurring words "Ahuramazda," "King," "Land," and "Earth," while one is a mark of punctuation to separate the words from one another) ; the latter is a syllabary, or rather an immense collection of ideograms or logograms, comparable to the Chinese or Egyptian hieroglyphics. An Assyrian graphic symbol usually connotes, in other words, an idea, not the sound representing that idea, and has, therefore, only a casual relation to its phonetic equivalent, so that, for instance, an ideogram from the older Akkadian could continue to be used in Assyrian with the same meaning but with a different phonetic value. Oppert's theory is that the Old Persian letters, invented about the time of the fall of the Medes and rise of the Persian (Achaemenian) power, were derived from the Assyrian ideograms as follows. An Assyrian ideogram was given its Persian phonetic equivalent, or, in other words, read as a Persian ideogram ; this ideogram was then simplified and used as a letter having the value of the initial sound of the Persian word ; and this process was continued until enough graphic symbols, or letters, had been formed to represent all the Persian phonetic elements. Thus the Persians, in the sixth century before Christ, made this great advance from a system of ideograms (probably hieroglyphic or pictorial in their first origin) to a real alphabet; but their analysis stopped short at the separation of a short vowel following a consonant, and therefore they employed separate characters, for example, for the syllables *ka, ku ; ga, gu ; ja, ji ; da, di, du ; ma, mi, mu, &c.*

We see here another illustration of the extent to which Persia, from very early times, has been under Semitic influence,

first Assyrian, then Aramaic, and lastly Arabian. The Assyrian influence is as unmistakable in the sculptures of Persepolis and Behistun as in the inscriptions; and, as Spiegel has well shown (*Eranische Alterthumskunde*, vol. i, pp. 446-485), it can be traced with equal clearness in the domain of religion, probably also of politics, social organisation, jurisprudence, and war. "The great King, the King of kings, the King in Persia, the King of the Provinces," was heir in far more than mere style and title to "the great King, the King of Assyria," with whose might Rabshakeh threatened Hezekiah. And this relation perhaps explains the enigma presented by the Huzvarish element in Pahlawi which so long misled students as to the true character of the latter.

Assyrian influence on Persian.

Why did the Pahlawi scribe, fully acquainted with the alphabetical use of the Pahlawi character, write the old title "King of kings" as *Malkan-malka* when (as we know from the contemporary historian Ammianus Marcellinus) his soldiers and people hailed him (as they still hail their monarch) as *Shazhan-shah*—the later equivalent of the old *Khshayathiya Khshayathiyanam* ? Why did he write *bisra* for meat and *lahma* for bread when (as we learn from the author of the *Fihrist*, and other well-informed writers of the early Muhammadan period) he read these Aramaic words into Persian as *gusht* and *nan* ? To us it seems unnatural enough, though even we do pretty much the same thing when we read "i.e." as "that is," "e.g." as "for example," and "&" or "&" as "and." Yet how much easier and more natural was such a procedure to a people accustomed to scripts wholly composed of ideograms and symbols appealing directly to the intelligence without invoking aid from the auditory sense ? If the Assyrian adopted the Akkadian logogram connoting the idea of "father," and read for it his own and not the original foreign equivalent, why should the Persian hesitate to treat the Aramaic words *malka*, *bisra*, *lahma*

Discussion of a peculiarity of the Pahlawi script.

and the like, in the same way, as though they too were mere ideograms rather than groups of letters ? The general use of Pahlawi, it is true, belongs, as we have already seen, to a time when Assyria had long passed away, viz., the Sasdnian period (A.D. 226-640), and the early Muhammadan times immediately succeeding it, but it has been traced back to the third and fourth centuries before Christ, and may in all likelihood have existed at a yet earlier date. In the essentially conservative East there is nothing very wonderful in this ; and the *siyaq*, universally used for keeping accounts even at the present day in Persia, presents a somewhat analogous phenomenon, for the symbols used therein instead of the ordinary Arabic numerals are in reality mutilated and abbreviated forms of the Arabic names of the different numbers, a fact which the Persian accountant who uses them often forgets and occasionally does not know.

Before speaking further of Pahlawi, however, something more must be said of the continued progress of Avestic studies.

We have seen what help was derived from Sanskrit by Burnouf and Lassen in their study of the Achaemenian Inscriptions, and have already alluded incidentally to the monumental work on the Yasna published by the former in 1833-1835. Working with the copious materials collected by Anquetil, which had long lain neglected in the Bibliotheque Nationale, he first set himself, by careful collation of the MSS., to establish a correct text of this portion of the Avesta. For the elucidation of this he relied chiefly on Neriosengh's Sanskrit translation, as representing the oldest traditional interpretation available to him, which, however, he weighed, tested, and proved with the most careful and judicious criticism ; while at the same time he sought to establish the grammar and lexicography of the Avestic language. But he was content to show the way to others, and to place the study of the Avesta on a really sound and scientific basis: the large volume which he published elu-

Further progress
of Avesta
studies.

cidates primarily only the first of the seventy-two chapters composing the Yasna, which is itself but one of the five divisions (the liturgical) of the Zoroastrian Scriptures; and though at a later date (1844-1846), he subjected the ninth chapter of the Yasna to a similar though, briefer examination, he carried no further his investigations in this field.

The appearance of Bopp's great work on the Comparative Grammar of the Aryan, or Indo-European, languages about this period brings us to the next great controversy which raged round the Avesta—that of the Traditional and Comparative Schools. By this time no sane and competent scholar had any doubt as to the genuineness of the book itself; the question now was as to the worth of the traditional interpretation of the Zoroastrians. Burnouf, in so far as he relied on the traditional explanation of Neriosengh (for the older Pahlawi translations were not at that time sufficiently understood to be of much use), belonged to the former school; Bopp, pre-eminently a Sanskritist and Comparative Philologist, to whom the study of the Avesta was a mere branch of Sanskrit Philology, to the latter. The publication (1852-1858) of Westergaard's and Spiegel's editions of the text greatly enlarged the circle of students who were able to attack on their own account the problems presented by the Avesta; and what Darmesteter calls "the war of the methods" (i.e., the Traditional and the Comparative) soon broke out on all sides. Of the Traditional School the most prominent representatives were, after Burnouf, Spiegel, and Justi, and, in a lesser degree, de Harlez and Geiger; of the Comparative School, Benfey and Roth. Windischmann held a middle position, while Haug, at first an ardent follower of Benfey, returned from India fully convinced of the value of the Parsi tradition, and thereafter became one of the pioneers of Pahlawi studies, a path in which he was followed with even more signal success by West, "whose unparalleled learning and

"The War of the
Methods."

acumen," as Geldner says,¹ " have raised up Pahlawi studies from the lowest grade of science," so that "indirectly he became the reformer of Avesta studies." But it was by that incomparable man, the late James Darmesteter, that the judicious and almost exhaustive use of the traditional materials (combined, of course, with a careful study of the texts themselves) was carried to its fullest extent, and it is pleasant to find Geldner, whose methods of textual criticism he had so severely criticised, describing his work and methods in the following generous words :—" ²

" From the beginning an eager partisan of the Sasanian translation and thoroughly grounded in Pahlawi, he in no wise based his interpretation on this alone, but recognised that, amidst the strife as to the best method, only a comprehensive enlargement of the field of vision could lead from groping and guessing to clear and certain knowledge. His immediate sources of help are the native translations, carefully used in detail, and thoroughly studied as a whole, and the entire learning accumulated therein. His indirect means of help is the entire tradition from Sasanian times down to the present day, the whole Pahlawi and Pazand literature, the Shahnama, the Arabian chroniclers and historical notices of the Ancients, personal information derived from living Parsis, their customs and ideas, the ritual of the present time, which is likewise a piece of unfalsified tradition, and, on the linguistic side, the entire material of Iranian philology in all its degrees of development and dialectical variations, and likewise Sanskrit, especially that of the Vedas. The dispositions and beginnings had, for the most part, been already made before him, although imperfectly, and with insufficient means, but Darmesteter combined them and carried them on to a certain conclusion. The ripest fruit of these endeavours is his most recent monumental work : *le Zend-Avesta, traduction nouvelle avec commentaire historique et philologique* (Annales du Musee Guimet, vols, xxi, xxii, xxiv, Paris, 1892-3). Darmesteter rejuvenated the traditional school, and is properly speaking the creator of what he calls the

¹ See Geldner's excellent article (*Geschichte der Awestaforschung*) in vol. ii of Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie*, pp. 40-46, where full particulars and references concerning the study of the Avesta will be found. ² *Op. laud.*, p. 45.

historical method of the study of the Avesta, for the elucidation of which he collected an incomparably rich material. How far indeed he succeeded in this, how far as regards points of detail he overshot the mark, the Future must decide."

Let us now return to the history of the decipherment of the Pahlawi inscriptions and texts—that branch of Persian philology in which, despite the fruitful labours of de Sacy and his successors, of whom we shall speak immediately, and the copious illumination of this difficult study which we owe in recent times to West, Andreas, Noldeke, Darmesteter, Salemann, and others, most yet remains to be achieved.

De Sacy's brilliant attempt to read some of the Sasdnian inscriptions at Naqsh-i-Rustam (situated on the cliffs which lie to the right of the Pulwar river, at the point where the valley through which its course has hitherto lain debouches into the Marv-Dasht plain between Siwand and Zargun, and consequently opposite Persepolis, which lies across the river, some two or three miles eastward) has been already mentioned (pp. 57—8 *supra*). The inscription which he especially studied was one of the oldest, if not the oldest, of those which the Sasanian monarchs cut on these rocks in imitation of their Achaemenian predecessors, for it dates from the reign of Ardashir (Artakhshatr) the son of Papak, the founder of this dynasty (A.D. 226-241). It is written in two forms of Pahlawi (the so-called Chaldaean and Sasanian), each having its own peculiar script, and is accompanied by a Greek translation, which runs as follows :—¹

**"ΤΟΥΤΟ ΤΟ ΠΡΟΣΟΠΙΟΝ ΜΑΣΔΑΕΝΟΥ ΘΕΟΥ ΑΡΤΑΞΕΡΟΥ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΟΣ
ΒΑΣΙΛΕΩΝ ΑΡΙΑΝΩΝ ΕΓΓΕΝΟΥΣ ΘΕΩΝ ΥΙΟΥ ΘΕΟΥ ΠΑΠΑΚΟΥ
ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΣ."**

¹ I have taken the texts from Haug's *Essay on Pahlawi* (Stuttgart, 1870), pp. 4—5, and have followed his method of representing the obliterated letters of the Greek inscription by using small type instead of capitals. When I saw and examined the inscription in March, 1888, when on my way from the north to Shiraz, it had suffered still further defacement.

PAHLAWI INSCRIPTIONS

The Sasanian Pahlawi, when transliterated, runs something like this :—

"PATKARI ZANA MAZDAYASN BAGI ARTAKHSHATR,
MALKAN MALKA AIRAN, MINU CHITRI MIN YAZTAN, BARA
PAPAKI MALKA."¹

The English translation is :—

"THE EFFIGY OF THAT MAZDA-WORSHIPPING DIVI-
NITY ARTAKHSHATR, KING OF KINGS OF IRAN (PERSIA),
OF SPIRITUAL ORIGIN FROM THE GODS, SON OF PAPAK
THE KING."

Encouraged by the results of this investigation, de Sacy proceeded in his third and fourth memoirs to examine the Pahlawi legends on certain Sasanian coins, as well as other inscriptions from Behistun of the same period. How his labours formed the starting-point for Grotefend's attempt to decipher the Old Persian cuneiform inscriptions we have already seen (pp. 60-61 *supra*). The numismatic portion of his work was continued by Ouseley (1801), who succeeded in reading the legends on some twoscore Sasanian coins; and also (1808-1813) by Tychsen.

The character in which the Pahlawi books are written differs considerably from that of the contemporary monuments (inscriptions and coins) of the Sasanians, and is far more ambiguous. It must be remembered that, with the exception of the fragments of Pahlawi papyrus discovered some twenty-two years ago in the Fayyum in Egypt, and hitherto unpublished and but partially

¹ The words printed in italics are Huzvarish (a term which will be explained presently), and, in reading, the Persian would replace the Aramaic equivalent. Thus *zand* ("that") would be read *an*; *Malkan-malka* (King of kings), *Shahan-shah*; *min* ("from"), *az*; *bara* ("son"), *pur* or *puhar*; and *malka*, *shah*.

deciphered, the oldest specimen of written Pahlawi goes back only to A.D. 1323—that is, is subsequent by more than a thousand years to the inscription cited above. During this period (for the last half of which the Pahlawi script had ceased to be used save by the Zoroastrian priests for the transcription of works already extant) the written character had undergone considerable degeneration, so that characters originally quite distinct had gradually assumed the same form, thus giving rise to polyphony, or the multiple values of single characters. This polyphony already existed to some extent in the inscriptions, but in the book-Pahlawi it has undergone so great an extension that, to take only one instance, a single character now stands for the four values *z*, *d*, *g*, *y*, each of which had in the inscriptions its separate graphic symbol. Hence the difficulty of the book-Pahlawi, and hence the value of the Sdsdnian inscriptions in its elucidation. This value Marc

Joseph Muller, professor at Munich, thoroughly
 Muller's essay.

recognised in his *Essai sur la langue Pehlvie*, published in the *Journal Asiatique* of April, 1839, which essay, as Haug says, marks a fresh epoch in Pahlawi studies. Amongst the Zoroastrians, especially amongst the Parsis of Bombay, a traditional but corrupt method of reading the Pahlawi books had been preserved, which resulted in a monstrous birth of utterly fictitious words, never used by any nation either in speech or writing, such as *boman* (really *bard*) "son," *moda* (really *malya*) "word," *Anhoma* (really *Awarmaza*) "God," *jamnuntan* (really *yemaleluntan*) "to speak," and the like. In each instance the ambiguous Pahlawi character admitted of this reading, as it admitted of a dozen others, but a comparison with the less ambiguous inscriptional Pahlawi sufficed in many cases to establish the correct form, and this control it was Muller's merit to have introduced, though naturally it was not in every case vouchsafed to him to arrive at the correct reading.

Before going further, it will be proper to say something

more as to the essential peculiarity of Pahlawi to which we have already repeatedly alluded, namely, its *Huzvarish* or *Zavarishn* element of Aramaic words more or less defaced in many cases by the addition of Persian inflexional terminations and "phonetic complements." When a Pahlawi text is read, a large proportion of the words composing it are found to be Semitic, not Iranian, and, to be more precise, to be drawn from an Aramaic dialect closely akin to Syriac and Chaldaean. Now since an ordinary modern Persian text also contains a large proportion of Semitic (in this case Arabic) words, which are actually read as they are written, and are, in fact, foreign words as completely incorporated in Persian as are the Greek, Latin, French, and other exotic words which together constitute so large a portion of the modern English vocabulary in our own language, it was at first thought that the Aramaic element in Pahlawi was wholly comparable to the Arabic element in modern Persian. But a more careful examination showed that there was an essential difference between the two cases. However extensively one language may borrow from another, there is a limit which cannot be exceeded. It would be easy to pick out sentences of modern Persian written in the high-flown style of certain ornate writers in which all the substantives, all the adjectives, and all the verbal nouns were Arabic, and in which, moreover, Arabic citations and phrases abounded; yet the general structure of the sentence, the pronouns, and the auxiliary verbs would and must continue to be Persian. Similarly in a sentence like "I regard this expression of opinion as dangerous," only four of the eight words employed are really of English descent, yet the sentence is thoroughly English, and it is inconceivable that the pronouns "I" and "this," or the particles "of" and "as," should be replaced by equivalents of foreign extraction. In Pahlawi, however, the case is quite different. Haug goes, perhaps, a trifle too far when he says (*Essay on Pahlawi*, pp. 120-121) "all the case-signs and even the plural suffixes in the nouns; all the

personal, demonstrative, interrogative and relative pronouns ; all the numerals from one to ten ; the most common verbs (including the auxiliaries) such as 'to be, to go, to come, to wish, to eat, to sleep, to write, &c.' ; almost all the prepositions, adverbs, and conjunctions, and several important terminations for the formation of nouns, as well as a large majority of the words in general (at all events in the Sasanian inscriptions), are of Semitic origin ; " yet in the main such is the case, and " the verbal terminations, the suffixed pronouns and the construction of the sentence " are often the only Iranian part of the Pahlawi phrase, though they are its essential and characteristic part. But in addition to this we have a number of monstrous, hybrid words, half Aramaic, half Persian, which no rational being can imagine were ever really current in speech. Thus the Semitic root meaning " to write " consists of the three radicals K, T, B, and the third person plural of the imperfect is *yektibhn* (Arabic, *yaktubun*), while the Persian verb is *nabishtan*, *napishtan*, or *navishtan*. The Pahlawi scribe, however, wrote *yektibun-tan*, but assuredly never so read it : to him *yektibun*, though a significant inflected word in Aramaic, was a mere logogram or ideogram standing for *napish-*, to which he then added the appropriate Persian termination. So likewise for the Persian word *mard*, "man," he wrote the Semitic *gabra*, but when he wished the alternative form *mardum* to be read, he indicated this by the addition of the " phonetic complement," and wrote *gabra-um*.

The analogies to this extraordinary procedure which exist in Assyrian have already been pointed out. In the older Turanian language of Akkad "father" was *adda*. "When the Assyrians," says Haug, "wished to write 'father,' they used the first character, *ad* or *at*, of *adda*, but pronounced it *ab*, which was their own word for 'father' ; and to express 'my father,' they wrote *atuya*, but read it *abuya*; *u* being the Assyrian nominative termination, and *ya* the suffix meaning 'my,' which, in the writing, were added to the foreign word

at." So in like manner the Pahlawi scribe who wished to write " father " wrote *abitar* for *pitar* (*pidar*), the Assyrian *ab* being used as a mere ideogram, of which the Persian equivalent was indicated by the " phonetic complement " *-tar*.

Another curious (and, in this instance, valuable) feature of the Pahlawi script was that in the case of a Persian word recognised at that time as compound and capable of analysis, each separate element was represented by a Semitic or Huzvarish equivalent. Take, for instance, the common Persian verb *pinddishan*, " to think, deem." A modern Persian has no idea that it is capable of analysis, or is other than a simple verb ; but the Pahlawi scribe was conscious of its compound character, and wrote accordingly *pavan* (= *pa*, "for") *hana* (= in, "this") *yakhsanun-tan* (= *dashtan*, "to hold") ; and Noldeke has called attention to a similar analysis of the common word *magar* ("unless," "if not"), which is represented by two Aramaic words, or Huzvaiish elements, of which the first signifies " not " and the second "if." And this principle has another curious and instructive application. The modern Persian pronoun of the first person singular is *man*, which is derived from the stem of the oblique cases of the corresponding Old Persian pronoun *adam* (= Avestic *azem*), whereof the genitive is *mana*. Of this fact the Pahlawi script takes cognisance in writing the Semitic //, " to me " (or "of me"), as the Huzvdrish equivalent of *man*.

These considerations, apart from external evidence, might have suggested to a very acute mind the belief that the peculiarities of Pahlawi lay almost entirely in the script, and that they disappeared when it was read aloud. Fortunately, however, there is sufficient external evidence to prove that this was actually the case.

First, we have the direct testimony of Ammianus Marcellinus, who says (xix, 2, 11): " Persis Saporem et Saansaan [i.e., *Shahan-shah*] adpellantibus et Pyrosen [i.e., *Piruz* or *Peroz*], quod rex regibus imperans et bellorum victor interpretatur."

This notice refers to Shapur II (A.D. 309-379), whose title stands on his coins *Malkan malka*, but was in the actual speech of the people, then as now, *Shahan-shah*.

Secondly, we have the direct testimony of the learned author of the *Fihristy* Muhammad b. Ishaq (A.D. 987-8), who relies here, as in other places where he speaks of matters appertaining to Sasanian Persia, on the authority of that remarkable man

Ibnu'l-Muqaffa,' a Persian Zoroastrian who
Ibnu'l Muqaffa'.

flourished about the middle of the eighth century of our era, made a doubtfully sincere profession of Islam, and was put to death about A.D. 760. He was reckoned by Ibn Muqla, the *wazir* and calligraphist († A.H. 939), as one of the ten most eloquent speakers and writers of Arabic, and Ibn Khaldun the Moor pays a similar tribute to his command of that language; and with this he combined a thorough knowledge of Pahlawi, and translated several important works from that language into Arabic, of which, unfortunately, only one of the least interesting (the *Book of Kalila and Dimna*) has survived to our time. Relying on the authority of this learned man, the author of the *Fihrist*, after describing seven different scripts (*Kitaba*) used in pre-Muhammadan times by the Persians, continues as follows, in a passage to which Quatremere first called attention in 1835, but of which the original text was not published till 1866, when Charles Ganneau printed it with a new translation and some critical remarks on Quatremere's rendering :—

" And they have likewise a syllabary [*hija*, "a spelling," not *kitaba*, "a script"] called *Zawarishn* [or *Huzvarish*], wherein they write the letters either joined or separate, comprising about a thousand vocables, that thereby they may distinguish words otherwise ambiguous. For instance, when one desires to write *gusht*, which means 'meat,' he writes *bisra* like this [here follows the word written in the Pahlawi script], but reads it as *gusht*; and similarly when one desires to write *nan*, which means bread, he writes *lahma* like this [again follows the Pahlawi word], but reads it *nan*; and

so whatever they used at write, save such things as have no need of a like substitution, which you write as they are pronounced."¹

Thirdly, we have the fact of the complete disappearance of the whole Aramaic or Huzvarish element in even the earliest specimens of Persian written in the Arabic character, which could hardly have occurred if these words had ever been used in speech, but which was natural enough if they belonged to the script only, and were mere ideograms.

Fourthly, we have the tradition surviving amongst the Zoroastrians to the present day, a tradition faulty enough in detail, as we have already seen, but quite clear on the general principle that Huzvarish words ought to be read as Persian. Hence the so-called Pazend and Parsi books, which are merely transcriptions of Pahlawi books into the unambiguous Avestic and Arabic characters respectively, all the Huzvarish, or Aramaic, words being replaced by their Persian equivalents, or supposed equivalents.

It may be well that we should conclude this chapter with a recapitulation of the various terms that have been used in speaking of the ancient languages of Persia, an explanation of their precise meaning, and a statement of their etymology, where this is known.

Definition of terms.

Medic, the language of Media, i.e., the western part of what we now call Persia, the *Mada* of Darius's inscription, the *Mahat* (plural of *Mah*, which occurs as a prefix in Mah-Basra, Mah-Kufa, Mah-Nahawand,

¹ See Haug's *Essay on Pahlawi*, pp. 37 et seqq. ; *Journal Asiatique* for 1835 (p. 256) and 1866 (p. 430); *Fihrist*, ed. Flügel, p. 14. I differ from Haug's rendering in several particulars, especially as regards the sense of *mutashabihat*, which he translates " [words] which have the same meaning," whereas I take it to mean " Persian words which would be ambiguous if written in the Pahlawi character," but of which the Huzvarish equivalents are not so ambiguous. Any one who will write *nan* in Pahlawi script, and then consider in how many different ways it can be read, will easily see where the " ambiguity " lies.

&c.) of the early Arabian geography--in region having for its capital the ancient Ecbatana (Hagmatana of the inscriptions), now called Hamadan. Of this language we have no remains, unless we accept Darmesteter's view, that it is identical with the language of the Avesta, or Oppert's, that it is the language which occupies the second place (between the Old Persian and the Assyrian versions) in the Achaemenian trilingual inscriptions. It was in all probability very closely akin to Old Persian, and certain words of it preserved by writers like Herodotus make it appear likely that from it are descended some of the modern dialects of Persian.

Avestic, the language of the Avesta, often improperly called "Zend," sometimes also termed "Old Bactrian," a most undesirable name, since it is, as we have seen,

Avestic.

quite as likely that its home was in Atropatene (Azarbayjan) in the north-west as in Bactria in the north-east. In it is written the Avesta, and the Avesta only ; of which, however, certain ancient hymns called *Gathas* are in a different dialect, much more archaic than that in which the remaining portions of the book are composed. A special character, constructed from, but far superior to, the Pahlawi script, is used for writing it. The word Avesta can scarcely be traced back beyond Sasanian times, though Oppert believes it to be intended by the word *abastam* in Darius's Behistun inscription (iv, 64). It appears in Pahlawi as *Avistak* (Darmesteter, *Apastak*), in Syriac as *Apastaga*, in Arabic as *Abastaq*, Andreas is inclined to derive it from the Old Persian *upasta* ("help, support") and to interpret it as meaning "ground-text." This, at any rate, is its

"Zend." signification in the term "Avesta and Zend,"

which gave rise to the misleading "Zend-Avesta": the "Avesta" is the original text of the Zoroastrian scripture, and the "Zend" is the running Pahlawi "explanation" (translation and commentary) which generally accompanies it. If, therefore, the term "Zend

language" be used at all, it should mean the language of the Zend, or explanation, *i.e.*, the Pahlawi language ; but as it was applied in Europe, owing to a misunderstanding of the terms, to the language of the original text, it is best to drop the expression "Zend language" altogether.

Old Persian is the term which denotes the ancient language of Persia proper (Persis, Fars), the official language of the Achæmenian inscriptions, and without doubt the speech of Darius, Xerxes, and the other kings of this house. It is known to us by the inscriptions, and by them only.

Pahlawi, as shown by Olshausen, properly means Parthian ; for as the ancient *mithra*, *chithra*, go into *mihr*, *chihr*, so *Parthava*, the Old Persian name for Parthia, goes through the analogous but hypothetical forms *Parhav*, *Palhav*, into *Pahlav*, a term applied, under its Arabic form *Fahlav*, by the old Arabian geographers to a certain region of Central and Western Persia said to include the towns of Isfahan, Ray, Hamadan and Nahawand, and a part of Azarbayjan. As has been already said, we know but little of the Parthians from native sources ; so little that it is not certain whether they were an Iranian or a Turanian race; the national legend takes so little account of them—whom it calls *Mulukut-tawa* "if, " tribal kings "—that one single page of the *Shahnama* amply suffices to contain all that Firdawsî (who speaks of them as illiterate barbarians unworthy of commemoration) has to say of them ; and the Sasanian claim to have revived the national life and faith crushed by Alexander is to some extent borne out by the Greek inscriptions of the earlier Parthian coins, and the title "Phil-Hellenes" which it pleased their kings to assume. Yet the name of the "Pahlavas" was known in India, and survives to the present day in Persia as an epithet of the speech and the deeds of the old heroic days—the days of the *pahlawansy* " heroes," or mighty warriors. As applied

to the language, however, it has a much less precise signification in Persia than in Europe, where its application is definitely restricted to Sasanian or "Middle" Persian written in its appropriate script with the Aramaic or Huzvarish element of which we have spoken. But the "Pahlawi" in which Firdawsi's legendary monarchs and heroes indite their letters, the "high-piping Pahlavi" of 'Umar Khayyam and Hafiz, the *Fahlaviyyat*, or verses in dialect, cited in many Persian works, and the "Pahlawi" mentioned by Hamdu'llah Mustawfi of Qazwin, a historical and geographical writer of the fourteenth century, as being spoken in various parts of Persia, especially in the north-west, is a much less definite thing. Tahmurath, "the Binder of Demons" (*Div-band*), was the first, according to Firdawsi, to reduce to writing "not one but nearly thirty tongues, such as Greek (*Rumi*), Arabic (*Tazi*), Persian (*Parsi*), Indian, Chinese and Pahlawi, to express in writing that which thou hearest spoken."¹ Now Tahmurath was the predecessor of Jamshid, the Yima of the Avesta and Yama of the Hindu books, an entirely mythical personage belonging to the common Indo-Iranian Legend, that is to say, to the remotest Aryan times, long before Avestic or Old Persian, let alone Middle Persian, were differentiated from the primitive Aryan tongue. When, on the other hand, a writer like the above-mentioned Hamdu'llah Mustawfi says that "Pahlawi" is spoken in a certain village, he means no more than did a villager of Quhrud (a district in the mountains situated one stage south of Kashan) who, in reply to the writer's inquiry as to the dialect there spoken, described it as "*Furs-i-qadim*" "Ancient Persian." With the Persians themselves (except the Zoroastrians) the term Pahlawi, as a rule, means nothing more precise than this; but in this book it is, unless otherwise specified, employed in the narrower acceptation of "Middle" or "Sasanian Persian." It is only so far Parthian that the earliest traces of it occur on the 'Abd Zohar and sub-Parthian coins

¹ *Shahnama*, ed. Macan, vol. i, p. 18.

of the third and fourth centuries before Christ, that is, during the Parthian period.¹

Huzvdrish, *Zawdrish*, or *Zawdrishn* has been already explained, but the derivation of the word itself is more doubtful.

Huzvarish.

Many rather wild etymologies have been proposed, such as Dastur Hushangji's *huzvan-asur*, "tongue of Assyria," and Derenbourg's " *ha Sursi*" "this is Syriac" ; but Haug's explanation, that it is a Persian verbal noun from a verb *zuvdridan*, "to grow old, obsolete," or a similar verb, supposed by Darmesteter to have "grown old and obsolete" to such an extent that it is only preserved in its original sense in the Arabic *zawwara* (verbal noun *tazwir*), "he forced, concealed, distorted, or falsified [the meaning of a text], he deceived, tricked, misled," is the most probable. Anyhow a graphic system which writes, for example, " *aetuno yemalelunt aigh* " for words intended to be read " *kun goyand ku*" (which is the Pazend or Parsi equivalent of the Huzvarish) may fairly be described as a "forcing," "concealing" or "distorting" of the speech which it is intended to represent.

Just as *Zend* is the "explanation" of an Avestic text in Pahlawi, so is *Pazend* (= *paiti-zainti*) a "re-explanation" of a Pahlawi text by transcribing it into a character less ambiguous than the Pahlawi script, and substituting the proper Persian words for their respective Huzvarish equivalents. When the Avesta character is used for this transcription, the result is called "Pazend" ; when the Persian (i.e., the Arabic) character is adopted, the term "Parsi" is often substituted. In either case the product is simply an archaic or archaistic (for unfortunately, owing to the defective character of the Parsee tradition, no great reliance can be placed on its accuracy in points of detail) form of "modern" (i.e., post-Muhammadian) Persian, from which the whole Aramaic element has disappeared. Of several

¹ See Haug's *Essay*, pp. 30-31, and West's article on *Pahlawi Literature* in vol. ii of the *Grundriss d. Iran. Philology* p. 75.

his words, and their simple, uniform metre (that fully styled *Hazaj-i-musaddas-i-mahdhf*) i.e., the hexameter *Hazaj*, of which the last foot in each hemistich is apocopated, or deprived of its last syllable, and which runs : | u———| u———| u———| four times repeated in the quatrain). Here are three of his best-known quatrains :—

1.

*Chi khush bi mihrabuni az du sar bi,
Ki yak-sar mihrabuni dard-i-sar bi !
Agar Majnun dil-i-shurida'i dasht,
Dil-i-Layla az un shurida-tar bi I*

"How sweet is love on either side confessed!
One-sided love is ache of brain at best.
Though Majnun bore a heart distraught with love,
Not less distraught the heart in Layla's breast!"

In this quatrain the only dialect-forms are *bi* (= *buvad*, "is, will be"), and the substitution (common to most of the dialects, and prevalent to a great extent in the standard Persian speech of the present day, especially in the South) of the *u*-sound for *d* in *un*, *mihrabuni*.

2.

*Magar shir u palangi, ay dil, ay dil!
Ba-mu da'im bi-jangi, ay dil, ay dil!
Agar dastum futi, khunat vi-rizhum:
Vi-vinum ta chi rangi, ay dil, ay dil!*

"Lion or leopard fierce thou surely art,
Ever at war with us, O heart, O heart !
If I can catch thee, I will spill thy blood,
And see of what strange hue thou art, O heart!"

Here *ba-mu* = *bd ma*, "with us"; while *dastum*, *vi-rizhum*, and *vi-vinum* are equivalent respectively to *dastam* (for *bi-dastam*, "into my hand."), *bi-rizam* ("I will shed"), and *bi-binam* ("I will see").

3

Vi-shum, vashum, azin 'alam ba-dar shum I
Vi-shum, az Chin u Ma-chin dir-tar shum I
Vi-shum, az Hajiyan-i-Haj bi-pursum
Ki 'i' diri bas-e ya dir-tar shum !'

"Out of this world I will arise, and fare
 To China and beyond; and when I'm there
 I'll ask the Pilgrims of the Pilgrimage,
 'Is here enough? If not, direct me where!'"

Here *vi-shum* = *bi-shavam*, "I will go"; *vasham* = either *basham*, "I will stay, abide," or *baz shavam*, "I will again go," or "I will go back"; *dir-tar* = *dur-tar*, "further" *i'* = in, "this"; *bas-e* = *bas-ast*, "is enough."

Besides these, however, many other well-known poets, such as Sa'di, Hafidh, Pindar or Bundar of Ray, Bus-haq (Abu Ishaq), the gastronomic poet and parodist of Shiraz, and others enumerated in my article in the *Royal Asiatic Society's journal* for October, 1895 (pp. 773-825), on "the Poetry of the Persian Dialects," composed occasional verses in various forms of patois, though these present, save in the best and most ancient manuscripts, so hopelessly corrupt a text that it is very difficult to make anything of them. One very good and ancient manuscript, dated A.H. 635, of a probably unique Persian work on the history of the Seljuqs, entitled *Kitabu Rdhati's-Sudur . . . fi tawdrikhi Kay-Khusraw wa Al-i-Saljuq*, composed by Najmu'd-Din Abu Bakr Muhammad b. 'All b. Sulayman b. Muhammad b. Ahmad b. al-Husayn b. Himmat ar-Rawandi, and now forming part of the magnificent library of the late M. Charles Schefer, contains numerous *Fahlawiyyat*, or verses in dialect, which appeared to me, on a cursory examination, to merit, in spite of their difficulty, a careful study on account of the age of the manuscript and the presumable correctness of the text.

In the notices of poets and poetesses (eighty-nine in number) contained in ch. v, § 6 of Hamdu'llah Mustawfi's excellent

Tarikh-i-guzida, or "Select History," compiled in A.D. 1330, the following are mentioned as having composed verses in dialect (where such verses are actually cited, an asterisk is prefixed to the poet's name) :—*Abu'l-Majid Rayagani of the Qazwin district (late thirteenth century); Amir Ka', also of Qazwin; *Utanj Zanjani(?); Pindar or Bundar of Ray; *Julaha ("the Weaver") of Abhar; *Izzu'd-Dm of Hamadan; *Kafi-i-Karachf (thirteenth century). The celebrated poet, traveller, and Isma'ili propagandist Nasir-i-Khusraw mentions in his *Travels (Safar-nama)*, edited with a French translation by Schefer, Paris, 1881, p. 6 of the text) that on his westward journey in A.D. 1046 he was questioned by the poet Qatran at Tabriz as to the meaning of certain verses in dialect of the poet Manjik, so that we have definite proof that such dialect-poetry has existed in Persia from the eleventh century till the present day. Asadi's Persian Lexicon (*Lughat-i-Furs*) edited by Dr. Paul Horn from the unique Vatican MS. (Berlin, 1897), another eleventh century work, also cites here and there verses in dialect, called, as usual, "Pahlawi." Of prose works in dialect the two most remarkable are both heterodox, viz., the *J a'wida'n-i-Kabir* one of the principal books of the Hurufi sect which arose in the days of Tamerlane (fourteenth century), and is partly written in a West Persian dialect;¹ and a romantic history of the Babi insurrection in Mazandaran in 1849, written in the dialect of that province, and published by Dorn, with a translation in vol. v of the *Melanges Asiatiques* (St. Petersburg, 1866), pp. 377, *et seqq.*

The best-known dialects of Persian spoken at the present day are those of Mazandaran, Gilan, and Talish in the north ; Samnan in the north-east; Kashan, Quhrud, and Na'in in the centre, with the peculiar Gabri dialect of the Zoroastrians inhabiting Yazd,

List of the
more important
dialects.

¹ See my *Cat of the Persian MSS. in the Cambridge University Library*, pp. 69-86 ; and my article in the *J.R.A. S.* for Jan., 1898 (pp. 61-94), on the *Literature and Doctrines of the Hurufi Sect.*

Kirman, Rafsinjan, &c. ; Siwand in the south; Luristan, Behbehann (which possesses a real poet, Rida-quli Khan by name), and Kurdistan in the west; but many other dialects, some entirely unknown to Europeans, doubtless exist in out-of-the-way places. Of those hitherto hardly studied the Bakhtiyan idiom in the west and the Sistani in the east most deserve careful attention.

CHAPTER III

THE PRE-MUHAMMADAN LITERATURE OF THE PERSIANS > WITH
SOME ACCOUNT OF THEIR LEGENDARY HISTORY, As SET
FORTH IN THE BOOK OF THE KINGS.

IN a book professing to treat of the literary history and people in its entirety it would at first sight appear proper that each period and manifestation of the national genius should, as far as possible, receive an equal amount of attention. In the case of Jewish literature, however, a complete survey of the whole ground could be made at first hand either by a combination of specialists working together (as has been done in the truly admirable *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie* of Geiger and Kohlenstein to which reference has already so often been made), or by a scholar of such varied and multiple attainments as rarely coexist in one man. Corresponding with the philological divisions already laid down, we have four separate literatures (though one is perhaps too scanty and limited in extent and character to deserve this title) which may fairly be called "Persian": to wit:—

(i) The Old Persian Cuneiform Inscriptions of the Achaemenian kings.

(ii) The Avesta (or rather the fragments of it which we still possess), including the more ancient Gathas, written in a different and more archaic dialect, and believed by many to date from Zoroaster's own time.

(iii) The Pahlawi literature, including the contemporary Sasdnian Inscriptions.

(iv) The post-Muhammadan, or " Modern Persian " literature of the last thousand years, which alone is usually understood as "Persian Literature."

To this last we must also add, for reasons advanced in Chap. I (PP- 3-4 *supra*),—

(v) That large portion of Arabic literature produced by Persians.

Now, of the three more ancient languages and literatures above mentioned I can claim only a superficial and second-hand knowledge, since the study of Modern Persian and Arabic is amply sufficient to occupy even the most active mind for a life-time. The other literatures lie quite apart, and primarily require quite different qualifications. For the student of Old Persian and Avestic a good knowledge of Sanskrit is essential, while a knowledge of Arabic, Muhammadan theology, and the like is of quite secondary importance. For the study of the first, moreover, a knowledge of Assyrian, and for the second, of Pahlawi, is desirable; while Pahlawi, in turn, cannot be fruitfully studied save by one well-versed in the Aramaic languages, especially Syriac and Chaldaean. Wherefore, since it behoves an author to write of what he knows at first hand, and since my knowledge of the pre-Muhammadan languages and literatures of Persia is only such as (with the desire of extending and completing, as far as possible, my view of the people whose later history is my chosen study) I have derived from the writings of experts, I would gladly have confined the scope of this book to the post-Muhammadan period, whereon alone I have any claim to speak with authority. Yet since every increase of knowledge makes one feel how much greater than one had supposed is the continuity of a nation's history and thought, and how much weaker are the dividing lines which once seemed so clear, I could not bring myself to mislead such as may read my book as to the true scope and unity of the

subject by such artificial and unnatural circumscription. I began my Oriental studies with Turkish, and was soon driven to Persian, since from the Persians the Turks borrowed their culture and literary forms. Soon I found that without a knowledge of the Arabic language and literature and of the Arabian civilisation and culture one could never hope to be more than a smatterer in Persian. Still I thought of the Arab conquest of Persia and the conversion of the bulk of the Persians to the religion of Islam as a definite and satisfactory starting-point, as an event of such magnitude and of so revolutionary a character that it might fairly be regarded as creating practically a *tabula rasa*, from which all earlier writing had been expunged. But gradually it became apparent that this conception was very far from the truth; that many phenomena of the complex 'Abbasid civilisation, of the early religious history of Islam, of the Book and Teaching of the Arabian Prophet himself, could only be understood in the light of earlier history.¹ Inevitably one is carried back from Muhammadan to Sasanian times, from Sasanian to Parthian, Achaemenian, Median, Assyrian, primitive Aryan, and I know not what besides, until one is fain to exclaim with the Persian poet:—

Mard-i khiradmand-i-hunar-pisha-rd
' Umr du bayast dar-in ruzgar,
Ta bi-yaki tajriba amukhti,
Dar digari tajriba burdi bi-kar!

"The man of parts who after wisdom strives
 Should have on earth at least a brace of lives;
 In one experience he then might learn,
 And in the next that same to profit turn!"

Therefore, unwilling on the one hand to speak much of matters wherein I have but little skill, and on the other to

¹ On the influence of pre-Muhammadan systems, both political and religious, on the civilisation of al-Islam, von Kremer's writings are most suggestive, especially his little work entitled *Streifzüge auf dem Gebiete des Islams*.

produce what I should regard as an essentially defective and misleading book, false to my conception of what is meant by the Literary History of a people, and faulty not only in execution but in conception, I have decided to set forth briefly in this chapter the main facts about the Achaemenian Inscriptions, the Avesta, the Pahlawi monuments and literature, and the Zoroastrian religion, to know which is important even for those whose main interest lies in Modern Persian. Of the Sasanian period, and therefore incidentally of Pahlawi, the official language of that time in Persia, I shall speak in greater detail in the next chapter, since in it lie the roots of so much that attracts our attention in the early Muhammadan days, and the gulf which severs it from what precedes is so much harder to bridge satisfactorily than that which divides it from what follows. And since, for literary purposes, the legendary is nearly as important as the actual history of a people, I shall also discuss in this chapter the Persian Epos or National Legend, which, as will be seen, only approaches the real National History at the beginning of the Sasanian period. This chapter will therefore be divided into four sections, which may be briefly characterised as follows: (1) Achaemenian; (2) Avestic; (3) Pahlawi; and (4) National Legend.

§ I. LITERARY REMNANTS OF THE ACHÆMENIANS.

Our fullest knowledge of that first great Persian dynasty which began with Cyrus in B.C. 559, and ended with the defeat of the last Darius by Alexander, and his tragic death at the hands of his two treacherous satraps, Bessus and Barzaentes, in B.c. 330, is derived from Greek historians, notably Herodotus, Ctesias, and Xenophon (*Anabasis*, *Cyropædia*, *Agésilas*), while some sidelights may be derived from such works as the *Persa* of Æschylus. Of these external sources, however, which have been fully used by those who have written the history of the Achaemenians (such as Rawlinson, Spiegel, and Justi), I do

not propose to speak further, since they lie rather in the domain of the classical scholar than of the Orientalist. Rawlinson, however, in his admirable translation of Herodotus, points out how much the authority of that great historian is strengthened, not only by the Achaemenian inscriptions, but also by the true and convincing portraits of the national character which his work contains. But for him, indeed, the inscriptions, even if deciphered, must have remained obscure in many points which by his help are clear, as, for example, the words in ll. 8-11 of the first portion of Darius's great Behistun inscription : " Saith Darius the king : ' Eight of my race who were aforetime were kings; I am the ninth : we are kings by double descent " [or, " in a double line "]. In the light of the following genealogical tree deducible from Herodotus *Tolymnia*, vii, 10) the meaning of this becomes evident :—

(1) Achaemenes (*Hakhamanish*)

(2) Teispes (*Chdishpish*)

(6) Ariaramnes (*Ariyaramna*) (3) Cambyses (*Kambujiya*)

(7) Arsames (*Arshama*) (4) Cyrus (*Kurush*)

(8) Hystaspes (*Vishtaspa*) (5) Cambyses (*Kambujiya*)

(9) Darius (*Darayavush*)

Xerxes (*Khshaydrsha*)

Ordinarily, of course, Cyrus (B.C. 559-529) is reckoned the first king of the line ; his son Cambyses (B.C. 529-522) the second, and Darius (B.C. 521-485) the third ; but Darius himself counts his own ancestors up to Achaemenes, as well as the three kings (for he evidently includes Cambyses the father of Cyrus as well as Cambyses the son) of the collateral branch, and so the meanings of *duvitdtaranam*, "in a double line" (it was formerly translated "from a very ancient time"), and of Darius's "I am the ninth" become perfectly plain.

Any observant traveller who visits Persepolis and its surroundings will remark with some surprise that the inscriptions of the oldest period are the best preserved, while the most modern are the least legible. The Achaemenian cuneiform is so clear and sharp that we can hardly believe that nearly two thousand four hundred years have elapsed since the chisel which cut it rested from its labour. The Sasanian (Pahlawi) inscriptions, though younger by some seven hundred and fifty years, are blurred and faint in comparison ; while the quite recent inscriptions in Modern Persian are almost obliterated. This seems to me a type of the three epochs represented by them, and to be reflected in the literary style of their contents. The great Darius is content to call himself " the Great King, the King of kings, King in Persia, King of the provinces, the son of Vishtasp, the grandson of Arshama, the Achaemenian." Shapur the Sasanian calls himself in the Pahlawi inscription at Haji-abad, " the Mazda-worshipping divine being Shahpuhar, King of kings of Iran and non-Iran, of spiritual descent from God, son of the Mazda-worshipping divine being Artakhshatr, King of kings of Iran, of spiritual descent from God, grandson of the divine being Papak the King." As for the mass of empty, high-sounding titles with which the most petty Persian rulers of later Muhammadan times thought it necessary to bedeck their names, they are but too familiar to every Persian student, and I will not weary others by such vain repetitions.

I have said that we should rather speak of the Achaemenian inscriptions as *historical* than as *literary* monuments of the Old Persian language, yet there is in them a directness, a dignity, a simplicity and straightforwardness of diction, which entitle us to regard them as having a real literary style. The portion of Darius's great inscription from Behistun translated at pp. 31-32 *supra*, will serve as one specimen, and here is another, emanating from the same king, from Persepolis:—

" A great god is Ahuramazda, who hath created this earth, who hath created that heaven, who hath created man, who created the

gladness of man, who made Darius king, sole king of many, sole lawgiver of many.

" I am Darius, the great King, the King of kings, King of lands peopled by all races, for long King of this great earth, the son of Vishtasp, the Achaemenian, a Persian, son of a Persian, an Aryan of Aryan descent.

" Saith Darius the King : By the grace of Ahuramazda, these are the lands of which I held possession beyond Persis, over which I held sway, which brought me tribute, which did that which was commanded them by me, and wherein my Law was maintained : Media, Susiana, Parthia, Haraiva [Herat], Bactria [Balkh], Sughd, Khwarazm [Khiva], Drangiana, Arachosia, Thatagush [the Satagydae], Gandara, India, the Haumavarka Sacae and Tigrakhuda Sacae, Babylon, Assyria, Arabia, Egypt, Armenia, Cappadocia, Sparda, the Ionians, the Sacas across the sea, Skudra, the crown-wearing Ionians,¹ the Putiya, the Kushiya, the Machiya, the Karkas.

" Saith Darius the King : When Ahuramazda saw this earth . . . , then did He entrust it to me, He made me King, I am King, by the grace of Ahuramazda have I set it in right order, what I commanded them [*i.e.*, men] that was carried out, as was my Will. If thou thinkest, 'How many were the lands which King Darius ruled?' then behold this picture : they bear my Throne, thereby thou may'st know them. Then shalt thou know that the spears of the men of Persia reach afar; then shalt thou know that the Persian waged war far from Persia.

" Saith Darius the King : What I have done, that did I all by the grace of Ahuramazda : Ahuramazda vouchsafed me help till I completed the work. May Ahuramazda protect me from . . . , and [likewise] my House and these lands ! For this do I pray Ahuramazda : may Ahuramazda vouchsafe me this !

" O man ! This is Ahuramazda's command to thee : Think no evil; abandon not the right path; sin not !"

One curious phenomenon presented by one of the latest Achaemenian inscriptions (that of Artaxerxes Ochus, B.c. 361-336) deserves a passing notice. Does some subtle connection exist between the decay of a language and the decay, or at least temporary subordination, of a race ? I have

¹ This explanation is, I believe, now challenged. Professor Cowell used to teach that it referred to the *kyrmbes*, a crown of hair, fastened by a golden grasshopper, which was worn by the Athenians till the time of Thucydides.

heard it said by English scholars that already before the Battle of Hastings the Anglo-Saxon, or Old English, language had, to a great extent, ceased to be written grammatically, and that it was in full decadence before the Norman invasion. As regards the Old Persian language, at least, this appears to be beyond doubt; and in the inscription to which reference is made above we find such errors in declensions and cases as *bumam* ("earth," ace. case) for *bumim*; *asmanam* ("heaven," ace. sing.) for *asmanam*; *shayatam* ("joy," ace. sing.) for *shiyatim*; *martihya* ("of men," gen. pi.) for *martiyahya*; *khshayathiya* ("king," nom. for ace. sing.), and the like. And concurrently with this decay of language appear signs of a degeneration in creed; Ahuramazda no longer stands alone, but is associated with other gods, Mithra (the Sun) and Anahita (Venus).

Degeneration of
language and
creed in latest
inscriptions.

§ IL THE AVESTA.

We have already, in Chapter I, touched on some of the general questions connected with the origin, age, and home of the Avesta, and the language in which it is written—questions not admitting, unfortunately, of very precise or certain answers. Geldner's article on "Zoroaster" in the ninth edition of the *Encyclopedia Britannica* (1888), and Darmesteter's French translation of the Avesta in the *Annales du Muséum Guimet*, vols, xxi, xxii, xxiv (1892-3), may be taken as representing the two extreme views. According to the former, part of the Avesta at least (the Gathas) represented the actual utterances of Zoroaster or his immediate disciples; Bactria was the scene of his activity, and its language the vehicle of his teaching; the King Vishtasp (Gushtasp, Hystaspes), whom he converted, and who became the zealous patron and protector of his creed, "has no place in any historical chronology," "must have lived long before Cyrus," and "must be

Geldner's earlier
views (1888).

carefully distinguished from Hystaspes the father of Darius ; " and the period at which he flourished may have been anything from B.C. 1000 (Duncker) to B.C. 1400 (Gutschmid). According to the latter, the Zoroastrian scriptures of Achaemenian times (if they ever existed) entirely Darmesteter's later views (1893). perished after Alexander's invasion ; the construction of the Avesta (of which we now possess a portion only) began in the first century of our era, in the reign of the Parthian Vologeses I (A.D. 51-78), was continued under the Sasanians until the reign of Shapur II (A.D. 309-379), and, in its later portion, was largely influenced by the Gnosticism of the Alexandrian or Neo-Platonist philosophy ; Media was the home of the Zoroastrian doctrine, and the Medic language its vehicle of expression ; and the origin of the Zoroastrian creed goes back (as definitely stated in such Pahlawi books as the *Arda Viraf Namak* and the *Bundahish*) only to a period of three centuries or less before Alexander's time, that is, to the sixth or seventh century before Christ, or, in other words, to a period slightly more remote than the beginning of the Achaemenian dynasty.

The views advanced by Darmesteter, though they have not commanded general assent, have nevertheless greatly modified those of the other school, notably of Geldner, Geldner's later view (1896). especially by causing them to pay much greater attention to the traditions embodied in the Pahlawi, Parsi, and early Muhammadan writings. Thus Geldner, in the interesting article on the Avesta contributed by him to Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss* (1896), while withholding his assent from some of Darmesteter's most revolutionary views as to the modern origin of the Avesta in the form known to us, attaches great importance to the Parsi tradition ; identifies Zoroaster's King Hystaspes with the historical father of Darius ; makes Zoroaster a contemporary of Cyrus the Great ; fixes, accordingly, the earliest limit or the Avesta as B.C. 560 ; admits the destruction of the original

Avesta during the period separating Alexander's invasion from the reign of Vologeses I, who first began its reconstruction, a work renewed with vigour by Ardashir, the founder of the Sasanian dynasty; and allows that additions may have continued to be made to it till the reign of Shapur II (A.D. 309-379). He still holds, however, that the Gathas are not only the oldest portion of the Avesta, but represent the actual teachings and utterances of Zoroaster, of whose real, historical character he remains firmly persuaded; and adduces good historical evidence against Darmesteter's view that the Gathas are to be regarded as reflecting Alexandrian Gnosticism, or that the V6hu-man6 (Bahman) which appears so frequently in them owes its origin to the Xoyoc Qtioc of Philo Judaeus.

Since Anquetil's time it has been well known that the Avesta, as we now possess it, is only a fragment of the entire work which existed even in the Sasanian period ;

The Sasinian Avesta. while this in turn was "not more than a single priest could easily carry in his head" out of the Avesta "written with gold ink on prepared ox-hides and stored up in Srikhar-Papakan," which was destroyed by "the accursed Alexander the Roman." Yet the Vendidad, which constitutes a considerable portion of the existing Avesta, makes a fair-sized volume, and it was but one of the twenty-one *nosks* into which the Sasanian Avesta was divided, and of which the contents are in some measure known to us from the Pahlawi *Dinkard*, a very important work, dating, probably, from the ninth century of our era. These twenty-one *nosks*, of which the Pahlawi names are known to us,¹ were divided equally into three groups—the *gasanik* (mainly theological and liturgical), the *datik* (mainly legal), and the *hatak-mansarik* (philosophical and scientific). Of the seven *nosks* constituting the first group (intended principally for the priests) we still possess fragments of three—the *Stot-yasht*, the *Bako*, and the *Hatokht*; of the second seven (intended for the laity) also three—the

¹ See Geldner in the *Grundriss*, vol ii, pp. 18, 20.

Vendidad, and parts of the *Husparam* and *Bakan-yasht*; while the third group, appealing to the more limited circle of learned and scientific men, has unfortunately (probably for that very reason) perished entirely. According to West's conjecture, these twenty-one *nosks*, which composed the Sasanian Avesta, contained in all about 347,000 words, of which we now possess only some 83,000, or about a quarter. Concerning the division above mentioned, Geldner remarks that it is "partly artificial, and is based on the attempt to establish a strict analogy between the whole Avesta and the *Ahuna-Vairya* verse, which is regarded as the quintessence and original foundation of the whole Avesta revelation." This remark suggests two interesting analogies with later times, and serves to illustrate what has been already said as to the remarkable persistence or recurrence of ideas in the East—a phenomenon of which I have elsewhere spoken in greater detail. The first of these is embodied in a Shi'ite tradition ascribed to 'All, which runs as follows :—

A curious
analogy.

"All that is in the Qur'an is in the Suratu'l-Fatiha [the opening chapter], and all that is in the Suratu'l-Fatiha is in the Bismi'llah [the formula 'In the name of God, the Merciful, the Forgiving,' which stands at the head of every chapter except one of the Muhammadan Scripture, and which is used by Muhammadans when entering on any undertaking], and all that is in the Bismi'llah is (n the B of the Bismi'llah, and all that is in the B of the Bismi'llah is in the point which is under the B, and I am the Point which is under the B."

The second is the further expansion and application of this idea by the Bab, the founder of the last great religious movement in Persia, who was put to death in 1850 at Tabriz ; for he declared 19—the number of the letters in the Bismi'llah—to be the "Unity" (in Arabic *Wahid*, "One," in which, curiously enough, the numerical values of the component letters add up to 19) which was at once the intelligible Mani-

festation of the Ineffable One and the proper numerical base of all computation, so that he made his books to consist of 19 "Unities," each containing 19 chapters, and the year to consist of 19 months of 19 days each (= 361 days).

The existing Avesta, as already said, contains but one complete *nosk* out of the twenty-one which it comprised in

Sasanian times, viz., the Vendidad; while portions of at least four others enter into the composition

of the Yasna, and other fragments are preserved in some Pahlawi books, notably the Husparam in the Nirangistan. The extant books and religious formulae of the Avesta are divided into five chief groups or sections, which are as follows :—

1. The *Yasna*, or liturgical portion, consisting of hymns recited in honour of the different angels, spirits, and divine beings. It comprises seventy-two chapters (called *haiti* or *ha*) symbolised by the seventy-two strands which compose the *kushti*, or sacred girdle, investiture with which constitutes the formal admission of the young Zoroastrian to the Zoroastrian Church. In it are included the ancient Gathas to which reference has already been made.

2. The *Vispered*, comprising 23-27 chapters (called *karde*), is not an independent, coherent, and self-contained book, but a collection of formulae and doxologies similar and supplementary to the Yasna, in conjunction with which it is used liturgically.

3. The *Vendidad*, or "Law against the demons," is, in Geldner's words, "the Leviticus of the Parsis, the Ecclesiastical Law-book, which prescribes the priestly purifications, expiations, and ecclesiastical penances," and comprises twenty-two chapters (*fargard*). Of these, the first, describing the successive creation by Ormuzd (Ahura Mazda) of the good lands, and the counter-creation by Ahriman (Anro Mainyush) of a corresponding evil in each case, has been the chief basis of all discussion as to the

regions originally known to and inherited by the people of the Avesta.

4. The *Yashts*, twenty-one in number (*cf.* p. 98, 1.5 *supra*), are hymns in honour of the various angels and spiritual beings, the

Amshaspands and *Izads*, one of whom presides
The *Yashts*. over, and gives his name to, each of the thirty

days which constitute the Zoroastrian month. Originally, as the Parsis hold, each of these had his appropriate *Yasht*; so that it would appear that nearly a third part of this portion of the Avesta has been lost. This mention of the Zoroastrian calendar reminds me of another illustration of

that resurgence of ancient religious beliefs and
observances in the East of which I have
already spoken. The Zoroastrian year comprises
12 months of 30 days each, to which are added

5 extra days, called the *gathas*. The year, in short, is a solar year, comprising, like our own, 365 days, with a suitable arrangement for further intercalation. The modern Babis, wholly Muhammadan in outward origin, and ultra-Shi'ite in their earlier stages of development, abandoned the Muhammadan lunar year (which falls short of the solar by about 11 days), and, taking as their numerical base their favourite number 19, substituted for it a solar year consisting of 19 months of 19 days each, making a total of 361 (= 19 x 19) days, which were supplemented as required to maintain the correspondence between the calendar and the real season, by some or all of the five extra days which represented the numerical value of the Babi's title (B = 2, A = 1, B = 2), and were, in the Babi phrase, fixed "according to the number of the *Ha*," *ie.*, of the Arabic letter which stands for *five*. More than this, each day of the Babi month, and each month of the Babi year, is consecrated to, and derives its name from, some attribute, aspect or function of the Deity, just as each day and each month of the Zoroastrian year stand in a similar relation to one of the angelic beings who constitute the Zoroastrian

Another illustration of the resurgence in the East of ancient religious doctrines and observances

spiritual hierarchy. The only difference between the two systems—the most ancient and the most modern which Persia has produced—lies in the substitution of attributes for Angels by the Babis, and further in the fact that to only twelve of the thirty Amshaspands and Izads who preside over the days of the month are allotted months also, while with the Babis the same nineteen names serve for both purposes. In both calendars the week plays no part ; in both it happens once in each month that the same name indicates both the month and the day; and in both cases such days are observed as festivals. Yet it is most improbable that the Bab, who was a Sayyid, and, ere he announced his Divine mission (A.D. 1844), an ultra-zealous Shi'ite, holding all unbelievers as unclean and to be sedulously avoided (he enjoins in the Persian *Bayan* the expulsion of all who refuse to accept his doctrine, save such as are engaged in avocations useful to the community, from the five principal provinces of Persia), had, or would have condescended to acquire, any direct knowledge of the Zoroastrian religion and practices ; and the same applies to the many striking analogies which his doctrine, and even phraseology, present with those of the Isma'ilis and other older sects ; so that we are almost driven to regard a certain circle of religious and philosophical ideas as endemic in Persia, and liable at any moment, under a suitable stimulus, to become epidemic. To this point we shall have repeated occasion to recur later.

5. The *Khorda Avesta*, or " Little A vesta," is a kind of prayer-book or religious chrestomathy compiled for the use of the laity in the reign of Shapur II (A.D. 310-379) by the priest, Adharpadh Mahraspand. It consists partly of selections from the whole Avesta, partly of formulae written in Pazend (see pp. 81-2 *supra*); and comprises the five *Nyayishes* (prayers addressed to the Sun, the Moon, Mithra, the Genius of the Water, and the Bahram-Fire), the five *Gahs*, the greater and lesser *Siruz*a ("thirty days"), and the four *Afringan*, or blessings.

The *Khorda*
Avesta.

Such, with the independent fragments preserved in Pahlawi books like the *Nirangistan* (chief amongst which are the *Aogemadaeca* and *Hadokht-nosk*), is that remnant of the Zoroastrian scriptures which we now know as the Avesta. Intensely interesting though it be as an ancient document embodying the doctrines of so celebrated a person as Zoroaster, and the tenets of an old-world faith which once played an important part in the world's history, and which, though numbering at the present day not ten thousand adherents in Persia, and not more than ninety thousand in India,¹ has profoundly influenced other religions of intrinsically greater importance, the Avesta cannot be described as either pleasant or interesting reading. It is true that the interpretation of many passages is doubtful, and that better understanding might lead to higher appreciation of these ; but, speaking for myself, I can only say that while my appreciation of the Qur'an grows the more I study it and endeavour to grasp its spirit, the study of the Avesta, save for philological, mythological, or other comparative purposes, leads only to a growing weariness and satiety. The importance of its place in the history of religious thought, as well as its interest from an antiquarian and philological point of view, will ever attract to it a certain number of devoted students, apart from those who regard it as a Revelation and a Law from God ; but to me it is doubtful whether any translation of it could be made which the ordinary reader of average curiosity and intelligence would be willing to read through from cover to cover, save for some special purpose. At any rate the number of translations into English, French, and German is sufficiently large to enable any one who chooses to try the experiment for himself, and the citation of selected passages in this place appears quite superfluous.

Review of the
Avesta as a
whole.

¹ See Mademoiselle D. Menant's *Les Parsts* (Paris, 1898), pp. 52-56.

PAHLAWI INSCRIPTIONS

§ III. THE PAHLAWI LITERATURE.

The earliest traces of the Pahlawi language (of which, as already pointed out, the apparent mingling of Semitic and Iraian words, brought about by the use of the Huzvarish system, is the essential feature) occur, as first pointed out by Levy of Breslau in 1867,¹ on sub-Parthian coins of the end of the fourth and beginning of the third century before Christ—in other words, soon after the end of the Achaemenian period ; and Pahlawi legends are borne by the later Parthian, all the Sasanian, and the early Muhammadan coins of Persia, including amongst the latter the coins struck by the independent Ispahbads of Tabaristin, as well as those of the earlier Arab governors. The Pahlawi coin-legends extend, therefore, from about B.C. 300 to A.D. 695, when the Umayyad Caliph 'Abdu'l-Malik abolished the Persian currency and introduced a coinage bearing Arabic legends.²

The Pahlawi inscriptions date from the beginning of Sasanian times, the two oldest being those of Ardashir and Shapur, the first and second kings of that illustrious house (A.D. 226-241 and 241-272) ; and they extend down to the eleventh century, to which belong the inscriptions cut in the Kanheri Buddhist caves in Salsette near Bombay by certain Parsis who visited them in A.D. 1009 and 1021. Intermediate between these extremes are ten signatures of witnesses on a copper-plate grant to the Syrian Christians of the Malabar coast. The grant itself is engraved in old Tamil characters on five copper plates, and a sixth contains the names of the twenty-five witnesses attesting it, of which eleven are in Kufic Arabic, ten in Sasanian Pahlawi, and four in the Hebrew character and Persian language.³

¹ Z.D.M.G., xxi, pp. 421-465.

² See the Arab historians—*e.g.*, Dinawari (ed. Guirgass, 1888), p. 322.

³ See Haug's *Essay on Pahlawi*, pp. 80-82 ; West's article on *Pahlawi Literature* in the *Grundriss*, vol. ii, p. 79, and the references there given.

Of the age of the Pahlawi literature, properly so called, we have already spoken (pp. 7-8 *supra*). It was essentially **the** Persian literature of the Sasanian period, but was naturally continued for some time after the fall of that dynasty. Thus the *Gujastak Abalish namak*, to which reference has already been made, narrates a discussion held between an orthodox Zoroastrian priest, Atur-farnbag son of Farrukh-zad, and a heretical dualist (perhaps a Manichaean) in the presence of the 'Abbasid Caliph al-Ma'mun (A.D. 813-833), so that the period to which this literature belongs may be considered to extend from the third to the ninth or tenth centuries of our era, at which time the natural use of Pahlawi may be considered to have ceased, though at all times, even to the present day, learned Zoroastrians were to be found who could compose in Pahlawi. Such late, spurious Pahlawi, however, commonly betrays its artificial origin, notably by the confusing of the adjectival termination *-ik* with the nominal or substantival termination *-ih*, both of which are represented by *-i* in Modern Persian.

Of actual written Pahlawi documents, the papyrus-fragments from the Fayyum in Egypt, which West supposes to date from the eighth century of our era, are the most ancient, and after them there is nothing older than the MS. of the Pahlawi Yasna known as "J. 2," which was completed on January 25, A.D. 1323. Pahlawi manuscripts naturally continue to be transcribed amongst the Parsis down to the present day, though since the introduction of Pahlawi type, and the gradual publication by printing or lithography of the more important books, the function of the scribe, here as in the case of other Eastern languages, has in large measure fallen into abeyance.

The Pahlawi literature is divided by West, who is certainly the greatest living authority on it, and who is *in* this portion of our subject our chief guide, into three classes, as follows :—

Pahlawi
literature.

Pahlawi
manuscripts.

Extent and
character of
the Pahlawi
literature.

1. *Pahlawi translations of Avesta texts*, represented by twenty-seven works, or fragments of works, estimated to contain in all about 141,000 words.¹ Valuable as these are for the exegesis or the Avesta, they "cannot be really considered," in West's words, "as a sample of Pahlawi literature, because the Parsi translators have been fettered by the Avesta arrangement of the words."

2. *Pahlawi texts on religious subjects*, represented by fifty-five works, estimated to contain about 446,000 words. This class contains, besides commentaries, prayers, traditions (*riwayat*s), admonitions, injunctions, pious sayings, and the like, several important and interesting works, amongst which the following deserve particular mention. The *Dinkart*

The *Dinkart* (9th century). ("Acts of Religion"), "a large collection of information regarding the doctrines, customs, traditions, history and literature of the Mazda-worshipping religion," of which the compilation was begun in the ninth century of our era by the same Atur-farnbag who appears before al-Ma'mun as the champion of orthodox Zoroastrianism against "the accursed Abalish," and concluded towards the end of the same century.² The *Bundahishn*

The *Bundahishn* (12th century). ("The Ground-giving"), an extensive manual of religious knowledge,³ comprising, in the fuller recession known as the "Iranian," forty-six chapters, which appears to have been finally concluded in the eleventh or twelfth century of our era, though the bulk of it is probably a good deal earlier. The *Datistan-i-Dinik*, or

The *Datistan-i-Dinik* (9th century). "Religious Opinions" of Manushchihar, son of Yudan-Yim, high-priest of Pars and Kirman in the latter part of the ninth century, on ninety-two

¹ The full enumeration of these and the following will be found in West's article in the *Grundriss* already referred to.

² A very full analysis of its contents is given by West, *op. cit.*, pp. 91-98.

³ For translation see West's *Pahlawi texts* in vol. v of the *Sacred Books of the East*, pp. 1-151 (Oxford, 1880). For analysis of contents see West's article in the *Grundriss*, pp. 100-102.

topics, characterised by West as "one of the most difficult Pahlawi texts in existence, both to understand and to translate." The *Shikand-gumanik Vijar*¹ ("Doubt-dispelling Explanation"), a controversial religious work, composed towards the end of the ninth century, in defence of the Zoroastrian dualism against the Jewish, Christian, Manichasan, and Muhammadan theories of the nature and origin of evil; and described by West as "the nearest approach to a philosophical treatise that remains extant in Pahlawi literature." The *Dina-i-Mainyo* [or *Mainog*] *-i-Khirad* ("Opinions of the Spirit of Wisdom") contains the answers of this spirit to sixty-two inquiries on matters connected with the Zoroastrian faith. The publication of the Pahlawi text by Andreas (Kiel, 1882), and of the Pazend text with Neriosengh's Sanskrit translation by West (Stuttgart, 1871), who has also published English translations of both texts (1871 and 1885), render it one of the most accessible of Pahlawi works, and as pointed out by Noldeke in his translation of the *Karnamak-i-Artakhshatr-i-Papakan*, one of the best books for beginning the study of book-Pahlawi. The *Arda-Viraf Namak* is another very well-known work, accessible in the original (Bombay, 1872) and in English and French translations, and may be briefly described as a prose Zoroastrian *Paradiso* and *Inferno*. It is interesting for the picture it gives of the religious and material anarchy in Persia produced by the invasion of "the accursed Alexander the Roman," of the Sasanian national and religious revival in the third century of our era, and of the Zoroastrian ideas of the future life. In the latter we can hardly fail to be struck by the analogy between the Chinvat Bridge and the Muhammadan

¹ Translated by West in vol. xxiv of the *Sacred Books or the East* series (Oxford, 1885), pp. 115-251; and published in Pazend by the same scholar in conjunction with the Parsi Hoshang in 1887.

Bridge of Sirat, " finer than a hair and sharper than a sword," to which Byron alludes in the well-known lines—

"By Allah, I would answer 'Nay!'
Though on al-Sirat's bridge I stood,
Which totters o'er the burning flood,
With Paradise within my view,
And all its houris beckoning through."

And these *houris* also seem to find their more spiritual prototype in the fair maiden who meets the departed soul of the righteous man, and who, on being questioned, declares herself to be the embodiment of the good deeds, the good words, and the good thoughts which have proceeded from him during his life. The "*Book of the accursed Abalish*" already mentioned more than once, was published by Barthelemy in 1887, with the Pazend and Parsi-Persian versions and a French translation. The *Jamasp-namak*, known in its entirety only in Pazend and Persian versions, contains some interesting mythological and legendary matter about the ancient mythical kings of the Persian Epos. The *Andaraz-i-Khusraw-i-Kawatan*, or dying injunctions of King Nushirwan (Anoshak-ruban, A.D. 531-578) to his people, though of very small extent, deserves mention because it has been taken by Salemann in his *Mittelpersische Studien* (Melanges Asiatiques, ix, pp. 242-253, St. Petersburg, 1887) as the basis of a very interesting and luminous study of the exact fashion in which a Pahlawi text would probably have sounded when read aloud ; an ingenious attempt at a critical Pazend transcription.

3. *Pahlawi texts on non-religious subjects*, represented by only eleven works, comprising in all about 41,000 words. This class of Pahlawi literature is at once the most interesting and the least extensive. A large non-theological literature no doubt existed in Sasanian times, and many works of this class no longer extant (notably the *Khudhay-namak*, or " Book of Kings," which will be dis-

Matigan-i-
gujastak
Abalish.

Andaraz-i-
Khusraw-i-
Kavatan.

Non-theological
Pahlawi works.

cussed in the next section) are known to us by name, and to some extent in substance, through the early Arabic and Muhammadan Persian writers. The same cause which led to the loss of the scientific and philosophical *nosks* of the Avesta (the *hatak mansarik*: see p. 97 *supra*), namely, the comparative indifference of the Zoroastrian priests, who were practically the sole guardians of the old literature after the fall of the Sasanian Empire, to all books which did not bear immediately on their own interests, led, no doubt, to the loss of the greater part of the profane literature of the Sasdnian period. The works of this class now extant are so few that they may be enumerated in full. They comprise : (1) *The Social Code of the Zoroastrians in Sasanian Times*. (2) *The Yatkar-i-Zariran* (also called the *Shahnama-i-Gushtasp* and the *Pahlawi Shahnama*), translated into German by Geiger in the *Sitzungsberichte d. phil. und hist. Classe d. Kais. bayer. Akad. d. Wissenschaften* for 1890, ii, pp. 243-84, and further discussed by Noldeke two years later in the same periodical.¹ (3) *The Tale of Khusraw-i-Kawatan (Nushirwan) and his Page*. (4) The extremely interesting *Karnamak-i-Artakhshatr-i-Papakan*, or "Gests of Ardashir Babakan," the founder of the Sasanian dynasty, of which the Pahlawi text² (which appears, however, to be edited with little criticism) was published at Bombay in 1896 by Kayqubad Adharbad Dastur Nushirwan, while an excellent German translation, with critical notes and a most luminous Introduction, by Professor Noldeke of Strassburg, appeared at Gottingen in 1878. Of this book I shall have occasion to speak much more fully in connection with the *Shdh-nama*, or "Book of Kings." It and the two preceding ones may be classed together as the sole survivors of the "historical novel" of Sasanian times ;

¹ This work is placed by Noldeke about the year A.D. 500, and is described by him as "wohl die älteste eigentliche Heldensage, die uns in iranischer Sprache erhalten ist."

² The date of its composition is placed by Noldeke about A.D. 600.

though the contents or titles of others are known to us through Arabic writers (such as Masaudi, Dinawari, and the author of the invaluable *Fihrist*), while the substance of one, the *Book of the Gests and Adventures of Bahram Chubin*, has been in part reconstructed by Professor Noldeke (*Geschichte der . . . Sasantden*, Leyden, 1879, pp. 474-487). The remaining books of this class (mostly of small extent) are : (5) *The Cities of Iran*; (6) the *Wonders of Sagistan*; (7) the *Dirakht-i-Ashrig*, or "Tree of Assyria"; (8) the *Chatrang-namak*, or "Book of Chess" ; (9) *Forms of Epistles*; (10) *Form of Marriage Contract*, dated to correspond with November 16, A.D. 1278 ; and (11) the well-known *Farhang-i-Pahlawik*, or "Old Pahlawi-Pazend Glossary," published at Bombay and London by Hoshang and Haug in 1870.

Besides the Pahlawi literature, there also exists a modern Persian Zoroastrian literature, of which the most important works are: the *Zartushtndma* ("Book of Zoroaster ") in verse, composed at Ray in Persia in the thirteenth century; the *Sad-dar* (" Hundred Chapters "), a sort of epitome of the Zoroastrian faith in three recensions (one prose, two verse), of which the first is the oldest; the '*Ulama-i-Islam* ("Doctors of Islam"); the *Riwayats*, or collections of religious traditions ; the *jissa-i-Sanjan*, or narrative of the Zoroastrian exodus to India after the Muhammadan conquest of Persia ; and several Persian versions of Pahlawi texts. These are discussed by West in an Appendix to his article in the *Grundriss* (pp. 122-129). I know of no literary activity amongst the Persian Zoroastrians of Yazd and Kirman in recent times, and though amongst themselves they continue to speak the peculiar Gabri dialect already mentioned, their speech in mixed society scarcely differs from that of their Muhammadan fellow citizens, and their letters are entirely copied from the ordinary models.

Persian
Zoroastrian
literature.

Existence of
verse in
Sasanian times.

The question of the existence of poetry in Sasanian times

has been already discussed at pp. 14-16 *supra*. If it ever existed, no remnants of it, so far as is known, have survived till the present day.

As has been already pointed out, the substance of a certain number of Pahlawi works which have perished is preserved to some extent by some Muhammadan writers, especially the earlier Arabic historians (that is, Arabic-writing, for most of them were Persians by race), such as Tabari, Mas'udi, Dinawari, and the like, who drew for the most part their materials from Arabic translations of Pahlawi books made by such men as Ibnu'l-Muqaffa', who were well acquainted with both languages. Of such translations a considerable number are enumerated in the *Fihrist*, but Ibnu'l-Muqaffa's rendering of *Kalila and Dimna* (brought from India in the time of Nushirwan "the Just," together with the game of Chess, and translated for him into Pahlawi) is almost the only one which has survived in its entirety. Amongst the early Arabic writers, the best informed on Persian topics include, besides Tabari († A.D. 923), al-Jahidh († A.D. 869), al-Kisrawi († A.D. 870), Ibn Qutayba († A.D. 889), al-Ya'qubi († A.D. 900), Dinawari († A.D. 895), Masaudi (flourished in the middle of the tenth century), especially his *Muruju dh-dhahab* and *Kitabu't-tanbih wa'l-ishraf*, Hamza of Isfahan (A.D. 961), al-Biruni (end of tenth and early eleventh century), al-Baladhuri († A.D. 892), the author of the *Fihrist*, Muhammad b. Ishaq (end of tenth century), and others. Amongst Persian works, Bal'ami's translation of Tabari's history (A.D. 963), the anonymous *Mujmalu't- Tawarikh*, and Firdawsi's great epic, the *Shahnama*, of which we shall speak immediately, are perhaps the most important from this point of view.

§ IV. THE PERSIAN NATIONAL EPIC.

Hitherto we have spoken chiefly of the real history of Ancient Persia, as derived from the oldest and most credible

sources—inscriptions, coins, and the writers of antiquity. It is now necessary that we should briefly examine the ideas that the Persians themselves entertain as to the dynasties and kings who ruled over them in days of old—in other words, the National Legend, which only begins to run parallel with actual history at the beginning of the Sasanian period. This National Legend finds its ultimate development in the celebrated epic of the *Shahnama*, or "Book of Kings," an immense poem, generally computed at about 60,000 couplets, composed by Firdawsi for Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna, and completed, after some forty years of labour, in the year A.D. 1010. As a literary work this great epic will be more properly discussed in a later chapter, but, since it remains till the present day the chief source whence the Persians derive their ideas as to the ancient history of their nation, it will be proper to discuss briefly in this chapter both the nature and antiquity of its contents. This matter has been treated in a most exhaustive and scholarly manner by Professor Noldeke of Strassburg in his article entitled *Das Iranische Nationalepos*, contributed to vol. ii of Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss*, and also published in separate form (Trubner, Strassburg, 1896). Of this excellent work, which probably represents the limit of knowledge attainable in this direction, the freest use is made in the brief account here given of the history of this National Legend or Saga.

The *Shahnama* recognises four dynasties of pre-Muham-
 madan Persian kings—the *Pishdadi*, the *Kayani*, the *Ashkani*
 (or Parthian, also called in Arabic *Muluku't-*
 Contents of the *Shahnama*. *Tawa'if* or "Tribal Kings"), and the *Sasani*.

Of these, the two first are entirely unhistorical, belonging, as we have already said, to the mythology of the Avesta and the common Indo-Iranian legend; the third is historical in a sense, but nothing is remembered of it save a few names, mentioned without much order or method, and the fact that it filled the gap between Alexander the Great and

Ardashir the first Sasanian ; the fourth is wholly historical in the sense that the kings composing it are historical personages arranged in correct order, though naturally their deeds and adventures contain much legendary matter, especially in the earlier portion.

The first king of the legendary Pishdadi dynasty, called *Gayumarth*, is the first man of the Avesta, *Gayo Mareta*, the Zoroastrian Adam. He dwells in the mountains, dresses himself and his people in leopard-skins, brings the beasts of the field into subjugation, wages a war on the demons, in which his son *Siyamak* is killed, and, after a reign of thirty years, dies, and is succeeded by his grandson *Hushang* (Arabic *Ushhanj*. Hushang reigns forty years, accidentally discovers how to produce fire by flint and steel, and establishes the Festival of *Sadah* to commemorate this great discovery. He is succeeded by his son *Tahmurath*, called *Div-band*, "the Binder of Demons," since he brought these beings into subjection, but spared their lives on condition that they should teach him the art of writing " not one but nearly 30 languages."¹ After reigning thirty years he is succeeded by his son *Jamshid* a much more important figure in the Persian Legend than any of his predecessors.

The early Arab (i.e., Arabic-writing) historians, who for the most part endeavour to combine the Iranian with Semitic and Biblical legends, commonly identify Jamshid with Solomon. Practically speaking nearly all the Achaemenian monuments about Persepolis are referred by the Persians to these kings, and apparently for no better reason than the following : " These gigantic buildings," they say, " are evidently beyond the power of the unaided humanity of that age; therefore whoever built them was helped by the demons. But it is a well-known fact that only two kings had command over the demons, namely Solomon and Jamshid ;

¹ See Macan's ed. of the *Shahnama*, p. 18.

therefore Solomon and Jamshid built these monuments." Accordingly they call Persepolis *Takhi-i-Jamshid*, " the Throne of Jamshid " ; the Tomb of Cyrus, *Masjid-i-Madar-i-Sulayman*, " the Mosque of Solomon's Mother " ; and another platform-like structure on a hill adjacent to the monuments in the Murghab plain *Takht-i-Sulayman* " the Throne of Solomon." Such identifications were favoured by the Zoroastrians in Muhammadan times as tending to improve their position with their conquerors, and secure for them the privileges accorded by victorious Islam to " the people of the Book"—that is, peoples like the Jews and Christians who, though not believers in the Qur'an, possessed Scriptures recognised by Muhammad. The most notable of these false identifications is that of Zoroaster with Abraham, and of the Avesta with the *Suhuf* (" Leaflets " or " Tracts ") supposed by the Muhammadans to have been revealed to him, and recognised by them as one of the five revelations made to the five great Prophets, the other four being the Pentateuch (*Tawrat*) of Moses, the Psalms (*Zubur* or *Mazamir*) of David, the Gospel (*Injil*) of Jesus Christ, and the *Shir'a'n* of Muhammad. But of course well-informed writers like Ibnu'l-Muqaffa' knew that these identifications were wrong, just as well as we now know that Sir William Jones's identifications of Kay-Khusraw and Shiruye with Cyrus and Xerxes are wrong. Thus Ibnu'l-Muqaffa' (quoted by Dinawari, ed. Guirgass, p. 9) says : " Ignorant Persians, and such as have no Science, suppose that King Jam was Solomon the son of David, but this is an error, for between Solomon and Jam was an interval of more than 3,000 years." It is now well known that Jam (the termination—*shid*, frequently dropped, is a mere epithet or title, as it is in *Khurshid*, " the Sun," representing the Avestic *Khshaeta*, " chief, sovereign, brilliant ") is identical with the *Tama* of the Hindu and the *Yima* of the Avestic mythology, though this hero of the Indo-Irldnian legend appears under rather different aspects in the three cases. With

the Hindus, he is the first great mortal to pass over into **the** After-world, and hence appears as a kind of Pluto, or King of Hades. In the Avesta he is "the fair Yima of goodly flocks," the son of *Vivanhao* (a name which, though absent from the *Shahnama*, occurs in early Muhammadan historians like Dinawari and Tabari as *Vivanjhan*, described as son of Iran or Arfakhshad, son of Sam or Shem, son of Noah), who is invited, but declines, to be the bearer of Ahura Mazda's message to mankind, and who is commissioned to build "the four-cornered Varena" for the protection of his people from the plague of cold created by Ahra Mainyush (Ahriman), the Evil Spirit. In the *Shahnama* he appears as a great king, who reigns for 700 years, not only over men, but over demons, birds, and fairies; invents weapons of war and the textile art; teaches men the use of animals; institutes the priestly, military, agricultural, and artisan classes; compels the demons to practise architecture; introduces the use of precious stones and metals, perfumes, and medicines; builds ships; causes himself to be transported (like Solomon in the Muhammadan legend) on an aerial throne whithersoever he will; and establishes the great national festival of the *Nawruz*, or New Year's Day, at the vernal equinox, when the Sun enters the sign of Aries. Thereupon his luck turns, for he becomes so inflated with pride as to claim divine honours, whereon he is overthrown and ultimately slain by the usurper *Dahak*-

This *Dahak* represents the snake *Azhi Dahaka* (later *Azhdahak*, *Azhdaha*, "a dragon") of the Avesta; and, with the two snakes growing from his shoulders which
Azhidahak or Dahak. require a daily meal of human brains, stands for the three-headed dragon of other Aryan mythologies. By Firdawsi (in whose time the memory of the Arab Conquest was still alive, and race hatred still ran high) he is metamorphosed into an Arab, and his name is consequently given an Arab form, *Dahhak* (with the hard Arabic d and h); he appears as a parricide, tyrant, and chosen instrument of the

Devil, who beguiles him from the primitive and innocent vegetarianism supposed to have hitherto prevailed into the eating of animal food and ultimate cannibalism. His demand for fresh victims to feed his snakes ultimately, after he has reigned nearly a thousand years, drives his wretched subjects into revolt, to which they are chiefly incited by the blacksmith Kawa, whose leathern apron, by a patriotic apotheosis, becomes the standard of national liberty. The young *Feridun* (Avestic *Thraetaana*, Indian *Thraitana*), son of *Abtin*, a descendant of *Tahmurath* and "of the seed of the Kayan," is brought forth from his hiding-place and hailed as king. He defeats *Dahak*, and chains him alive, Prometheus-like, in a cave at the summit of Mount *Damawand* (or *Dunbdwand*), the great conical peak of which is so clearly visible to the north-east of *Tihra*n, after which, amidst general rejoicings, he becomes king, and rules with great justice and splendour for five hundred years, so that of him it is said—

Faridun-i-farrukh farishta na-bud :
Zi mushk u zi ' anbat sarishta na-bud.
Bi-dad u dahish yaft an niku'i:
Tu dad u dahish kun: Faridun tu' il

" *Feridun* the fortunate was not an angel:
 He was not compounded of musk and of ambergris.
 By justice and bounty he attained such excellence:
 Be thou just and bountiful, and thou shalt be a *Feridun* !"

Yet for all this he was not exempt from bitter trouble in his own house. Having given his three sons in marriage to the three daughters of *Sarv* (or *Surv*, according to al-Bundarfi's Arabic prose translation of the *Shdhndma*, made about A.D. 1223), he divided between them his vast dominions, giving to *Iraj*, the youngest, the land of *Iran* (*Eran-shahr*). His other two sons, *Salm* and *Tar*,

¹ Cambridge MS. QQ. 46, a fine old fourteenth century MS. of this important compilation, concerning which see Noldeke's *Das Iranische Nationalepos*, p. 77 and n. 2.

regarding this as the choicest portion of the heritage, were filled with envy, and eventually, by a dastardly stratagem, succeeded in compassing the death of their younger brother. His body is brought to Feridun, who bitterly laments his death, and swears vengeance on Tur and Salm.

Some time after the murder of Iraj, his wife *Mah-afarid* bears a son, named *Manuchihr*, who, on reaching mature age, attacks and kills his wicked uncles, and sends their heads to Feridun. Soon after this, Feridun abdicates in favour of *Manuchihr*, and shortly afterwards dies.

The three sons of Feridun may be roughly described as the Shem, Ham, and Japhet of the Iranian legend ; and from this fratricidal strife date the wars between the sons of Tur (the Turanians or Turks), long led by the redoubtable *Afrasiyab*, and those of Iraj (the Iranians)—wars which fill so great a part not only of the legendary, but of the actual history of Persia. At this point the National Epic begins to be enriched by a series of episodes whereof the Avesta shows no trace, and which are connected with a series of heroes belonging to a noble family of Sistan and Zabulistan, viz., Nariman, Sam, Zal, Rustam, and Suhrab. Of these Rustam is by far the most important. For centuries he

plays the part of a *deus ex machina* in extricating the Persian Kayani monarchs—especially Kay Qubad, Kay Ka'us, and Kay Khusraw—from their difficulties and dangers, while, with his good horse *Rakhsh*, he plays the chief part in a series of heroic adventures in combats with men and demons. His death is only compassed at last by a treacherous stratagem of his brother, after he has slain

Isfandiyar (*Isfandiyadh*, *Spandedat*), the son of *Gushtasp* (*Vishtaspa*), the champion of Zoroaster. Spiege supposes ¹ that Rustam's name was deliberately suppressed in

¹ *Arische Studien*, p. 126.

the Avesta as an adversary of "the good Religion," but Noldeke¹ thinks this improbable, and inclines rather to the view that the Sistan legend to which he and his ancestors belong was almost or quite unknown to the authors of the Avesta. At any rate Rustam's name has only been found in one or two places in late Pahlawi writings, though his doughty deeds were known to the Armenian Moses of Khorene in the seventh or eighth century, and the stall of his horse Rakhsh was shown about the same period to the Arab invaders of Sistan.² Moreover, the Persian general who was defeated and slain by the Arabs in the fatal battle of Qadisiyya (A.D. 635) was a namesake of the great legendary hero.

The death of Rustam brings us nearly to the end of the Kayani, or purely mythical period of the Epic. Isfandiyar, the son of Gushtasp, leaves a son named *Bahman* (Vohumano), who succeeds his grandfather. In the later construction of the Epic this Bahman was identified with Artaxerxes (*Artakhshatr*, *Ardashir*) Longimanus (Ma , *Diraz-dast*),³ who was known through some Syriac writer drawing his material from Greek sources. Bahman, according to the practice of the Magians, married his sister *Khumani* (*Humay*), who bore him a posthumous son named 'Dara. Her brother Sasan, who had looked forward to inheriting the crown, was so overcome with disappointment at seeing his sister made Queen-Regent that he retired to the mountains amongst the Kurds and became a shepherd.⁴ From him, as the Persians believe, descend the Sasanian kings, who are uniformly regarded as the legitimate successors of the Kayanis, and the restorers of their glory. Their founder, *Ardashir Babakan* (*Artakhshatr* son of *Papak*), is represented

End of the purely
mythical part of
the Epic.

Bahman Artaxerxes Longimanus.

Khumani.

Dara.

Sasan.

¹ *Das Iranische Nationalepos*, p. 9.

² *Ibid.*, p. 11 and n. 2 *ad calc.*

³ *Ibid.*, p. 12, and n. 3 *ad calc.* ⁴ Dinawari, p. 29.

as the great-great-great-grandson of Sasan the son of Bahman the son of Zoroaster's patron Gushtasp. By thus representing their pedigree, the Sasanians strove to establish their position as the legitimate rulers of Persia, and "defenders of the faith" of Zoroaster—a character which, with few exceptions, they strenuously exerted themselves to maintain.

We have seen that the Parthians *Ashkaniyan*, *Mulkku't-Tawa'if*) occupy hardly any place in the Epic, and it might therefore be supposed that we should find therein an almost direct transition from the second Dara (son of him mentioned above) to the Sasanians.

At this point, however, an entirely foreign element is introduced, namely, the Alexander-romance, which, reposing ultimately on the lost Greek text of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, is preserved in Syriac, Egyptian, Abyssinian¹ and Arabic, as well as Modern Persian, versions. The fate of Alexander in

Persian legend is curious. In the genuine Zoroastrian tradition (as, for example, in the Pahlawi *Arda Viraf Namak*,² he appears as "the accursed Alexander the Roman," who, urged on by the evil spirit, brought havoc, destruction, and slaughter into Persia, burned Persepolis and the Zoroastrian Scriptures (which, written with gold ink on 12,000³ prepared ox-skins, were

stored up in the Archives at Stakhar Papakan), and finally "self-destructed fled to hell." Later, the picturesque contents of the romance of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, and a desire to salve the national vanity comparable to that which tempted the authors of former English histories to treat William the Conqueror as an English king, led the Persians, including Firdawsi, to incorporate Alexander in the roll of their own monarchs, a feat which they achieved

¹ See Budge's *Book of Alexander*.

² Ed. Haug and West, pp. 4 and 141

³ Mas'udi's *Kitabu't-Tanbih*, p. 91.

as follows. The first Dara demanded in marriage the daughter of Philip of Macedon, but afterwards, being displeased with her, divorced her and sent her back to her father. On her return she gave birth to Alexander, who was in reality her son by Dara, though Philip, anxious to conceal the slight put upon his daughter by the Persian King, gave out that the boy was his own son by one of his wives. Hence Alexander, in wresting Persia from his younger half-brother, the second Dara, did but seize that to which, as elder son of the late King, he was entitled, and is thus made to close the glorious period of the ancient Pishdadi and Kayani kings. In the third version, represented by the *Sikandar-nama* of Alexander in the *Nidhami* (twelfth century), he is identified with a mysterious personage called *Dhu l-arnayn* ("The two-horned") mentioned in the Qur'an as a contemporary of Moses (with whom some suppose him to be identical), and, instructed by his wise and God-fearing tutor Aristotle (*Aristu, Aristatalis*), represents the ideal monotheistic king, bent on the destruction of the false creed of the heathen Persians. It is important to bear in mind these different conceptions of Alexander, and also the fact that he does not really survive in the genuine national remembrance, but has been introduced, together with Darius, from a foreign source, while the national memory goes no further back than the Sasanians.

Concerning the Parthian period we must notice, besides its very scanty and unsympathetic treatment, the curious fact that whereas five centuries and a half actually elapsed between the death of Alexander and the establishment of the Sasanian dynasty, this period is habitually reduced by the Persian and Arab historians to 266 years. The falsity, as well as the reason, of this arbitrary and misleading chronology is understood and explained by the learned *Mas'udi* in his *kitab-u-t-tanbih wa-ishraf*¹ as follows. When Ardashir

¹ See the excellent edition published by de Goeje in his *Bibliotheca Geographorum Arabicorum* (vol. viii, pp. 97-9, Leyden, 1893).

Babakan established the Sasanian dynasty in A.D. 226—that is, about 550 years after Alexander—a prophecy was generally current in Persia that a thousand years after Zoroaster the faith founded by him and the Persian Empire would fall together. Now Zoroaster is placed 280 or 300 years before Alexander : hence, of the thousand years about 850 has already elapsed. Ardashir, fearing, apparently, that the prophecy might work its own fulfilment (for obviously he cannot have had any great belief in it if he hoped to cheat it of its effect by such means), and wishing to give his dynasty a longer respite, deliberately excised some three centuries from this period, thus making it appear that only 566 years out of the thousand had elapsed, and that his house might therefore hope to continue some 434 years ; which, in fact, it did, for Yazdigird III, the last Sasanian king, was murdered in A.D. 651-2. This extraordinary falsification of history is described by Mas'udi as an " ecclesiastical and political secret" of the Persians, and the fact that it was possible shows how entirely the archives and the art of reading and writing were in the hands of the ministers of Church and State.

With the Sasanian period, as already remarked, the National Legend, though still freely adorned with romantic and fictitious incidents, enters on the domain of real history, and becomes steadily more historical as it proceeds. As the Sasanian period will be discussed in the next chapter, it is unnecessary to enlarge further upon it in this place, and we shall accordingly pass at once to the history and antiquity of the Epic.

The references in the *Avesta* to *Shahnama* heroes are sufficient to show that even at the time when the former work was composed the National Legend already existed in its essential outlines. This, however, is by no means the only proof of its antiquity, for Noldeke has shown the occurrence of epic features in the accounts of the ancient Persian kings given by Greek writers, notably Ctesias, who was court-physician to Artaxerxes Mnemon,

History and anti-
quity of the
National Legend

and professedly compiled his work from Persian written sources. These epic features are, moreover, recurrent, and are transferred from one king and even dynasty to another; so that, for example, a strong resemblance exists between the circumstances surrounding the youth and early adventures of Cyrus the first Achaemenian in his struggle against the Medes, and Ardashir the first Sasanian in his war with the Parthians ; while the appearance of the Eagle, *Simurgh* or *Huma* (in each case a mighty and royal bird) as the protector of Achaemenes, Zal and Ardashir; the similar role played by two members of the noble Qaren family in the rescue of Nudhar the Kayanian and Piruz the Sasanian from Turanian foes; and the parallels offered by the Darius-Zopyrus and the Piruz-Akhshunwar episodes, are equally remarkable.

The story of Zariadres, brother of Hystaspes, and the Princess Odatis is preserved to us by Athenaeus from the history of Alexander composed by his chamberlain Charas of Mitylene, and the same episode forms the subject of the oldest Pahlawi romance, the *Yatkar-i-Zariran* (see p. 108 *supra*), written about A.D. 500. This important little book, the oldest truly epic fragment in Persian speech, though treating only of one episode of the National Legend, assumes throughout a certain acquaintance with the whole epic cycle.

"We have here," says Noldeke, " unless we are wholly deceived, the phenomenon which shows itself in connection with the epic history of divers other peoples : the substance is generally known ; individual portions therefrom are artistically elaborated ; and out of such materials, by adaptations, omissions, and remodellings, a more or less coherent and comprehensive epic may arise. The essential features of the Legend of Zarir reappear in the short Arabic version of Tabari, which entirely agrees, in part almost word for word, with the corresponding portion of the *Shahnama* ; whence it must have been taken from the ancient general tradition which forms the basis of the great Epic."

The "remodellings" to which Noldeke alludes consist chiefly, as he points out, of modifications designed to facilitate the artistic combination and fusion of the different episodes in one epic, and the suppression, in the case of Firdawsi's and other later versions, of such features or phrases as might be offensive to Muhammadan readers.

Of the Sasanian portion of the Epic we still possess one Pahlawi element in the *karnamak-i-Artakhshatr-i-Papakan*, now accessible, both in the original and in a German translation (see p. 108 *supra*). A comparison of this with the corresponding portion of the *Shahnama* (such as will be made for a portion of this episode in the next chapter) cannot fail to raise greatly our opinion of Firdawsi's fidelity to the sources on which he drew, for the correspondence is continuous and remarkable. This *karnamak* was probably composed about A.D. 600, and the reference of Agathias (A.D. 580) to written Persian chronicles of the Kings (*Βασιλικοὶ διφθέραι, περσικοὶ βίβλοι, βασιλικά ἀπομνημονεύματα*) in his account of Sasan, Papak, and Ardashir affords another proof that individual episodes at least existed in the Pahlawi literature of this period.

According to the introduction prefixed to Firdawsi's *Shahnama* (A.D. 1425-6) by order of Baysunghur, the grandson of Timur (Tamerlane), a complete and corrected Pahlawi text of the whole Epic from Gayumarth to Khusraw Parwiz (i.e., to A.D. 627) was compiled by the *dihqan* Danishwar in the reign of the last Sasanian king Yazdigird III; and Noldeke remarks on this that, whatever may be the worth of this account in itself, the agreement of the versions given by the Arab historians with the *Shahnama* down to the death of Khusraw Parwiz, and their wide divergence after that *event*, afford evidence of its truth in this particular point; while the strongly patriotic and legitimist tone which pervades it sufficiently prove that it was compiled under royal supervision and patronage.

Final Pahlawi
recension of the
Book of Kings.

This Pahlawi *Khudhay-nama(k)* constantly alluded to by Arab writers such as Hamza, the author of the *Fihrist*, &c, was translated into Arabic by Ibnu'l-Muqaffa' in the middle of the eighth century of our era, and so became generally known in the world of Arabic literature. This version, most unfortunately, is lost, as is also the Persian prose version made in A.D. 957—8 by order of Abu Mansur al-Ma'mari for Abu Mansur b. 'Abdu'r-Razzaq, at that time governor of Tus, by four Zoroastrians of Herat, Sistan, Shapur, and Tus.¹ The metrical Persian *Shahnama*, which was constructed chiefly from this, was begun for the Samanid Prince Nuh b. Mansur (A.D. 976-997) by *Daqiqi* who, however, had only completed some thousand couplets, dealing with the reign of Gushtasp and the advent of Zoroaster, when he was assassinated by a Turkish slave. It was reserved for Firdawsi to complete, a few years later, the task he had begun, and to display in some sixty thousand couplets (which include *Daqiqi*'s work) the National Legend in its final and perfect form. To *Daqiqi* and *Firdawsi* we shall recur when speaking of Modern Persian literature, and nothing more need therefore be said about them in this chapter, save that the *Shahnama* represents the National Legend in its final epic form.

¹ See al-Biruni's *Chronology of Ancient Nations*, Sachau's translation, pp. 119 and 45 ; Noldeke's *Dan Iranische Nationalepos*, pp. 14-15.

BOOK II

*ON THE HISTORY OF PERSIA FROM THE RISE
OF THE SASANIAN TO THE FALL OF THE
UMAYYAD DYNASTY*

(A.D. 226-750)

CHAPTER IV

THE SASANIAN PERIOD (A.D. 229-652)

It would be neither suitable nor possible to attempt in this chapter to give a detailed history of the Sasanians, though on the other hand a period of such great interest and importance could not fittingly be omitted altogether. For this is a period which marks the transition from the old to the new, intimately connected with both, embodying still much of the ancient glory of the Achaemenians, yet standing in a far clearer historical light—a light to which, besides contemporary inscriptions, coins, and seals, and the native records preserved by Arabic and Persian historians and romance-writers, Byzantine, Syriac, Armenian, and Jewish records each add their contribution. It was these kings, called by the Greeks *Chosroes* and by the Arabs *Kisra* (pi. *Akasira*), who were the restorers of the ancient Persian Empire and the "Good Religion" of Zoroaster, and of whom Mas'udi (writing in A.D. 956) thus speaks in the preface to his *Kitabu't-tanbih wa'l-ishraf* (p. 6): "And we have restricted ourselves in this our book to the mention of these empires because of t' mighty dominion of the kings of Persia, the antiquity of th rule, the continuity of their sovereignty, the excellence their administration, their well-ordered policy, the pros of their domains, their care for their subjects, and th gation to their allegiance of i any of the kings of

who brought unto them taxes and tribute. And they held sway, withal, over the fourth Clime, which is the Clime of Babel, the middle part of the earth, and the noblest of the [seven] Climes." In the same spirit sings a poet cited in the same work (p. 37), who, though he wrote in Arabic, boasted descent from the Royal House of Persia :—

*"And we portioned out our empire in our time
As you portion out the meat upon a plate.
Greece and Syria we gave to knightly Salm,
To the lands wherein the sunset lingers late.
And to Tuj the Turkish marches were assigned,
Where our cousin still doth rule in royal state.
And to Iran we subdued the land of Pars,
Whence we still inherit blessings rare and great"*

We have seen that the Sasanian kings called themselves "gods" or "divine beings" (Pahlawi *bagh*, Chaldaean *alaha*, Greek *Θεός*), regarded themselves as the descendants and legitimate successors of the ancient legendary Kayani dynasty and the inheritors of the *Farri-Kayani* or "Royal Splendour"—a kind of Shekina or symbolised Divine Right by virtue of which they alone could rightly wear the Persian crown—and did everything in their power to impress their subjects with a sense of their supreme majesty. Of the accession of "the Royal Splendour" to the House of Sasan we shall shortly cite a curious legend, and of the majesty maintained by them the following extract from Ibn Hisham's *Biography of the Prophet* (ed. Wustenfeld, p. 42) furnishes an instance :—

"Now Kisra [Chosroes, here Khusraw Anushirwan] used to sit in his audience-hall where was his crown, like unto a mighty cask, according to what they say, set with rubies, emeralds, and pearls, with gold and silver, suspended by a chain of gold from the top of an arch in this his audience-hall and his neck could not support the crown, but he was veiled till he had taken his seat in this his audience-hall, and iced his head within his crown, and had settled himself

The Sasanian
kings regarded
as divine beings.

splendour
rich they
intained.

in his place, whereupon the draperies were withdrawn. And no one who had not previously seen him looked upon him without kneeling in reverence before him."

In no country, probat has the doctrine of the Divine Right of kings been me nerally and more strongly held than it was Persia in Sasanian times. That any one not anging to the Royal House should dare to assi the royal title was, as Noldeke has pointed out¹ in refen e to the rebellious noble Bahram Chubin and the usurper Shahrbaraz, regarded as an almost incredible act of wickedness and presumption. The prevailing sentiment of the people is, no doubt, truly reflected in the following anecdote told by Dinawari (p. 98) of the flight of Bahram Chubin after his defeat by Khusraw Parwiz and his Byzantine allies—

"And Rahram fled headlong, and on his way he passed by a hamlet, where he halted, and he and Mardan-Sina and Yazdan-Gushnasp alighted at the dwelling of an old woman. Then they produced some food which they had with them, and supped, and gave what was, left over to the old woman. Then they produced wine; and Bahram said to the old woman, 'Hast thou nothing wherewith we can drink?' 'I have a little gourd,' replied she; and she brought it to them, and they cut off the top and began to drink from it. Then they produced dessert; and they said to the old woman, 'Hast thou nothing wherein we can put the dessert?' So she brought them a winnowing-shovel, into which they poured the dessert. So Bahram ordered that wine should be given to the old woman, and then he said to her, 'What news hast thou, old lady?' 'The news with us,' answered she, 'is that Kisra hath advanced with an army of Greeks, and fought Bahram, and overcome him, and recovered from him his kingdom.' 'And what say'st thou,' asked Bahram, 'concerning Bahram?' 'A silly fool,' replied she, 'who claims the kingdom, not being a member of the Royal House' Said Bahram, 'The efore it is that he drinks out of gourds and eats his dessert out of winnowing-fans.' And this became a saying amongst the Persians, which they are wont to cite as a proverb."

¹ *Gesch. d. Sasaniden*, pp. 388 and n. 7, and 477 and n. 2 *ad cale*.

For myself, I believe that Gobineau is right in asserting that this doctrine of the Divine Right of the House of Sasan had an immense influence on all subsequent Persian history, more especially on the tenacity with which the Persians clung to the doctrine of the Shi'a or sect of 'All. To the idea of electing a Caliph, or spiritual successor to the Prophet, natural enough to the democratic Arabs, could appear otherwise than revolting and unnatural, and in the case of 'Umar, the second orthodox Caliph, there was also an element of personal hatred against the destroyer of the Persian Empire, which, though disguised under a religious garb, is nevertheless unmistakable. Husayn, on the other hand, the younger son of the Prophet's daughter Fatima, and of his cousin 'All, was believed by them to have married Shahr-banu, the daughter of Yazdigird's daughter "Bibi Shahr-banu." Yazdigird III, the last Sasanian king and hence the remaining Imams of both great Shi'ite factions (the "Sect of the Twelve" now prevalent in Persia, and the "Sect of the Seven," or Isma'flis) represent not only the Prophetic but the Kingly right and virtue, being at the same time descended from the Prophet Muhammad and from the House of Sasan. Hence the political doctrine to which Gobineau (*Rel. et philos. dans l'Asie Centrale*, p. 275) alludes in the following passage :—

"C'est un point de doctrine politique incontesté en Perse que les Alides seuls ont le droit de porter légitimement la couronne, et cela en leur double qualité d'héritiers des Sassanides, par leur mère, Bibi-Sheher-banou, fille du dernier roi Yezdedjerd, et d'Imams, chefs de la religion vraie. Tous les "princes non Alides sont des souverains de fait; aux yeux des gens sévères, ce sont même des tyrans; dans aucun cas, personne ne les considère comme détenteurs de l'empire à titre régulier. Je ne m'étendrai pas ici sur cette opinion absolue, tranchante, qui n'a jamais admis la prescription; j'en ai assez longuement parlé dans un autre ouvrage. Ce fut sur cette base que les politiques babyloniens élevèrent tout leur édifice."

Influence of this doctrine in later times.

Yazdigird's daughter "Bibi Shahr-banu."

Basis of Shi'ite politics

BIBI SHAHR-BANU

Now whether this marriage really took place or not, it has been accepted by the Shi'ites as a historical fact for many centuries. Amongst early authors who allude to it we may cite ai-Ya'qubi (ed. Houtsma, vol. ii, p. 293), an Arabic historian who flourished in the latter part of the ninth century of our era, and who concludes his account of Husayn's tragic death as follows :—

"Amongst the sons of al-Husayn were 'All Akbar, who was killed in at-Taff,¹ and left no offspring, whose mother was Layla, the daughter of Abu Murra b. 'Urwa b. Mas'ud ath-Thaqafi; and 'All Asghar, whose mother was Harar," the daughter of Yazdigird, whom al-Husayn used to call Ghazala (' the Gazelle ')."

This Shahr-banu, "the Mother of Nine Imams" (the fourth to the twelfth) still holds a place in the hearts of her countrymen ; she gives her name to a mountain three or four miles south of Tihran (the *Kuh-i-Bibi Shahr-ban*) which no male footstep may profane, and which is visited by women who desire an intercessor with God for the fulfilment of their needs; and she is one of the heroines of those heart-moving passion-plays (*ta'ziyas*) which are yearly enacted in every Persian town and colony to crowds of weeping spectators. And this is how she is made to speak in the drama entitled " the Passing of Shahrbanu " '*Ta'ziya-i-gha'ib shudan-i-Shahr-ban*, Tihran, A.H. 1314, 19):—

Shahr-banu in
the Persian
Passion-plays.

*Zi nasl-i- Yazdigird-i-Shahriyaram,
Zi Nashirwan buwad asl-i-nizaram.
Dar an waqti ki bakhtam kamran bud
Badan shahr-i-Ray-am andar makan bud.
Shabi raftam bi-suyi qasr-i-babam,
Biydmd Hazrat-i-Zahra bi-khwabam,
Bu-guft, 'Ay Shahr-banu, ba sad a'in
Tura man bar Husayn aram bi-kabin.'*

That portion of Arabia which borders on the cultivated lands of 'Iraq. other names ascribed by other writers are, besides *Shahr-banu* rsal amongst the modern Persians), *as-Sulafa* and *Shah-i-Zanan*.

THE SASANIAN PERIOD

*Bi-gu ftam, 'Man nishasta dar Mada'in,
Husayn andar Madina hast sakin:
' Muhal-ast in sukhun!' Farmud Zahra,
' Hasan dyad bi-sardari dar inja;
' Tu mi-gardi asir, ay bi-qarina;
' Barand-at az Mada'in dar Madina;
' Bi-farzandam Husayn paywand sazi,
' Mara az nasl-i-khud khursand sazi.
' Zi nasl-at nuh Imam ayad bi-dawran
' Ki na-b'wad mislashan dar dar-i-dawran*

"Born of the race of Yazdigird the King
From Nushirwan my origin I trace.
What time kind Fortune naught but joy did bring
In Ray's proud city was my home and place.
There in my father's palace once at night
In sleep to me came Fatima 'the Bright';
'O Shahr-banu'—thus the vision cried—
'I give thee to Husayn to be his bride 1'
Said I, 'Behold Mada'in is my home,
And how shall I to far Madina roam?¹
Impossible!' But Fatima cried, 'Nay,
Hasan shall hither come in war's array,
And bear thee hence, a prisoner of war,
From this Mada'in to Madina far,
Where, joined in wedlock with Husayn, my boy,
Thou shalt bear children who will be my joy.
For nine Imams to thee shall owe their birth,
The like of whom hath not been seen on earth!'"

A few lines further on occurs a passage so characteristic o

¹ *Madina* in Arabia means "the city," and *Mada'in* is its plural. The ancient Yathrib, when honoured by the flight thither of the Prophe Muhammad, was called *Madinatu'n-Nabi*, "the City of the Prophet," o simply *al-Madina*, "the City." By *Mada'in* Ctesiphon, the ancient Sasania capital in Chaldaea, is meant. It is said by the Arabian geographers t have been so called because it was formed by the fusion and coalescenc of seven cities (*mada'in*). See Barbier de Meynard's *Dict de la Pers* p. 519. The confusion between Ray (the ancient Rhagae, near the mode Tihiran) and Ctesiphon is merely one indication of the essentially popu and unscientific character of these *ta'ziyas*, which makes their testime to the national feeling the more significant. The sentiments embodie them are not those of pedants, but of the nation.

the Persian hatred of 'Umar and love of 'All that I cannot forbear quoting it in this connection. Shahr-banu is brought to Madina in a litter, as befits a king's daughter, by the chivalrous Hasan, but then her troubles begin :—

" *Wali chun shud Madina manzil-ma
Gham-i-' alam fuzun shud bar dil-i-ma.
Yaki gufta ki, 'In dukhtar kaniz-ast :
Yaki gufta, ' Bi-shahr-i-khud 'aziz-ast.'
Bi-masjid mard u zan dar bam mahzar,
Mara nazd-i- Umar burdand, madar !
Kalami guft k'azu dar khurush-am:
Bu-guft, 'In bi-kasan-ra mi-furusham !
' Ali jiddat chu bar amad khurushdn
Bu-gufta, 'Lab bi-band, ay dun-i-ndddn:
Na-shayad burdan, ay mal'un-i-ghaddar
Buzurgan-ra sar-i-'uryan bi-bazar!'
Pas az an khwari, ay nur-i-du ' ayn-am,
Bi-bakhshidand bar babat Husayn-am.
Husayn karda wasiyyat bar man-i-zar
Na-manam dar miyan-i-Al-i-At-har.
Agar manam, asir u khwar gardam,
Birahna-sar bi-har bazar gardam.
Tu, chun hasti Imam u Shahriydrum,
Bi-dast-i-tust, madar, ikhtiyaram.
Agar gu'i, rawam, dard-at bi-janam ;
Salah-am gar na-mi-dani, bi-manam !'*

"But when at last I reached Madma'a town
A whole world's sorrow seemed to weigh me down.
One cried, 'This girl a serving-maid shall be !'
Another, 'Nay, she was of high degree !'
The women thronged the roofs; the mosque, the men :
O Mother! Me they bore to 'Umar then,
Who spoke a word that caused me pain untold:
'These hapless wretches shall as slaves be sold !'
But 'All then appeared upon the scene,
And cried, 'Be silent, fool and coward mean !
These gentle women, traitor, void of grace,
Shall not stand naked in the market-place!'
Light of mine eyes! After such treatment dire,
They gave me to Husayn, thy noble sire,

Who did advise poor me, to spare me pain,
 That after him I should not here remain.
 Should I remain, enslaved, in fashion base,
 I should be driven through each market-place.
 Now, Mother, dear, Imam and Sov'reign mine,
 Into thy hands my option I resign.
 Bid my fare forth, my bosom filled with pain,
 Or bid me tarry, and I will remain !' "

A darker picture of the Sasanians is presented by Christian, notably by Syrian, writers, a source of information "not sufficiently used," as Noldeke remarks, "by most Orientalists." Two works of this class in particular may be recommended to those students of Persian history who, like the writer, are unfortunately unable to consult this literature in the original. The first is the *Chronicle of Joshua the Stylite*,¹ composed in A.D. 507, describing the Persian invasion of Asia Minor by Kawad, and especially the sufferings of Edessa and Amid (now 'Urfa and Diyar Bekr) in the beginning of the sixth century of our era. The other is the *Acts of the Persian Martyrs*,² excerpted from various Syriac manuscripts and translated into German with the most scholarly notes, by George Hoffmann. In these books, both on political and religious grounds, it is natural that the Persians should be depicted in rather lurid colours, but in the first, at any rate, it does not appear that they acted more cruelly or more falsely than their Christian antagonists, though it is natural enough that the author, writing within two or three years of the war which had desolated his home, should occasionally speak of them in such terms as these :—" Now the pleasure of this wicked people is abundantly made evident by this, that they have not shown mercy unto those who were

Views of Christian subjects and contemporaries of the Sasanians.

The Persian martyrs.

¹ Text and translation published at Cambridge (1882) by the late Dr. W. Wright.

² *Auszuge aus Syrischen Akten Persischer Martyrer . . . von Georg Hoffmann (Leipzig, 1880).*

delivered up unto them ; for they have been accustomed to show their pleasure and to rejoice in evil done to the children of men."

Religious feeling, indeed, ran high on both sides, and in the matter of toleration there was little to choose between the Zoroastrian and the Christian priesthoods. A good instance of the extent to which judgment of character was influenced by purely theological considerations is afforded by comparing the accounts of Yazdigird I (A.D. 399-420) given by the Arabic historians (who drew their information and their views ultimately from the Pahlawi *Book of Kings*, which was composed under the influence of the Magian priests) with a Syriac account of the same king's character from the pen of a contemporary Christian writer. In the former Yazdigird is called "the sinner" (Pers. *Baza-gar*, Arab. *al-Athim*), and his wickedness, frowardness, and tyranny are described as almost superhuman. In the latter he is spoken of in the following terms : " the good and merciful King Yazdigird, the Christian, the blessed amongst the kings, may he be remembered with blessing, and may his future be yet more fair than his earlier life ! Every day he doeth good to the poor and the distressed." ¹ So too Khusrav I (A.D. 531-578) gained the title of Nushirwan (*Anushak-ruban*, "of immortal soul"), by which he is still remembered as the very embodiment of kingly virtue and justice, by his high-handed suppression of the heresy of the communist Mazdak, which, in the eyes of the intolerant Magian priests, constituted his chief claim to "immortality"; and such service has their approval done him that Sa'di, zealous Muhammadan as he was, says :—

" Zinda'st nam-i-Jarrukh-i-Nushirwan bi-'adl,
Garchi basi Oguzasht ki Nushitwan na-mand."

See Noldeke's *Gesch. d. Sasaniden*, p. 74, n. 3 *ad calc.*

"The blessed name of Nushirwan doth still for justice stand,
Though long hath passed since Nushirwan hath vanished from
the land."

For the Christians, too, Nushirwan, as we learn from Dinawari (p. 72), entertained the greatest contempt. When his son Anusha-zadh, who had espoused the faith of his Christian mother, revolted against him, and his viceroy at Ctesiphon wrote to him for instructions, he wrote in his reply as follows : " Let not the multitude of the people affright thee, for they have no enduring might. How, indeed, shall the Christians endure, when it is prescribed in their religion that if one of them be smitten on the left cheek, he shall offer the right also ? "

Nushirwan's
opinion of the
Christians.

To return now to the scope of this chapter. Being unable to do more than glance at certain points in the history of this period, I propose to speak especially of its beginning and its end; the first, which is largely mixed with legend and fable, in order that I may have an opportunity of comparing certain episodes therein as sung by Firdawsi in the *Shahnama* with the same episodes as narrated in the Pahlawi *Kar-namak-i-Artakshatr-i-Papakan*; the last, as having an immediate connection with the Arab Conquest which marks the inauguration of the modern, or Muhammadan period. Besides this, two religious movements of this epoch—those associated with the names of Manes (Mani) and Mazdak—deserve some notice, as early instances of that passion for philosophical speculation which is so remarkable a characteristic of the Persians, who have probably produced more great heresiarchs than any other nation in the world. Of these two men the first was born, according to his own statement,¹ during the reign of Ardawan (Artabanus) the last Parthian king, and was contemporary with the founder of the

Scope and plan
of this chapter.

¹ See al-Biruni's *Chronology of Ancient Nations*, translated by Sachau (London, 1879), p. 121.

Sasanian dynasty ; the second, as we have seen, was put to death by Nushirwan in A.D. 528 or 529, at which time the Sasanian power was at its height, though the first symptoms of its decline were not far distant. This chapter will therefore fall into four divisions—namely, (1) The Legend of Ardashir and the foundation of the Sasanian dynasty; (2) Manes and the Manichæan doctrine; (3) Nushirwan and Mazdak ; (4) the last days of the House of Sasan.

1. *The Legend of Ardashir.*

The principal episodes of this Legend, as presented by the Pahlawi *Karnamak* (of which I make use of Noldeke's excellent German translation, a *tirage-a-part* of 21-69 pages, whereof the Introduction occupies pp. 22-34) and the *Shahnama* (Macan's Calcutta ed., vol. iii, pp. 1365-1416) are as follows.

(1) Sasan, fifth in descent from Bahman "*Diraz-dast*" (Longimanus, see p. 117 *supra*), enters the service of Papak (Babak), Prince of Pars, as a herdsman. Papak, warned in a dream of Sasan's kingly origin, raises him to high honour and confers on him the hand of his daughter. Of this union Ardashir is the offspring (K. 36-38 ; Sh. 1365).

(2) Papak adopts Ardashir as his son, and as he grows up the fame of his courage, wisdom, and knightly virtues reaches Ardawan, the last Parthian King, who summons him to his court at Ray. There he is honourably entertained, until one day out hunting he gives the lie to one of Ardawan's sons who claims a remarkable shot made in reality by him. Thereupon he is disgraced, and dismissed to serve in the Royal stables (K. 38-41 ; Sh. 1366).

(3) A beautiful and wise maiden who enjoys Ardawan's fullest confidence takes pity upon Ardashir, provides two swift horses, and escapes with him to Pars. Ardawan pursues them, but turns back on learning that the "*Royal Splendour*," personified as a fine ram, has caught up Ardashir and rides behind him on his horse (K. 41-46 ; Sh. 1370).

(4) Ardashir's wars with the Parthians and others; his defer to Ardawan and his son, and his reverse at the hands of the F (K. 46-49 ; Sh. 1374).

(5) The episode of *Haftan-bokht* (*Haftawad*) and the mo-

worm of Kirman, including the war with Mithrak (Mihrak) (K. 49-57; Sh. 1381).

(6) How Ardawan's daughter, married to Ardashir, is by him doomed to death; how her life is saved by the chief *mubad* (named Abarsam by Taban); how she brings forth a son, who is named Shapur (*Shah-puhar*, "King's son"); and how the boy is recognised by his father (K. 57-63; Sh. 1392).

(7) Ardashir, having learned from the King of India, Kayt or Kayd, that the sovereignty of Persia will be in his family or in that of his enemy Mihrak, endeavours to extirpate the latter. One of Mihrak's daughters is saved from the massacre, and brought up amongst peasants. Shapur sees and falls in love with her, but conceals his marriage, and the birth of his son Hurmuzd in which it results, from his father Ardashir. Hurmuzd, when seven years old, is recognised by his grandfather by his boldness on the polo field (K. 64-68; Sh. 1397).

No one who has read the *Kdr-ndmak* and this portion of the *Shahnama* side by side can fail to be greatly impressed by the general fidelity, even in minute details, with which the latter reproduces the former; and our opinion of Firdaws's faithful adherence to genuine old legends is equally strengthened by a comparison of the Pahlawi legend of Zarir (*Yatkar-i-Zariran*, translated into German by Geiger)¹ with the corresponding part of the *Shahnama*. Now it is a mere accident that we happen to be able to check these portions by the originals, and we may fairly assume that elsewhere, where we have no such means of control, the poet is equally conscientious in his adherence, even in detail, to ancient legend. Space, however, will not allow the comparison in this place of more than one or two incidents of these two versions of the Legend of Ardashir. We will begin with the account of his birth.

See the *Sitzungsberichte d. K. b. Akademie d. Wiss. zu Munchen* for vol. i, pp. 43-84: *Das Yatkar-i Zariran und sein Verhaltniss zum nama* by Geiger; and Noldeke's *Persische Studien*, I 1: *Das Buch rer*, in the *Sitzungsberichte d. phil. hist. Classe der K. Akad. d. Wissen-* for 1892 (Vienna), vol. cxxvi *Abhandlung* 12.

karnamak.

"After the death of Alexander the Roman there were in Iran 240 tribal princes. Ispahān, Pars, and the neighbouring lands were in the hands of the chief of them, Ardawan. Papak was Warden of the Marches and Prince of Pars and Governor for Ardawan. Papak dwelt in Stakhr; he had no son who might be able preserve his name. Sasan was a herdsman of Papak and abode ever with the flocks; but he was of the race of Dara the son of Dara. During the evil reign of Alexander he had fled away and gone forth with Kurdish shepherds. Papak knew not that Sasan was of the race of Dara the son of Dara. Now one night Papak dreamed that the Sun from the head of Sasan illuminated the whole world. Next night he saw Sasan riding on a richly-caparisoned white elephant, while all throughout the whole *Kishwar* (region, clime) surrounded him, tendered him their homage, and invoked on him praises and blessings. On the third night he saw how the (sacred) Fires Froba, Gushasp, and Mithr waxed great in the house of Sasan and gave light to the whole world. This amazed him, and so he summoned before him the wise men and interpreters of dreams and related to them what he had dreamed on all three nights. Then said the interpreters of dreams, 'Either the man himself concerning whom thou hast dreamed this, or one of his children, will attain to the lordship of the world: for the sun and the richly-caparisoned white elephant signify Strength, Might, and Victory, while the Fire Froba signifies men well instructed in religion, and eminent over their peers; the Fire Gushasp, warriors and captains of hosts; and the Fire Burjin-Mihr, the peasants and husbandmen of the whole world. So the kingship will accrue to this man or to his children.' When Papak heard this speech, he dismissed every one, summoned Sasan before him, and asked him, 'Of what family and stock art thou? Was any one of thy fathers or forbears a ruler or sovereign?' Then Sasan prayed Papak for indulgence and safety [with the words] 'Inflict not on me hurt or harm.' Papak agreed to this, and thereupon Sasan revealed to him his secret, and who he was. Then Papak was glad, and said, 'I will promote thee;' whereupon, at his bidding, a full royal dress was brought to him and given to Sasan [and he bade him] 'Put it on.' Sasan did so, and at Papak's command, he then strengthened himself for some days with good and proper meals. Later, he gave him his daughter in marriage, : when the time (according to the predestination of fate) was in ace the girl forthwith conceived, and from her Artakhshir was born

Shahnama (ed. Macan, vol. iii, pp. 1365-1367).

"When on the wael-stow Dara his doom met
From all his House her face Fortune averted.
Him did a son survive, worthy of worship,
Wary and wise in war, Sasan ycleped,
Who, when he saw his sire thus foully smitten,
Saw, too, on Persia's arms Fortune look frowning,
Fled from his foes of Greece, swift and fleet-footed,
Stayed not to stumble on snares of ill fortune.
In distant lands of Ind death overtook him,
Where he in turn a son left to succeed him.

Thus in like wise for four generations
From sire to son the name Sasan descended.
Herdsman were these and hinds, tenders of cattle,
Laden each year long with heavy burdens.

When now the last in birth came unto Babak,
And on the grazing-grounds sought the head-herdsman,
'Hast thou,' he questioned him, 'need for an hireling,
Who here is fain to dwell, even in hardship?
Him the head-herdsman hired to his service,
Holding him night and day unto long labour.
So for a while the man thus did continue,
Heart-sick and woe-worn, wearied with toiling.

Sunk in deep slumber Babak one night slept,
And his bright spirit thus in his dream saw.
On a fierce elephant Sas&n was seated,
Held in his hand a sharp sword-blade of India,
While those who ringed him round in adoration
Bowed down, and on him blessings invoked.
He by right rule and wise made the earth prosper,
And from the saddened soul banished the sorrow.

When on the second night Babak to sleep sank,
Care of his anxious mind was the companion.
Thus in his dream he saw now, that the Fire-Priest
Held in his hand aloft three flaming censers,
Kharrad and Mihr-fires, Adhar-Gushasp too,¹

On these three most sacred Fires, see Noldeke's note in his trans-
of the *Kar-namak* (p. 37, n. 3 *ad calc*). *Kharrad* in Firdawsi
for *Froba*, *Frobag*, or *Farnbag*.

Brilliantly blazing like the bright heavens,
There before Sasan fiercely were flaring,
While in each blazing fire aloe-wood smouldered.

Then from his slumber Babak awaking
Felt in his anxious heart fearful forebodings.
Such as were wise to read dreamings and visions,
Such as were skilled in solving of riddles,
Straightway assembled at Babak's palace,
Seers and Saga-men, skilful in learning.
Then unto these revealed Babak his vision,
And all his dreamings frankly unfolded,
While the dream-readers, pondering deeply,
Lent all their ears while forming their answer.

Answered the spokesman then, 'King, highly favoured,
Look we now closely to the dream's showing.
He whom thou sawest thus in thy slumber
High o'er the sun shall lift his head in lordship.
Even though he should fail in the fulfilment,
Him will a son succeed earth to inherit.'
Blithely did Babak lend ear to this answer,
Unto each gifts he gave after his measure.

Then Babak straightway hailed the head-herdsman;
Forth from the flocks he came through the thick fog-drifts,
Breasting the sleet and snow, wrapped in his blanket,
Fear in his bosom, frost on his fur-cloak.¹
When from his audience-hall Babak had ousted
Strangers, alike both statesman and servant,
Then by his side the shepherd he seated,
Graciously greeted him, asked him of Sasan,
Asked of his lineage and of his fore-bears,
While, with foreboding filled, Sasan sat silent.

Then at length spake he, 'Sire, to thy shepherd
If thou wilt freely grant grace and forgiveness,
All that concerns my race I will discover,
If, hand in hand,² with oath thou wilt assure me

¹ Noldeke (*loc. cit.*, p. 26) notices this especially as one of the graphic touches whereby Firdawsi strove to give life and colour to the curt, dry narrative of the Pahlawi original.

² Concerning the "hand-contract" see the *Vendidad*, Fargard iv, v. 2 Darmesteter's English transl, in *S. B. E.*, vol i, p. 35).

That neither privily nor yet in public
Thou wilt attempt to wreak on me thy vengeance.'
Babak, thus hearing, loosened his tongue in speech:
Much made he mention of the All-Giver,
Saying, 'I swear no hurt shall befall thee,
Nay, I will hold thee honoured and noble'

Then spake the youth again freely to Babak,
'Know, valiant knight, that Sasan my sire is,
Who from King Ardashir's seed was descended,
(He who is called by you 'Bahman the Long-hand');
Of brave Isfandiyar he was the offspring,
Who of King Gushtasp's fair fame was the guardian.'¹
When Babak heard this, tear-floods he rained
From those clear eyes which gazed on the vision.
Then kingly garments brought he from out his store,
And eke a horse equipped with lordly harness.
'Hence to the bath,' quoth he, 'hie thee in all haste,
And there abide till fit raiment be brought thee.'

Soon a fair palace built he for Sasan;
(Thus from the herdsman did he upraise him),
And in this palace when he had placed him
Bondsmen and servants set he before him,
Gave him all gear and garb needful for lordship,
And of all goods and gifts ample endowment,
Last, his dear daughter gave him in wedlock,
Crown of his glory she, and his heart's darling.

When o'er the moon-faced maid nine moons had waned
To her a son was born, radiant as sun-light,
Like unto Ardashir, famed in the older time,
Graceful, and growing daily in favour.
Him too his father Ardashir named,
By him his grand-sire greatly was gladdened."

² The tracing of the Sasanian pedigree to Gushtasp (Vishtaspa), the protector of Zoroaster, and the first "Defender of the Faith" is part of the general plan which aims at representing them as the direct and legitimate heirs of the ancient Persian kings, and the hereditary champions of "the Good Religion."

The next episode which I shall give is the flight of Ardashir from Ardawan's court at Ray to Pars, accompanied by the beautiful and wise maiden (called *Gulnar* by Firdawsi) who had hitherto acted as Ardawan's counsellor and adviser, but who is moved by love for Ardashir to cast in her lot with him.

Karnamak.

"Thereupon Ardawan equipped an army of 4,000 men and took the road towards Pars after Artakhshir. When it was mid-day he came to a place by which the road to Pars passed, and asked, 'At what time did those two riders whose faces were set in this direction pass by here?' Then said the people, 'Early in the morning, when the sun rose, they passed by swiftly as the wind Artai, and a very large ram ran after them, than which a finer could not be found. We know that already ere now he will have put behind him a distance of many parasangs, and that it will be impossible for you to catch him.' So Ardawan tarried not there, but hastened on. When he came to another place, he asked the people, 'When did those two riders pass by?' They answered, 'To-day at noon did they go by like the wind Artai, and a ram ran after them.' Then Ardawan was astonished and said, 'Consider: the two riders we know, but what can that ram be?' Then he asked the Dastur, who replied, 'That is the Kingly Splendour (*Khurra-i-Khud'd'ih*); it hath not yet overtaken him, but we must make haste; it is possible that we may catch them before it overtakes them.' Then Ardawan hastened on with his horsemen. On the second day they had put behind them seventy parasangs: then a caravan met them. Ardawan asked the people, 'In what place did you meet those two riders?' They replied, 'Between you and them is still a distance of twenty parasangs. We noticed that beside one of those riders a very large and mighty ram sat on the horse.' Ardawan asked the Dastur, 'What signifies this ram which is beside him on the horse? He answered, 'May'st thou live for ever! The Royal Splendour (*Khurra-i-Kayan* = Firdawsi's *farr-i-kayani*, and the *Kawaem Hwareno* of the Avesta) hath overtaken Ardashir; in no wise can we now take them captive. Therefore weary not yourself and your horsemen more, nor further tire the horses, lest they succumb. Seek in some other way to prevail against Artakhshir.' When Ardawan heard this, he turned **back and** betook himself again to his home."

Shahnama.

"Then did the King perceive plain that the maiden
With Ardashir had fled, his favours scorning.
Thereat his heart was stirred into dire anger,
And, on his chestnut horse hastily mounting,
Called he his horsemen bold out on the war-trail,
And on the southward road forth like a fire flamed.

On the road came he to a fair township,
Wherein were many men and countless cattle.
Of them demanded he whether at day-break
Any had heard the beat of horses' hoof-strokes,
Or had beheld a pair riding right hotly,
One on a snow-white steed, one on a black barb.
Answered one, 'Yea, hard by on the road here,
Forth to the plain fared two with their horses,
And at the horses' heels galloped a wild sheep,
Which, like the horses, hurled dust-clouds behind it.'

Then quoth King Ardawan to his adviser,
'What was this mountain-sheep which ran behind them?
Answered the other, 'That Royal Splendour
Which, by his lucky star, leads him to lordship.
If now this sheep should o'ertake him in running
Naught there is left us saving long labour/

There then King Ardawan hastily halted,
Rested, refreshed him, then hastened onward.
After Prince Ardashir hotly they hurried,
At their head Ardawan with his adviser.

(Fifteen couplets, II 10-24, omitted.)

When of the day had passed half, and the world-light
Up to the midmost point heaven had measured,
Saw he again a fair hamlet and fragrant,
Where, too, the village-folk hastened to meet him.
Thus quote the King once more unto their head-man,
'Tell me, these riders, how passed they your hamlet?'
Thus quoth the head-man : ' Lord of fair fortune,
Born 'neath a lucky star, cunning in counsel!
What time the sun in high heaven was paling,
And night was spreading her purple vestment,

Hard by our hamlet two riders hastened,
Dry were their lips with thirst, their raiment dust-stained,
And behind one on the saddle a sheep sat:
In palace hunting-scenes ne'er was its like met.'

Then to King Ardawan spake his adviser:
'Turn we now back again whither we came from,
Since now the matter changeth its aspect,
In that King Ardashir's luck rides behind him.
So with hands empty will the quest leave us.
Unto thy son now send thou a letter,
Unto him, point by point, make clear the matter,
That he, perchance, may gain trace of our quarry,
Ere of the mountain-sheep's milk he partaketh.'

When Ardawan had heard thus from the spokesman
He for a surety knew his fortune faded.
So in the hamlet straight he alighted,
And rendered praises to the All-Giver.
But when the night was spent, at early morning,
Bade he his armed host turn themselves homewards.
So, with cheeks sallow like the scorched reed-bed,
Did he to Ray return in the dark twilight."

The Legend of Haftan-bokht (Haftawad in the *Shah-ndma*) and the Worm of Kirman is too interesting to be entirely omitted, though lack of space compels me to give only that portion of it which relates to the actual destruction of this monster. The connection of this Worm (*Kirm*) with the city of Kirman is, of course, a piece of popular etymology, but it serves to show that those who persist in writing the name of this town as *Karmdn* adopt a pronunciation which has certainly not been used in Persia for nine hundred years, whatever may have been the case in more ancient times. A similar word-play occurs in the *Bustan* of Sa'di (ed. Graf, p. 87, l. 535). On the name *Haftan-bokht*, "the Seven have delivered," Noldeke has a very interesting note (*Kar-namak*, p. 49, n. 4). He points out that many names, notably of Christians, were compounded with the word *bokht*, "hath delivered," e.g., *Mara-bokht*, "the Lord hath delivered," *Yishu'*-

bokht, or *Bokht-yishu*, "Jesus hath delivered," while amongst Zoroastrians we find *Si-bokht*, "the Three (i.e., good thoughts, good words, and good deeds) have delivered," and *Chahar-bokht*, "the Four have delivered." "The Seven" referred to in the name of Ardashir's opponent are, he adds, the seven planets, which belong to the Creation of Ahriman the Evil Spirit. This name is therefore peculiarly appropriate for one whose reliance is in the powers of hell and the magic of the demons. Firdawsi was compelled by the exigencies of his metre to alter the name into *Haftawaa* (explained in the *Shahnama* glossaries as meaning "Having seven sons" ¹), a form obtainable from the Pahlawi by excision of the three middle characters of the word, since the last three characters can equally well be read *-okht* or *-wat*.²

Kamamak.

"Then he sent forth people to wage war with the Worm, summoned Burjak and Burjatur before him, and took counsel with them. Thereafter they took many gold and silver coins and garments; he himself [Artakhshir] put on a dress of Khurasan, came with Burjak and Burjatur to the foot of Castle Gular, and said: 'I crave of my august masters the boon of being admitted to the service of the Court.' The idolaters admitted Artakhshir with the two men, and installed them in the house of the Worm. Then for three days Artakhshir showed himself eager in service and devoted to the Worm. The gold and silver coins and the garments he presented to the servants. Then all who were in the Castle, marvelled and were loud in his praises. Then said Artakhshir, 'It would give me pleasure to feed the Worm for three days with my own hand.' To this the servants and attendants consented. Then Artakhshir dismissed every one, and commanded an army of four hundred valiant and devoted men to conceal themselves opposite that place in a cleft of the mountain. Also he commanded, 'When on the day of Asman³ ye see smoke from the fortress of the Worm, then put forth your valour and courage and come to the

* Seven sons are ascribed to him also in the *Kamamak*, p. 51.

² Noldeke's ingenious view is, however, rejected by Darmesteter (*Etudes Iraniennes*, vol. ii, pp. 82-83).

³ The 27th of the month.

foot of the Castle/ On that day he himself held the molten copper, while Burjak and Burjatur offered praise and glory to God. When now it was the time for its meal the Worm roared, as it did each day. Artakhshir had previously made the attendants and watchers of the Worm drunk and senseless at a meal. Then he went himself with his attendants to the Worm, bringing to it the blood of oxen and sheep, such as it received daily. But as soon as the Worm opened its mouth to drink the blood, Artakhshir poured the molten copper into its throat, and when this entered its body it burst asunder into two pieces. Thereupon such a roaring arose from it that all the people from the Castle rushed in thither, and confusion arose amongst them. Artakhshir laid his hand on his shield and sword, and made a great slaughter and massacre in the Castle. Then he commanded, 'Kindle a fire such that the smoke may be manifest to those knights.' This the servants did, and when the knights who were in the mountains saw the smoke from the Castle, they hastened to the foot of the Castle to help Artakhshir, and forced the entrance with the cry, 'Victorious be Artakhshir, King of kings, the son of Papak !' "

Shahnama.

"Thence he returned war with the Worm to wage,
He with his warriors bold, bent on its slaughter.
World-tried and war-wise came he with armed hosts
Numbering two thousand over ten thousand.
When thus his scattered hosts he had assembled
'Twixt the two mountains boldly he brought them.

Then spake King Ardashir unto his captain,
One who was skilled in war and wise in counsel,
Shahr-gir named, 'Taker of cities' :
'Watchful and wakeful thou shalt abide here,
Keeping thy scouts alert day-time and night-time,
Ringing thy camp around with ready horsemen;
Sentries about thee, warders around thee,
By night and day shall keep watch o'er thine army.
Such cunning wile of war now will I venture,
As did Isfandiyar, my noble forbear.

¹ The allusion is to the capture of the Brazen Fortress (Ru'in Dizh), which Isfandiyar entered as a merchant. See *Shahnama*, ed. Macan, vol. iii, pp. 1143 *et seqq.*

If then thy sentry by day a smoke-cloud
Sees, or at night a fire like the sun flaming,
Know then at last the Worm's witcheries ended,
Know that its star is set, its strength departed.'

Out of his captains then seven men chose he,
Brave men and valiant all, lions in warfare;
E'en from the winds of heav'n kept he his counsel.
Then from his coffers fair gems he gathered,
Gold coins and rare brocades and rich possessions,
Holding things priceless cheap in his prudence.
With lead and copper then two chests he crammed full,
And, midst his baggage bound one brazen cauldron,
Being well skilled in crafts and devices.

When in this wise his wares had been chosen
From the horse-master ten asses claimed he,
And like an ass-herd in coarse apparel clad,
But with his bales filled full with gold and silver
Fared he with anxious heart forth on the forward way,
And from the camp set his face to the fortress.
Also those two brave peasants who gave him
Harbour and shelter once in disaster
Chose he as comrades on his forth-faring,
Since he had proved them loyal and wary.
Thus on the road they drew near to the fortress,
Breasted the hill-ridge, rested to breathe again.

For the Worm's service sixty were set apart,
Eager and earnest each in his service,
Of whom one cried aloud as they approached,
'What have ye hidden there in your boxes?'
Thus the King answered that stern inquiry :
'Of every precious stuff samples I bring you:
Red gold and silver white, ornaments, raiment,
Dinars and fine brocades, jewels and sable.
I from Khurasan come as a merchant,
Leaving luxurious ease for toilsome journeys.
Much wealth have I amassed by the Worm's blessing,
And now I grateful come unto the Worm's throne;
Since by its favour my fortunes prospered,
Right do I deem it service to render.'

LEGEND OF HAFTAN-BOKHT

When the Worm's warders thus heard the tale he told
Forthwith the fortress-gates wide they flung open.
Then, when his loads were laid safe in the fortress,
Thus did the King prepare his task to finish.
Swiftly before them spread he the wares he brought,
Graciously gave to each what he most craved.
Then for the warders spread he a rich repast,
And like a servitor stood there to serve them,
Cast loose the locks and clasps of chest and coffer,
Brought forth a beaker brimming with date-wine.
But from the brimming bowl those who were charged
With the Worm's feeding turned their faces.
Since milk and rice for its meal must they carry
Feared they that wine might their footsteps unsteady.

Then to his feet leaped Ardashir lightly,
Crying, 'With me I bear much milk and fine rice.
Let me, I pray you, for days and nights three,
Gladden my spirit with the Worm's service.
Thus in the world fair fame shall I win me,
And from the Worm's luck borrow new blessing.
Blithely three days and nights quaff ye the wine-cup,
And on the fourth day, when the world-kindler
Rises, a booth right royal I'll build me,
Which shall o'ertop the towers of the Palace.
I am a chapman, eager for custom,
And by the Worm much fame shall I win me.'

He by these cunning words his aim accomplished:
'Feed thou the Worm,' they cried, 'so an it please thee.'
Thus did the ass-herd win by his wiles his aim,
While unto wine and song wended the warders.

When these had drunk deep wine overcame them;
Thus to wine-worship turned they from watching.
And when their souls were deep steeped in the wine-cup
Forth fared the Prince with his hosts of the hamlet,
Brought with him copper and brazen cauldron,
Kindled a flaming fire in the white daylight.
So to the Worm at its meal-time was measured
In place of milk and rice much molten metal.
Unto its trench he brought that liquid copper;
Soft from the trench its head the Worm upraised.
Then they beheld its tongue, like brazen cymbal.
Thrust forth to take its food as was its custom.

Into its open jaws that molten metal
 Poured he, while in the trench helpless the worm writhed.
 Crashed from its throat the sound of fierce explosion
 Such that the trench and whole fort fell a-quaking.
 Swift as the wind Ardashir and his comrades
 Hastened with drawn swords, arrows, and maces.
 Of the Worm's warders, wrapped in their wine-sleep,
 Not one escaped alive from their fierce onslaught.
 Then from the Castle-keep raised he the smoke-wreaths
 Which his success should tell to his captains.
 Hasting to Shahr-gir swift came the sentry,
 Crying, 'King Ardashir his task hath finished !
 Quickly the captain then came with his squadrons,
 Leading his mail-clad men unto the King's aid."

We see from the above extracts not only the fidelity with which Firdawsī followed the Pahlawī legend (known to him, as Noldeke has shown, not in the original, but in Persian translations), but also to what extent legends and fables gathered round the perfectly-historical figure of "Artakhshir, King of kings of Persia and non-Persia, son of Papak the King," known to us not only from historical works, but from coins and inscriptions¹ dating from his own time. With him, indeed, the native tradition may be said to pass from mythology to history (for the Alexander-legend, as we have already seen, is an importation from without), a point well put by the historian **Ibn Wadih al-Ya'qubi** (ed. Houtsma, vol. i, pp. 178-179), who flourished towards the end of the ninth century of our era, in the following words :—

"Persia claims many supernatural attributes for its kings which cannot be accepted as credible, such as that one had a number of mouths and eyes, and another a face of copper,² and that on the shoulders of another grew two snakes which ate human brains,³ the long duration of their lives, their keeping death from mankind, and the like

¹ At Naqsh-i-Rustam. See Ker-Porter, i, pi. xxiii, p. 548; Flandin, iv, pl. 182.

² Isfandiyar, called *Ruin-tan*, "having a body of brass," is probably intended. ³ Dahak is here meant.

Ardashir a
 historical figure
 surrounded by
 legends.

al-Ya'qubi on
 Persian legend
 and Persian
 history.

of this ; things which reason rejects, and which must be referred to the category of idle tales and frivolous fables, devoid of actuality. But such of the Persians as possess sense and knowledge, or nobility and distinguished extraction, alike princes and squires (*dihqan*), traditionists and men of culture, neither believe nor affirm nor repeat these things, and we find them reckoning the Persian Empire only from [the time of] Ardashir Babakan. . . . So we have omitted them [these legends], our method being to reject what is of ill savour."

Shapur, the son of Ardashir (the interesting legend of whose birth and recognition, given in the *Kar-namak*, the *Shah-nama*, and most of the Arabian historians, I am compelled to omit for lack of space) is notable in Western history for his successful campaigns against the "Romans" and his capture of the Emperor Valerian, achievements commemorated in the sculptures of Naqsh-i-Rustam and Shapur.¹ The Greek translation attached to the short bi-lingual Pahlawi inscription of this king at Naqsh-i-Rajab (which formed, as we have seen, the starting-point of the decipherment of both the Sasanian and the Achaemenian inscriptions) was probably cut by some Greek prisoner. The longer Haji-abad inscription still presents some difficulties, in spite of the labours of Thomas (1868), West (1869), Haug (1870), and other scholars, and the excellent reproductions of it (casts, copies, and photographs) available. Thomas did excellent service in publishing all the available Pahlawi inscriptions, but he was more successful in decipherment than in interpretation, where his results were of the most amazing kind, for he explained several of these edicts as professions of faith on the part of the Sasanian kings in the God of the Jews and Christians, and in consequence the divergence between the translations offered by him and the other scholars mentioned is so great that Lord Curzon says in his work on *Persia* (vol. ii, pp. 116-117) :—

Shapur's inscriptions and monuments.

The Haji-abad inscription.

¹ Curzon's *Persia*, vol. ii, pp. 120 and 211.

" That the decipherment of the Pehlevi character has reached no scientific stage of development is manifest from the different readings that have been given of the Hajiabad lines; and sooner than pin my faith either to the philo-Christian theory of Mr. Thomas, or to the bowshot theory of Dr. M. Haug, although I believe the latter has secured the verdict of most scholars, I prefer the security of unshamed ignorance."

No one, however, who is at all capable of weighing the evidence can doubt the general correctness of the renderings of Haug and West, who had the advantage over Thomas of being familiar with the book Pahlawi. Out of the 115 words which constitute the Sas&anian-Pahlawi version, not more than half a dozen are uncertain in meaning (though unfortunately they are of importance for the understanding of the sense), and the meaning of the first six lines and a half is perfectly certain. The difficulty of fully comprehending the whole largely arises from our absence of information as to the nature of the ceremony described, and the exact object of the shooting of the arrow by the King out of this lonely little cave. Parallels, however, are not wanting, and evidently the shooting of an arrow to determine a site was not unusual in Sasanian times. Thus Tabari (Noldeke's translation, pp. 263-264) and Dinawari (p. 66) tell us that when the Persian general Wahriz, the conqueror and governor of Yemen, felt his death approaching, he called for his bow and arrows, bade his retainers raise him up, and shot an arrow into the air, commanding those who stood by him to mark where it fell, and to build a mausoleum for his body there ; and it is very probable that the shot which forms the subject of the Haji-abdd inscription was made for some similar purpose, which, were it known, would greatly facilitate the full explanation of the inscription.¹

¹ That the practice of determining a site by shooting an arrow continued into Muhammadan times, and was used by the Arabs as well as the Persians, is shown by a passage in al-Baladhuri's *Kitabu futuhi'l-buldan* d. de Goeje, p. 276). Compare II Kings xiii, 14-19.

We ought, however, to refer in this connection to a very ingenious attempt at a new translation of this inscription made by Friedrich Muller in the *Vienna Oriental Journal* for 1892 (vol. vi, pp. 71-75). Citing for illustration and comparison a passage from the Iliad (xxiii, 852) and an episode from the life of Charles VI (M. Bermann's *Maria Theresa u. Joseph II*, p. 38), he takes *mind* (translated by Haug as "spirit") as a conventional honorific epithet of Royalty at this time (similar to "sublime" in modern Turkey and Persia and "celestial" in China), *chetak* (= Baluchi *chedag*, "a stone-arrow") as a pillar set up as a target (= Homer's *toroe*), and *wayak* as a bird (== Homer's *rprpwv iriXeia*); and thus translates the enigmatical inscription.

F. Muller's interpretation of the Haji-abad inscription.

"This is the edict of me, the Mazda worshipper, Shahpuhr, placed amongst the gods, King of kings of Persia and non-Persia, of celestial descent from God, son of the Mazda-worshipper Artakjishatr, placed amongst the gods, King of kings of Persia, of celestial descent from God, grandson of Papak, placed amongst the gods, the King.

"And when we shot this arrow, then we shot it in the presence of the Satraps, the Princes, the Great ones and the Nobles: we set the foot on this stone¹ and shot out the arrow at one of these targets: where the arrow was shot, however, there was no bird at hand, where, if the targets had been rightly set up, the arrow would have been found outwardly visible [or 'sticking in the ground.']

"Then we ordered a target specially set apart for His Majesty to be erected in this place. The Celestial hand [*i.e.*, the hand of His Majesty] wrote this: * Let no one set foot on this stone or shoot an arrow at this target.' Then I shot the arrow destined for the Royal use at these targets.

"This hath the hand [of the King] written."

¹ More probably "in this place," for Noldeke (Stoltze's *Persepolis*, vol. ii, Introduction) reads the word hitherto supposed to be *digi* or *diki* as *duks* = Aramaic *dukha*, "place."

2. *Manes and the Manichoens.*

At the end of the Parthian period, in the fourth year of King Ardawan (A. D. 215—216), as we learn from the *Chronology of Ancient Nations* (Sachau's translation, p. 121) of the learned al-Biruni (early eleventh century),
Manes and his doctrine. was born Manes, or Mani, the founder of the Manichæan religion—a religion which, notwithstanding the fierce persecutions to which it was exposed both in the East and the West, alike at the hands of Zoroastrians and Christians, from the very moment of its appearance until the extermination of the unfortunate Albigenses in the thirteenth century, continued for centuries to count numerous adherents, and to exercise an immense influence on religious thought both in Asia and Europe.

In the system which he founded Manes was essentially eclectic ; but though he drew materials both from the ancient Babylonian and from the Buddhist religions, his main endeavour was, as Gibbon has said, " to reconcile the doctrines of Zoroaster and Christ," an attempt which resulted in his being " pursued by the two religions with equal and unrelenting hatred." His system, however, is to be regarded rather as a Christianised Zoroastrianism than as a Zoroastrianised Christianity, since he was certainly a Persian subject, and probably at least half a Persian ; wrote one of his books (the *Shaburqan*, or *Shah-puhrakan*, characterised by the Muhammadan al-Biruni as "of all Persian books one that may be relied upon," since " Mani in his law has forbidden telling lies, and he had no need whatever for falsifying history") in Persian for King Shapur, whose conversion he hoped to effect, and was finally put to a cruel death by one of Shapur's successors.¹

The sources of our information about the life, doctrines, and writings of Manes are both Eastern and Western, and since

" Hormuzd, Bahram I or Bahrain II (see Noldeke's *Gesch. d. Sasan.*, p. 47, n. 5 *ad calc.*).

the former (notably the *Fihrist*, *al-Biruni*, *Ibn Wadih al-Ya'qubi* and *Shahristani* ¹) have been made accessible, it has been generally recognised that the information which they yield us is of a more reliable character than that contained in the writings of St. Augustine, the Acts of Archelaus, &c, on which the older European accounts of this remarkable man are entirely based. As considerations of space render it impossible to devote more than a few pages to this topic, which will be found fully discussed in the books cited at the end of the last note, we will first give a translation of al-Ya'qubi's account of the life and doctrines of Manes (this being the only one of the four Arabic authorities above enumerated which is not at present accessible in a European translation), and then add such few remarks as may appear necessary for the further elucidation of the outlines of the subject.

Sources of our knowledge of Manes and his system.

Al-Ya'qubi says :—

" And in the days of Shapur the son of Ardashir appeared Mam the Zindiq, the son of Hammad, who invited Shapur to Dualism and cast censure upon his religion (*i.e.*, Zoroastrianism). And Shapur inclined to him. And Man! said that the Controller of the Universe was twofold, and that there were two Eternal Principles, Light and Darkness, two Creators, the Creator of Good and the Creator of Evil. The Darkness and the Light, each one of them, connotes in itself five ideas, Colour, Taste, Smell, Touch, and Sound, whereby these two do hear, see, and know ; and what is good and beneficial is from the Light, while what is hurtful and calamitous is from the Darkness.

Al-Ya'qubi's account of Manes.

" Now these two [principles] were [at first] unmixed, then they became mixed ; and the proof of this is that there was [at first] no

¹ *Fihrist* (composed A.D. 987), ed. Flugel, pp. 328-338, and the same with German translation, introduction, and notes, also by Flugel (1862) ; *al-Biruni's Chronology*, translated by Sachau, pp. 27, 80, 121, 189, 191, 225, 329 ; *Ibn Wadih*, ed. Houtsma, vol. i, pp. 180-182 ; *Shahristani*, translated into German by Haarbrucker, i, pp. 285-291. See also, besides Beausobre (1734) and Mosheim, Baur, Kessler, and Spiegel's *Eranische Alterthumskunde*, vol. ii, pp. 195-232.

phenomenon, then afterwards phenomena were produced. And the Darkness anticipated the Light in this admixture, for they were [at first] in mutual contact like the shadow and the sun ; and the proof of this is the impossibility of the production of anything save from something else. And the Darkness anticipated the Light in admixture, because, since the admixture of the Darkness with the Light was injurious to the latter, it is impossible that the Light should have made the first beginning [therein] ; for the Light is by its nature the Good. And the proof that these two, Good and Evil, were eternal, is that if one substance be posited, two opposite actions will not proceed from it. Thus, for example, Fire [which is], hot and burning, cannot refrigerate, while that which refrigerates cannot heat; and that wherefrom good results cannot produce evil, while from that which produces evil good cannot result. And the proof that these two principles are living and active is that good results from the action of this, and evil from the action of that.

"So Shapur accepted this doctrine from him, and urged his subjects to do the same. And this thing was grievous unto them, and the wise men from amongst the people of his kingdom united in dissuading him from this, but he did not do [what they demanded]. And Mani composed books wherein he affirmed the Two Principles ; and of his writings was the book which he entitled *Kanzu'l Ihya* ('the Treasure of Vivification,')¹ wherein he describes what of salvation wrought by the Light and of corruption wrought by the Darkness exists in the soul, and refers reprehensible actions to the Darkness; and a book which he named *Shaburqan*, wherein he describes the delivered soul and that which is mingled with the devils and with defects, and makes out heaven to be a flat surface, and asserts that the world is on a sloping mountain on which the high heaven revolves; and a book which he named *Kitabu'l-Huda wa't-Tadbir* ('the Book of Guidance and Administration'), and the 'Twelve Gospels,' whereof he named each after one of the letters of the alphabet, and described Prayer, and what must be done for the deliverance of the soul; and the *Sifru'l-Asrar* ('Book of Secrets'),² wherein he finds fault with the miracles of the prophets; and the *Sifru'l-Jababira* ('Book of the Giants'); besides which he has many other books and epistles.

"So Shapur continued in this doctrine for some ten years. Then the *Mubadh* (Fire-priest) came to him and said, 'This man hath

¹ See Flugel's *Mani*, n. 324, *QrioavpoQ* Zwiij.

² See Flugel, *op. cit.*, pp. 102-103, where the contents of this book are briefly stated from the *Fihrist*. It contained eighteen chapters.

corrupted thy religion; confront me with him, that I may dispute with him.' So he confronted them, and the Mubadh bested him in argument, and Shapur returned from Dualism to the Magian religion, and resolved to put Mani to death, but he fled away and came to the lands of India, where he abode until Shapur died.

"Then Shapur was succeeded by his son Hurmuz, a valiant man ; and he it was who built the city of Ram-Hurmuz, but his days were not prolonged. He reigned one year.

" Then reigned Bahram the son of Hurmuz, who concerned himself [only] with his minions and amusements. And Mani's disciples wrote to him, saying, 'There hath succeeded to the throne a King young in years, greatly preoccupied [with his amusements].' So he returned to the land of Persia, and his doings became noised abroad, and his place [of abode] became known. Then Bahram summoned him and questioned him concerning his doctrine, and he related to him his circumstances. Then [Bahram] confronted him with the *Mubadh*, who disputed with him, and said, 'Let molten lead be poured on my belly and on thine, and whichever of us shall be unhurt thereby, he will be in the right.'¹ But [Mani] replied, 'This is a deed of the Darkness.' So Bahram ordered him to be imprisoned, and said to him, 'When morning comes I will send for thee and will slay thee in such wise as none hath been slain before thee.'

" So all that night Mani was being flayed, until his spirit departed [from his body]. And when it was morning, Bahram sent for him, and they found him [already] dead. So he ordered his head to be cut off, and his body to be stuffed with straw ; and he persecuted his followers and slew of them a great multitude. And Bahram the son of Hurmuzd reigned three years."

The account of Mani given in the *Fihrist* is much fuller, but as it is accessible to all who read German in Flugel's translation, only a few important points will here be mentioned. His father's name is given as *Futtaq* (the arabicised form of a Persian name, probably Pataka, represented by Western writers as Ilareiaoc, Patecius, Phatecius, and Patricks), and he was a

¹ This "molten brass ordeal" is repeatedly mentioned both in the Pahlawi and Arabic books. Amongst the former, see Haug's ed. and translation of the *Arda Viraf Namak*, p. 144, especially the passages from the *Dinkard* cited in the note ; and also the *Shikand Gumanik Vijar* (ed. West), p. xii. Amongst the latter, see al-Qazwini's *Atharu'l-Bilad*, p. 267. The test is also said to have been proposed to Manes in the Persian *Tarikh-i-Guzida* (Cambridge MS. marked Dd. 3.23, f. 45a).

native of Hamadan, but migrated thence to Babylonia (Badarayā and Bakusaya) and joined himself to the *Mughtasila*, a sect closely akin to the Mandaean, from whom Mani probably derived his hatred both of the Jewish religion and also of idolatry. His mother's name is variously given as Mar Maryam, Utakhim and Mays, and it is at least possible that she was of the race of the Ashghanis, or Parthian royal family, which, if true, would afford another ground for the mistrust entertained towards him by the Sasanian kings. He was born, according to his own statement in the book called *Shdburqdrij* cited by al-Binini, in A.D. 215 or 216, and was deformed by a limp in one leg. Before his birth the Angel *Tawm* made known to his mother his high mission in dreams, but he only began to receive revelations at the age of twelve (or thirteen, A.D. 227-8, according to al-Biruni), and not till he reached the age of twenty-four was he commissioned to make known his doctrine. His public announcement of his claims is said to have been solemnly made before King Shapiir on the day of his coronation, March 20, A.D. 242, and it was probably through the King's brother Piruz, whom he had converted to his doctrines, that he succeeded in obtaining admission on so great an occasion of state. His long journeyings in India and the East probably followed his loss of the King's favour. That his ultimate return to Persia and barbarous execution took place during the short reign of Bahram I (A.D. 273-6), is asserted by al-Biruni, al-Ya'qubi, and Tabari.

"Manichaeism," says the first (Sachau's translation, p. 191), "increased by degrees under Ardashir, his son Shapur, and Hurmuzd son of Shapur, until the time when Bahram the son of Hurmuzd ascended the throne. He gave orders to search for Mani, and when he had found him, he said: 'This man has come forward calling people to destroy the world. It will be necessary to begin by destroying him, before anything of his plans should be realised.' It is well known that he killed Mani, stripped off his skin, filled it with grass, and hung it up at the gate of Junde-Shapur, which is still known as the *Gate of Manes*. Hurmuzd also killed a number of the

pahbadh Marzuban the son of
out of his empire, faithful to
is the expulsion of pseudo-
osed on him the obligation
(ndia, China, and Thibet, and
he returned, and was seized
ing broken the stipulation,

aivhich so aroused the enmity
and which (to speak of the East
atter part of the eighth century,
hdi appointed a special inquisitor,
Zanadiqa, to detect and punish
garb of Islam, held the doctrines

anicnaeans of diqs ? And what was the exact
of this term *Zindiq*, which, originally used to denote
ichaeans, was gradually, and is still, applied to all
and heretics in Muhammadan countries ?

take the last inquiry first, as that which may be most
wered. The ordinary explanation is that the term

Zandik is a Persian adjective meaning " one who
follows the *Zand*," or traditional explanation (see
pp. 78-9 *supra*) in preference to the Sacred Text,

the Manichaeans were so called because of their dis-
to interpret and explain the scriptures of other
in accordance with their own ideas, by a process
the *yvwcrig* of the gnostics and the *tawil* of the later
s.¹ But Professor Bevan has proposed a much more
e explanation. We know from the *Fihrist* (Fliigel's
p. 64) and *al-Blrhnl* (transl. Sachau, p. 190) that
the term *Sam?nd*^c ("Listener," " Auditor") was applied
lower grades of Manichaeans, who did not wish to take
lem all the obligations concerning poverty, celibacy, and

:rm *Zandikih* occurs in the *Mainyo-i-Khard* (ed. West, 1871,
p. 37), and is explained as " thinking well of the devils " (pp.

mortification imposed by the
amongst them, who were
riches, to suppress cupidity
be abstinent in it, continual;
as possible," were called *Si*

This word is Arabic, but the
Saddiqai, which in Persian
the *dd* by *nd* finding its
(modern *shanba*) for *Sabbat*
Sanskrit *Siddhanta* into *Sindhi*,
Zandik (Arabicised into *Zindi*
form of the Aramaic name *aj*
Manichaeans, and, primarily appl
was only later used in the sense of

...
interesting parallel, as Professor Bevan points out, i;
by the derivation of the German *Ketzer*, "hereti
Kaoapoly "the pure." ¹

The Manichaeans, as we have seen, like the fol
Marcion and Bardesanes, were reckoned by Muh
writers amongst the "Dualists." But
Doctrines of the Zoroastrian religion is also essentially
whence arose the violent antagonism be
and the Manichaean doctrine? The answer is n<
seek. In the former the Good and the Evil Crea
realm of Ahura Mazda and that of Ahra Mainyush (A
each comprised a spiritual and a material part. Not
Amshaspands and Angels, but also the material eleme
all animals and plants useful to man, and of mankind tho
held "the Good Religion," fought on the side of Ahura
against the *divs* and *drujes*, the *khrafstars*, or noxious an
the witches and warlocks, the misbelievers and heretics
constituted the hosts of Ahriman. In general the Zoro
religion, for all its elaborately systematised Spiritual Hie-

¹ Cf. C. Schmidt's *Hist, et doctrine de la Secte des Cathares of*
(Paris, 1849).

iterial religion, in the sense
 " be fruitful and multiply
 ?• sow the seed and reap the
 according to the Manichæan
 nixture of the Light and the
 terial universe was essentially
 * the Powers of Evil ; it was
 means of escape and return
 ortion of the Light ("Jesus
 ult., ii, p. 226), which had become
 keness ; and when this deliverance was, so
 _^ted, the angels who supported the heavens
 e earth would relax their hold, the whole
 averse would collapse, and the Final Conflagration
 mark the Redemption of the Light and its final
 tion from the irredeemable and indestructible Darkness,
 while, by the "Column of Praise" (consisting of the
 s, doxologies and good works of the faithful ascending-
 Heaven, and visible as the Milky Way²), the particles
 ht, set free from their imprisonment in the Darkness,
 upwards, and are ferried across by the Sun and Moon to
 Paradise of Light," which is their proper home. All that
 o the prolongation of this state of admixture of Light
 arkness, such as marriage and the begetting of children,
 sequently regarded by Manes and his followers as evil
 eprehensible, and thus we see what King Hurmuz meant
 words, " This man has come forward calling people to
 the world." Zoroastrianism was national, militant,
 listic, imperialist; Manichæanism, cosmopolitan, quietist,
 unworldly ; the two systems stood in essential
 ism, and, for all their external resemblances (fully

armesteter's English translation of the *Avesta*, in *S. B. E.*, vol. i,
 d n. 1 *ad calc.* on Fargard iv, 47.

Flugel's *Mani*, p. 231 ; Spiegel's *Eran. Alterthumskunde*, vol. ii,

indicated by Spiegel in his pp. 195—232), were inevitable. In the case of Judaism, orthodoxy and antagonism was equally great less at the hands of the Jews it was the power rather than since, as we have seen, Jewish particular abhorrence.

Into the details of the which led to the admixture of their theories concerning the "King of the the Primal Man, the Devil, and the mechanic universe as a means for liberating the Light from and their grotesque beliefs concerning Adam and Abel, *Hakimatu'd-Dahr* ("the World-wise") and *Hirs* ("the Daughter of Desire"), Rawfaryad, Barfary Shathil (Seth), and the like,—it is not possible to enter place. As a set-off against their rejection of the prophets the Manichaeans recognised not only Zoroaster Buddha as divine messengers, but also Christ, though distinguished between the True Christ, who was, in their an Apparition from the World of Light clad in a merely tasmal body, and His counterpart and antagonist, "the the Widow" who was crucified. It is a curious thin- this belief of the Manichaeans was adopted by Muhan in the Qur'an (*sura iv*, v. 156) it is written :—

"And for their saying, ' Verily we slew the Messiah, Jesus the Mary, the Apostle of God ;' but they did not slay Him or crucify but the matter was made doubtful to them [or, a similitude for them]". And verily those who differ about Him are in discerning Him; they have no knowledge concerning Him, but on an opinion. They did not kill Him, for sure / but God raised unto Himself; for God is mighty and wise !"

As regards the history of the Manichaeans in the E have already mentioned that during the Caliphate of al

(A.D. 775-785), the father of Harunu 'r-Rashid, they were so numerous that a special Inquisitor was appointed to detect and destroy them. The author of the *Fihrist* (A.D. 988) knew 300 professed Manichaeans at Baghdad alone, and al-Biruni (A.D. 1000) was familiar with their books, especially the *Shaburqan* (the one book composed by Manes in Persian, i.e. Pahlawi; for the other six of his principal writings were in Syriac) which he cites in several places, including the opening words (Sachau's translation, p. 190), which run thus :—

" *Wisdom and deeds have always from time to time been brought to mankind by the messengers of God. So in one age they have been brought by the messenger of God called Buddha to India, in another by Zoroaster to Persia, in another by Jesus to the West. Thereafter this revelation has come down, this prophecy in this last age, through me, Mani, the Messenger of the God of Truth to Babylonia.*"

The migrations of the Manichaeans are thus described in the *Fihrist*:—

"The Manichaeans were the first religious community to enter the lands of Transoxiana beside the Shamanists. The reason of this was that when the Kisra (Bahrain) slew Mani and crucified him, and forbade the people of his Kingdom to dispute about religion, he took to killing the followers of Mani wherever he found them, wherefore they continued to flee before him until they crossed the river of Balkh and entered the dominions of the Khaqan (or Khan), with whom they abode. Now Khaqan (or Khan) in their tongue is a title conferred by them on the King of the Turks. So the Manichaeans settled in Transoxiana until such time as the power of the Persians was broken and that of the Arabs waxed strong, whereupon they returned to these lands ('Iraq, or Babylonia), especially during the break up of the Persian Empire and the days of the Umayyad kings. Khalid b. 'Abdu'llah al-Qasri¹ took them under his protection, but

¹ A powerful protector of the Manichaeans, put to death by the Caliph al-Walid in A.D. 743. See Flügel's *Mani*) pp. 320-322.

the leadership [of the sect] was not conferred save in Babylonia, in these lands, after which the leader would depart into whatever land would afford him most security. Their last migration took place in the days of al-Muqtadir (A.D. 908-932), when they retired to Khurasan for fear of their lives, while such as remained of them concealed their religion, and wandered through these regions. About five hundred men of them collected at Samarqand, and their doctrines became known. The governor of Khurasan would have slain them, but the King of China (by whom I suspect the ruler of the Taghazghaz to be meant) sent unto him saying, 'There are in my domains double the number of Muhammadans that there are in thine of my co-religionists,' and swearing to him that should he kill one of the latter, he would slay the whole of the former to avenge him, and would destroy the mosques, and would establish an inquisition against the Muhammadans in the rest of his dominions and slay them. So the Governor of Khurasan let them alone, only taking from them the *jizya* (poll-tax on non-Muslims). So they diminished in numbers in the lands of Islam; but in the City of Peace (Baghdad) I used to know some three hundred of them in the days of Mu'izzu'd-Dawla (A.D. 946-967). But in these our days there are not five of them left at the capital. And these people are named Ajari, and they reside in the suburbs of Samarqand, Sughd, and especially Nuwikath."

Of those who, while outwardly professing Islam, were really Manichaeans, the author of the *Fihrist* gives a long list, which includes al-Ja'd b. Dirham, who was put to death by the Umayyad Caliph Hisham (A.D. 724-743); the poet Bashshar b. Burd, put to death in A.D. 784; nearly all the Barmecides, except Muhammad b. Khalid b. Barmak; the Caliph al-Ma'mtin (A.D. 813-833), but this is not credited by the author; Muhammad ibnu'z-Zayyat, the Wazir of al-Mu'tasim, put to death in A.D. 847; and others.

The Manichaeans were divided into five grades—the *Mu'allimun* or Teachers, called "the Sons of Tenderness"; the *Mushammashn* or those illuminated by the Sun,¹ called "the Sons of Knowledge"; the *Qisslikn* or priests, called "the Sons of Under-

Manichaeans
in Islam.

Duties imposed
on the Mani-
chaeans.

¹ See Flügel's *Mani*, pp. 294-299. The meaning is uncertain.

standing " ; the *Siddiqun* or faithful, called " the Sons of the Unseen " ; and the *Samma'un* or hearers, called " the Sons of Intelligence." They were commanded to perform the four or the seven prayers, and to abandon idol-worship, falsehood, covetousness, murder, fornication, theft, the teaching and study of all arts of deception and magic, hypocrisy in religion and lukewarmness in daily life. To these *ten* commandments were added : belief in the four Supreme Essences : to wit, God (" the King of the Paradises of Light"), His Light, His Power, and His Wisdom ; fasting for seven days in each month ; and the acceptance of " the three seals," called by St. Augustine and other Christian writers the *signacula oris, manuum et sinus*, typifying the renunciation of evil words, evil deeds, and evil thoughts, and corresponding to the *hukht, huvarsht*, and *humat* (good words, good deeds, and good thoughts) of the Zoroastrian religion. Details of the fasts and prayers, and some of the formulae used in the latter, are also given in the *Fihrist*, from which we also learn something of the schisms which arose after Mam's time as to the Spiritual Supremacy, the chief divisions being the *Mihriyya* and the *Miqlesiyya*. The seven books of Mam (of which, as has been already said, six were in Syriac and one—the *Shaburqan*—in Pahlawi) were written in a peculiar script invented by their author and reproduced (in a form greatly corrupted and disfigured in the existing MSS.) by the *Fihrist*.

The writing
invented by
Manes.

To this script, and to the art of writing in general, the Manichaeans (like the modern Babis, who, as is well known, have also invented a script peculiar to themselves called *khatt-i-badi'* "the New Writing") would appear to have devoted much attention, for al-Jahidh (ninth century) cites Ibrahim as-Sindi as saying that " it would be well if they were to spend less on the whitest, finest paper and the blackest ink, and on the training of calligraphists."

The legendary
Arxhang-i-Mani.

From this, as Professor Be van conjectures, arose the idea of Manx as a skilful painter which is prevalent in

Persia, where it is generally believed that he produced a picture-book called the *Arzhang* or *Artang*, to which he appealed (as Muhammad appealed to the as a proof of his supernatural power and divine mission.¹

3. *Nushirwan and Mazdak.*

"I was born," the Prophet Muhammad is reported to have said, "in the reign of the Just King," meaning thereby Khusraw *Anushak-ruban* ("of Immortal Spirit"),
 Character of Nushirwan. who is still spoken of by the Persians as "Nushirwan the Just" and regarded as the perfect type of kingly virtue. We have already seen that this verdict cannot be accepted without reserve, and that Nushirwan's vigorous measures against heretics rather than his justice (in our sense of the term) won him the applause and approval of the Magian priests by whose hands the national chronicles were shaped ; just as the slur which rests on the name of the first Yazdigird (called *Baza-gar*, "the Sinner") is to be ascribed rather to his tolerance of other religions and his indifference to the Zoroastrian clergy than to any special wickedness of life. Yet Nushirwan, though severe on heretics whose activity threatened the welfare of the State, was by no means a fanatic, but on the contrary interested himself greatly in foreign religions and philosophies. In this respect he reminds us of the Caliph at Ma'mun and the Emperor Akbar, both of whom took the same delight in religious and philosophical controversies and speculations. Noldeke (*Gesch. d. Sasaniden*, p. 150, n. 3 *ad calc.*), who is by no means disposed to look favourably on the Persians, gives, on the whole, a very favourable summary of his character, which he concludes in the following words : "On the whole Khusraw (Nushirwan) is certainly one of the greatest and best kings whom the Persians ever possessed, which, however, did not prevent him from being capable of

¹ Cf. *Shahnama*, ed. Macan, vol. iii, pp. 1453-1454.

reckless cruelty, nor from having little more regard for the truth than the Persians, even the best, are wont to have." His suppression of the Mazdakites, his successful campaigns against the "Romans" (Byzantines), his wise laws, his care for the national defences, and the prosperity enjoyed by the Persian Empire during his reign (A.D. 531-578) all conduced to the high reputation which he enjoys in the East as an ideal monarch ; while his reception of the seven Neo-Platonist philosophers at the Court of Nushirwan. Greek philosophers, expelled from their native land by the intolerance of the Emperor Justinian, and his insertion of a special clause in their favour (whereby they were guaranteed toleration and freedom from interference on their return thither) in a treaty which he concluded with the Byzantines at the close of a successful war, as well as his love of knowledge, exemplified not only by his patronage of learned men, but by the establishment of a great medical school at Junde-Shapur, and by the numerous translations from Greek and Sanskrit into Pahlawi executed by his orders, caused it to be believed, even in the West, " that a disciple of Plato was seated on the Persian throne." ¹

The importance of the visit to the Persian Court of the Neo-Platonist philosophers mentioned above has, I think, hardly been sufficiently emphasised. How much Introduction of Neo-Platonist ideas into Persia at this epoch. the later mysticism of the Persians, the doctrine of the Sufis, which will be fully discussed in a later chapter, owes to Neo-Platonism, is beginning to be recognised, and has been admirably illustrated by my friend and former pupil Mr. R. A. Nicholson, late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, in his *Selected Poems from the Divan of Shams-i-Tabriz* (Cambridge, 1898) ; nor, if Darmesteter's views be correct, did Zoroastrianism disdain to draw materials from the same source. The great historical introduction of Greek philosophical and scientific ideas into

¹ See the excellent account of Nushirwan given by Gibbon (*Decline and Fall*, ed. 1813, vol. vii, pp. 298-307).

the East took place, as is well known, during the early 'Abbasid period, especially during the reign of Harunu'r-Rashid'sson al-Ma'mun (A.D. 813-833), but it is exceedingly probable (though, owing to the loss of the great bulk of Pahlawi literature, especially the non-religious portion, it cannot be proved) that already in the sixth century, during the reign of Nushirwan, this importation had begun, and that the beginnings of the Sufi doctrines, as of so many others, may in reality go back beyond the Muhammadan to the Sasanian times. As regards the Christians, Nushirwan's contempt for their pacific doctrines and vexation at the rebellious behaviour of his son Anusha-zadh (see p. 136 *supra*) did not prevent him from according certain privileges to the dangerous and often disloyal Monophysites,¹ or from accepting in one of his treaties with the Byzantine Emperor certain stipulations in favour of the Catholics ;² nay, it was even asserted by Euagrius and Sebeos¹ that he was privately baptized before his death, which statement, though certainly false, shows that he was generally regarded as favourably disposed towards the Christians, who, as Noldeke remarks, gave a touching proof of their gratitude for his favours a century later when they would not suffer the remains of his unfortunate descendant Yazdigird III, the last ruler of the House of Sasan, to lie unburied. Such toleration, however, was always subject to considerations of the safety of the State and the order of social life, both of which were threatened by the doctrines of the communist Mazdak, of whom we shall now speak.

The evidence which has come down to us concerning this remarkable man has been carefully collected by Noldeke³ in

¹ See Noldeke, *Gesch. d. Sasaniden*, p. 162 *ad calc.*

² Gibbon, *op. cit.*, p. 305, n. 52 *ad calc.*

³ See also a more popular account by the same scholar in the *Deutsche Rundschau* for February, 1879, pp. 284 *et seqq.*

The most ancient and authentic notices of, or references to, Mazdak are as follows :—

the fourth Excursus (*Ueber Mazdak und die Mazdakiteren*, pp. 455-467) appended to his admirable History of the Sasanians, which we have already had occasion to cite so frequently. It must naturally be borne in mind that this rests entirely on the statements of persons (whether Zoroastrian or Christian) who were bitterly opposed to his teaching, and that if the case for the defence had been preserved we might find favourable features, or at least extenu-

Mazdak the
Communist

(i) In the *Pahlawi* translation of the Vendidad, Fargard iv, v. 49, the words of the Avesta text, "it is this man who can strive against the ungodly *Ashemaogha*" (i.e., "fiend" or "heretic") "who does not eat," are illustrated by the gloss "like Mazdak, son of Bamdadh;" while other references to the "accursed Mazdak" occur in the *Bahman Yasht*, which, however, is one of the latest products of Pahlawi literature, and is, in its extant form, referred by West to about the twelfth century of our era. There also existed a Pahlawi *Mazdak-namak*, or "Book of Mazdak," which was one of the numerous Pahlawi works translated into Arabic by Ibnu'l-Muqaffa', but this, unfortunately, is lost, though its contents are to some extent preserved by other Arabic writers.

(ii) In Greek references to Mazdak occur in the works of Procopius, Theophanes, and John Malalas.

(iii) In Syriac, in the Chronicle of Joshua the Stylite (Wright's ed. and transl., § xx), who speaks of King Kawad's "evil conduct" in re-establishing "the abominable sect of the Magi which is called that of the Zaradushtakan, which teaches that women should be in common. . . ."

(iv) In Arabic, accounts of Mazdak are given by *al-Ya'qubi* (c. A.H. 260, ed. Houtsma, vol. 1, p. 186), who mentions that he and his master Zaratusht

Khurragan were put to death by Anushirwan; *Ibn Qutayba* († A.H. 270-276; *Kitabu'l-Ma'arif*, ed. Wiistenfeld, 1850, p. 328); *Dinawari* († A.H. 282-290; ed. Guirgass, p. 69); *Tabari* († A.H. 310; ed. de Goeje, Series I, vol. ii, pp. 885-886 = Noldeke's transl., pp. 140-144; pp. 893-894 = Noldeke, pp. 154-155); *Hamza* of Isfahan (early fourth century of *Hijra*); *Eutychius* († A.H. 328); *Masaudi* († A.H. 346; *Muruju' dh-Dhahab*, ed. B. de Meynard, vol. ii, pp. 195-196); *al-Biruni* († A.H. 440; Sachau's translation, p. 192); *Shahristani* († A.H. 548; *Kitdbu'l-milal*, ed. Cureton, pp. 192-194 = Haarbrucker's transl., pp. 291-293); *Ibnu'l-Athir* († A.H. 630); *Abu'l-Fida* († A.H. 732; ed. Fleischer, pp. 88-91), and other historians.

(v) In Persian, the narratives in the *Shahnama* of Firdawsi (ed. Macan, vol. iii, pp. 1611-1616), and the *Siyasat-nama* of the *Nidhdmu'l-Mulk* (ed. Schefer, pp. 166-181) deserve especial mention.

ating circumstances, of which we now know nothing. What, for example, to take an analogous case from modern times, would be our judgment of the Babis if we depended solely on the highly-coloured and malicious presentations of their doctrines and practices contained in such official chronicles as the *Nasikhu 't- Tawarikh* of the court-historian *Lisanu'l-Mulk* or of the talented Riza-quli Khan's supplement to the *Rawzatu's-Safa*, or even of presumably unprejudiced Europeans who were dependent for their information on the accounts current in court circles? In this connection it is worthy of remark that the charges of communism and antinomianism, especially in what concerns the relation of the sexes, were those most frequently brought alike against the Mazdakites of the sixth and the Babis of the nineteenth century by their opponents; and since we now know that the alleged communism of the early Babis, so far as it existed at all, was merely incidental, as in the similar case of the early Christians, and cannot be regarded as in any sense a characteristic of their doctrines, we cannot avoid a suspicion that the same thing holds true in some degree of Mazdak and his followers.

Whether Mazdak himself originated the doctrines associated with his name is doubtful, a certain Zaradusht the son of Khurragan, of Fasa in the province of Fars, being mentioned in some of the sources as their real author. Of the theoretical basis of this doctrine we know much less than of its practical outcome, but Noldeke well remarks that " what sharply distinguishes it from modern Communism and Socialism (so far as these show themselves, not in the dreams of individuals, but in actual parties), is its religious character." All evils, in Mazdak's view, were to be attributed to the demons of Envy, Wrath, and Greed, who had destroyed the equality of mankind decreed and desired by God, which equality it was his aim to restore. The ascetic element which has been already noticed (p. 161 *supra*) as one of the features of Manichaeism to which the Zoroastrians so

Doctrines of
Mazdak.

strongly objected also appears in the religion of Mazdak in the prohibition of shedding blood and eating meat. Indeed, as we have already seen (p. 169 n. 1 *ad calc.*), to the Zoroastrian theologians Mazdak was *par excellence* "the ungodly Ashemaogha who does not eat."

For political reasons, of which, according to Noldeke's view, the chief was a desire to curb the excessive power of the priests and nobles, King Kawadh (or Qubad) favoured the new doctrine ; an action which led to his temporary deposition in favour of his brother Jamasp. This

Rise and fall of
the Mazdakites.

untoward event probably produced a considerable alteration in his feelings towards the new sect, and the balance of testimony places in the last years of his reign that wholesale slaughter of the Mazdakites with which, in the popular legend, Khusraw the First is credited, and

Massacre of the
Mazdakites (A.D.
528-9).

by which he is said to have earned his title of Nushirwan (*Anusha-kruban*, "Of Immortal Spirit"). According to the current account (given in its fullest form in the *Siyasat-nama* of the Nidhamu'l-Mulk (ed. Schefer, pp. 166-181; transl, pp. 245-266), Prince Nushirwan, after exposing the evil designs and juggler's tricks of Mazdak to his father King Kawadh, deceived the heresiarch by a feigned submission, and fixed a day when, in presence of all the Mazdakites, he would make formal and public profession of the new doctrine. Invitations were issued to the Mazdakites to a great banquet which the prince would provide in one of the royal gardens ; but as each group entered the garden they were seized by soldiers who lay in wait for them, slain, and buried head downwards in the earth with their feet protruding. When all had been thus disposed of, Nushirwan invited Mazdak, whom he had himself received in private audience, to take a walk with him through the garden before the banquet, and to inspect the produce thereof. On entering the garden, "Behold," said the prince, pointing to the upturned feet of the dead heretics, "the crop which your evil doctrines have brought forth !" Therewith he made a sign, and Mazdak

was at once seized, bound and buried alive head downwards in the midst of a large mound of earth specially prepared for him in the middle of the garden. A contemporary account of the massacre by an eyewitness, Contemporary testimony. Timotheus the Persian, has been preserved to us by Theophanes and John Malalas. The presence at this horrible scene of the Christian bishop Bazanes, who was also the King's physician, finds a curious parallel in recent times, for Dr. Polak, court-physician to the late Nasiru'd-Din Shah, was present at the cruel execution of the beautiful Babi heroine Qurratu'l-'Ayn in 1852.

However great the number of Mazdakites who perished in this massacre (which took place at the end of A.D. 528, or Subsequent history of the Mazdakites. the beginning of 529) may have been, the sect can hardly have been exterminated in a day, and there are reasons for believing that a fresh persecution took place soon after Nushirwan's accession to the throne (A.D. 531). After that, even, the sect, though no longer manifest, probably continued to exist in secret; nor is it unlikely that, as is suggested by some Muhammadan writers, its doctrines, like those of the Manichaeans, passed over into Muhammadan times, and were reproduced more or less faithfully by some of those strange antinomian sects of later days which will demand our attention in future chapters. This view is most strongly advanced by the celebrated Nizamu'l-Mulk, who, in his Treatise on Government (*Siyasat-nama*) endeavours at great length to show that the Isma'ilis and Assassins towards whom he entertained so violent an antipathy (amply justified in the event by his assassination at their hands on October 14, 1092) were the direct descendants of the Mazdakites.

4. *The Decline and Fall of the House of Sasan.*

In the long and glorious reign of Nushirwan (A.D. 531-578),

no year, perhaps, was so memorable, or so fraught with consequences of deep and unsuspected importance, as the forty-second (A. D. 572-3), called by the Arabs "the Year of the

"The Year of the Elephant." In this year, on the one hand, culminated a long series of events which led to the annexation by Persia of the rich and ancient kingdom of Yaman, an acquisition which might well arouse the enthusiasm and awaken the plaudits of the Persian imperialists of that epoch ; while in it, on the other hand, was born in distant Mecca one whose teaching was destined to overthrow the House of Sasan and the religion of Zoroaster, the Prophet Muhammad. On the night of his birth, according to the legends so dear to pious Muslims, the Palace of the Persian King was shaken by an earthquake, so that fourteen of its battlements fell to the ground ; the Sacred Fire, which had burned continuously for a thousand years, was extinguished ; and the Lake of Sawa suddenly dried up ; while the chief priest of the Zoroastrians saw in a dream the West of Persia overrun by Arabian camels and horses from across the Tigris. At these portents Nushirwan was greatly troubled, nor was his trouble dispelled by the oracular answer brought back by his messenger 'Abdu'l-Masih, a Christian Arab of the tribe of Ghassan, from his uncle, the aged Satih, who dwelt on the borders of the Syrian desert. This answer, conveyed in the rhyming *rajaz* regarded by the Arabian soothsayers (*kahana*) as the appropriate vehicle of their oracles, was couched in the following strain :—

Prognostications
of misfortune to
the Sasanian
Empire.

"On a camel 'Abdu'l-Masih hastens toward Satih, who to the verge of the Tomb is already come. Thee hither doth bring the command of the Sasanian King because the Palace hath quaked, and the Fire is slaked, and the Chief Priest in his dream hath seen camels fierce and lean, and horse-troops by them led over the Tigris bed through the border marches spread.

Oracular utter-
ance of Satih.

" O 'Abdu'l-Masih ! When reading shall abound, and the Man of

the Staff¹ be found and the hosts shall seethe in the Vale of Samawa,² and dried up shall be the Lake of Sawa, and the Holy Fire of Persia shall fail, no more for Satih shall Syria avail ! Yet to the number of the turrets³ your kings and queens shall reign, and their empire retain, though that which is to come cometh amain I"

These tales of portent and presage must, however, be regarded rather as pious after-thoughts than as historical facts. The birth of the Arabian Prophet, like many another momentous event, was announced, we may be sure, by no such blare of celestial trumpets, and did not for a moment occupy the attention even of the men of Mecca, for whom the "Year of the Elephant" afforded ample food for thought and anxiety.

In the early part of the sixth century the political position of the Arabs was as follows. In the west the kingdom of Ghassan and in the east the kingdom of Hira acknowledged more or less the suzerainty of Byzantium and Persia respectively. The bulk of the Arabs of Central Arabia, secure in their deserts and broken up into numerous more or less hostile tribes, fought and sang and robbed and raided much as do the Bedouin of to-day, with little regard for the neighbouring states. In the south the rich and ancient kingdom of Yaman enjoyed, under its own Tubba's or kings, a larger measure of wealth, prosperity, and civilisation. The infamous usurper Lakhi'a, called *Dhu Shana'tir*, met his well-merited doom at the hands of the young prince Dhu Nuwas, who—for since the days of

Political relations of the Arabs in the sixth century.

¹ *I.e.*, the Caliph 'Umar, in whose reign (A.D. 634-644) the conquest of Persia was chiefly effected.

² A place near Hira, in the neighbourhood of which was fought the fateful battle of Qadisiyya.

³ *I.e.*, the fourteen turrets or battlements which, in Nushirwan's dream, fell from the palace. Nushirwan's fourteen successors are presumably to be reckoned as follows : (1) Hurmazd IV ; (2) Khusraw Parwiz ; (3) Shiru'e ; (4) Ardashir III ; (5) Shahrbaraz ; (6) Puran-dukht ; (7) Gushnaspedh ? (8) Azarmi-dukht ; (9) Khusraw, son of Mihr-Gushnasp ; (10) Khurrazadh-Khusraw ; (11) Piruz, son of Gushnaspedh ; (12) Farrukhzadh-Khusraw ; (13) Hurmazd V ; (14) Yazdigird III.

Bilqis Queen of Sheba regicide seems to have been regarded in South Arabia as the best title to the Crown—was by acclamation elected king, the last king, as it proved in the event, of the old Himyarite stock.

Now Dhu Nuwas elected to turn Jew, and with the zeal of a proselyte, proceeded to persecute the Christians of Nejran,

whom, on their refusal to embrace Judaism, he slew with the sword, burned and roasted in pits dug for the purpose, and barbarously tortured in other ways. To this event allusion is made in

Dhu Nuwas and the persecution of the Christians of Nejran.

sura lxxxv of the Qur'an : "*Death upon the People of the Pits, of the Burning Fire, when they sat over them, watching what they did to the believers, against whom they had no complaint save that they believed in God, the Mighty, the Praiseworthy !*"

That, as stated by Taban, 20,000 Christians perished in this persecution (A.D. 523) is, of course, incredible, the actual number of victims being probably not much more than a hundredth part of this ; but the news, brought by one of the fugitives, was horrible enough to stir the wrath of the Abyssinian

Abyssinian conquest of Yemen.

Christians, and to induce their ruler, the Nejashi or Negush, to send an army to avenge his co-religionists. This army, commanded by Aryat and Abraha, utterly defeated the Yama-iites, and Dhu perceiving that all was lost, spurred his horse in disappeared for ever from mortal ken. Himyarite poet Dhu Jadan refers in the fo

"Gently I Can tears recall the things that are
Fret thyself not with weeping for those who are .
After Baynutt,¹ whereof nor stones nor traces rema
And after Silhin, shall man ere build such houses

And again : —

"Leave me, accursed shrew/ For what can avail thy

¹ The names of two ancient castles, said to have been b' for Queen Bilqis by command of Solomon.

*Plague on thee I Peace t In my throat thy scolding the spittle dries /
To the music of cithers and singers in bygone days 'twas fine
When we drank our fill and revelled in royallest, ruddiest wine t
To drain the sparkling wine-cup I deem it, indeed, no shame,
When it brings no act that a comrade and boon-companion can blame ;
For Death is by no man cheated, the grave is the share of each,
Though protection he seek of the petfumes and potions and drugs of
the leech !*

*The monk in his cloistered dwelling, which rears its fanes as high
As the nest of the hawk and eagle, in vain would death deny.
Thou hast heard, for sure, of Ghumddn,¹ the house with the lofty roof,
Which they built on a mountain-summit, from meaner dwellings aloof;
Crowned with the joiner's labour, with square-hewn stones for stay,
Plastered without and within with clean, tough, slippery clay.
With burden of dates half-ripened already the palm-trees seemed
Ready to break, while the oil-lamps like summer lightning gleamed.
Yet is this once-new Castle a pile of ashes to-day,
And the lambent flames have eaten its beauty and form away.
For Abu Nuwas, despairing, hath hastened to meet his death,
Foretelling their pending troubles to his folk with his latest breath!"*

Aryat, the Abyssinian conqueror of Yaman, did not, however, long survive to enjoy the fruits of victory, for he was treacherously slain in a duel by his ambitious lieutenant, Abraha, who, however, emerged from the combat with a wound across his face which earned for him the nickname of *al-A shram*, " the split-nosed."

Aryat killed
by Abraha.

Now it pleased Abraha to build at San'a, the capital of "eat and splendid church, whereby he hoped to the stream of Arab pilgrims away from are Temple of Mecca. But the Arabs red at his endeavour, and one of them, a tribe of Fuqaym, entered the church by filed it. Then Abraha was filled with wrath, oy the Temple of Mecca, and set out to execute .th his elephants of war and a vast host of Abys-

ilebrated edifice, built by the architect Sinnimar, who was jtion of his task slain by his employer lest he should produce i wonderful monument of his skill.

While Abraha lay encamped at Mughammas, hard by the city of Mecca, he was visited by 'Abdu'l-Muttalib, the grandfather of the Prophet Muhammad, who was one of the principal men of the Quraysh, that noble tribe to whom was specially entrusted the care of the Sanctuary. And Abraha, being well pleased with his manners and address, bade him through his interpreter crave a boon. "I desire," replied "Abdu'l-Muttalib," that the King should restore to me two hundred camels which have been taken from me." "Thou speakest to me," answered Abraha in astonishment, "of two hundred camels which I have taken from thee, yet sayest naught of a Temple which is the Sanctuary of thee and thy fathers, and which I am come to destroy ! " 'Abdu'l-Muttalib's rejoinder is characteristically Arabian. "I am the master of the camels," said he, "but the Temple has its own Master, who will take care of it ; " and, on Abraha's remarking, "He cannot protect it against me ! " he added, "That remains to be seen ; only give me back my camels ! "

Having recovered his camels, 'Abdu'l-Muttalib withdrew with his associates to a mountain-top to await the event, but ere he retreated from Mecca he paid a visit to the Ka'ba, and, holding in his hand the great ring-knocker on the outer door, exclaimed :—

*" Lord, in Thee alone I trust against them !
Lord, repel them from Thine Holy Land !
'Tis the Temple's foe who fights against Thee:
Save Thy town from his destroying hand ! "*

Next day Abraha prepared to carry out his threat, and advanced with his army, at the head of which marched his great elephant Mahmud, against Mecca. But as the elephant advanced, an Arab named Nufayl came up to it, took hold of its ear, and cried, "Kneel down, O Mahmud, and return by the direct way whereby thou earnest hither, for thou art on God's holy ground ! " Thereat the elephant knelt down, and, notwith-

The elephant
Mahmud.

standing all their blows and stabs, refused to move a step against Mecca, though ready enough to go in any other direction.

Then God sent against the Abyssinians hosts of little birds like swallows—*abdbil*, as the Qur'an calls them—each of which held three little stones or pellets of clay, one in its beak and two in its claws. These they let fall on the Abyssinians, and whosoever was struck by them died, and so the great host was routed. One fugitive, they say, returned to Abyssinia to tell the tale, and when they asked him "What manner of birds were these?" he pointed up at one which still hovered over him. Even as he did so, the bird let fall the stone that it held, and he too was stricken dead.

The *Ababil*
birds.

Such are the events which gave their name to this momentous year, and to which allusion is made in the chapter of the Qur'an entitled the "Sura of the Elephant." "*Hast thou not seen*" it runs, "*how thy Lord dealt with the people of the Elephant? Did He not cause their plan to miscarry? And made them like chaff consumed?*"

The opinion which now generally prevails amongst European scholars is that the above legend rests on a real basis of fact, and that a sudden and virulent outbreak of small-pox did actually decimate and put to rout the impious invaders. Small wonder that the Arabs saw in this almost miraculous preservation of their Sanctuary the Manifest Power of God, and that the "Year of the Elephant" marked an epoch in the development of their national life.

Historical basis
of the legend.

But Yaman still groaned under the Abyssinian yoke, and Abraha of the split nose was succeeded in turn by his sons Yaksum¹ and Masruq, whose hands were heavy on the Himyarites, so that at length Sayf the son of Dhu Yazan went forth as their ambassador to

Sayf b. Dhu
Yazan's appeal
to Persia.

¹ One of his coins, figured by Ruppell, bears, according to Gutschmid, the legend **ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΣ Ἰαζωμί**, and on the other side the name of his suzerain **Γερσίμ**.

seek relief from one of the two great empires, the Byzantine and the Persian, which then divided the mastery of that region of the world. Meeting with no encouragement from the former, he induced Mundhir, the Arab King of Hira, to present him at the Persian Court. Nushirwan received him in his audience-hall, seated on his gorgeous throne, his head surmounted by, though not supporting, the gigantic barrel-like crown, glittering with rubies, emeralds, pearls, and other precious stones, supported by a chain from the roof, which was at once the glory and the oppression of the Sasanian kings.

"O King!" said Sayf ibn Dhu Yazan, when he had prostrated himself before this gorgeous apparition, "the Ravens have taken our land!"

"Which Ravens?" inquired Nushirwan; "those of Abyssinia or those of India?"

"The Abyssinians," continued Sayf; "and now I come to thee that thou may'st help me and drive them away from me; then shall the lordship over my land be thine, for ye are preferred by us to them."

"Thy land," answered the King, "is too remote from ours, and is withal too poor a land, wherein is naught but sheep and camels, for us to desire it. I cannot venture a Persian army in Arabia, nor have I any wish so to do."

So Nushirwan gave him a present of ten thousand dirhams and a robe of honour, and so dismissed him. But the Himyarite envoy, as he went forth from the palace, Economical Imperialism. cast the gold in handfuls amongst the retainers, slaves, pages, and handmaidens who stood round, and these greedily scrambled for it. When the King heard this, he recalled the envoy, and asked him how he dared deal thus with the King's gift. "What else should I do with it?" answered he; "the mountains of my land whence I come consist only of gold and silver." And when the King heard this, he swallowed the bait so artfully presented, and

detained the envoy till he should lay the matter before his advisers. Then said one of his counsellors, "O King, in thy prisons are men whom thou hast cast into fetters to put them to death ; canst thou not give him these ? If they perish, then is thy purpose fulfilled ; but if they take the country, then is thy lordship increased."

This ingenious plan for combining Imperial expansion with domestic economy was enthusiastically approved, and an examination of the prisons produced eight hundred
 the Persian expeditionary force.

under the command of a superannuated general named Wahriz, so old that, as the story runs, his eyelids drooped over his eyes, and must needs be bound or held up when he wished to shoot.¹ The expeditionary force thus constituted, and accompanied by Sayf, was embarked on eight ships, of which two were wrecked, while the remaining six safely reached the coast of Hadramawt, where the little Persian army of six hundred men was largely reinforced by the Yamanite Arabs. The news of this bold invasion soon reached Masruq, and brought him out at the head of his hosts to give battle. Then Wahriz made a great feast for his followers, and, while they were carousing, burned his ships and destroyed his stores, after which, in a spirited harangue, he pointed out that the choice between death and victory was the only choice open to them, and called on them to play the part of men. They responded (having, indeed, but little option in the matter), and the battle began. Wahriz caused some of those who stood by him to point out to him the Abyssinian king, stot of dered conspicuous by an immense ruby, the size of an egg, which blazed on his forehead. Choosing an auspicious moment, Wahriz shot an arrow at him as he rode on his mule, and the arrow struck fair

¹ Concerning the origin of this curious detail, which occurs again in another connection, see Noldeke's *Sasaniden*, p. 226, n I.

in the middle of the ruby, splintering it in pieces and transfixing Masruq's forehead.

The death of their king was the signal for the rout of the Abyssinians, whom the victorious Persians massacred without mercy, though sparing their Arab and Himyarite Persian ~~savag~~ allies ; and Yaman became a Persian province, governed first by its conqueror, Wahriz (and for a part of his lifetime by Sayf), then by his son, grandson, and great-grandson, and lastly, in the time of Muhammad, by a Persian named Badhan of another family. Even in early Muhammadan days we hear much of the *Banu'l-Ahrar*, or " Sons of the Noble," as the Persian settlers in Yaman were called by the Arabs.

With the death of Nushirwan (A.D. 578), which happened shortly after these events, the decline of the Sasanian Empire began. Proud and formidable to outward thes appearance as was the Persian power against uhLwin^r which the warriors of Islam hurled themselves in the following century, it was rotten to the core, honeycombed with intrigues, seething with discontent, and torn asunder by internecine and fratricidal strife. Nushirwan's own son, Anusha-zadh the Christian, revolted, as has been already mentioned, against him. His successor, Hurmazd the Fourth, provoked by his folly and ingratitude the formidable revolt of Bahram Chubin, which led directly to his estrangement from his son Khusraw Parwiz; the flight of the latter and his two uncles, Bisrim and Bindu'e, to the Byzantines; and his own violent death. Parwiz in turn, after a reign long indeed (A.D. 590-627), but filled with strife, intrigue and murder, was murdered by his son, Shiru'e, after a travesty of judicial attainder which did but add senseless insult to unnatural cruelty. After a reign of only a few months, which he inaugurated by the murder of eighteen of his brothers, the parricide sickened and died ; and a fearful plague which devastated Persia seemed the appropriate sign of Heaven's

wrath against this wicked king. His infant son, Ardashir, a boy seven years old, succeeded him, but was besieged and slain in his capital Ctesiphon by the usurper Shahrbaraz, who in turn was assassinated some forty days later (June 9, A.D. 630) by three of his bodyguard. Puran-dukht, daughter of Khusraw Parwiz, next ascended the perilous throne, and seemed by her wisdom and good intentions destined to inaugurate a brighter epoch, but, after restoring the wood of the True Cross to the Byzantine Emperor, she too died after a reign of sixteen months. She was succeeded by a distant cousin of her father, who, under the name of Piruz, reigned less than a month, and was followed by her sister, the beautiful Azarmi-dukht. She, to avenge an insult, compassed the death of Farrukh-Hurmazd, the Spahbadh of Khurasan, and was in turn slain, after a brief reign of six months, by his son Rustam, the Persian general, who four years later (in A.D. 635) perished in the disastrous defeat of Qadisiyya. Four or five other ephemeral rulers, some of whom were murdered and some deposed, intervened between her and her father's grandson, the ill-fated Yazdigird the Third, who, last of that royal and noble House, perished miserably, a solitary fugitive, at the hands of a wretched churl whose greed had been aroused by the jewels which alone remained to the hunted and ruined king to tell of his rank and riches. When Nushirwan had heard from 'Abdu'l-Masih the interpretation of his vision he consoled himself with the reflection that fourteen kings of his House should rule after him ere the final catastrophe. The first fourteen kings of the dynasty reigned in all more than two centuries : who could suppose that the reigns of the eleven rulers who intervened between Khusraw Parwiz and Yazdigird the Third would not altogether amount to more than five years ?¹

,And all this time the enemy was thundering at the gates of

¹ Shiru'e succeeded to the throne on February 25, A.D. 628 ; Yazdigird **III**, the last king of the House of Sasan, at the end of A.D. 632 or the beginning of A.D. 633.

the doomed empire with ever-increasing insistence. Three presages of disaster, in particular, are enumerated by Tabari¹ the Muslim historian, as Divine warnings to Khusraw Parwiz of the consequences which his rejection of the message of the Arabian Prophet would entail. The letter in which this message was embodied is said to have been couched in the following words :—²

" In the Name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate. From Muhammad the Apostle of God to Khusraw son of Hurmazd. But to proceed. Verily I extol unto thee God, beside whom there is no other God ; He it is who guarded me when I was an orphan, and made me rich when I was destitute, and guided me when I was straying in error. Only he who is bereft of understanding, and over whom calamity triumphs, rejects the message which I am sent to announce. O Khusraw! Submit and thou shalt be safe, or else prepare to wage with God and with His apostle a war which shall not find them helpless I Farewell! "

Khusraw Parwiz, according to one story, tore the letter in pieces, whereupon the Muslim envoy exclaimed, " Thus, O impious King, shall God rend asunder thine empire and scatter thy hosts ! " In another account, the Persian King is said to have written to Badhan, satrap of Yaman (see p. 181 *supra*) bidding him march on Medina, seize the Prophet Muhammad, and bring him captive to Ctesiphon.³

The portents described as warning Khusraw Parwiz of the swiftly approaching doom of the Persian Empire fall into three categories—visions, signs, and actual historical events.

The visions include the apparition to Khusraw Parwiz of an angel, who breaks a staff symbolising the Persian power, and the writing on the wall, whereof the purport is thus given in the *Nihayatu'l-Irab* :—

The Portents.
(1) Visions.

¹ See Noldeke's *Sasaniden*, pp. 303-345.

² The text is taken from the rare *Nihdyatu'l-Irab*, Cambridge MS. See the *Journal of the Royal Astatic Society* for April, 1900, p. 251.

³ See the article mentioned in the last note, p. 251.

"O weak man! Verily God hath sent unto His people an Apostle, and hath revealed unto him a Scripture, therefore submit and believe, and He will vouchsafe to thee the good of this world and the next. But if thou wilt not do this, thou shalt shortly perish, and thy kingdom shall perish, and thy power shall depart from thee !"

The *signs* include the repeated bursting of a dam placed by order of the King in the "blind" Tigris (a branch of that river which flowed by Basra) ; the collapse of the vaulted arch from which depended the mighty barrel-like crown over his throne ; and the play of lightnings reaching towards the east over Hijaz.

(2) Signs.

The *historical event* was the Battle of Dhu Qar (fought between A.D. 604 and 610), an engagement which, comparatively insignificant in itself, yet served to teach the Arabs that, for all their higher civilisation, their wealth, and their renown, the Persians were not invincible. "This," said the Prophet, when he heard of it, "is the first day whereon the Arabs have obtained satisfaction from the Persians; through me have they obtained help !"

(3) The Battle of Dhu Qur.

CHAPTER V

THE ARAB INVASION

"DURING the first half of the seventh century," says Dozy in his excellent work on Islam,¹ "everything followed its accustomed course in the Byzantine as in the Persian Empire. Dozy on the rise These two states continued always to dispute the power. possession of Western Asia; they were, to all outward appearance, flourishing; the taxes which poured into the treasuries of their kings reached considerable sums, and the magnificence, as well as the luxury of their capitals had become proverbial. But all this was but in appearance, for a secret disease consumed both empires; they were burdened by a crushing despotism; on either hand the history of the dynasties formed a concatenation of horrors, that of the state a series of persecutions born of dissensions in religious matters. At this juncture it was that, all of a sudden, there emerged from deserts hardly known and appeared on the scene of the world a new people, hitherto divided into innumerable nomad tribes, who, for the most part, had been at war with one another, now for the first time united. It was this people, passionately attached to liberty, simple in their food and dress, noble and hospitable, gay and witty, but at the same time proud, irascible, and, once their passions were aroused, vindictive, irreconcilable and cruel, who overthrew in an instant the venerable but rotten Empire of the Persians, snatched from the successors of Constantine their fairest provinces, trampled under their feet a Germanic kingdom but lately founded, and menaced the rest of Europe, while at the same time, at the other end of the world, its victorious armies penetrated to the Himalayas. Yet it was not like so many other conquering peoples, for it preached at the same time

¹ Translated into French by Victor Chauvin under the title of *Essai sur l'Histoire de l'Islamisme* (Leyden and Paris, 1879).

a new religion. In opposition to the dualism of the Persians and a degenerate Christianity, it announced a pure monotheism which was accepted by millions of men, and which, even in our own time, constitutes the religion of a tenth part of the human race."

We have seen that, as at the Battle of Dhu Qar, signs of the immense vitality and potential strength of the Arabs—hitherto regarded by their neighbours as a "negligible quantity"—were not altogether wanting even before the triumph of Islam; yet it was undoubtedly to Islam, that simple yet majestic creed of which no unprejudiced student can ignore the grandeur, that they owed the splendid part which they were destined to play in the history of civilisation. In judging of the Arabian Prophet, Western critics are too often inclined to ignore the condition from which he raised his country, and to forget that many institutions, such as slavery and polygamy, which they condemn were not introduced but only tolerated by Islam. The early Muslims were very sensible of the immense amelioration in their life effected by Muhammad's teaching. What this amelioration was is well shown in the following passage from the oldest extant biography of the Prophet, that of Ibn Hisham (t A.H. 213=A.D. 828-9):—¹

"How the Negush summoned the *Muhdjirun*₂ before him, and questioned them concerning their Religion; and their answer concerning this.

"Then he (*i.e.*, the Negush or ruler of Abyssinia) sent unto the followers of the Apostle of God and summoned them. So when his messenger came unto them, they gathered together, and said one to another, 'What will ye say to the man when ye come before him?' 'By Allah!' they replied, 'we will declare what we know, and what our Apostle hath enjoined on us, come what may!' So when they came to the Negush, he had convened his bishops, who had spread out their books round about him; and he inquired

Ibn Hisham's
account of the
Muslim exiles
before the
Negush of
Abyssinia.

¹ Edited by Wustenfeld, 1859; German translation by Weil, Stuttgart, 1864.

² *Muhdjirun* ("Fugitives") is the name given to the disciples of Muhammad who were compelled by persecution to flee from Mecca and seek a refuge in Abyssinia and elsewhere.

of them saying, 'What is this religion by reason of which ye have separated from your people, yet enter not withal into my religion nor into the religion of any other of these churches?'

"Then answered him Ja'far the son of Abu Talib (may God's approval rest upon him !) saying, 'O King! We were a barbarous folk, worshipping idols, eating carrion, committing shameful deeds, violating the ties of consanguinity, and evilly entreating our neighbours, the strong amongst us consuming the weak ; and thus we continued until God sent unto us an Apostle from our midst, whose pedigree and integrity and faithfulness and purity of life we knew, to summon us to God, that we should declare His unity, and worship Him, and put away the stones and idols which we and our fathers used to worship in His stead; and he bade us be truthful in speech, and faithful in the fulfilment of our trusts, and observing of the ties of consanguinity and the duties of neighbours, and to refrain from forbidden things and from blood; and he forbade us from immoral acts and deceitful words, and from consuming the property of orphans, and from slandering virtuous women; and he commanded us to worship God, and to associate naught else with Him, and to pray and give alms and fast.' Then, when he had enumerated unto him the commandments of Islam, he continued, 'So we accepted him as true and believed in him and followed him in that which he brought from God, worshipping God alone, and associating naught else with Him, and holding unlawful that which he prohibited to us, and lawful that which he sanctioned unto us. Then our people molested us, and persecuted us, and strove to seduce us from our faith, that they might bring us back from the worship of God to the worship of idols, and induce us to hold lawful the evil practices which we had formerly held lawful. So they strove to compel us, and oppressed us, and constrained us, and strove to come between us and our religion. Wherefore we came forth unto thy land, choosing thee over all beside thee, and eagerly desirous of thy protection. And now, O King, we pray that we may not be oppressed before thee!'

"Then said the Negush to him, 'Hast with thee aught of that which thy Prophet received from God?' 'Yea,' said Ja'far. 'Then read it to me,' said the Negush. So he read unto him the opening words of the *sura* entitled *K.H.Y.'S.*¹ and the Negush wept so that

¹ Chap. xix of the Qur'an, better known as the *Suratu Maryam*, or "Chapter of Mary." Concerning the mysterious letters prefixed to this and twenty-eight other *Suras* of the Qur'an, see Sale's *Preliminary Discourses*, § iii.

his **beard was** wet with his tears, and his bishops wept with him, until their books were wet with their tears, when they heard what he read unto them. Then said the Negush to them, ' Verily this and that which Moses brought emanate from one Lamp. Go, for by Allah I will not suffer them to get at you, nor even contemplate this.'"

To enter into a discussion as to the character and motives of the Prophet Muhammad would lead us too far afield, more especially as these matters, together with his history, the development of his doctrines, and the progress—slow at first, but afterwards lightning-like in its rapidity—of his religion, have been ably and adequately discussed in the monographs of Sale, Sprenger, Muir, Krehl, Noldeke, Boswell Smith, and Sayyid Amir 'Ali. Of these works the last, written from the point of view of a modern broad-minded and well-read Muslim, conversant alike with Eastern and Western views, is especially deserving of study by those who desire to understand the strong hold which Islam and its Prophet still have even on those Muslims who are most imbued with European culture and learning. The great strength of Islam lies in its simplicity, its adaptability, its high yet perfectly attainable ethical standard. The Christian ethical standard is, we must admit, higher, but almost beyond the reach of the individual, and quite beyond the reach of the State. The ideal Muslim state is conceivable and was actually realised, or very nearly so, by Muhammad's immediate successors, the four " Orthodox Caliphs," whose rule the historian al-Fakhri thus describes:—

" Know that this was a state not after the fashion of the states of this world, but rather resembling prophetic dispensations and the conditions of the world to come. And the truth concerning it is that its fashion was after the fashion of the Prophets, and its conduct after the model of the Saints, while its victories were as those of mighty Kings. Now as for its fashion, this was hardship in life and simplicity in food and raiment; one of them (*i.e.*, the early Caliphs) would walk through the streets on foot, wearing but a tattered shirt reaching half-way

Citation from
al-Fakhri.

down his leg, and sandals on his feet, and carrying in his hand a whip, wherewith he inflicted punishment on such as deserved it. And their food was of the humblest of their poor; the Commander of the Faithful (on whom be peace !) spoke of honey and fine bread as typical of luxury, for he said in one of his speeches, ' If I wished, I could have the finest of this honey and the softest of this barley-bread.'

" Know further that they were not abstinent in respect to their food and raiment from poverty or inability to procure the most sumptuous apparel or the sweetest meats, but they used to do this in order to put themselves on an equality with the poorest of their subjects, and to wean the flesh from its lusts, and to discipline it till it should accustom itself to its highest potentialities; else was each one of them endowed with ample wealth, and palm-groves, and gardens, and other like possessions. But most of their expenditure was in charitable uses and offerings ; the Commander of the Faithful 'All (on whom be peace!) had from his properties an abundant revenue, all of which he spent on the poor and needy,, while he and his family'contented themselves with coarse cotton garments and a loaf of barley-bread.

"As for their victories and their battles, verily their cavalry reached Africa and the uttermost parts of Khurasan and crossed the Oxus."

Muhammad's task was no easy one, and for the first eight or ten years of his mission, in fact till his flight (*hijra*) from Mecca to Madina in A. D. 622—the epoch whence

Character of the
Arabs. to this day his followers date—must have appeared hopeless save to such as were possessed by a faith which neither recognised impossibility nor admitted despair. It was not only that the Arabs, especially the Bedouin of the desert, did not wish to abandon their old gods and their ancient customs; they definitely disliked the pious ideals of Islam, disbelieved in its threats and promises of pains and pleasures beyond the grave, and intensely resented the discipline to which it would subject them. The genuine Arab of the desert is and remains at heart a sceptic and a materialist ; his hard, clear, keen, but somewhat narrow intelligence, ever alert in its own domain, was neither curious nor credulous in

respect to immaterial and supra-sensual things; his egotistical and self-reliant nature found no place and felt no need for a God who, if powerful to protect, was exacting of service and self-denial. For the rest, *Allah ta'dld*, the Supreme God preached by Muhammad, was no new discovery of Islam, and if He received from the old Pagan Arabs less attention and poorer offerings than the minor deities, it was because the latter, being in a sense the property of the tribe, might fairly be expected to concern themselves more diligently about its affairs. Yet even to them scant reverence was paid, unless matters went as their worshippers desired. "A la moindre occasion," says Dozy, "on se fachait contre les dieux, on leur disait comme il faut leurs verites et on les outrageait." Oracles which failed to give the desired reply were insulted; idols which did not accept the sacrifices offered to them in a becoming manner were abused and pelted with stones; gods were deposed and improvised on the smallest provocation. Yet all this did not dispose the Arabs to accept a new and exacting religion. The old gods, if ineffectual, were at least intimate and inoffensive, and if they gave little, they expected little in return. Islam, moreover, was uncompromising in its attitude towards them; they and their followers—even those who lived before the Light came—were in hell-fire, and no favourite fetish was suffered to endure for a moment by the iconoclastic zeal of the new faith. More than this, as Dr. Goldziher has well shown in the first chapter of his luminous and erudite *Muhammedanische Studien*, wherein, under the title "Din and Muruwwa," he contrasts the ideals of the *Fahiliyya*, or pagan times, with those of Islam, these ideals were in many respects incompatible, and even diametrically opposed. Personal courage, unstinted generosity, lavish hospitality, unswerving loyalty to kinsmen, ruthlessness in avenging any wrong or insult offered to one's self or one's relations or tribesmen: these were the cardinal virtues of the old pagan Arab; while resignation, patience, subordination of personal

PAGAN AND MUSLIM IDEALS

and tribal interests to the demands of a common faith, unworldliness, avoidance of ostentation and boastfulness, and many other things enjoined by Islam were merely calculated to arouse his derision and contempt.

To make the contrast clearer, let us compare the spirit revealed by the two following passages, of which the first is taken (v. 178) from the second *sura* of the Qur'an (entitled "the Cow"), while the second is a poem ascribed to the old robber-minstrel Ta'abbata Sharr^{an}, a name suggestive enough, for it signifies "he took an armful of wickedness."

Ideals of the
Fahiliyya and of
Islam
contrasted.

The first runs as follows :—

" Righteousness is not that ye turn your faces to the East and to the West, but righteousness is this : whosoever believeth in God, and the Last Day, and the Angels, and the Book, and the Prophets ; and whoso, for the love of God, giveth of his wealth unto his kindred, and unto orphans, and the poor, and the traveller, and to those who crave an alms, and for the release of the captives; and, whoso observeth prayer and giveth in charity, and those who, when they have covenanted, fulfil their covenant ; and who are patient in adversity and hardship, and in times of violence. These are the righteous and they that fear the Lord 1"^r

The second is sometimes considered to be a forgery made by that clever but not very scrupulous scholar Khalaf al-Ahmar ; but the late Professor Robertson Smith held, as it seems to me with good reason, that it breathes throughout so essentially pagan a spirit that it can scarcely be regarded as a fabrication ; or, if it be such, it is so artfully devised as to sum up, as it were, the whole spirit of the old pagan Arabs.² The poem celebrates

The *qasida* of
Ta'abbata
Sharran.

• Cited in Sir William Muir's excellent little volume entitled *Extracts from the Coran* (London, 1880).

¹ The text of this poem will be found at pp. 187-188 of Wright's *Arabic Reading-Book* (London, 1870). A spirited German translation in verse is included in an article on the poet by Baur in vol. x. (for 1856; pp. 74-109) of the *Zeitschrift d. Deutschen Morgenlandischen Gesellschaft*.

the vengeance exacted by the singer from the tribe of Hudhayl for the murder of his uncle, with a description of whose virtues it opens :—

" Verily in the ravine below Sal'a lies a murdered man whose blood is not suffered to rest unavenged.

He left and bequeathed the burden [of vengeance] to me, and blithely did I take up the burden for him.

And in quest of the blood-revenge, on my part, is a sister's son, a swordsman whose harness is not loosened,

A stealthy tracker who sweats venom, tracking like the rustling viper, spitting poison.

Grievous and crushing were the tidings that reached us, waxing great till the greatest seemed small beside them /

Fate hath robbed us (and she was ever faithless) of one hard of approach whose client was never abased !

A sun-beam in the winter-weather, until, when the Dog-star blazed, he was a coolness and a shadow ;

Lean of the sides, but not from want, open-handed, wise and disdainful ;

Journeying with prudence, so that, when he halted, prudence halted where he halted ;

The rushing rain of the rain-cloud when he would confer benefits, and, when he sprang to the fray, a conquering lion ;

Long-bearded in the tribe, swarthy, ample-skirted ; and, when on the war-path, a slim hycena-wolf.

And he had two tastes, honey and colocynth, of which two tastes every one had tasted.

He would ride through the 'Terror' [i.e., the Desert] alone, none bearing him company save his notched sword-blade of Yemen.

A band of brave fellows travelling through the noon-day glare and then on through the night, until, when the morning mists were dispelled, they alighted ;

Each keen warrior girt with a keen blade, flashing like the lightning when unsheathed.

So we exacted from them the blood-revenge, and of the two factions there escaped not save the fewest.

They were sipping breaths of sleep, and when they dozed I smote them with consternation and they were scattered.

And if Hudhayl broke his sword-blade, many a sword-blade of
 Hudhayl did he break !
 And many a time did he make them kneel down in a jagged
 kneeling-place, whereon the feet were torn !
 And many a time did he surprise them at morning in their shelter,
 whereby there was plundering and looting when the killing
 was done/

Hudhayl hath been roasted by me, a gallant warrior who warrior
 not of evil till they weary,
 Who giveth his spear its first drink, so that, when it hath drunk its
 first draught, it hath thereafter its second draught.
 Wine hath become lawful to me when it was unlawful; and by
 what labour did it scarce become lawful !
 Give me to drink, then, O Sawad son of 'Amr, for verily my body
 hath waxed lean since my uncle's death !

The hyaena laughs over the slain of Hudhayl, and thou may'st see
 the wolf baring his gleaming teeth upon them,
 And the birds of prey awake gorged in the morning, trampling
 upon them, unable to fly ! "

" Honour and revenge," in short, as Muir well says, were the keynotes of the pagan Arab's ideal *muruwwa* (" manliness " or " virtue ") ; to be free, brave, generous ; to return good for good and evil for evil with liberal measure ; to hold equally dear wine, women, and war ; to love life and not fear death ; to be independent, self-reliant, boastful, and predatory ; above all, to stand by one's kinsmen, right or wrong, and to hold the blood-tie above all other obligations, such were the ideals of the old pagan Arabs, as they are still of the Bedouin, who are Muslims in little else than the name. Alike typical and touching was the attitude of Muhammad's uncle Abu Talib towards his nephew. " O my nephew," he said, in reply to the Prophet's earnest attempts to convert him to Islam, " I cannot forsake the faith of my fathers and what they held, but, by Allah ! naught shall be suffered to befall thee whereby thou may'st be vexed so long as I remain alive ! " ¹

^k Ibn Hisham (ed. Wiistenfeld), p. 160.

THE ARAB INVASION

Disbelieving in the Prophet's claims, or, if believing them, preferring hell-fire in the company of his ancestors to the paradise offered to him as the reward of belief, he yet would not suffer his nephew to be molested at the hands of strangers.

The period extending from the *hijra* or Flight of the Prophet (June, A.D. 622) to the death of 'Umar, the second of the Four Orthodox Caliphs (*al-khulafa'u' r-Rashidun*), in A.D. 644, may be regarded as the golden age of pious, as opposed to philosophical, Islam ; for though the ideal theocracy depicted by al-Fakhri in the passage already cited endured till the death of 'Ali (A.D. 661), who is regarded by a large section of the Muslim world as the noblest, best, and worthiest of the Prophet's successors, discord, schism, murder, civil war, and internecine feuds entered in during the disastrous rule of the third Caliph, 'Uthman. Muhammad lived to see all Arabia apparently submissive to his doctrine, but no sooner was he dead than a widespread revolt against Islam broke out amongst the Arab tribes, and not till this was quenched in blood, and the "renegades" either slain or reduced to obedience, could Abu Bakr seriously turn his attention to the conquest and conversion of non-Arabian lands. Of these Persia alone concerns us, and once more we may with advantage turn to that graphic and picturesque historian al-Fakhri, who, after detailing the signs and warnings which caused Nushirwan and Khusraw Parwiz such disquietude, and remarking that "the like of these ominous portents continually succeeded each other until the end of the matter," continues as follows :—

" And verily when Rustam went forth to do battle with Sa'd the son of Abu Waqqas he saw in his dream as it were an Angel who descended from heaven, and gathered up the bows of the Persians, and set a seal upon them, and ascended with them into heaven. Then there was added thereunto what they constantly witnessed in respect to the resolute speech of the Arabs, and their confidence in themselves,

Al-Fakhri's
account of the
Conquest of
Persia.

AL-FAKHRI'S NARRATIVE

and their extreme patience under hardships ; and thereafter the dissentient voices which arose amongst themselves towards the end of the matter, after the death of Shahriyar and the accession of Yazdigird to the royal throne, he being then but a young lad, feeble in council; and lastly the supreme catastrophe, which was the veering of the wind against them during the Battle of Qadisiyya, so that it blinded them with dust and encompassed them in a universal destruction. There was Rustam slain and their host put to rout : look, then, at these omens, and know that God hath a purpose which He fulfilleth.

"Account of the equipment of the army against 'Iraq, and the wresting from the Persians of their empire.

" The frontiers of Persia were the most formidable of frontiers to the Arabs, and those which inspired in their minds the greatest respect and fear, so that they were loath to attack them, but rather avoided them out of respect for the state of the Persian kings, and because of what was generally believed as to their power to subdue other nations. And thus it continued until the latter days of Abu Bakr, when there rose up a man of the Companions named al-Muthanna son of Haritha, who incited the people to give battle to the Persians, making light of the matter and inspiring them with courage therein. So a number of them responded to his appeal, and men remembered what the Apostle of God had promised them in respect to the taking possession of the treasures of the Persian kings. But naught was effected in the matter during the Caliphate of Abu Bakr.

" But during the time of 'Umar ibn 'I-Khattab, al-Muthanna ibn Haritha wrote to him informing him of the troubled state of Persian affairs, and of the accession of Yazdigird the son of Shahriyar to the throne, and of his youth; for he was but twenty-one years of age at the time of his accession.

" Then the eagerness of the Arabs to attack Persia was increased, and 'Umar went forth with the army outside Madina, the people knowing not whither he would go, and no man daring to question him concerning aught; until at length one inquired of him once as to the time of their departure, but got nothing from his question save a rebuke.

" Now it was their habit when any matter troubled them, and they must needs get information concerning it, to seek aid from 'Uthman ibn 'Affan, or 'Abdu'r- Rahman ibn 'Awf ; and, when the matter was very urgent to them, they added unto these al-'Abbas. So 'Uthman said to 'Umar, 'O Commander of the Faithful, what tidings have

reached thee, and what dost thou intend ?' Then 'Umar called the people to public prayer, and they assembled round him, and he announced the news to them, and exhorted them, and urged them to attack the Persians, making light of the enterprise ; and they all consented willingly. Then they asked him to go with them in person, and he answered, 'I will do so unless a better plan than this should appear.' Then he sent for those who were wisest in council and most eminent among the Companions and most prudent, and summoned them before him, and sought counsel of them, and they advised that he should remain and should send one of the chief men of the Companions, remaining behind himself to strengthen him with support. Then, should they be victorious, the end would be attained, while if the man perished, he would send another.

"So when they had agreed to this plan, 'Umar ascended the pulpit; for it was their custom, when they wished to address the people collectively, that one of them should ascend the pulpit and harangue them on that subject whereon he desired to speak. So when 'Umar had mounted the pulpit he said, 'O people, verily I was resolved to march forth with you, but the wise and prudent amongst you have turned me from this plan, suggesting that I should abide here and send one of the Companions to undertake the conduct of the war/ Then he asked their advice as to whom he should send ; and at this juncture a letter was handed to him from Sa'd ibn Abi Waqqas, who was absent on some employ ; and they recommended him to 'Umar, saying, 'He is a very lion in attack.' And this proposal met with 'Umar's approval, and he summoned Sa'd, and conferred on him the chief command in 'Iraq, and entrusted unto him the army.

" So Sa'd marched forth with the people, and 'Umar accompanied them for some parasangs ; then he exhorted them and incited them to the holy war, and bade them farewell, and returned unto Madina. But Sa'd, continuing his march, shifted his line of advance into the desert which lies between the Hijaz and Kufa, seeking intelligence, and receiving constant messages and letters from 'Umar, who kept advising him with plan after plan and strengthening him with successive reinforcements, until he finally decided to march on Qadisiyya, which was the gate of the Persian Empire.

Now when Sa'd halted at Qadisiyya, he and those who were with him were in need of provisions, so he sent out some of his men, commanding them to bring in some sheep and cattle. The people of Sawad feared their advance, but they found a man and questioned him about sheep and cattle. But he replied, 'I have no knowledge concerning this ;' and behold, he was himself a herdsman who had

concealed his beasts in a place of security thereabouts. Then, as they relate, a bull amongst them cried out, 'The herdsman lies ! Lo, here we are in this enclosure !' So they entered in and drove out therefrom a number of cattle, and brought them to Sa'd. And they augured well from this incident, accounting it a sign of help from God Almighty. For even though the bull did not speak actual words to give the lie to the herdsman, none the less did its lowing at this juncture, whereby they were guided to the cattle when they were so grievously in need of them, clearly give the lie to the herdsman. And this was one of those remarkable coincidences which presaged victory and empire, and wherefrom they were justified in auguring well.

" Now when the news of Sa'd's advance with his army reached the Persians, they despatched against him Rustam at the head of thirty thousand warriors, the Arab army consisting of only some seven or eight thousand men, though afterwards they were reinforced by others. And when the two armies met, the Persians were laughing at the spears of the Arabs, which they compared to spindles;¹ *a'propos* of which I may relate an anecdote of a similar character which there is no harm in introducing here. Falaku 'd-Din Mutiammad the son of Aydamir related to me as follows : ' I was in the army of the lesser Dawidar² when he marched forth to meet the Tatars³ on the western side of the City of Peace [Baghdad] on the occasion of that most grievous catastrophe which befell it in the year A.H. 656 [= A.D. 1258]. We met at Nahr Bashir, one of the tributaries of the Little Tigris ; and from our side would go forth to challenge an adversary a horseman mounted on an Arab horse and wholly clad in mail, as though he and his horse were a mountain in solidity. Then there would come out to meet him from the Mongols a horseman mounted on a horse like unto an ass, and holding in his hand a spear like unto a spindle, unclad and unarmed, so that all

¹ Cf. al-Baladhuri (ed. de Goeje, pp. 259-260), where one who fought on the Persian side at Qadisiyya relates how they derided the Arab lances, calling them *duk*, which is the Persian for a spindle.

² A Persian title meaning " Keeper of the inkstand " (*dawit- or dawatdar*), or, as it may be paraphrased " Keeper of the seals." Al-Fakhri wrote his charming history at the beginning of the fourteenth century of our era, at a time when the events of the Mongol invasion were still fresh in men's minds.

³ So the Mongols are generally called by the Arab historians. The European spelling " Tartar " arose from a desire to establish an etymological connection between this formidable people and the infernal regions of Tartarus.

who beheld him laughed at him. Yet ere the day was done the victory was theirs, and they scattered us in a dire defeat which was the key of disaster, so that then there happened what happened in this matter.'

" Then ambassadors passed between Rustam and Sa'd ; and the Arab of the desert would come to Rustam's door as he sat on a throne of gold, supported by gold-embroidered cushions in a room carpeted with gold-embroidered carpets, the Persians wearing crowns and making display of their ornaments, and the elephants of war standing on the outskirts of the assembly. So the Arab would approach with his spear in his hand, girt with his sword and carrying his bow across his shoulders, and would tie up his horse near to Rustam's throne. Then the Persians would cry out at him and endeavour to prevent him, but Rustam would stay them; and the Arab would approach him, walking towards him leaning on his spear, pressing therewith on the carpet and cushions and tearing them with its spike, while the Persians looked on. And when the Arab came unto Rustam he would answer him back, and Rustam continually heard from them wise words and replies which astonished and affrighted him. Thus, for instance, Sa'd used to send a different ambassador each time; and Rustam inquired of one so sent, 'Why do they not send to us him who was with us yesterday?' 'Because,' answered the other, 'our Amir deals equitably with us both in woe and weal.' Another day he asked, 'What is this spindle in thy hand?' meaning his lance. 'The smallness of a burning coal,' replied the other, 'is no hurt to it.' To another he said on another occasion, 'What ails your sword that I see it so worn ?' 'Worn of sheath, keen of blade,' retorted the Arab. So these things and the like which Rustam saw alarmed him, and he said to his retainers, 'Behold, the pretensions of these people are either true or false. If they be false, then a people who guard their secrets thus carefully, differing in naught, and agreed with such accord in the concealment of their secret that none discloseth it, is assuredly a people of great strength and power. But if they be true, then can none withstand them.' Then they cried out round him, saying, 'We conjure thee by God not to abandon aught which thou holdest by reason of anything which thou hast seen on the part of these dogs ! Rather be firm in thy resolve to do battle with them.' Then said Rustam, 'This is my view which I tell you ; but I am with you in whatsoever ye desire.'

" Then they fought for several days, on the last of which happened the veering of the wind against the Persians, so that the dust blinded them; and Rustam was slain, and his army was routed, and their

AL-FAKHRI'S NARRATIVE

possessions were plundered, and the Persians, stricken with panic, sought the fords of the Tigris that they might pass to the eastern shore. But Sa'd pursued them, and crossed the fords, and inflicted on them another great slaughter at Jalula, and plundered their possessions, and took captive a daughter of the Persian King's.¹

"Then Sa'd wrote to 'Umar to inform him of the victory. And during these days 'Umar was anxiously on the watch for tidings of the army, so that every day he used to go forth outside Madina on foot seeking for news, that perchance one might arrive and inform him of what had happened to them. So when he who brought the good tidings from Sa'd arrived, 'Umar saw him and called to him, 'Whence comest thou?' 'From 'Iraq,' answered he. 'What of Sa'd and the army?' inquired 'Umar. Said the other, 'God hath rendered them victorious over all this;' and 'Umar was walking by the side of the man as he rode on his camel, not knowing that this was 'Umar. But when the people gathered round him, saluting him as Commander of the Faithful, the Arab recognised him and said, 'Why did'st thou not tell me (may God be merciful to thee) that thou wert the Commander of the Faithful?' 'O my brother,' replied 'Umar,' thou hast done naught amiss.' Then 'Umar wrote to Sa'd, 'Stay where thou art; pursue them not, but be satisfied with this; and make for the Muslims a place of refuge and a city wherein they may dwell, and set not a river betwixt me and them.' So Sa'd made for them Kufa, and traced out therein the plan of the Mosque, while the people marked out their dwellings; and he made it the capital of the province. And thus he obtained control over al-Mada'in² (Ctesiphon), and got possession of its treasures and stores.

" Mention of some quaint incidents which happened at this time.

"Amongst these was that an Arab got possession of a bag filled with camphor, and brought it to his companions, who, supposing it to be salt,³ put it in the food which they were cooking, and found it lacking in savour, not knowing what it was. Then one who knew what it was saw it, and bought it from them for a ragged shirt worth a couple of *dirhams*.

"And amongst these was that an Arab of the desert got possession of a great ruby worth a large sum of money, and knew not its value. And one who knew its value saw it and bought it from him for a thousand *dirhams*. Then afterwards the Arab discovered its value,

¹ See pp. 130 *et seqq. supra*.

²

See n. 1 on p. 132 *supra*.

³ Cf. al-Baladhuri, p. 264.

and his comrades reproached him, saying, 'Why didst thou not ask more for it?' He answered, 'If I had known of any number greater than a thousand, I would have demanded it.'¹

"And amongst these was that one of the Arabs was holding in his hand red gold and crying, 'Who will take the yellow and give me the white?' supposing that silver was better than gold.

"The ultimate fate of Yazdigird.

"Then Yazdigird fled to Khurasan, and his power was ever waning until he was slain there in the year 31 of the Flight [=A.D. 651-2], and he was the last of the Persian kings."

I have translated this long passage from al-Fakhri because, in comparatively few words and in a graphic and forcible way, it details the most salient features of the Arab conquest of Persia, though it is summary and sketchy, for the struggle was neither begun nor ended with the fatal battle of Qadisiyya. Early in the war the Muslims sustained a severe defeat at Qussu'n-Natif at the hands of Mardanshah and four thousand Persians (November, A.D. 634), nor did the battle of Nahawand, which happened seven years later than that of Qadisiyya, put an end to the resistance of the Persians, who continued to defend themselves in individual localities with a stubbornness which reached its maximum in the province of Pars, the cradle and centre of Persian greatness. In Tabaristan, protected by forests and fens, and separated by a wall of mountains from the great central plateau of Persia, the *Ispahbads*, or military governors of the Sasanian kings, maintained an independent rule until about A.D. 760.

More difficult to trace than the territorial conquest of the Sasanian dominions is the gradual victory of the religion of Muhammad over that of Zoroaster. It is often supposed that the choice offered by the warriors of Islam was between the Qur'an and the sword. This, however, is not the fact, for Magians, as well as Christians and Jews, were permitted to

¹ A similar anecdote occurs in al-Baladhuri's *Kitabu'l-Futuh* (ed. de Goeje, p. 244).

retain their religion, being merely compelled to pay a *jizya* or poll-tax; a perfectly just arrangement, inasmuch as non-Muslim subjects of the Caliphs were necessarily exempt both from military service and from the alms (*Sadaqat*) obligatory on the Prophet's followers. Thus in al-Baladhurfi's History of the Muslim Conquests (*Kitabu futuhi l-buldan*)¹ we read (p. 69) that when Yemen submitted to the Prophet, he sent agents to instruct them in the laws and observances of Islam, and to collect the alms of such as adopted it and the poll-tax from such as continued in the Christian, Jewish, or Magian religions. Similarly in the case of 'Umman he ordered Abu Zayd to "take alms from the Muslims and the poll-tax from the Magians" (p. 77). In Bahrayn the Persian *marzuban* and some of his fellow-countrymen embraced Islam, but others continued in the faith of Zoroaster, paying a poll-tax of one *dinar* for every adult person. "The Magians and Jews," we read (p. 79), "were averse to Islam, and preferred to pay the poll-tax; and the hypocrites amongst the Arabs said, 'Muhammad pretended that the poll-tax should be accepted only from the People of the Book, and now he hath accepted it from the Magians of Hajar, who are not of the People of the Book;' whereupon was revealed the verse, '*O ye who believe! look to yourselves; he who errs can do you no hurt when ye are guided: unto God is your return altogether and He will make plain unto you that which ye knew not.*'"² The treaty concluded by Habib b. Maslama with the people of Dabil in Armenia ran as follows: "In the Name of God the Merciful the Clement. This is a letter from Habib b. Maslama to the people of Dabil, Christians, Magians, and Jews, such of them as are present and such of them as are absent. Verily I guarantee the safety of your lives, properties, churches, temples and city walls; ye are

¹ Al-Baladhun died in A.H. 279 (A.D. 892). His work has been edited by de Goeje (Leyden, 1866).

² Qur'an, v, 104. Concerning the acceptance of the poll-tax from Zoroastrians, as well as from Jews and Christians, cf. A. von Kremer's *Culturgeschichte d. Orients*, vol. i, p. 59.

secure, and it is incumbent upon us faithfully to observe this treaty so long as ye observe it and pay the poll-tax and the land-tax. God is witness, and He sufficeth as a witness." The Caliph 'Umar, as would appear from a passage in al-Baladhun (p. 267), had some doubts as to how he ought to deal with the conquered Magians, but 'Abdu'r-Rahman b. 'A'w f sprang to his feet and cried, "I bear witness of the Apostle of God that he said, ' Deal with them as ye deal with the People of the Book !' "

Towns which resisted the Muslims, especially such as, having first submitted, afterwards revolted, did not, of course, escape so easily, and, more particularly in the latter case, the adult males, or at any rate those found in arms, were generally put to the sword, and the women and children taken captive. Still it does not appear that the Zoroastrians as such were subjected to any severe persecution, or that the conversion of Persia to Islam was mainly effected by force. This has been very well shown by Mr. T. W. Arnold, professor at the College of Aligarh, in chap. vii of his excellent work *The Preaching of Islam* (London, 1896, pp. 177-184); he points out that the intolerance of the Zoroastrian priests, not only towards those of other religions, but towards nonconformist Persian sects, Manichæan, Mazdakite, Gnostic and the like, had made them widely and deeply disliked, so that in many Persian subjects " persecution had stirred up feelings of bitter hatred against the established religion and the dynasty that supported its oppressions, and so caused the Arab Conquest to appear in the light of a deliverance." Moreover, as he further points out, the simplicity and elasticity of Islam, as well as the numerous eschatological ideas which it had borrowed from Zoroastrianism, and the relief which it gave from the irksome disabilities and elaborate purifications imposed by that religion, commended it to many, and it is quite certain that the bulk or conversions were voluntary and spontaneous. After the defeat of the Persians at Qadisiyya, for example, some four thousand

EARLY PERSIAN CONVERTS

soldiers from Daylam (near the Caspian Sea) decided, after consultation, to embrace Islam and join the Arabs, whom they aided in the conquest of Jalula, after which they settled in Kufa with the Muslims ;¹ and other wholesale and voluntary conversions were numerous. ' Indeed the influx of Persian converts and captives into Arabia caused 'Umar some anxiety, so that, as the historian Dinawari informs us (p. 136), he exclaimed, " O God! I take refuge with Thee from the children of these captives of Jalula ! " Nor, in the event, did his anxiety prove baseless ; and he himself was struck down by the dagger of one of these Persian captives, named by the Arabs Abu Lulu'a ; a fact which even at the present day is recalled with satisfaction by the more fanatical Persian Shi'ites, who, at least till very lately, used to celebrate the anniversary of 'Umar's death (called '*Umar-kushan*) much as Guy Fawkes' day is celebrated in England.

The earliest Persian convert, Salman, one of the most revered " Companions " of the Prophet, whom the Syrian sect of the Nusayris include in their mystical Trinity denoted by the letters 'A, M, S ('Ali Salman the Persian. " the Idea," Muhammad " the Name," Salman " the Gate "),² embraced Islam before its militant days, and, by his skill in military engineering, rendered material service to the Prophet in the defence of Madina. His history, given at considerable length by Ibn Hisham (pp. 136-143), is very interesting; and that eager curiosity in religious matters which led him in his youth to frequent the Christian churches of Isfahan, to flee from his luxurious home and indulgent father, and to abandon the Magian faith in which he was born, first for Christianity and later for Islam, is

¹ Baladhuri, p. 280 ; A. von Kremer's *Culturgeschichte*, vol i, p. 207.

² See the confessions of a Nusayri renegade entitled *al-Bakuratu's-Sulaymaniyya*, published at Beyrout without date, and an English translation of the same by E. Salisbury in the *Journal of the American Oriental Society* for 1866 (vol. viii, pp. 227-308). Also the *Journal Asiatique* for 1879, pp. 192 et seqq.

characteristically Persian. And if Salman was the only Persian who was included in the honoured circle of the *As-hab* or "Companions," many an eminent doctor of Islam was from the first of Persian race, while not a few prisoners of war or their children, such as the four sons of Shirin (Sirin), taken captive at Jalula, became afterwards eminent in the Muhammadan world. Thus it is by no means correct to imply (as is often done by those who take the narrower view of Persian literary history against which I have expressly guarded myself at the beginning of this book) that the two or three centuries immediately following the Muhammadan conquest of Persia were a blank page in the intellectual life of its people. It is, on the contrary, a period of immense and unique interest, of fusion between the old and the new, of transformation of forms and transmigration of ideas, but in no wise of stagnation or death. Politically, it is true, Persia ceased for a while to enjoy a separate national existence, being merged in that great Muhammadan Empire which stretched from Gibraltar to the Jaxartes, but in the intellectual domain she soon began to assert the supremacy to which the ability and subtlety of her people entitled her. Take from what is generally called Arabian science—from exegesis, tradition, theology, philosophy, medicine, lexicography, history, biography, even Arabic grammar—the work contributed by Persians, and the best part is gone. Even the forms of State organisation were largely adapted from Persian models. Says al-Fakhri (ed. Ahlwardt, p. 101), on the organisation of the *diwans* or Government offices¹:—

"The Muslims were the army, and their wars were for the faith, not for the things of this world, and there were never lacking amongst them those who would expend a fair portion of their wealth

¹ Dozy (*l'Islamisme*, p. 156) says: "Mais la conversion la plus importante de toutes fut celle des Perses ; ce sont eux, et non les Arabes, qui ont donné de la fermeté et de la force à l'islamisme, et, en même temps, c'est de leur sein que sont sorties les sectes les plus remarquables."

in charitable uses and offerings, and who desired not in return for their faith and their support of their Prophet any recompense save from God; nor did the Prophet or Abu Bakr impose on them any fixed contribution, but when they fought and took spoil, they took for themselves a share of the spoils fixed by the Law, and when any wealth flowed into Madina from any country it was brought to the Prophet's Mosque and divided according as he saw fit. Thus matters continued during the Caliphate of Abu Bakr; but in the year A.H. 15 (A.D. 636), during the Caliphate of 'Umar, he, seeing how conquest succeeded conquest, and how the treasures of the Persian Kings were passing into their possession, and how the loads of gold, silver, precious stones and sumptuous raiment continually followed one another, deemed it good to distribute them amongst the Muslims and to divide these riches between them, but knew not how he should do or in what manner effect this. Now there was in Madina a certain Persian *marzuban*, who, seeing 'Umar's bewilderment, said to him, 'O Commander of the Faithful! Verily the Kings of Persia had an institution which they called the *diwan*, where was recorded all their income and expenditure, nothing being excepted therefrom; and there such as were entitled to pensions were arranged in grades so that no error might creep in.' And 'Umar's attention was aroused, and he said, 'Describe it to me.' So the *marzuban* described it, and 'Umar understood, and instituted the *diwans*. . . ."

In the finance department not only was the Persian system adopted, but the Persian language and notation continued to be used till the time of al-Hajjaj b. Yusuf (about A.D. 700), when, as we learn from al-Baladhuri (pp. 303-301), Salih the scribe, a son of one of the captives taken in Sistan, boasted to Zadan, the son of Farrukh, another Persian, who held the position of chief scribe and accountant in the Revenue Office of Sawad (Chaldaeae), that he could, if he pleased, keep the accounts wholly in Arabic; which al-Hajjaj, to whom his words were reported, ordered him to do. "May God cut off thy stock from the world," exclaimed Zadan's son Mardan-shah, "even as thou hast cut the roots of the Persian tongue;" and he was offered, but refused, 100,000 *dirhams* if he would declare himself unable to effect this transference. At this

time, indeed, a strong effort was made by 'Abdu'l-Malik, seconded by his ferocious but able lieutenant al-Hajjaj, to repress and curtail the foreign influences, Persian and Byzantine, which were already so strongly at work, and to expel non-Arabs from the Government offices, but the attempt resulted only in a partial and temporary success.¹

Meanwhile, as has been already pointed out, Zoroastrianism, though cast down from its position of a State religion, by no means disappeared from Persia, and the bands of exiles who fled before the Arab invasion first to the islands of the Persian Gulf and then to India, where they founded the Parsi colonies which still flourish in and about Bombay and Surat, were but a minority of those who still preferred Zoroaster to Muhammad and the Avesta to the Qur'an. Pahlawi literature, as we have seen, continued side by side with the new Arabic literature produced by the Persian converts to Islam; the high priests of the Magian faith were still persons of importance, in pretty constant communication with the Government officials, and still enjoying a large amount of influence amongst their co-religionists, to whom was granted a considerable measure of self-government; ² and the fire-temples, even when laws were promulgated ordering their destruction, were in practice seldom molested, while severe punishment was sometimes inflicted by the Muhammadan authorities on persons whom an indiscreet zeal led to injure or destroy them.³ Three centuries after the Arab Conquest fire-temples still existed in almost every Persian province, though at the present day, according to the carefully compiled statistics of Houtum-Schindler, ⁴ the total number of "fire-worshippers" in Persia only amounts to about 8,500. According to Khanik of (*Memoire sur la partie meridionale de l'Asie Centrale*, p. 193), at

¹ See A. von Kremer's *Culturgeschichte d. Orients*, vol. i, pp. 166-183.

² *Ibid.*, vol. i, p. 183.

³ Cf Arnold's *Preaching of Islam*, p. 179.

⁴ *Die Parsen in Persien*, in the *Z. D. M. G.* for 1882, vol. xxxvi, pp. 54-88. The actual number of fire-temples he gives as twenty-three.

the end of the eighteenth century, when Agha Muhammad Khan, founder of the present Qajar dynasty, laid siege to Kirman, it alone contained 12,000 Zoroastrian families; so that the rapid diminution of their numbers must be regarded as a phenomenon of modern times, though lately, if reliance can be placed on the figures of earlier observers quoted by Houtum. Schindler, they appear to have been again gaining ground.

"In the face of such facts," says Arnold (*op. laud.*, pp. 180-181), "it is surely impossible to attribute the decay of Zoroastrianism to violent conversions made by the Muslim conquerors. The number of Persians who embraced Islam in the early days of the Arab rule was probably very large from the various reasons given above, **but** the late survival of their ancient faith and the occasional record of conversions in the course of successive centuries, render it probable that the acceptance of Islam was both peaceful and voluntary. About the close of the eighth century Saman, a noble of Balkh, having received assistance from Asad ibn 'Abdu'llah, the governor of Khurasan, renounced Zoroastrianism, embraced Islam, and named his son Asad after his protector : it is from this convert that the dynasty of the Samanids (A.D. 874-999) took its name. About the beginning of the ninth century Karim ibn Shahriyar was the first King of the Qabusiyya dynasty who became a Musalman, and in A.D. 873 a large number of fire-worshippers were converted to Islam in Daylam through the influence of Nasiru'l-Haqq Abu Muhammad. In the following century, about A.D. 912, Hasan b. 'Ali of the 'Alid dynasty on the southern shore of the Caspian Sea, who is said to have been a man of learning and intelligence, and well acquainted with the religious opinions of different sects, invited the inhabitants of Tabaristan and Daylam, who were partly idolaters and partly Magians, to accept Islam ; many of them responded to his call, while others persisted in their former state of unbelief. In the year A.H. 394 (A.D. 1003-4), a famous poet, Abu'l-Hasan Mihiyar, a native of Daylam, who had been a fire-worshipper, was converted to Islam by a still more famous poet, the Sharif ar-Rida, who was his master in the poetic art.¹ Scanty as these notices of conversions **are**, yet **the**

¹ Like another yet more notable convert from Zoroastrianism, the celebrated Ibnu'l-Muqaffa', Mihiyar appears to have been a bad Muslim. Of the former the Caliph al-Mahdi used to say, "I never found a book on Zindiqā (*i.e.*, **heresy**, especially of Manichæan character) which did not

very fact that such can be found up to three centuries and a half after the Muslim Conquest is clear testimony to the toleration the Persians enjoyed, and argues that their conversion to Islam was peaceful, and, to some extent at least, gradual."

For a time, however, the intellectual as well as the political life of Persia and Arabia were so closely connected and even identified with each other that in the next chapters, dealing with the evolution of Islam and the origin of its principal sects and schools of thought under the Umayyad and 'Abbasid Caliphs, it will be necessary to speak of the two together, and to treat of some matters more closely connected with the latter than with the former.

owe its origin to Ibnu'l-Muqaffa'." To the latter al-Qasim ibn Burhan remarked, on hearing of his conversion, " By becoming a Musulman you have merely passed from one corner of hell to another" (Ibn Khallikan, de Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 432 ; vol. iii, p. 517).

CHAPTER VI

the Caliphate, as a historical actuality, ceased to exist, after enduring 626 years, in A.D. 1258.¹

This period falls into three well-marked but very unequal divisions, viz. :—

1. That of the Orthodox Caliphs (*al-Khulafa'u'r-Rashidun*) Abu Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthman, and 'AU (632-661 A.D.), which may be briefly characterised as the *Theocracy of Islam*.

The three periods
of the Caliphate.

2. That of the Umayyad Caliphs (or Kings, for the spiritual rank of Caliph is often denied to them by later Muslim historians), *the Banu Umayya*, who, fourteen in number, ruled from A.D. 661 to 749. This may be defined as the period of *Arabian Imperialism and Pagan Reaction*.

3. That of the 'Abbasid Caliphs, the *Banu'l-Abba's*, thirty-seven in number, who held sway from A.D. 749, when, on October 30th, Abu'l-'Abbas 'Abdu'llah, called *as-Saffah*, "the Shedder of Blood," was proclaimed Caliph at Kufa, till the sack of Baghdad and murder of al-Musta'sim by Hulagu and his Mongols in A.D. 1258. This may be defined as the period of *Persian Ascendancy*, and of *Philosophical and Cosmopolitan Islam*.

During the first period, Madina was the centre of government; during the second, Damascus; during the third, Baghdad. The Mongol Invasion of the thirteenth century, and the destruction of the Caliphate which it entailed, put an end to the formal unity of the Muhammadan Empire in the East and the palmy days of Islam, and is by far the most important event in the history of Asia since the time of the Prophet Muhammad. Long before this catastrophe, indeed, the power of the Caliphate had been reduced to a mere shadow of what it was in what Tennyson calls "the golden prime of good Haroun Alraschid"; but, though the Empire of the Caliphs was for the most part portioned out amongst dynasties and rulers whose allegiance, when yielded at all, was as a rule the merest lip-service, Baghdad remained until that fatal day

The Mongol
Invasion the
great turning-
point in the in-
tellectual as well
as in the political
history of Islam.

¹ Cf. Sir William Muir's very just remarks at p. 594 of his *Caliphate, its decline, and Fall*.

the metropolis of Islam and the centre of learning and culture, while Arabic maintained its position not only as the language of diplomacy and learning, but of polite society and *belles lettres*. The scientific and critical spirit which we so admire in Muhammadan writers antecedent to the Mongol period becomes rapidly rarer in the succeeding years, and hence it is that Persian literature (that is, the literature written in the Persian language), which falls for the most part in the later days of the Caliphate and in the period subsequent to its fall, cannot, for all its beauties, compare in value or interest with that literature which, though written in Arabic, was to a large extent the product of non-Arab and especially Persian minds. The Mongol invasion was not less an intellectual than a political disaster, and a difference, not only of degree but of kind, is to be observed between what was written and thought before and after it.

To write a detailed history of the Caliphs forms no part of the plan on which this book is conceived, especially as this has already been admirably done in German by Dr. Gustav Weil (1846-1862) and in English by Sir William Muir.¹ Nor, indeed, are these excellent works amongst the European sources on which we shall chiefly draw in endeavouring to delineate in broad outlines the characteristics of each period, especially as regards its Persian manifestations in the fields of religious and philosophical speculation, culture, politics, and science. For this purpose the most valuable and suggestive books written in European languages are the following : A. von Kremer's *Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen des Islams* (1868); Idem, *Culturgeschichtliche Streifzüge auf dem Gebiete des Islams* (1873); Idem, *Culturgeschichte des Orients unter dem Chalifen* (2 vols., 1875-1877); Dozy's *Het Islam* (1863) translated into French by Victor Chauvin under the title *Essai sur l'Histoire de l'Islamisme* (1879); Idem, *Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne*;

¹ *Annals of the Early Caliphate* (1883); *the Caliphate, its Rise, Decline, and Fall* (1891 and 1892); also *the Life of Mahomet, Mahomet and Islam, &c.*

THE OMAYYAD PERIOD

Goldziher's *Muhammedanische Studien* (2 vols., 1889-1890); Van Vloten's *Recherches sur la Domination arabe le Chiitisme et les Croyances Messianiques sous le Khalifat des Omayyades* (1894); Idem, *Opkomst der Abbasiden*; T. W. Arnold's *Preaching of Islam* (1896), and other similar works by Caussin de Perceval, Schmolders, Dugat, &c, to which must be added numerous valuable monographs, such as those of Brunnow on the Kharijites, Goldziher on the Zahirites, de Goeje on the Carmathians, Steiner on the Mu'tazilites, Spitta on the School of al-Ash'ari, and many others.

In the two histories of Persia with which Englishmen are most familiar, those of Sir John Malcolm and Clements Markham, the transition period intervening between the Arab Conquest in the seventh century of our era, and the formation of the first independent or semi-independent post-Muhammadan Persian dynasties in the ninth, is rather cursorily and inadequately treated, as though, like the period which separates the fall of the Achaemenian from the rise of the Sasinian dynasties (B.C. 330—A.D. 226), it were a mere interruption of the national life, instead of being, as in many ways it actually was, the most interesting, and intellectually, the most fruitful of all the periods into which Persian history can be divided. For this reason it will here be discussed with some fulness, especially in what concerns the origin of the first sects whereby Islam was torn asunder.

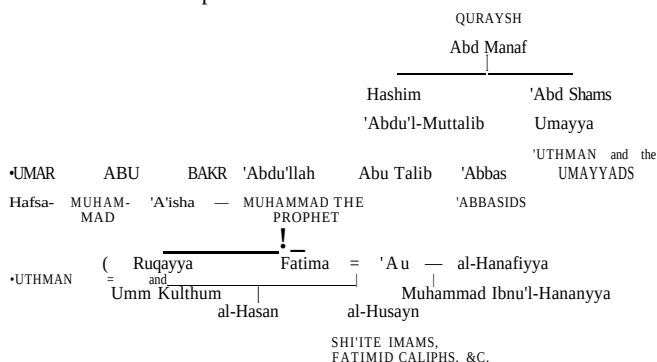
Although the Umayyad Caliphate, strictly speaking, began with the death of 'Ali and the accession of Mu'awiya in A.D. 661, the tendencies which led to its establishment go back to the rule of 'Uthman (A.D. 644-656), the third of the four "Orthodox Caliphs." We have seen that the creation of a common national feeling amongst the Arabs, nay more, of a common religious feeling among all Muslims, in place of the narrow clannishness of the heathen Arabs, was one of the greatest and most notable results of the Prophet's

mission. But such counsels of perfection were from the first hard to follow, being too radically opposed to ancient and deeply-rooted national instincts, and even the Prophet's partiality for Mecca, his native city, and the Quraysh, his own tribe, had on several occasions given rise to some discontent and murmuring on the part of his allies of Madina (the *Ansar*' or "Helpers") to whose timely aid his cause owed so much. Still, on the whole, this ideal of equality amongst all Muslims was fairly maintained until the death of 'Umar in A.D. 644. That it was the ideal is apparent from numerous passages both in the Qur'an and in Tradition, such as "the noblest of you in the sight of God is he who most feareth God" (*zur'an*' xlix, 13); "the believers are but brethren, so make peace between your two brothers" (*zur'an*, xlix, 10); "O man! God hath taken away from you the arrogance of heathen days and the ancient pride in ancestry; an Arab hath no other precedence over a barbarian than by virtue of the fear of God; ye are all the progeny of Adam, and Adam himself is of the earth" (Tradition).¹ At this time, it is true, there were but a very few non-Arabs or "barbarians" who had embraced Islam, and it is doubtful whether, even in his moments of greatest optimism, the Prophet ever dreamed of his religion extending much beyond the Arabian peninsula; but here at least is the idea, clearly expressed, of a potential equality amongst believers, and an aristocracy not of birth but of faith.

With the accession of 'Uthman, however, the old nepotism and clannish feeling once more became very evident; and dangers of sedition and schism, already imminent by reason of the jealousies between Mecca and Madina, between the *Muhdijirun* ("Exiles") and the *Ansar* ("Helpers"), between the Hashimite and Umayyad factions of the Prophet's tribe of Quraysh, and between this tribe and the other Arabs, who regarded its ascendancy with ill-concealed discontent, were

¹ See von Kremer's *Streifzuge*, p. 22

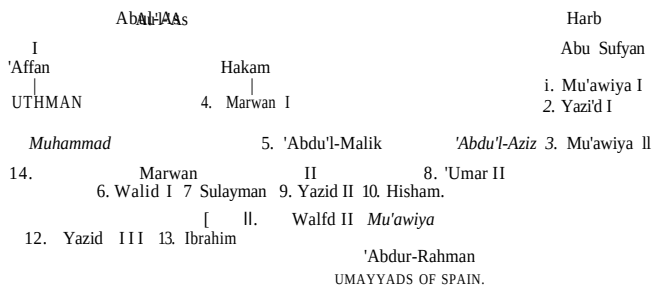
brought to a head by the new Caliph's irresolution and weakness, obstinacy, and undisguised furtherance of the interests of his Umayyad kinsmen, even of those whose attachment to Islam was most open to doubt. To make clearer what follows, two genealogical tables from Stanley Lane-Poole's most useful manual on *the Muhammadan Dynasties* (1894) are here inserted. Of these, the first shows the subdivisions of the tribe of Quraysh and the general connection of the lines of Caliphs.



From this table we see that of the four " Orthodox Caliphs," the two first, Abu Bakr and 'Umar, were the Prophet's fathers-in-law, while the two last, 'Uthman and 'AH, were both his sons-in-law ; but that 'AH alone was closely related by blood, he being Muhammad's first cousin, in addition to which he was distinguished by his early and devoted adhesion to the Faith. We also see (and the importance of this fact will appear in the next chapter) that the term Hashimite, or descendant of Hashim, is equally applicable to the Shi'ite Imams descended from 'AH and the Prophet's daughter Fatima, and to the 'Abbasid Caliphs, but excludes the Umayyads.

The second table shows the relation of the Umayyad Caliphs to one another and to 'Uthman.

CALIPHATE OF UTHMAN



From the very beginning of his reign 'Uthman showed a tendency to favour his friends and kinsmen at the expense and to the detriment of that rigid and unswerving justice which Islam had set up as its ideal. That Abu Lulu'a, the Persian slave who had assassinated 'Umar the late Caliph, should suffer the penalty of death was natural enough ; but 'Umar's son, 'Ubaydu'llah, not content with slaying **the** assassin, also slew a Persian noble named Hurmuzan, a captive of war who had made profession of Islam, because he suspected him of complicity. Of such complicity there was no proof, and 'Ali, ever rigorous in upholding the laws of Islam, held that 'Ubaydu'llah should be put to death, as having slain a believer without due cause. 'Uthman, however, would not hear of this, but instead named a monetary compensation, which he himself paid;¹ and when Ziyad b. Labid, one of the Ansar, upbraided him in verse² for his misplaced leniency, he silenced and expelled the over-bold poet.

Thus from the very moment of his accession 'Uthman's readiness to be swayed by personal considerations was apparent, but it became much more conspicuous as time went on. The

¹ Muir's *Caliphate*, p. 205.

² The verses will be found in de Goeje's ed. of Tabari, Ser. I, vol. v, p. 2796.

Arabs in general were embittered against the tribe of Quraysh, whose supremacy they watched with growing jealousy ; and now 'Uthman's open partiality for the Umayyad branch of that tribe, which had strenuously and bitterly opposed the Prophet so long as opposition was possible, and had only made a tardy and unwilling profession of Islam when it could no longer be resisted, thoroughly alienated the Hashimite branch, so that even Quraysh was no longer united. Some of the most inveterate enemies of the Prophet, such as Abu Sarh, 'Uthman's foster-brother, whom Muhammad would have put to death on the capture of Mecca but for 'Uthman's intercession, were raised to the highest commands and enriched with the most princely salaries. Men notoriously lax in their religious duties, like Walid b. 'Uqba, whose father had been put to death by the Prophet after the battle of Badr with a " promise of hell-fire," and Sa'id b. al-As, whose father was slain at the same battle in the ranks of the heathen, were given rich governments. Walid, to whom the government of Kufa was given, came drunk to the mosque, said the wrong prayers, and then asked the congregation whether they had had enough, or would like some more. He was of course dismissed, but the further chastisement ordained by Islam was only inflicted by 'Ali's insistence against 'Uthman's wish. Ibn 'Amir, the Caliph's young cousin, was made governor of Basra, on hearing which the old governor, Abu Musa, whom he had supplanted, said, " Now ye will have a tax-gatherer to your heart's content, rich in cousins, aunts, and uncles, who will flood you with his harpies."¹ Sa'id b. al-'As, the new governor of Kufa, was as bad as his predecessor, so that the people murmured and said, " One of Quraysh succeedeth another as governor, the last no better than the first. It is but out of the frying-pan into the fire." I

The growing discontent had other grounds, which led to the alienation of many old Companions of the Prophet remark-

¹ Muir's *Caliphate*, p. 217.

MURDER OF 'UTHMAN

able for their piety and ascetic life. Ibn Mas'ud, one of the greatest authorities on the text of the Qur'an, was deeply offended by 'Uthman's high-handed recension of the Holy Book, and more particularly by his destruction of all " unauthorised versions." Abu Dharr, who preached the equality of all believers and denounced the growing luxury, was driven into exile, where he died.¹ Innovations, for which no good reason beyond the Caliph's will was assigned, added to the rising flood of disaffection, which culminated in the cruel murder of the aged Caliph by a band of malcontents, in the women's apartments of his own house, in the holy city of Madina, on June 17, A.D. 656. His wife Na'ila, faithful to the last, attempted to ward off with her hand a blow aimed at him by one of the assassins, whereby several of her fingers were cut off. These fingers, together with the blood-stained shirt of the aged Caliph, were afterwards exhibited by Mu'awiya in the mosque of Damascus, in order to arouse the anger of the Syrians against the murderers.²

The death of 'Uthman destroyed once and for all the outward semblance of unity which had hitherto existed in Islam, and led directly to wars wherein for the first time the sword was turned by Muslims against their fellow-believers. 'Ali was at length chosen Caliph—a tardy recognition, as many thought, of his well-founded claims to that high office—to the disappointment of Talha and Zubayr, who, incited by 'A'isha, the daughter of Abu Bakr and widow of the Prophet, revolted against him and paid for their presumption with their lives at the Battle of the Camel, wherein ten thousand Muslims perished (December, A.D. 656). 'Ali himself was most anxious to avoid this carnage, but just when

¹ For a full account of this transaction, see Mas'udi's *Muruju'dh-Dhahab*, ed. Barbier de Meynard, vol. iv, pp. 268-274.

² Al-Fakhri (ed. Ahlwardt), p. no

his efforts at conciliation seemed crowned with success the murderers of 'Uthman, who were included in his army, fearing lest punishment might fall upon them if peace were restored, succeeded in precipitating the battle.

Worse trouble, however, was impending in Syria, where 'Uthman's kinsman Mu'awiya was governor, and where the Umayyad influence and interest were supreme.

Mu'awiya
refuses to
acknowledge
'Ali as Caliph.

'Ali, refusing to listen to those who advised him not to interfere with this powerful and cunning governor, persisted in his intention of at once recalling him from his post. Mu'awiya refused to obey the summons, and retaliated by roundly accusing 'All of being privy to 'Uthman's murder, a charge which had been already formulated by Walid b. 'Uqba (who, as we have seen, had suffered punishment at 'All's hands), in some verses¹ addressed to the Hashimites in general, which conclude :—

*"Ye have betrayed him ('Uthman) in order that ye might take his place,
Even as once Kisra (Khusraw Parwiz) was betrayed by his satraps"*

Mu'dwiya, therefore, posing as the avenger of 'Uthman, not merely refused to obey 'All, or to acknowledge him as Caliph, but himself laid claim to this title, a pretension in which he was ably supported by the astute 'Amr ibnu'l-'As, to whom, as the reward of his services, he promised the government of Egypt. All negotiations having failed, 'All, who had left Madina and established himself at Kufa, declared war on Mu'awiya and his Syrians, and, with an army of fifty thousand

Battle of Siffin. men, marched against him. The two armies met

at Siffin, a place lying between Aleppo and Emesa (Hims) in Syria, and after several weeks of desultory skirmishing and fruitless negotiations, a pitched battle was fought in the last days of July, A.D. 657. On the third day victory inclined decisively to 'All's side, when 'Amr ibnu'l-'As, ever fertile in stratagems, counselled Mu'awiya to bid his troops

¹ Mas'udi, *op. cit.* p. 286.

raise aloft on their lances leaves of the Qur'an, and cry, " The Law of God ! The Law of God ! Let that arbitrate between us ! " In vain did 'Ali warn his followers against this device, and urge them to follow up their advantage ; the fanatical puritans who formed the backbone of his army refused to fight against men who appealed to the Qur'an ; a truce was called ; arbitration was accepted by both parties ; and even here 'Ali was forced to accept as his representative the feeble and irresolute Abu Musa al-Ash'ari, whom he had but lately dismissed for his lukewarmness from the government of Kufa, while Mu'awiya's cause was committed to the wily and resourceful 'Amr ibnu'l-'As, who, by another discreditable trick,¹ succeeded in getting 'All set aside and Mu'awiya declared Caliph. This took place at Dawmatu'l-Jandal (a place in the Syrian desert just south of the thirtieth degree of latitude, and about equidistant from Damascus and Basra), in February, A.D. 658.

Mu'awiya proclaimed Caliph, Feb., 658.

On the disappointment and disgust of 'All and his followers it is needless to dwell. A daily commination service, wherein Ali's position. Mu'awiya and his allies were solemnly anathematised by name, was instituted in the mosques of Iraq, which province still remained more or less faithful to 'Ali; and Mu'awiya returned the compliment at Damascus, where the cursing of 'Ali, his sons and adherents, remained in force till it was abolished by 'Umar II, almost the only God-fearing ruler of the whole Umayyad dynasty. Nor did 'Ali rest content with mere curses ; he began to prepare for another campaign against his rival, when other grave events nearer home demanded his attention.

'Alf's followers included, besides personal friends and retainers, political schemers, and the factious and unsteady inhabitants of Basra and Kufa, two parties, diametrically opposed in their views, which represented

Composition of 'Ali's forces.

¹ See Muir's *Caliphate*, pp. 280-282 ; al-Fakhri (ed. Ahlwardt), pp. 111-114.

the two most ancient sects of Islam, the Shi'ites, and the Kharijites. The former were the devoted partisans of 'Ali, the "Faction" (*Shi'a*) of him and his House, the defenders in

The Shi'ites. general of the theory which has been exposed at pp. 130 *et seqq.*, and which we may briefly define as

the theory of the Divine Right of the Prophet's descendants and nearest of kin to wield the supreme authority in Islam, both temporal and spiritual. Of these, and of the fantastic doctrines propounded and maintained by the more extreme amongst them, we shall have to speak repeatedly in the following pages, and will only add here that these extreme views as to the sanctity, nay, divinity, of 'Ali had, even during his lifetime, and in spite of his strong disapprobation, found a vigorous exponent in the converted Jew, 'Abdu'llah ibn Saba,¹ who carried on a propaganda in Egypt as early as A.D. 653, during the Caliphate of 'Uthman.

The Kharijites (*Khawarij*), "Seceders,"² or (as Muir calls them) "Theocratic Separatists," represented the extreme demo-

The Khawarij. cratic view that any free Arab was eligible for election as Caliph, and that any Caliph who

ceased to give satisfaction to the commonwealth of believers might be deposed.³ Their ranks were chiefly recruited from the true Arabs of the desert (especially certain important tribes

¹ See Muir, *op. laud.*, pp. 225-226; Shahrastani's *Ki tabu'l-Milal* (ed. Cureton), pp. 132-133-

² Briinnow, however (*op. laud.*, p. 28), considers that this title was originally assumed by these sectaries themselves, not given to them by their enemies, and that it does not imply *rebellion* and *secession*, but, like *Muhdjirun* (another name assumed by the Kharijites, means simply *exiles from their homes for God's sake*. He refers especially to Qur'an, iv, 101 in support of this view.

³ At a later date these two cardinal tenets were further expanded by the more fanatical Kharijites by the substitution in this formula of "good Muslim" for "free Arab," and the addition of the words "and if necessary slain" after deposed. On the Kharijites consult especially Brunnow's excellent monograph, *Die Charidschiten*, &c. (Leyden, 1884); von Kremer's *Herrschenden Ideen*, &c, pp. 359-300; Dozy's *Histoire de l'Islamisme*, pp. 211-219.

like Tamim), and the heroes of Qadisiyya and other hard-fought fields ; with whom were joined the puritans of Islam, " the people of fasting and prayer " as Shahrastani calls them, who saw the unity of the Faith imperilled by the ambition of individuals, and its interests subordinated to those of a clique. Alike in their indomitable courage, their fierce fanaticism, and their refusal to acknowledge allegiance save to God, these *Shurat'* or " Sellers " of their lives for heavenly reward (as they called themselves, in allusion to Qur'an ii, 203)¹ remind us not only of the Wahhabis of the late eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries, but of the Scottish Covenanters and the English Puritans, and many a Kharijite poem² is couched in words which, *mutatis mutandis*, might have served Balfour of Burleigh.

To this democratic party the aristocracy of Islam, represented by 'Ali and the Hashimite faction of Quraysh, was only in degree less distasteful than the aristocracy of heathenness, represented by Mu'awiya and the Umayyads ; and though they fought on 'All's side at the Battle of Siffin, their alliance, as has been already observed, was by no means an unmixed advantage. For after the fiasco resulting from the arbitration on which they themselves had insisted, they came to 'Ali saying,³ " Arbitration belongs to God alone. What ailed thee that thou madest men arbiters ? " " I never acquiesced in the matter of this arbitration," replied 'Ali ; " it was ye who wished for it, and I told you that it was a stratagem on the part of the Syrians, and bade you fight your foes, but ye refused aught save arbitration, and overrode my judgment.

¹ And also Qur'an, ix, 112. See Brunnow (*of. laud.*), p. 29.

² The richest collection of such poems is contained in the *Kamil* of al-Mubarrad (composed in the ninth century of our era, edited by Wright, 1864-1882), chaps. xlix, li, liv. A selection of them is contained in Noldeke's *Delectus Vet Carm. Arab.* (Berlin, 1890), pp. 88-94. See also von Kremer's *Culturgeschichte*, vol. ii, pp. 360-362.

³ I follow the account given by al-Fakhri (ed. Ahlwardt), pp. 114 *et seqq.*

But when there was no escape from arbitration, I made it a condition with the umpires that they should act in accordance with God's Scripture, . . . but they differed, and acted contrary to Scripture, acting in accordance with their own desires; so we are still of our original opinion as to giving them battle." "There is no doubt," answered the Kharijites, "that we originally acquiesced in the arbitration, but we have repented of it, and recognise that we acted in error. If now thou wilt confess thine infidelity {*kufr*}, and pray God to pardon thy fault and thine error in surrendering the arbitration to men, we will return with thee to do battle with thine enemy and our enemy, else will we dissociate ourselves from thee."

'Ali was naturally incensed at the unreasonable behaviour of these men, but his remonstrances and exhortations were of no avail, and ere his retreating army reached Kufa, twelve thousand of the malcontents did, as they had threatened, dissociate themselves from him, and retired to Harura, where they encamped. Adopting as their warcry the words "*La hukma ilia li 'liah!*" ("Arbitration belongs to none save God!"), they advanced towards Madd'in (Ctesiphon) with the intention of occupying it and establishing a "Council of Representatives" which should serve "as a model to the ungodly cities all around."¹ Foiled in this endeavour by the foresight of the governor, they continued their march to Nahruwan, near the Persian frontier. They also nominated a Caliph of their own—'Abdu'lldh b. Wahb of the tribe of Rasib)²—on March 22, A.D. 658, and proceeded to slay as unbelievers Muslims who did not share their views, recognise their Caliph, and consent to curse both 'Uthman and 'Ali. Ferocity was strangely mixed with the most exaggerated scruples in their actions. One of them picked up a date which had fallen from the tree and placed it in his mouth, but cast it away when some of his companions

The Battle of
Nahruwan.

¹ Muir, *op. laud.*, p. 284.

² Briinnow, *op. laud.* p. 18.

cried out, "Thou hast eaten it without right, having taken it without payment !" Another smote with his sword a pig which happened to pass by him, and hamstrung it. "This," exclaimed his fellows, "is a mischief on the earth !" Thereupon he sought out the owner and paid him compensation.¹ On the other hand harmless travellers were slain, and women great with child were ripped open with the sword. For such cruelties the fanatics offered no apology ; on the contrary, when invited by 'Ali to surrender the murderers and depart in peace, they cried, "We have all taken part in the slaughter of the heathen !"

With such a danger threatening their homes, it was not to be expected that 'All's troops would consent to march again on Syria until they had made an end of these schismatics. 'Ali, still for clemency, suffered such of them as would to withdraw themselves from the Kharijite camp. Half of them availed themselves of this offer ; the remaining two thousand, scornfully rejecting all overtures, stood their ground and perished almost to a man, while of 'Ali's 60,000 warriors only seven fell. This happened in May or June, A.D. 658, and served but to render more implacable the enmity of the surviving Kharijites towards 'All, whom henceforth they hated even more than they hated Mu'awiya. 'Ali's troops, moreover, refused to march against his rival until they had rested and recruited themselves. "Our swords are blunted," they said, "our arrows are spent, and we are wearied of warfare ; let us alone, that we may set our affairs in order, and then we will march."² But instead they began to slip away as occasion offered, until at length the camp was left empty ; and Mu'awiya, waxing ever bolder as he saw the increasing difficulties against which his rival had to struggle, seized Egypt and stirred up revolt even in Basra ; while fresh Kharijite risings extending throughout the south of

Gathering mis-
fortunes.

¹ Al-Fakhri (ed. Ahlwardt), p. 115.

² Ibid., p. 117

Persia (the people of which were won " by the specious and inflammatory cry that payment of taxes to an ungodly Caliph was but to support his cause, and as such intolerable "),¹

followed by a series of untoward and painful events, so broke 'Ali's spirit that in A.D. 660 he was fain to conclude a treaty which left Mu'dwiya in undisturbed possession of Syria and Egypt. A year later

Truce with
Mu'awiya.

Assassination of
•All, Jan. 25,
A.D. 661.

(January, 661) 'Ali was assassinated in the mosque of Kufa by Ibn Muljam and two other Kharijite fanatics. Thus died, in his sixtieth year, the

Prophet's cousin and son-in-law, the last of the four Orthodox Caliphs of the Sunnis, the first of the Shf'ite Imams. He was succeeded by al-Hasan (the eldest of the three sons² born to

Succession and
abdication of
al-Hasan.

him by Fatima, the Prophet's daughter), who, on August 10, 661, tamely abdicated, leaving Mu'dwiya undisputed master of the great Muhammadan Empire, and the Umayyad power firmly established and universally acknowledged.

The triumph of the Umayyads was in reality, as Dozy well says, the triumph of that party which, at heart, was hostile to Islam ; and the sons of the Prophet's most inveterate foes now, unchanged at heart, posed as his legitimate successors and vicegerents, and silenced with the sword those who dared to murmur against their innovations. Nor was cause for murmuring far to seek even in the reign of Mu'awiya, who, in the splendour of his court at Damascus, and in the barriers which he set between himself and his humbler subjects, took as his model the Byzantine Emperors and Persian Kings rather than the first vicars of the Prophet. In the same spirit he nominated his son Yazid as his successor, and forced this unwelcome nomination on the people of the Holy Cities of Mecca and Madina.

¹ Muir, *op. cit.* p. 292.

• One of these died in infancy. The other was al-Husayn.

It was still worse when, on the death of Mu'awiya (April, A.D. 680), Yazid came to the throne. No name is more execrated throughout Islam, but most of all in Persia, than his. A Persian who will remain unmoved by such epithets as "liar," "scoundrel," or "robber," will fly into a passion if you call him Yazid, Shimr, or Ibn Ziyad. A Persian poet, who had been rebuked for adding a curse to his name, retorted, "If God can pardon Yazid, then He will very surely pardon us for cursing him!" Hafidh has been severely censured because the first ode in his *diwan* begins with the second hemistich of the following verse from the poems of this impious Caliph :—

Yazid I (A.D.
680-683).

His very name
execrated by the
Persians.

*Ana'l-mastnumu ma 'indi bi-tityaqⁱⁿ wa Id raqi;
Adir ka's^{am} wa nawil-ha, alaya ayyuha's-saqi I*

"I, drugged with poison, have neither antidote nor guarding charm;
Pass the cup and give it me to drink, O cupbearer!"

Ahli of Shiraz, seeking to apologise for "the Tongue of the Unseen" (*Lisanu l-Ghayb*), as the admirers of Hafidh call him, says :—

"One night I saw Master Hafidh in a dream;
I said, *O thou who art peerless in excellence and learning,
Wherefore didst thou take to thyself this verse of Yazid,
Notwithstanding all this virtue and eminence?'
He answered, 'Thou understandest not this matter;
The infidel's goods are lawful spoil to the true believer!'"

But even this excuse would not pass. Katibi of Nishapur replies :—

"Greatly do I marvel at Master Hafidh,
So that thereby understanding is reduced to helplessness.
What virtue did he perceive in Yazid's verse
That in his *diwan* he first sings of him?"

Although to the true believer the infidel's goods
 Are lawful spoil, and herein no discussion is possible,
 Yet is it a very shameful act for the lion
 To snatch a morsel from the mouth of the dog !"

Needless to say Yazid has found defenders amongst European historians, to some of whom the reversal of unanimous verdicts is always an alluring aim. Nor, indeed, is his personality repulsive. Born of a Bedouin mother,¹ bred in the free air of the desert, an eager and skilful huntsman, a graceful poet,² a gallant lover, fond of wine, music, and sport, and little concerned with religion, we might, for all his godlessness, levity, and extravagance, have suffered his handsome face,³ his pretty verses, his kingly qualities, and his joyous appreciation of life to temper our judgment had it not been for the black stain which the tragedy of Kerbela has left on his memory. "His reign," says al-Fakhri, "according to the more correct statement, lasted three years and six months. In the first year he slew al-Husayn, the son of 'All (on both of whom be Peace !); and in the second year he sacked Madina and looted it for three days; and in the third year he attacked the Ka'ba."

Of these three outrages, the first in particular sent a shudder of horror throughout the Muhammadan world, nor can any one endowed with feeling read unmoved the lamentable tale. It was not only a crime but a gigantic blunder, whereby Yazid and his execrable minions, Ibn Ziyad, Shimr, and the rest irretrievably alienated from the House of Umayya not the love or loyalty—for there was little enough of that already—but the tacit toleration of all those who loved the Prophet or cared for the religion which he had founded. The *Shi'a*, or "Faction" of 'All, had, as we have seen, hitherto been sadly lacking in enthusiasm and self-

Character of
 Yazid.

The tragedy of
 Kerbela (Oct.
 10, A.D. 680).

¹ Muir, *op. cit.*, p. 316.

² Some very pretty verses by him are given by al-Fakhri (ed. Ahlwardt), pp. 137-138.

³ Al-Fakhri, p. 67.

devotion ; but henceforth all this was changed, and a reminder of the blood-stained field of Kerbela, where the grandson of the Apostle of God fell at length, tortured by thirst and surrounded by the bodies of his murdered kinsman, has been at any time since then sufficient to evoke, even in the most lukewarm and heedless, the deepest emotion, the most frantic grief, and an exaltation of spirit before which pain, danger, and death shrink to unconsidered trifles. Yearly, on the tenth day of Muharram the tragedy is rehearsed in Persia, in India, in Turkey, in Egypt, wherever a Shi'ite community or colony exists ; and who has been a spectator, though of alien faith, of these *ta'ziyas* without experiencing within himself something of what they mean to those whose religious feeling finds in them its supreme expression ? As I write it all comes back : the wailing chant, the sobbing multitudes, the white raiment red with blood from self-inflicted wounds, the intoxication of grief and sympathy. Well says al-Fakhri¹ :—

"This is a catastrophe whereof I care not to speak at length, deeming it alike too grievous and too horrible. For verily it was a catastrophe than which naught more shameful hath
 Al-Fakhri on Kerbela. happened in Islam. Verily, as I live, the murder of ['Ali] the Commander of the Faithful was the Supreme Calamity ; but as for this event, there happened therein such foul slaughter and leading captive and shameful usage as cause men's flesh to creep with horror. And again I have dispensed with any long description thereof because of its notoriety, for it is the most celebrated of catastrophes. May God curse every one who had a hand therein, or who ordered it, or took pleasure in any part thereof! From such may God not accept any substitute or atonement! May He place them with those whose deeds involve the greatest loss, whose effort miscarries even in this present life, while they fondly imagine that they do well!"

"The tragedy of Kerbala," says Sir William Muir,² "decided not only the fate of the Caliphate, but of Mahometan kingdoms long after the Caliphate had waned and disappeared. Who that has seen the wild and passionate grief with which, at each recurring

¹ Pp. 138 *et seqq.*

• P. 324.

anniversary, the Muslims of every land spend the live-long night, beating their breasts and vociferating unweariedly the frantic cry—*Hasan, Hosein ! Hasan, Hosein!*—in wailing cadence can fail to recognise the fatal weapon, sharp and double-edged, which the Omeyyad dynasty allowed thus to fall into the hands of their enemies ?”

The rebellion of 'Abdu'llah ibn Zubayr, who for nine years (A.D. 683-692) maintained himself as independent Caliph in the

Rebellions of
Ibn Zubayr
and Mukhtar.

Holy Cities, like the more formidable insurrection of Mukhtar (A.D. 683-687), owed its success to the general desire for vengeance on the murderers of al-Husayn and his kinsmen which possessed not only the whole Shi'ite party, but even many of the Kharijites.¹ In the sack of Madina by Yazid's army (A.D. 682) there perished eighty " Companions " of the Prophet, and no fewer than seven hundred " Readers " who knew by heart the whole Qur'an. The blood of these too cried for vengeance, as did the desecrated sanctuary of Mecca. Kerbela at least was amply avenged by Mukhtar (A.D. 686), who put to death, in many instances with torture, Ibn Ziyad, Shimr, " Amr ibn Sa'd, and several hundred persons of lesser note who had borne a share in that guilty deed. He himself, however, was slain less than a year afterwards by Mus'ab, the brother of Ibn Zubayr, together with 7,000 or 8,000 of his followers. The growing dissensions whereby the Musulman world was torn found a remarkable illustration in June, A.D. 688, when four rival leaders—the Umayyad Caliph 'Abdu'l-Malik, 'Ali's son Muhammad (generally known as " *Ibnu'l-Hanafiyya*" "the son of the Hanafite woman," in allusion to his mother), Ibn Zubayr, and Najda the Kharijite—presided over the ceremonies of the Pilgrimage at Mecca, each at the head of his own followers.

The movement headed by Mukhtar was, as we have seen, essentially Shi'ite; the cry was throughout for vengeance on

¹ Muir, *op. cit.*, p. 332.

REBELLION OF AL-MUKHTAR

the murderers of al-Husayn and his companions, and it professed to aim at establishing the rights of the above-mentioned *Ibnu'l-Hanafyya*.¹ Herein it differed from later Shi'ite movements, since it did not recognise the importance attached by these to direct descent either from the Prophet through his daughter Fatima (who was the mother of both al-Hasan and al-Husayn, but not, of course, of *Ibnu'l Hanafiyya*), or from the Persian Royal House of Sasan. This double qualification appears first in al-Husayn's son 'Ali, called *as-Sajjad*, "the Worshipper," or more often " *Zaynu'l-'Abidin*, " the Ornament of the Devout," whose mother was believed to be the daughter of Yazdigird² ; and it was in him and his descendants that the legitimist aspirations of the two great branches into which the later Shi'ites became divided (the "Sect of the Twelve" and the "Sect of the Seven") first found complete satisfaction. Amongst Mukhtar's followers there were, as we know, a great number of non-Arab "clients" (*mawla*, pi. *mawali*), of whom the majority were in all probability Persians ; of his army of 8,000 men which capitulated to Mus'ab, the brother of Ibn Zubayr, less than one-tenth (some 700) were Arabs.³ The causes which enlisted these foreign Muslims in his ranks have been most carefully

Characteristics
of Mukhtar's
rebellion.

¹ See *al-Ya'qubi*, ed. Houtsma, vol. ii, p. 308.

² See pp. 130 *et seqq. supra*, and *al-Ya'qubi's* excellent history (ed. Houtsma), vol. ii, pp. 293, and 363. " His mother," says this historian (who died in the latter half of the ninth century of our era), " was Harar [name uncertain] the daughter of Yazdigird the Persian King ; and this was because when 'Umar b. al-Khattab brought in the two daughters of Yazdigird, he gave one of them to al-Husayn the son of 'Ali, who named her 'the Gazelle.' And when 'Ali the son of al-Husayn [and this Persian princess] was mentioned, some of the noblest used to say, 'All men would be glad if their mothers were [such] slaves ! ' "

³ Muir, *op. cit.*, p. 336. " It is instructive to observe," says this historian, " the distinctive value at this period placed on the life of Arabs, when it was calmly proposed to bet the Arab prisoners free and slay the 'clients' of foreign blood." All, however, were, after much discussion, put to death. Dinawari (p. 296) also mentions that there were many Persians amongst Mukhtar's followers.

THE Umayyad Period

studied by Van Vloten in his scholarly *Recherches sur la domination arabe*, & c, the work to which we are most indebted in the following paragraphs.

The Umayyad rule reached its culminating point in the reign of 'Abdu'l-Malik (A.D. 685-705), in which the purely

Reign of 'Abdu'l
Malik (A.D.
685-705.)

Arabian secular power reached its zenith. Then, as we have seen, Arabic coinage first came into general use; the Government accounts were trans-

ferred from the Persian into the Arabic language; the old Arabian aristocracy was dominant; the foreign "clients" were despised and oppressed; and the feelings of the pious Muslims—especially the Ansar, or "Helpers," of Madina, and the loyal adherents of the House of the Prophet—were repeatedly and ruthlessly outraged. 'Abdu'l-Malik's capable but cruel lieutenant, Hajjaj ibn Yusuf (a name hardly less execrated than those of Yazid, Ibn Ziyad, and Shimr), who first recommended

Cruelty of
al-Hajjaj.

himself to his master's notice by his readiness to undertake the siege and bombardment of Mecca¹ and the suppression of Ibn Zubayr's rebellion, was

for more than twenty-two years (A.D. 691—713) the blood-thirsty and merciless scourge of the Muslim world. The number of persons put to death by him in cold blood, apart from those slain in battle, is estimated at 120,000; and his savage harangue to the people of Kufa,² beginning, "*By God! I see glances fixed upon me' and necks stretched forward, and heads ripe for the reaping, ready to be cut off, and I am the man to do it!*" is typical of the man's ferocious nature. Not less typical of his master, 'Abdu'l-Malik, are the words wherewith he is said to have received the news of his accession to the Caliphate.³ He was reading the Qur'an when the messenger came to him; on hearing the message, he closed the holy volume, saying, "*This is a separation between me and thee!*"⁴ To the

¹ Al-Ya'qubi, vol. ii, p. 318.

² See Mas'udi's *Muruju'dh-Dhabab*, ed. B. de Meynard, vol. 5, pp. 294-300. ³ Al-Fakhri (ed. Ahlwardt), pp. 146-147. ⁴ Qur'an, xviii, 77.

CAUSES OF DISCONTENT

sanctity of places and persons he was equally insensible when political considerations bade him destroy, and his Syrians hesitated not to obey his behests. "Reverence and loyalty clashed," says al-Ya'qubi,¹ "and loyalty conquered."

"Thus, then," as Dozy well remarks,² "the party hostile to Islam did not rest until they had subdued the two Sacred Cities, turned the mosque of Mecca into a stable, burned the Ka'ba, and inflicted deep humiliation on the descendants of the first Muslims. The Arab tribes, which a minority had subdued and compelled to embrace Islam, made it pay dearly for this double success. The whole Umayyad period is nothing else but the reaction and triumph of the pagan principle. The Caliphs themselves were, with about one exception, either indifferent or infidel. One of them, Walid II (A.D. 743-744), even went so far as to suffer his concubines to take his place in public prayer, and to use the Qur'an as a target for his arrows."³

Broadly speaking, the policy of the Umayyads

Four classes entirely alienated by Umayyad policy. utterly alienated four classes of their subjects, to wit:—

(1) The pious Muslims, who saw with horror and detestation the sacrilegious actions, the ungodly lives, the profanity and the worldliness of their rulers.

1. Devout Muslims. Amongst these were included nearly all the "Companions" (*Ashab*) and the "Helpers" (*Ansar*), and their descendants. From these elements the rebellion of Ibn Zubayr derived most of its strength.

(2) The "Faction" (*Shi'a*) of 'Alī, which had suffered from the House of Umayya the irreparable wrongs, culminating in the tragedy of Kerbela, of which we have already spoken. This constituted the kernel of al-Mukhtar's rebellion.

2. Shi'ites.

(3) The Kharijites, or puritan theocrats, who, reinforced by malcontents and freebooters of every kind, continued, till about A.D. 700, to cause continual

3. Khawarij.

• Vol. ii, p. 300. ² *L'Islamisme* (Chauvin's translation), p. 179.

3 See al-Fakhri, p. 159, where a pair of verses addressed by him to the misused Qur'an are cited.

trouble of the most serious kind to the Umayyad Government-¹

(4) The "Clients" (*Mawali*), or non-Arab Muslims, who, far from being treated by the Government as equal to their co-religionists of Arab birth, were regarded as subject-races, subject-races to be oppressed, exploited and despised by their rulers.

Following Van Vloten's admirable researches, it is of this last class in particular that we shall now speak. This learned writer ascribes the fall of the Umayyad dynasty and the triumph of the 'Abbasids mainly to three causes : to wit : —

(1) The inveterate hatred of a subject race towards its foreign oppressors.

(2) The Shi'ite movement, or Cult of the descendants of the Prophet.

(3) The expectation of a Messiah or deliverer.

The rivalry of the Arab tribes of the north and the south, a rivalry carried with them to the remotest towns which they occupied, and immortalised in the celebrated verses of Nasr ibn Sayyar to which we shall presently refer, has, in his opinion, been exaggerated as a factor in the fall of the Umayyad Caliphate, and is consequently relegated to a secondary place.

The condition of the conquered races—not only those who embraced Islam, but also those who continued to profess the Jewish, Christian, and Magian faiths—was, as we

have already seen, tolerable, if not precisely enviable, in the pre-Umayyad days.² Under the Umayyad rule, however, with its strong racial prejudices and aggressive imperialism, wars and invasions originally undertaken, in part at least, for the propagation of Islam degenerated into mere predatory raids,³ of which booty was the principal

¹ The death of Shabib b. Yazid ash-Shaybani, about A.D. 699, is considered by Brunnow (*op. cit.*, p. 49) to mark the end of the more serious Kharijite insurrections.

• Van Vloten, *op. cit.*, pp. 3 and 14-15.

³

Idem, pp. 4-7.

THE SUBJECT RACES

if not **the** sole aim. But this did **not** suffice **to meet** the growing luxury and extravagance of the ruling class, and a heavier burden of taxation was constantly imposed on the subject-races, so that the profession of Islam became to them, from the material point of view, but a doubtful relief. Embezzlement and peculation, moreover, became increasingly common amongst the governors and their myrmidons (*sanl'a*),¹ who, for the most part, simply strove to enrich themselves by every means in their power during their tenure of office. These peculations were so serious that a regular process of "squeezing" (*istikhrāj*) came to be practised by each new governor on his predecessor, the right of exercising this privilege being actually bought from the central Government at Damascus. The sums which these tyrannical governors were thus compelled to disgorge were sometimes very great; thus, for instance, Yusuf ibn 'Umar extracted from his predecessor in the government of 'Irdq, Khdlid al-Qasri, and his creatures, no less than seventy million *dirhams* (about 2,800,000). The burden of all these exactions fell ultimately on the wretched peasantry, who had no means of lodging any effective complaint; and it was aggravated by the humiliating circumstances attendant on the collection of the taxes.² The old Persian aristocracy and landed proprietors (*dihqan*) did, it is true, succeed in preserving much of their power and wealth by embracing Islam and throwing in their lot with the conquerors, to whom their services were needful and their local influence and knowledge indispensable, but for the humbler classes it was not so, for, as Van Vloten remarks, "the ambition and racial pride of the Arabs, combined with their greed, offered an insuperable obstacle to the amelioration" of their lot. The "clients" were, indeed, regarded by the Arabs as an inferior race, little better than slaves. "Nothing," says the historian Tabari, in speaking of the revolt of Mukhtar (whose supporters, as we have seen, consisted to a great extent of "clients," or non-Arab Muslims, *Mawali*)," so

¹ Van Vloten, *op. cit.*, pp. 9-11.

• Idem, pp. 11-12.

exasperated the [Arab] Kufans as to see Mukhtar assign to the 'clients' their share of the spoil. 'You have taken from us our clients,' they cried, 'who are the spoil which God hath destined for us with all this province. We have liberated them, hoping for a reward from God, but you do not trouble yourself about this, and cause them to share in our booty.'" ¹

Under the government of the cruel and godless Hajjaj ibn Yusuf, converts to Islam were compelled to pay *the jizya*, or poll-tax levied on non-Muslims, from which they ought to have been exempt. Their discontent caused them to join the rebellion of 'Abdu'r-Rahman ibn Ash'ath in great numbers, but the revolt was quenched in blood, and the "clients" were driven back to their villages, the names of which were branded on their hands.² The action of al-Hajjaj, as von Kremer remarks, put an end to the hopes entertained by the "clients" and new converts of becoming the equals of the dominant race, but their discontent continued, and was the most potent of the causes which contributed to the downfall of the Umayyad dynasty.²

"Of all the Umayyads," says Dozy,⁴ "'Umar II (A.D. 717-720) was the only truly believing and pious prince. He was not moved by pecuniary interest; but, on the other hand, the propagation of the faith was all the more dear to his heart. The officials found it difficult to adapt themselves to this new principle, which contrasted so strongly with that which had hitherto been in force. 'If things continue in Egypt as at present,' wrote an official to the Caliph, 'the Christians will, without exception, embrace Islam, and the State will lose all its revenues.' 'I should regard it as a great blessing,' replied 'Umar, 'if all the Christians were converted, for God sent His Prophet to act as an apostle, not as a tax-collector.' To the governor of Khurasan, who complained that many of the Persians in his province had only embraced Islam in order to be exempt from the payment of the poll-tax (*jizya*), and that they had not caused themselves to be circumcised, he replied in a similar strain, 'God sent Muhammad to make known the true faith

¹ Van Vloten, *op. cit.*, p. 16. ² Ibid., pp. 17 and 26-27.

³ Streifzuger, p. 24. ⁴ *L'Islamisme* (Chauvin's translation), pp. 180-181.

unto men, not to circumcise them.¹ He did not, therefore, interpret too rigorously the prescriptions of the law: he did not ignore the fact that many conversions were lacking in sincerity, but at the same time he saw, and saw truly, that if the children and grand-children of these converts were brought up as Muslims, they would one day become as good, perhaps even better, believers than the Arabs."

'Umar ibn 'Abdu'l-'Aziz stands out as a bright and noble exception amidst the godless, greedy, self-seeking rulers of the House of Umayya. His rule, it is true, inspired throughout by considerations of the other world rather than of this, was disastrous to the revenue ; his methods, faithfully copied from those which prevailed during the Caliphate of his illustrious namesake 'Umar ibnu'l-Khattab, were too conservative—even reactionary—to achieve success ; and the hopes aroused once more in the breasts of the subject-races by his endeavours to secure for them justice and security, but destined only to be crushed again by his successors, did but quicken and strengthen the growing reaction against Arab imperialism. Judged from the worldly point of view, in short, 'Umar II struck a fatal blow at the supremacy of his House and race ; judged by the religious standard he acted as a faithful Muslim should. By his abolition of the public cursing of 'Ali in the mosques he gained the approbation of all pious Muhammadans, and must to some extent have conciliated the Shi'ite party. The poet Kuthayyir has some verses² praising him for this, which begin :—

il,

" *Thou hasi succeeded to the throne, and didst not revile 'Ali, not terrify*

*The innocent man, nor follow the counsel of the evil-doer;
Thou didst speak, and didst confirm what thou didst say by what
Thou didst do, and every Muslim became well content."*

¹ Cf. Van Vloten, *op. cit.*, pp. 22-23.

² Cited by al-Fakhri (ed. Ahlwardt), pp. 154-155.

'Umar's death nearly coincided with the end of the first century of the Muhammadan era, at which time, added to the prevailing discontent of the subject-races, there seems to have been a prevalent belief that some great revolution was impending.

End of the first century of the *hijra*. Beginning of the 'Abbasid propaganda.

"In this year" (A.H. 101=A.D. 719-720), says Dinawan, "the Shi'ites sent deputations to the Imam Muhammad b. 'All b. 'Abdullah b. 'Abbas b. 'Abdu'l-Muttalib b. Hashim,² whose abode was in the land of Syria, at a place called al-Humayma. The first of the Shi'ites who thus came forward were Maysara al-'Abdi, Abu 'Ikrima the saddler, Muhammad b. Khunays, and Hayyan the druggist. These came to him, desiring to swear allegiance to him, and said, 'Stretch out thine hand that we may swear allegiance to thee in the endeavour to secure for thee this sovereignty, that perchance by thee God may quicken justice and slay oppression; for verily now is the time and season of this, which we have found handed down from the most learned amongst you.' Muhammad b. 'Ali answered them saying, '*This is the season of what we hope and desire herein, because of the completion of a hundred years of the calendar.* For verily never do a hundred years pass over a people but God maketh manifest the truth of them that strive to vindicate the right, and bringeth to naught the vanity of them that countenance error, because of the word of God (mighty is His Name): "Or like him who passed by a village, when it was desolate and turned over on its roofs, and said, 'How shall God revive this after its death?' And God made him die for a hundred years, then He raised him up."³ Go, therefore, O man, and summon the people cautiously and secretly, and I pray that God may fulfil your undertaking and make manifest [the fruits of] your Mission; and there is no power save in Him."

Such was the beginning of the celebrated "Mission" or "Propaganda" (*da'wa*) of the 'Abbasids, which, working silently but surely on the abundant elements of disaffection which already existed, undermined the Umayyad power, and within thirty years overthrew the tottering edifice of their dynasty. The agents of this propaganda (*da'i*, plural *du'at*) — able, self-devoted men, who, though avoiding any premature

¹ Ed. Guirgass, pp. 334 *et seqq.*

* See the table on p. 214 *supra*.

³ Qur'an ii, 261.

outbreak, were at any moment ready to sacrifice their lives for the cause—worked especially on the ferment of discontent which leavened the Persian province of Khurasan, where, as Dinawari tells us (p. 335)—

" They invited the people to swear allegiance to Muhammad b. 'Ali, and sought to disgust them with the rule of the Umayyads by reason of their evil conduct and their grievous tyranny.

Many in Khurasan responded to their call, but somewhat of their doings becoming known and bruited abroad reached the ears of Sa'id [b. 'Abdu'l-'Aziz b. al-Hakam b. Abu'l-'As, the governor of Khurasan].¹ So he sent for them, and when they were brought before him said, 'Who are ye?' 'Merchants,' they replied. 'And what,' said he, 'is this which is currently reported concerning you?' 'What may that be?' they asked. 'We are informed,' said he, 'that ye be come as propagandists for the house of 'Abbas.' 'O Amir,' they answered, 'we have sufficient concern for ourselves and our own business to keep us from such doings I' So he let them go; and they went out from before him, and, departing from Merv, began to journey through the province of Khurasan and the villages thereof in the guise of merchants, summoning men unto the Imam Muhammad b. 'Ali. Thus they continued to do for two years, when they returned to the Imam Muhammad b. 'Ali in the land of Syria, and informed him that they had planted in Khurasan a tree which they hoped would bear fruit in due season. And they found that there had been born unto him his son Abu'l-'Abbas," whom he commanded to be brought forth unto them, saying, 'This is your master;' and they kissed his limbs all over."

On the support of the oppressed and slighted Persians especially the propagandists could reckon, for these were a wise and capable people with a great past, reduced to misery and treated with contempt by a merely martial race, inferior to them in almost every respect save personal valour and love of independence.

¹ Called *Khuzayna* on account of his effeminate manners. See Muir, *op. laud.*, pp. 384-386.

² Afterwards called *as-Saffah* ("the Shedder of blood"), who was the first Caliph of the House of 'Abbas.

Mukhtar and his general, Ibrahim ibnu'l-Ashtar, had **already** proved the worth of the Persians, from whom, as we have seen, their ranks were largely, indeed chiefly, recruited.¹

Worth of the Persians appreciated by Mukhtar and Ibnu'l-Ashtar.

When Furat and 'Umayr, officers in the Syrian army sent by the Caliph 'Abdu'l-Malik against Mukhtar, visited Ibnu'l-Ashtar in his camp, they complained that from the time they entered his lines until they reached his presence they had scarcely heard a word of Arabic, and asked him how with such an army he could hope to withstand the picked troops of Syria.

"By God!" replied Ibnu'l-Ashtar, "did I find none but ants [as my allies], yet would I assuredly give battle to the Syrians therewith ; how then in the actual circumstances? For there is no people endowed with greater discernment wherewith to combat them than these whom thou seest with me, who are none other than the children of the knights and satraps of the Persians." Mukhtar also "promoted those of Persian descent, and assigned gifts to them and their children, and set them in high places, withdrawing from the Arabs, and putting them at a distance, and disappointing them. Thereat were they angered, and their nobles assembled, and came in unto him, and reproached him. But he answered, "May God be remote from none but yourselves ! I honoured you, and you turned up your noses, I gave you authority, and you destroyed the revenues ; but these Persians are more obedient to me than you, and more faithful and swift in the performance of my desire."

There was, however, another party whose support was needed for the success of the 'Abbasid propaganda, namely, the Shi'ites. These, holding in general the same views as to the rights of the Family of the Prophet, yet differed in detail as to which candidate of that house had the better claim.

¹ See Dinawari, pp. 300-302, 306, 310, and 315.

Broadly speaking, they became divided, on the death of al-Husayn, into two parties, of which the one supported his younger half-brother, Muhammad ibnu'l-Hanafiyya, and the other his son 'All, better known as Zaynu'l-'Abidin.

The former party, on the death of Ibnu'l-Hanafiyya, transferred their allegiance to his son Abu Hashim (whence they received the name of Hashimiyya), who, as Van The Hashimiyya Vloten thinks,¹ was the first to organise a propaganda, and to encourage the feelings of adoration with which the Shi'ites were from the first disposed to regard their Imams and the belief in an esoteric doctrine whereof the keys were committed to his keeping. This Abu Hashim died (poisoned, it is said, by the Umayyad Caliph Sulaymdn)² in A. H. 98 (A. D. 716-717), bequeathing his rights to Muhammad b. 'All, the head of the House of 'Abbas. Thenceforth the Hashimiyya and the propaganda which they had organised became the willing instruments of the 'Abbasids.

The second party of the Shi'a, or Imamiyya, were less easily attached to the 'Abbasid cause, since in their view the Imam must be of the descendants of 'Ali and The Imamiyya. Fatima, their actual Imam at this time being 'All Zaynu'l-'Abidin, the son of al-Husayn, who died in A. H. 99 or 100 (A. D. 718).³ To secure the support of these, the 'Abbasid propaganda was carried on in the name of Hashim, the common ancestor of both 'AbbAsids and 'Alids, and only at the last, when success was achieved, was it made clear, to the bitter disappointment of 'All's partisans, that the House of 'Abbds was to profit by their labours to the exclusion of the House of 'Ali.

So the propaganda continued actively but silently. Sometimes the propagandists would be taken and put to death by the Government, as happened to Abu 'Ikrima and Hayyan, in whose place, however, five others were immediately despatched

¹ *Recherches sur la Domination arabe*, pp. 44-45.

² Al-Ya'qibi (ed. Houtsma), vol. ii, p. 356.

³ *ibid.*, p. 363.

to Khurasan, with orders to be cautious and prudent, and to disclose nothing until they had put a binding oath on the inquirer.¹ During the reign of Hisham, while Khalid was governor of 'Iraq, several strange and serious outbreaks or Kharijites and Shi'ites occurred, the leaders of which were in several cases burned to death.² In Khurasan, on the other hand, a somewhat unwise leniency was shown by the Caliph, in spite of the warnings of his governor, towards the 'Abbasid propagandists,³ whose movements were controlled and directed by a council of twelve *naqibs* and a Senate of seventy subordinate chiefs.⁴ Now and then, however, some *da'l* would break loose from control and preach the wildest doctrines of the extreme Shi'ites (*al-Ghulat*), as happened in the case of al-Khaddash, who was put to death in A.D. 736. For further information concerning him and the Rawandis and Khurramis we must refer the reader to Van Vloten's masterly study (pp. 47-51), and to ch. ix. *infra*.

About A.D. 743, Muhammad b. 'Ali the 'Abbasid died, after nominating as his successors first his son Ibrahim, and after him his other sons Abu'l-'Abbas and Abu Ja'far, of whom the first was put to death by Marwan II, the last Umayyad Caliph, about A.D. 747-748, while the two others lived to enjoy the fruits of the long and arduous labours of the 'Abbasid propaganda, and to inaugurate the 'Abbasid Caliphate. About the same time, too, appeared on the scene that remarkable man, Abu Muslim who, having contributed more than any one else to the overthrow of the Umayyads and the victory of the 'Abbasids, himself at last fell a victim to the jealousy of those who owed him so great a debt of gratitude.

Everything now portended that the final struggle was at hand. Marwan II, nicknamed "the Ass" (*al-Himar*) on account of his endurance in battle, succeeded to the throne in

¹ Dinawari, pp. 336-338.

³ Dinawari, p. 338.

* Muir, *op. laud.*, pp. 391-392

* Van Vloten, *op. laud.*, p. 47

A.D. 745, and men remembered the prophecy that in the "Year of the Ass" deliverance should come, and that *Ayn the son of Ayn the son of Ayn ('Abdu'llah b. 'All b. 'Abdu'llah, i.e., Abu'l-'Abbs, afterwards known as as-saffah) would kill *Mim the son of Mim the son of Mim* (Marwan the son of Muhammad the son of Marwan, the last Umayyad Caliph).¹ Such dark sayings were widely current and greedily absorbed, while the apocryphal books of the Jews and Christians, prophetic poems (*malahim*), and the like were eagerly studied by the long-suffering subject-races, who felt that now at length their deliverance was at hand, and that the Advent of the Promised One "who should fill the earth with justice after that it had been filled with iniquity" could not long be deferred. Only the Caliph Marwan and his courtiers seemed blind to the signs of the gathering storm, and that in spite of the repeated warnings of his lieutenants in the East, notably Nasr ibn Sayydr, the governor of Khurasan, who wrote to him that 200,000 men had sworn allegiance to Abu Muslim, and concluded his letter with some very fine and very celebrated verses, of which the translation is as follows² :—

Warnings of Nasr
b. Sayyar to the
Umayyads.

" / see amidst the embers the glow of fire, and it wants but little to-
burst into a blaze,
And if the wise ones of the people quench it not, its fuel will be
corpses and skulls.
Verily fire is kindled by two sticks, and verily words are the
beginning of warfare.
And I cry in amazement, ¹ Would that I knew whether the House
of Umayya were awake or asleep I' "

To the Arab garrisons too, torn by tribal feuds and heedless of the impending danger, he addressed the following verses 3 :—

¹ See Van Vloten, *op. laud.*, p. 57.

² See al-Fakhri, p. 170 ; Dinawari, p. 356 ; al-Ya'qubi, vol. ii, p. 408 , Nöldeke's *Delectus carminum arabicorum*, pp. 87-88, &c.

³ Nöldeke, *op. laud.*, p. 88.

THE Umayyad Period

" Tell those of Rabi'a in Merv and her **brethren** ² to **rise in wrath**
ere wrath shall avail nothing,
 And to declare war ; for verily the people have raised a war on
 the skirts of which the wood is ablaze t
 What ails you that ye stir up strife amongst yourselves, as though
 men of sense were absent from among you,
 And neglect an enemy who already overshadows you, a hetero-
 geneous horde, devoid alike of religion and nobility ?
 They are no Arabs of ours that we should know them, nor even
 decent clients, if their pedigree be declared,
 But a people who hold a faith whereof I never heard from the
 Prophet, and which the Scriptures never brought,
 And should one question me as to the essence of their religion,
 verily their religion is that the Arabs should be slain"

Vain, however, were these and other warnings.² Khurisin was seething with disaffection and revolt, and Abu Muslim, having assured himself at length that all was ready, raised the Black Standard ³ of the 'Abbasids at the village of Siqadanj, near Merv, on June 9, A.D. 747. This standard bore the following significant inscription from the Qur'an : *Permission* [to fight] is accorded to those who take up arms because they have been unjustly treated." Yet for a while the insurrection did not spread beyond the extreme north-east of Khurasan, Nasa, Biward, Herat, Marwarudh, and the surrounding regions. In response to the appeal of Nasr b. Sayydr the Caliph Marwdin wrote : 4 " Verily he who is present seeth what he who is absent seeth not: do thou, then, treat this disease which hath appeared amongst you ! " The only practical step which it occurred to him to take was to seize, imprison, and poison Ibrahim the

Raising of the
 Black Standard
 of the ' Abbasids,
 June 9, A.D. 747.

¹ I.e., the other towns of Khurasan.

² See the gloomy but forcible verses of the poet Harith b. 'Abdu'llah al-Ja'di and of the Umayyad prince 'Abbas b. al-Walid cited by Van Vloten {pp. laud., pp. 62-63} ;also Dinawari, pp. 358 and 359.

³ Concerning the significance of the black standards and apparel adopted by the ' Abbasids (hence called *al-Musawwida*), see Van Vloten, op laud., pp. 63-65, and references there given.

⁴ Al-Fakhri, pp. 170-171.

' Abbasid, whereupon his two brothers Abu'l-'Abbas and Abu Ja'far, accompanied by some of their kinsmen, fled from al-Humayma, their home in Syria, and escaped to Kufa, where they were concealed and cared for by Abu Salma and other leading men of the Shi'ites.

"Then," says al-Fakhri,* "there occurred between **Abu Muslim** and Nasr b. Sayyar and the other Amirs of Khurasan engagements and battles wherein the victory was to the *Musawwida*, that is the army of Abu Muslim, who were called *Musawwida* [the people who make black] because **the** raiment which they chose for the House of 'Abbas was black in colour. Regard now the Power of God (exalted is He !), and how, when He willeth aught, He prepares the means therefor, and how, when He desireth anything, nothing can oppose His command. So when He had decreed that the dominion should pass unto the House of 'Abbas, He prepared for them all the means thereto. For **the** Imam Ibrahim b. Muhammad b. 'Abdu'llah b. al-'Abbas was in Syria or in the Hijaz, seated on his prayer-mat, occupied with himself, his devotions, and the concerns of his family, and not possessed of any great worldly power, while the people of Khurasan fought for him, risking their lives and property for him, though most of them neither knew him, nor could distinguish between his name and his personality. . . . Nor did he spend on them any wealth, or bestow on any one of them horse or arms; nay rather it was they who bestowed wealth on him and brought him tribute every year. And since God had decreed the abasement of Marwan and the disruption of the kingdom of the Umayyads, although Marwan was the acknowledged Caliph, and was possessed of armies, and wealth, and weapons, and worldly goods to the fullest extent, yet did men desert in all directions from him, and his authority waxed weaker, and his tenure was shaken, and he ceased not being worsted **till** he was routed **and** slain."

The enthusiasm of the *Musawwida* and their devotion to Abu Muslim—"homme sombre et dur que les jouissances de ce monde n'occupaient guere"²—were unbounded, while their obedience was such that they would neither accept ransoms nor slay the enemy who lay at their feet without the command

of their chiefs. Amongst the Arabs, on the other hand, there was an utter lack of enthusiasm, patriotism, or loyalty; "chacun avait en vue ses intèVets personnels ou tout au plus l'intèret de sa tribu : se deVouer pour les Omayades personne n'y pensait ; meme s'il faut en croire Ya'qoubi, les Yemenites de Merw staient tout a fait gagnes aux sentiments chiitiques." Yet Abu Muslim proceeded with caution and deliberation. For seven months he maintained his army in the neighbourhood of Merv without attempting any serious advance, and only when assured of the support of the Yamanite Arabs did he at length seize and occupy the capital of Khurasan. Then indeed the insurrection became general¹:—

"They poured in from all sides to join Abu Muslim, from Herat, Bushanj, Marwarudh, Talaqan, Merv, Nishapur, Sarakhs, Balkh, Saghdniyan, fukharistan, the country of the Khuttal, Kashsh, and Nasaf (Nakhshab).¹ They came all clothed in black, and carrying clubs half blackened which they called *kafir-kub* (maces wherewith to beat the unbelievers).⁹ They kept arriving on horse, on foot, on asses. They urged on their asses with cries of 'harra Marwan !' because Marwan II was surnamed 'the Ass (*al-Himar*). They numbered about 100,000 men."

From this moment till Abu 'l-'Abbas 'Abdu'llah *as-Safah* (also entitled *al-Mahdi* first Caliph of the House of 'Abbas, inaugurated his reign on October 30, A.D. 749, by pronouncing the *khutba*, or homily, customary on such occasions, the progress of Abu Muslim and the other 'Abbasid leaders was one continuous triumph. Nasr ibn Sayydr—"le seul homme loyal, et qu'on est heureux de rencontrer dans ces temps des perfidie et d'e'goisme"—died a fugitive at Sawa in November, A.D. 748 ; Kufa was occupied by Qahataba in August, A.D. 749 ; in the same month Marwan's son 'Abdu'lldh was utterly routed on

¹ Van Vloten, *of. laud.*, p. 67 ; Dinawari, p. 360.

² It is noticeable that Dinawari reads *kafar-kubat*. Though *kafir* is the correct form, *kafar* is the recognised Persian pronunciation, as is shown by the words (*sar*, *bar*, &c.) with which it is made to rhyme in Persian verses even of the earliest period.

the lesser Zab by Abu 'Awn; Marwan himself suffered final and irrevocable defeat on the river Zab on January 25, A.D. 750; Damascus, the Umayyad capital, was occupied three months later; and Marwan, last Caliph of the House of Umayya, a fugitive in Egypt, was finally taken and slain on August 5th of the same year, and his head sent to Abu'l-'AbbSs. General massacres of members of the Umayyad family, accompanied in most cases by circumstances of inhuman cruelty and revolting treachery, took place in the following year (A.D. 751) in Palestine, at Basra, and even in the sacred cities of Mecca and Madlna. One, Abdu'r-Rahman, the grandson of Hisham, after many hairbreadth escapes, ultimately made his way to Spain, and, being well received by the Arabs there settled, founded the Umayyad dynasty of Cordova, which endured for nearly three centuries (A.D. 756-1031). The desecration of the tombs of the Umayyad Caliphs at Damascus, and the exhumation of their bodies, has also been cast as a reproach against the 'Abbasids¹; but since this practice has been recently revived by an English general, and condoned if not applauded by the majority of his countrymen, it would hardly beseeem us to denounce it too violently.

Disillusionment
of many of the
supporters of the
revolution.

In any case the 'Abbasids, even when, wading through seas of blood, they had finally grasped the Caliphate and become sole and undisputed masters of the Eastern Empire of Islam, were very far from "filling the earth with justice," so that we find a poet exclaiming² :—

*"O would thai the tyranny of the children of Marwan might return
to us,*

*And would that the justice of the children ofⁱAbbas were in
hill-fire I"*

Many of those who had worked most strenuously for the revolution were most bitterly disappointed when it was an accomplished fact.³ More especially was this so in the case of

¹ Muir, *op. laud.*, pp. 435-436.

² Aghani, xvi, p. 84, cited by Van Vloten, *op. laud.*, p. 69.

³ Van Vloten, *op. laud.*, p. 69.

the Shi'ites, who, misled by the delusive belief that by the term " Hashimites," in whose name the propaganda was carried on, the House of 'All was intended, discovered, when it was too late, that not even in the Umayyads had the true descendants of the Prophet enemies more implacable than in their " Hashimite " cousins of the House of 'Abbas. The 'Abbsids did

not even spare their own chosen instruments;
Abu Salma and Abu Muslim put to death. Abu Salma was treacherously murdered in A.D. 749-750; and Abu Muslim himself, to

whose untiring zeal, rare genius, and relentless activity the 'Abbsid triumph was chiefly due, suffered a like fate four or five years later (A.D. 755).¹ For him, indeed, in spite of his rare abilities, we can feel little pity, for on his own admission² the number of those whom he caused to be slain in cold blood, apart from those slain in battle, amounted to 100,000 persons, while by others³ their number is raised to 600,000. Yet did

he inspire in his followers a rare devotion, extending even to non-Muslims : "in his time," the
Immense influence of Abu Muslim. historian tells us,⁴ "the *dihqans* [Persian landed proprietors] abandoned the religion of the Magians and were converted to Islam." Speaking of the Khurramis, ultra-

Shi'ites, and other exalted visionaries and syncretists, Van Vloten says : ⁵ " Many of them regarded him as the only true Imam ; it is even possible that he may have been considered as one of the descendants of Zoroaster, Oshederbami, or Oshe-derma, whose advent, in a role similar to that of the Muhammadan Mahdi, was expected by the Magians. These sects would not believe in the death of Abu Muslim, they awaited

¹ All the Imams of the Shi'ite "Sect of the Twelve" who lived in 'Abbasid times are believed by their followers to have been put to death (generally secretly, by poison) by these Caliphs, with the exception of the twelfth, the Imam Mahdi, whom they believe to have been miraculously preserved till our own time in the mysterious City of Jabalqa, whence he will come forth in the " Trouble of the Last Time."

² Al-Ya'qubi, vol. ii, p. 439. ³ Muir, *op. laud.*, p. 446 *ad calc.*

⁴ Ibn Abi Tahir, cited by Van Vloten, *op. laud.*, p. 67, and n. 4 *ad calc.*

⁵ *Op. laud.*, p. 68.

his return to fill the earth with justice. Others held that the Imamate passed to his daughter Fatima. A certain Ishaq "the Turk" "I escaped into Transoxiana after the death of Abu Muslim, whose *da'l* [missionary, or propagandist] he claimed to be, and maintained that his master was concealed in the city of Ray. Later he pretended to be a prophet sent by Zoroaster, who, according to him, had not ceased to live."

Of the Khurramis or Khurram-diniyya, whose essential tenets appear to have been those of Mazdak (see pp. 168-172 *supra*), we continue to hear for another century, and the more or less serious revolts in Persia headed by the pseudo-prophets Sinbadh the Magian (A.D. 754-5), Ustahsis (A.D. 766-768), Yusuf al-Barm and al-Muqanna' "the veiled Prophet of Khurasan" (A.D. 777-780), 'All Mazdak (A.D. 833), and Babak (A.D. 816-838) were in most cases associated with the memory of Abu Muslim.

If it did nothing else, however, the revolution which placed the 'Abbsids on the throne entirely altered the status of the Persians, who at once rose from the position of a despised and slighted subject-race to the highest and most influential offices and commands. It was their swords which won the victory for the House of 'Abbs, whom al-Biriini, not without good reason, calls "a Khurisdni, an Eastern dynasty";^a and it may truly be said that Q'edisyya and Nahawand were avenged on the banks of the Zab. The fall of the Umayyads was the end of the purely Arabian period.³

¹ As explained in the *Fihrist* (p. 345) he was called "the Turk" only because he carried on his propaganda in the Turkish lands.

² *Chronology of Ancient Nations*, Sachau's transl., p. 197.

³ See the text (pp. 69-70) and translation (pp. 31-32) of the remarkable poem given by Von Kremer in his *Streifzuge*. The Arab poet bitterly complains of the haughty arrogance assumed by the Persian and Naba-thean *mawlas*, or "clients," who were formerly so humble.

BOOK III

*ON THE EARLY 'ABBASID PERIOD, OR
GOLDEN AGE OF ISLAM*

CHAPTER VII

GENERAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE GOLDEN AGE OF ISLAM (A.D. 749-847), FROM THE ACCESSION OF AS-SAFFAH TO THE DEATH OF AL-WATHIQ

T H E general characteristics of the 'Abbasid dynasty, and the nature of the forces which contributed to its establishment and the overthrow of the Umayyads, have been to some extent discussed in the last chapter. Sir William Muir, in the short introductory remarks which he prefixes to his account of this illustrious house (*pp. laud.*, pp. 430-432) emphasises three features in particular wherein this period differs from the last ; firstly, that the Caliphate was no longer coextensive with the limits of Islam (since Spain never accepted 'Abbasid rule, and the allegiance of Africa was fitful and imperfect) ; secondly, that the martial vigour of the Arabs declined along with their fervent faith, and that they ceased to play the predominant *role* in the history of Islam ; thirdly, that Persian, and later Turkish, influences became all-powerful at the centre of government, now transferred from Syria to 'Iraq.

General characteristics of the 'Aabasid period.

Characterised by Sir W. Muir.

"With the rise of Persian influence," he adds (p. 432), "the roughness of Arab life was softened; and there opened an era of culture, toleration, and scientific research. The practice of oral tradition was also giving place to recorded statement and historical narrative,—a change hastened by the scholarly tendencies introduced from the East. To the same source may be attributed the ever-

increasing laxity at Court of manners and morality; and also those transcendental views that now sprung up of the divine Imamate, or spiritual leadership, of some member of the House of 'Ali; as well as the rapid growth of free thought. These things will be developed as we go on. But I have thought it well to draw attention at this point to the important changes wrought by the closer connection of the Caliphate with Persia and Khurasan caused by the accession of the 'Abbasids."

In a similar strain Dozy writes¹:—

"The ascendancy of the Persians over the Arabs, that is to say of the conquered over the victors, had already for a long while been in course of preparation; it became
 Characterised by Dozy. complete when the 'Abbasids, who owed their elevation to the Persians, ascended the throne. These princes made it a rule to be on their guard against the Arabs, and to put their trust only in foreigners, Persians,² especially those of Khurasan, with whom, therefore, they had to make friends. The most distinguished personages at court were consequently Persians. The famous Barmecides were descended from a Persian noble who had been superintendent of the Fire-temple at Balkh. Afshin, the all-powerful favourite of the Caliph al-Mu'tasim, was a scion of the princes of Ustrushna in Transoxiana. The Arabs, it is true, murmured, and endeavoured to regain their ancient preponderance. The war which broke out between the two brothers al-Amin and al-Ma'mun, the sons of Harunu'r-Rashid, was in its essence merely the renewal of the war waged between the Arab and Persian nationalities for the supremacy. But the Arabs again experienced a check; again, cost them what it might, they had to recognise the supremacy of Persia; again they were compelled to watch as passive spectators a change of government dependent on the defeat of one of these races by the other and resulting from it. The democratic point of view of the Arabs was, indeed, replaced by the despotic ideas of the Persians."

"Know," says that charming historian al-Fakhri,³ "that the 'Abbasid dynasty was a treacherous, wily, and faithless dynasty, wherein intrigue and guile played a greater part
 Characterised by al-Fakhri than strength and energy, particularly in its latter days. Indeed the later rulers of this House lost

¹ *Hist de l'Islamisme* translated by Victor Chauvin, pp. 228-229.

• See Tabari's *Annals*, iii, 1142.

³ Ed. Ahlwardt, pp. 176-177.

all faculty of energy and courage, and relied solely on tricks and stratagems. To this effect speaks the poet Ibn Kushajim,¹ alluding to the truce observed by the people of the sword and the hostility and enmity of the people of the pen one to another :—

*' Pleasant to the people of the sword be that idleness
Whereby their days are passed in self-indulgence!
How many a man is there amongst them who lives a tranquil
life, and has never stirred forth
To any war, nor ever attacked a resolute and equal adversary !
Evening and morning he struts about, girding to his sword-belt
A sword secure from serious work, which has never risked
fracture.
But as for the people of the pen, at no moment
Are their swords dry of blood.'*¹

" In the same strain sang a certain poet when al-Mutawakkil slew his minister Muhammad b. 'Abdu'l-Malik az-Zayyat:—

*' The heart was like to leave me for distress
When it was said, " The Wazir is slain !"
O Commander of the Faithful, thou hast slain one
Who was the axle on which your mill revolved/
' Genily, O sons of al-Abbas, gently /
For in truth men's hearts burn at your treachery!*

"Yet withal it was a dynasty abounding in good qualities, richly endowed with generous attributes, wherein the wares of Science found a ready sale, the merchandise of Culture was in great demand, the observances of Religion were respected, charitable bequests flowed freely, the world was prosperous, the Holy Shrines were well cared for, and the frontiers were bravely kept. Nor did this state of things cease until its last days were at hand, and violence became general, government was disturbed, and empire passed from them, all of which will be set forth in its proper place, if God please."

As it is not my intention to discuss in detail the reigns or characters of the Caliphs of this House, or to repeat anecdotes of Harunu'r-Rashid's nocturnal rambles through

¹ Abu'l-Fath Mahmud b. al-Husayn b. Shahaq, called *as-Sindi*, because of his Indian descent, died 961 or 971. See Brockelmann's *Arab. Literaturgesch.*, p. 85, and p. 371 *infra*.

the streets of Baghdad in the company of Ja'far the Barmecide and Masrur the black executioner, which are familiar to all readers of the *Thousand and One Nights*, and of which a copious selection will be found in the late Professor Palmer's entertaining little volume on that celebrated monarch,¹ I here append, for the convenience of the reader, a table of the 'Abbasid Caliphs of this earlier period, adapted from Stanley Lane-Poole's excellent *Muhammadan Dynasties* (London, 1894).

	'AU b. 'Abdu'llah b. 'ABBAS			
	!			
	Muhammad	'Abdu'llah	Musa	Sulayman
Ibrahitn	1. -S,affah	2. -Mansur 'Isa	3. -Mahdi	
	!			
	4. -Hadi	5. -Rashid	-Mansui	Ibrahim
	I	I		
6. -Amin	7. -Ma'mun	8. -Mu'tasim		
Muhammad	9. -Wathiq	10. -Mutawakkil		
12. -Musta'in	14. -Muhtadi	II. -Muntasir	13. -Mu'tazz	15. Mu'tamid
			Ibnu'l-Mu'tazz	16. -Mu'tadid

The first century of the dynasty, from its establishment till the death of al-Wathiq and accession of al-Mutawakkil (A.H. 132-232 = A.D. 750-847), will chiefly be dealt with in this Third Book. It is the Golden Age of the Caliphate, and is characterised by the ascendancy of Persian influence, typified in the celebrated and noble Barmecides (descendants of Barmak), by the wit and learning so much in fashion at the Court, and by the complete dominance of the broad and liberal Mu'tazilite doctrines in the field of religion. With the accession of the tenth Caliph, al-Mutawakkil, Turkish influences (always somewhat barbarous in many aspects, and seldom favourable to free thought and enlightened intellcc-

tuality) largely displaced Persian 5 the Mu'tazilite doctrine, no longer patronised by Royalty, was supplanted by what now passes current as orthodoxy, to the great detriment of philosophical speculation ; and for a time a violent anti-Shi'ite bias was displayed. This earlier period of the 'Abbsid Caliphate is therefore well defined, both in respect to racial dominance and religious tendencies, and reached its culminating point in the splendid reign of al-Ma'mun, whose mother¹ and wife² were both Persians, and whose ministers, favourites, and personal characteristics were, for the most part, Persian also. " We have seen," says Professor Palmer, " how the Arabs perforce left the actual administration of the conquered countries in the hands of native officials. The 'Abbasids owing their rise entirely to Persian influence, it was only natural that Persian counsels should prevail, and we accordingly find a minister of Persian extraction at the head of affairs, and the Caliphate carried on by almost precisely the same machinery as that by which the Empire of the Sasdnians was governed."

To this machinery belonged, amongst other things, the office of *Wazir* (of which " Vizier " is the commoner, though less correct, form in English books), a word commonly derived from the Arabic root *wizr* " a burden," because the *Wazir* bears the burden of administration, but probably identical in reality, as Darmesteter has shown,³ with the Pahlawi *vi-chir* (from *vi-chira* " to

Institution of the
office of *Wazir*.

¹ "Much," says von Kremer (*Cuit Streifzuge*, p. 41 *ad calc*), "is explained by the circumstance that Ma'mun's mother was a Persian, a statement which is found in an ancient and well-informed author (de Goeje, *Fragm. Hist Arab.*, I, 350)."

* *Puran*, the daughter of Hasan b. Sahl, and niece of the celebrated Fadl b. Sahl, al-Ma'mun's *wazir*. The gorgeous ceremonies observed in connection with her marriage are detailed by Ibn Khallikan (de Slane's translation, vol. i, pp. 268-270), and in the *Laf'd'ifu'l-Ma'drif* of ath-Tha'alibi (ed. de Jong, pp. 73-74).

³ *Etudes iraniennes*, vol. i, p. 58, and n. 3 *ad calc*.

decide "), *gazir* in the Talmud. Of the history of this office al-Fakhn ¹ gives the following account :—

" Before entering more fully into this matter, we must needs say a few prefatory words on this subject. I say, then, that the *Wazir* is one who is intermediate between the king and his subjects, so there must needs be in his nature one aspect which accords with the natures of kings, and another aspect which accords with the natures of the common folk, so that he may deal with both classes in such a manner as to secure for himself acceptance and affection ; while trustworthiness and sincerity constitute his capital. It is said, ' When the ambassador plays the traitor, policy avails naught ;' and it is also said, ' The man belied hath no opinion ;' ¹² so it is important for him to be efficient and vigorous, and necessary that he should possess intelligence, wariness, cunning, and resolution. It is likewise needful that he should be generous and hospitable, that thereby he may incline men's necks to his yoke, and that his thanks may be on the tongues of all ; nor can he dispense with gentleness, patience, stability in affairs, clemency, dignity, gravity, and an authoritative address. . . . Now the rules of the Wazirate were not fixed, nor the laws which govern it set in order, before the dynasty of the ' Abbasids. Before that time its rules were indeterminate and its laws unsettled ; nay, rather each king was surrounded by certain courtiers and retainers, and, when any important crisis arose, he took counsel of such as were most sagacious and wise in council, each of whom, therefore, acted as *Wazir*. But when the ' Abbasids came to the throne, the laws of the Wazirate were fixed, and the *Wazir* was named *Wazir*, having hitherto been entitled Secretary (*Katib*), or Counsellor (*Mushir*). Lexicographers say that *wazar* means ' a place of refuge ; ' ' an asylum, ' and that *wizr* means ' burden / so that *Wazir* is either derived from *wizr*, in which case it means that he ' bears the burden, ' or **from** *wazar*, in which case it means that the king has recourse to his judgment and counsel."

But the office of *Wazir*, for all the power and dignity which it carried with it, was a perilous one. Abu Muslim, entitled *Aminu Alt Muhammad*, " the Trusted Agent of the Family of Muhammad " was,

Perilous character of the office.

¹ Ed. Ahlwardt, pp. 170-181.

² *Le.*, No heed is paid to the views or statements of one who has been proved a liar.

as we have seen, treacherously murdered by al-Mansur (A.D. 754-755), after he himself had, by order of as-saffah, caused Abu Salama, who first bore the title of *Wazir*, to be assassinated (A.D. 749-750). Abu'l-Jahm, who succeeded him, was poisoned by his master. Feeling the poison work within him, he rose up to leave the room. "Whither away?" asked the Caliph. "To where thou hast sent me," answered the unfortunate minister.¹ His death coincided with the rise

The Barmecides. to power of the great and noble Persian family of the Barmecides, or descendants of Barmak, who for fifty years (A.D. 752-804) so wisely directed the affairs of the Caliphate, and, by their generous patronage of learning, lavish hospitality, and wise administration, conferred such lustre upon the reigns of the first five 'Abbasid Caliphs, till the insensate jealousy of Harunu'r-Rashid led him to destroy Ja'far and al-Fadl, the sons of Yahya, the son of Khalid, the son of Barmak, and many members of their family. Barmak, their ancestor, was a Magian, and the high priest of the great Fire-Temple of Nawbahar at Balkh. Mas'udi tells us (*Muruju'dh-Dhabab*, iv, 48) that—

"He who exercised these functions was respected by the kings of this country, and administered the wealth offered to the temple. He was called *Barmak*, a name given to all those invested with this dignity, whence is derived the name of the Barmecides (*Barmaki*, pi. *Baramika*); for Khalid b. Barmak was the son of one of these great pontiffs."

In support of this view that Barmak was really a title rather than a name we may also cite the words of the geographer al-Qazwini (*Atharu. I-Bilad*, pp. 221-222, s.v., Balkh) :—

"The Persians and Turks used to revere it [the Temple of Nawbahar] and perform pilgrimages to it, and present offerings to it. Its length was one hundred cubits, its breadth the same, and its

¹ Al-Fakhri (ed. Ahlwardt, pp. 183-4).

height somewhat more, and the care of it was invested in the *Bardmika*. The Kings of India and China used to come to it, and when they reached it they worshipped the idol, and kissed Barmak's hand, and Barmak's rule was paramount in all these lands. And they ceased not, Barmak after Barmak, until Khurasan was conquered in the days of 'Uthman b. 'Affan, and the guardianship of the temple came at length to Barmak the father of Khalid."

The Barmecides naturally used their great influence in favour of their compatriots, but they had to be careful lest a too evident partiality for the institutions of Persia should bring them under suspicion of being still at heart Magians. Thus, whilst engaged in constructing his new capital of Baghdad, the Caliph al-Mansur was advised by Abu Ayyub al-Muriyani to destroy the Sasanian palace known as *Aywan-i-Kisra* and utilise the material for building purposes. He consulted Khalid b. Barmak, who replied, "Do not this thing, O Commander of the Faithful, for verily it is a sign of the triumph of Islam, for when men see it they know that only a heavenly dispensation could destroy the like of this building, besides which it was the place of prayer of 'All b. Abu Talib. The expense of destroying it is, moreover, greater than what will be gained thereby." "O Khalid," answered al-Mansur, "thou hast naught but partiality for all that is Persian !" Khalid's prophecy as to the labour and expense involved in its destruction proved, however, to be correct, and so one day the Caliph said to him, "O Khalid, we have come over to thine opinion, and have abandoned the destruction of the palace." "O Commander of the Faithful," said Khalid, "I advise thee now to destroy it, lest men should say that thou wert unable to destroy what another built !" Fortunately, however, the Caliph again refused to follow his advice (given, no doubt, from prudential motives, on account of what the Caliph had said to him before), and the demolition of the palace was suspended.¹

¹ Al-Fakhri, pp. 185, 186 ; Tabari, ser. iii, p. 320

Another old Persian custom reintroduced very early in the 'Abbsid period was the observance of the Festival of the New Year (*Nawruz*), the first day of the Persian solar year, corresponding with the vernal equinox and the entry of the sun into the sign of Aries.

Revival of Persian festival of Nawriiz.
 "In the time of Harunu'r-Rashid," says al-Biruni,¹ "the land-holders assembled again and called on Yahya the son of Khalid the son of Barmak, asking him to postpone the Nawriiz by about two months.⁹ Yahya intended so to do, but then his enemies began to speak of the subject, and said, 'He is partial to Zoroastrianism.' So he dropped the subject, and the matter remained as it was before."

Von Kremer, in those admirable works which we have already so often had occasion to cite, treats fully of the Persian influences which were everywhere active, and which so largely moulded not only the organisation of the Church and State, but, in 'Abbasid times, even the fashions of dress, food, music and the like.

"Persian influence," he says,³ "increased at the Court of the Caliphs, and reached its zenith under al-Hadi, Harunu'r-Rashid, and al-Ma'mun. Most of the ministers of the last were Persians or of Persian extraction. In Baghdad Persian fashions continued to enjoy an increasing ascendancy. The old Persian festivals of the Nawriiz, Mihrgan, and Ram were celebrated. Persian raiment was the official court dress, and the tall, black, conical Persian hats (*qalansuwa*, pi. *qalanis*) . . . were already prescribed as official by the second 'Abbasid Caliph (in A.H. 153 = A.D. 770). At the court the customs of the Sasanian kings were imitated, and garments decorated with golden inscriptions were introduced, which it was the exclusive privilege of the ruler to bestow. A coin of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil shows us this Prince actually clothed in true Persian fashion."

Persian fashions
in dress adopted.

¹ *Chronology of Ancient Nations* (Sachau's trans.), p. 37.

² The abolition of the old system of intercalation having caused it to recede, so that it fell at a time before the crops were ripe, thus causing much loss to the farmers, since the taxes had to be paid at this time.

³ *Streifzuge*, pp. 32-33.

But if Persian influences were thus dominant at the 'Abbasid court, and Persian fashions thus prevalent amongst its frequenters, the activity of this talented people was even more conspicuous in the realm of literature and science.

"Not only in the government are the foreigners always to the front," says Goldziher in the illuminating chapter 'Arab und [Ajam] (Arabs and Persians) in his *Muhammedanische Studien* (vol. i, p. 109); "we find them also in the foremost ranks even in the specifically religious sciences. 'It almost seems,' says von Kremer,¹ that these scientific studies (Reading and Exegesis of the Qur'an, Sciences of Tradition and Law), were, during the first two centuries [of the *hijra*], principally worked by clients [*Mawali*, i.e., non-Arab Muslims], while the Arabs proper felt themselves more drawn to the study of their ancient poetry, and to the development and imitation of the same; but, we would add, even in this field they were often outstripped by the foreigners, whose men of learning in no small degree advanced this sphere of the Arabian genius by literary and historical studies on the antiquities of the Arabs, by thorough critical researches, and so forth. It would be superfluous to cite here the many names whereof the mere sound affords proof of what Arabic Grammar and Lexicology owe to non-Arabs, and even if we cannot permit Paul de Lagarde's assertion² that 'of the Muhammadans who have achieved anything in Science, not one was a Semite' to pass in this absolute form, yet so much at least may be said, that alike in the specially religious studies as in those which grew up round the study of the Arabic speech, the Arabian element lagged far behind the non-Arabian. And this was principally the fault of the Arabs themselves. They looked down with sovereign contempt on the studies so zealously prosecuted by the non-Arabs, considering that such trivialities were unworthy of men who could boast so proud an ancestry, but befitted only the pedagogue, anxious to gloss over with such pigments his dingy genealogy. 'It befits not the Qurayshites'—in such words a full-blooded Arab expresses himself—to go deeply into any study save that of the old histories [of the Arabs], especially now, when one has to bend the bow and attack the enemy.'³ Once a Qurayshite,

¹ *Culturgesch. Streifzuge*, p. 16. ² *Gesammelte Abhandl.*, p. 8, n. 4.

³ Cited from the *Kitabu'l-Bayan wa't-Tabyin* of al-Jahidh. This work has now been printed at Cairo (A.H. 1313=A.D. 1895-6), but Goldziher used it in manuscript, as he wrote in or before 1889. He also refers to the

observing an Arab child studying the Book of Sibawayhi,¹ could not refrain from exclaiming, ' Fie upon thee I That is the learning of schoolmasters and the pride of beggars !' For it was reckoned as a jest that any one who was a grammarian, prosodist, accountant or jurist (for the science last mentioned arithmetic is indispensable) would give instruction in these subjects to little children for sixty *dirhams* (for what length of time is not, unfortunately, mentioned)."

The Arabs of the *Fahiliyyat* or pagan time, were, as Goldziher fully shows, so little familiar with the art of writing (save in the case of those who had come under Jewish, Christian, Greek, or Persian influences) that an old poet distinguishes a wise man from whom he cites a sentence as "he who dictates writing on parchment, whereon the scribe writes it down ;" and that even in the Prophet's time they were not much more literate is shown, as he says, not only by the strange materials on which the Qur'an was inscribed, but also by the fact that those taken captive at the Battle of Badr could, if they possessed a knowledge of writing, obtain their liberty without paying any further ransom. Al-Waqidi, cited by al-Baladhuri (*Futuhu UBuldan*, ed. de Goeje, pp. 471-72), expressly states that in the early days of Islam only seventeen men of the tribe of Quraysh, the aristocracy of Mecca, could write; and he enumerates them by name, including amongst them 'Umar, 'All, ' Uthman, Ibnu'l-Jarrah, Talha, Abu Sufyan, and his son Mu'awiya. Dhu'r-Rumma, who is regarded as the last of the old Bedouin poets (died between A.D. 719 and 735), had to conceal the fact that he was able to write,² " because," said he, " it is regarded as a disgrace amongst us."

similar narratives from other sources given by von Kremer in vol. ii of his *Culturgeschichte*, p. 159.

¹ This celebrated Persian grammarian died about A.D. 795. His **work**—" the oldest systematic representation of Arabian Grammar"—is called " The Book " (*al-Kitab*) *par excellence*.

² Goldziher, *Muham. Stud.*, vol. i, p. 112.

The Persians, on the other hand, even in early Sasinian times, included a knowledge of writing (*dapirih*) amongst the accomplishments proper to a prince,¹ and many of them seem to have also possessed a good knowledge of Arabic before the days of Islam. Thus King Bahram Gur (A.D. 420-438), who was educated by Mundhir amongst the Arabs of Hira, was instructed in the Persian, Arabic, and even Greek languages and writings,² and poems in Arabic ascribed to him are cited in 'Awfi's *Lubdbu 'l-Albab*.³ Khurra-Khusraw, the Persian satrap of Yemen about the time of the Prophet, "became fully Arabicised; he recited Arabic poems, and educated himself in the Arabian fashion; these Arab tendencies of his ('*ta'arrubuhu*' says our source) were the primary cause of his recall." 4

"There are also named," continues Goldziher, "amongst the doctors of the religion of Islam men of Persian origin whose ancestors did not through Islam first come in contact with Arab life, but who belonged to those Persian troops⁵ who, under Sayf b. Dhu Yazan, became settled in Arabian lands. In Islam the Arabisation of the non-Arabian elements and their participation in the learned world of the Muhammadan community underwent a rapid development, to which the history of the civilisation of mankind affords but few parallels. Towards the end of the first century [of the *hijra*] we find in Madina a grammarian named Bushkast, a name which sounds altogether Persian; and we find this grammarian, who busied himself with imparting instruction in his science,

¹ Noldeke's *Gesch. des Artachshir-i-Papakan*, p. 38, and 113 d *calc.*

² Noldeke's *Gesch. d. Sasaniden*, pp. 86-88; Dinawari, p. 53.

3 Of the two MSS. of this rare work known to exist, one is in the Berlin Library, while the other till lately belonged to Lord Crawford, who most generously allowed the writer to borrow it for a protracted period. In August, 1901, it was sold with his other Oriental MSS. to Mrs. Rylands of Manchester, and is now in the John Rylands Library.

⁴ Goldziher, *op. cit.*, p. 113. In a footnote he adds, "Firuz ad-Daylami (died in the Caliphate of 'Uthman), who belonged to the Prophet's time, is also to be mentioned. Cf. Ibn Qutayba (ed. Wustenfelf), p. 170."

⁵ Goldziher, *loc. cit.*, n. 2 *ad calc.* Concerning these *Banu'l-Ahrar* ("Sons of the Nobles"), he refers to the *Kitabu 'l-Aghani* xvi, p. 76; Ibn Hisham's *Life of the Prophet*, pp. 44-46; and Noldeke's *Gesch. d. Sasaniden*, p. 223.

playing a conspicuous part in the Kharijite rebellion of Abu Hamza, in consequence of which participation he was put to death by Marwan's adherents, who succeeded in getting him into their hands. A whole series of the most eminent Muhammadans was descended from Persian prisoners of war. The grandsire of Abu Ishaq, whose Biography of the Prophet is one of the principal sources for the history of early Islam, was Yasar, a Persian prisoner of war; so likewise was the father of Abu Musa b. Nusayr, who thrust himself into prominence in Andalusia; while the fathers and grandfathers of many other men distinguished in politics, learning, and literature were Persian and Turkish prisoners of war, who were affiliated [as *mawali*, or clients] to some Arab tribe, and who, by their thoroughly Arabian *nisba*, almost cast into oblivion their foreign origin.¹ But the retention of the remembrance of their foreign origin is not altogether excluded in the case of such Arab 'clients' (*mawali*), even though it be not exactly common. The Arab poet Abu Ishaq Ibrahim as-Suli (d. A.D. 857) retained in this his family name *as-Suli* the remembrance of his ancestor Sol-takin, a chief of Khurasan conquered and deprived of his throne by Yazid b. al-Muhallab. Converted to Islam, he became one of the most devoted partisans of his conqueror. On the arrow which he shot against the troops of the Caliph he is said to have written the words, 'Sol summons you to follow the Book of God and the *Sunna* of his Prophet.' From this Turk the celebrated Arabic poet was descended."

The whole of this chapter in Goldziher's masterly work is profoundly instructive, and to it we refer the reader for fuller information on this matter. Amongst the most striking illustrations which he gives of the preponderating influence of these foreign *Mawali* is a dialogue between the Umayyad Caliph 'Abdul-Malik and the famous theologian az-Zuhri, whence it appears that alike in Mecca, Yaman, Egypt, Syria, Mesopotamia, Khurasan, Kufa, and Basra foreign "clients"

¹ Al-Baladhuri (p. 247), as Goldziher remarks, gives a list of such men, conspicuous amongst whom are the four sons of Shirin.

² On the Arabic forms given to Persian proper names, see Goldziher, *op. cit.*, p. 133, n. 2 *ad calc.* Thus *Mahan* becomes *Maymun*; and *Basfaruj* 'Abu *sufra*, while in one case the name of the Persian Prophet Zoroaster is replaced by that of the Arabian Prophet Muhammad.

a *Op. cit.*, vol i, pp. 114, 115.

held the chief positions of authority in religion. And when the Caliph expressed his amazement at this state of things, the theologian replied, "So it is, O Commander of the Faithful! This is effected by the Command of God and His Religion ; who observes these attains to authority, who neglects them goes under."

The tendency of pious Muslims of the early period, as expressed in numerous traditions, was, as Goldziher also points out, to supply the strongest authority for disregarding racial prejudices in the domain of religion. Amongst these traditions are the following :—

"O man, forsooth God is one God, and the ancestor of all mankind is one, the religion is the same religion, the Arabic speech is neither father nor mother to any one of you, it is naught else but a speech. He who speaks Arabic is thereby an Arab."^x

"He of [the people of] Pars who accepts Islam is [as good as] a Qurayshite."

"Did Faith reside in the Pleiades, yet would men of this people [the Persians] reach it" ; a tradition afterwards modified as follows : "Were knowledge suspended to the ends of heaven, yet would a section of the people in Pars reach it." •

That the full-blooded Arabs, in whom racial feeling greatly outweighed the religious sense, were very far from sharing the views embodied in these and similar traditions is abundantly shown by Goldziher, who cites many facts and passages which indicate their contempt for the foreign *Mawali*, and in particular their disapproval of marriages between Arabs (especially Arab women) and non-Arabs.³ A precisely similar phenomenon is presented at the present day by the English in India, who are no more disposed to accord social equality to a

¹ Goldziher regards this tradition, cited on the authority of Ibn 'Asakir (A.D. 1106-1169), as of late fabrication, but as embodying an idea undoubtedly prevalent in earlier times.

² *Op. cit.* vol. i, pp. 117-146.

³ That this already existed in pre-Islamic times is shown by the refusal of Nu'man, King of Hira, and his courtiers to give one of their daughters in marriage even to their powerful suzerain, the King of Persia.

Christian than to a non-Christian native, but rather the contrary ; indeed, the comparison here is on the whole to the advantage of Islam, where at least the professedly pious steadily opposed this dominant racial prejudice in a way very rare amongst our missionaries—a fact which, without doubt, accounts for their slender success in most parts of Asia.

With the fall of the Umayyads and the rise of the " Persian and Khurdsdnian " dynasty of the 'Abbasids¹ there came true, as has been already sufficiently indicated, part at least of Nasr b. Sayyar's warning to his master Marwan " the Ass " :—

*Fa-firri 'an rihalihi, thumma quli
'Ala'l-Islami wa'l-'Arabi 's-salamu !*

" Flee from thine abode, and bid farewell to Islam and the Arabs I "

There now appears on the scene a definite party, the *Shu'hbiyya*, or " partisans of the Gentiles,"² who, beginning with the contention that all Muslims were equal, finished in some cases by declaring the Arabs inferior to many other races. " Already under the Caliph Abu Ja'far al-Mansur," says Goldziher (*op. cit.*, p. 148), " we are witnesses of how the Arab waits vainly for entrance before the Caliph's Gate, while men of Khurasan freely go in and out through it, and mock the rude Arab." The poet Abu Tammam († A.D. 845-46) was rebuked by the Wazir, because he had compared the Caliph to Hatim of the tribe of Tayy and other personages in whom the Arabs gloried, with the words, " Dost thou

¹ Goldziher, *op. cit.* i. p. 148. Cf. p. 247 *supra*.

• To this party Goldziher devotes two chapters of his remarkable book (vol. i, pp. 147-216 and 272). The word *shu'ub* (pi. of *sha'b*) is used for the " nations " of the Gentiles (*'Ajam*) as opposed to the " tribes " (*qabd'il*) of the Arabs, in reference to Qur'an, xlix, 13 : " O men ! verily We have created you from a male and a female, and have made you nations and tribes, that ye might recognise that the noblest of you in God's sight is he amongst you who most fears God: verily God is All-knowing and Informed."

compare the Commander of the Faithful with these barbarous Arabs?" i

Of these *Shu'kbiyya* each one vaunted particularly the claims to distinction of his own nationality, whether Syrian, Nabathsean, Egyptian, Greek, Spanish, or Persian ; but the last named were at once the most vehement and the most numerous. In Umayyad times Isma'il b. Yasar was, by order of the Caliph Hisham (A.D. 724-43), thrown into a tank of water because he had boasted his Persian descent in verses amongst which occur the following :—²

*" Princes were my ancestors, noble satraps, of high breeding, generous,
hospitable,
Comparable to Khusraw or Shdpur, and to Hurmuzdn in renown
and consideration;
Lions of the- war-hosts, when they rushed forth on the day of
battle.
They disheartened the Kings of the Turks and Greeks, they stalked
in heavy coats of mail
As ravenous lions stalk forth.
Then, if thou askest, wilt thou learn that we arc descended from
a race which excels all others."*

Such boasts on the part of the Persian *Mawali* were gall and wormwood to the Arab party, who would fain have enjoyed a monopoly of this sort of self-glorification ; and, when they could do no more, they replied by such verses as these :—³

*" God so ordained it that I knew you ere Fortune smiled upon you,
when ye still sat in the Haymarket,
But not a year had elapsed ere I saw you strutting about in silk
and brocade and samite.
Then your women sat in the sun and moaned under the water-
wheels in harmony with the turtle-doves:
Now they trail skirts of flowered silk from the looms of 'Iraq, and
all kinds of silk stuffs from Dakn and Tarun."*

¹ Goldziher, *op. cit.* p. 148. ² Von Kremer, *Streifzuge*, p. 30
³ *Strcifziige*, pp. 31-32 and 69-70.

They have already forgotten how but a little while since they
broke Haldni-stones in the quarries, and how they carried
bundles of moss in the skirts of their frocks.

But when they had grown rich, then spoke they with impudent
falsehood, 'We are the noble ones, the sons of the Dihqans.'
* * * *

If one questions the meanest and commonest of them, he answers
full of arrogance, 'I am a son of (Bahrdm) Chubin,'

Adding thereto, 'Khusraw endowed me with goods and made me
his inheritor: who dares to set himself up against me!'

The Persian aristocracy of this period, as we learn from al-Mas'udi,¹ preserved their genealogies with the same care as did the Arabs, so that these boasts which so offended the Arabs may in many cases have been well founded. Even in the genealogies of the Arabs they were better instructed than the Arabs themselves, as we see in the anecdote cited by Goldziher (*op. cit.*, p. 190), when a Qurayshite is obliged to appeal to a Persian for information about his own ancestors. The Persians on their side were quick to seize and turn into ridicule the weak points of the Arabs, and even, as Goldziher remarks,² to belittle those virtues (such as liberality) whereon they especially prided themselves; so that, for example, one of al-Ma'mun's three Persian librarians named Sahl b. Harun, a fanatical Shu'ubi, was pleased to write a number of treatises extolling avarice.³ The blind Persian panegyrist of the Caliph al-Mahdi, Bashshar b. Burd,⁴ a well-known freethinker, who was ultimately put to death for his heterodoxy in A.D. 783-84, ventured so far as to say:—

"The Earth is dark and the Fire resplendent, and the Fire has been
adored since it became Fire."

¹ *Muruju 'dh. Dhahab* (ed. B. de Meynard), ii, 241, cited by Goldziher, *op. cit.*, p. 161. ² Loc. cit

³ A work of the same kind, the *Kitabu'l-Bukhald*, or "Book of Misers," composed by the celebrated al-Jahidh (another *shu'ubi*: cf Goldziher, *op. cit.* p. 157), has been recently published at Leyden by Dr. Van Vloten.

⁴ See de Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikan, vol. i, pp. 254-257; Brockelmann's *Gesch. d. Arab. Lit.*, vol. i, pp. 73, 74; and von Kremer's *Strcifzuge*, pp. 34 et seqq.

For our knowledge of the Shu'ubi controversy and the literature which it evoked, of which echoes only are preserved in the works of al-Jahidh (†A.D. 869) and Ibn 'Abd Rabbihi († A.D. 940), we are chiefly indebted to Goldziher's excellent *Muhammedanische Studien*, already so freely cited in this chapter. Amongst the defenders of the Persian pretensions he enumerates Ishaq b. Hassan al-Khurrami (†A.D. 815-16), a native of Sughd, who, in one of his verses, boasts¹ that his father is Sasdn, and Kisra, son of Hurmuz, and the Khaqan his cousins; Abu 'Uthman Sa'id b. Humayd b. Bakhtagan († A.D. 854-5), who composed books on the superiority of the Persians over the Arabs;² Abu Sa'id ar-Rustami (tenth century of our era), "in whom," says Goldziher, "the national cry of the Persians against the Arabs sounds its last notes;" and that great scientist, Abu Rayhan al-Biruni († A.D. 1048). Amongst the most notable of their opponents, the champions of Arab superiority, are enumerated the historians Ibn Qutayba († A.D. 883 or 889) and al-Baladhuri († A.D. 892), 3 both of whom were of Persian origin,⁴ although they wrote exclusively in Arabic. To them may be added a Persian-writing Persian of a later epoch, Nasir-i-Khusraw, the poet, traveller, and Isma'ili propagandist († circ. A.D. 1074), who in his *Diwan* (lith. ed. of Tabriz, A.H. 1280, p. 150), says :—

Bi-din kard fakhr dn-ki id ruz-i-hashr
Bidu muftakhir shud 'Arab bar 'Ajam
Khasis-ast u bi qadr bi-din, agar
Faridun-sh khal-ast, u Famshid 'am.

"'Twas in Religion that he gloried by whom till the Day of Judgement

The Arabs excel the Persians in glory.

He who lacks religion is ignoble and mean,

Though Fendun be his maternal, and Jamshid his paternal uncle."

¹ Goldziher, *op. cit.*, p. 163.

²

Fihrist, p. 123

³ Goldziher, *op. cit.*, p. 166.

⁴ Brockelmann. *Gesch. d. Arab. Lit.*, vol. i, pp. 120 and 141.

The *Shu'bbiyya* controversy extended itself, as Goldziher also shows, to the regions of Genealogy and Philology, wherein lay the special pride of the Arabs, who valued nothing more highly than nobility of descent and purity of speech. Even into these fields the "Iranophiles" carried their attacks, using their knowledge in the first to rake up all the scandals connected with the different Arab tribes and the pedigrees of their favourite heroes and warriors—scandals which were embodied in a whole series of incriminating poems called *Mathalib*—and in the second to vindicate the superiority of other languages, notably the Persian and the Greek, over Arabic. To one of the most accomplished of these "Iranophile" scholars, Abu 'Ubayda Ma'mar b. al-Muthanna († circ. A.D. 824), Goldziher devotes a long notice.¹

This most learned philologist, notorious as a *Shu'ubi*, was always eager to point out how much, even of what they most prized, and esteemed most national and original, the Arabs really owed to other nations; how much, for example, their poetry and rhetoric owed to Persian models, how many of their stories were drawn from Persian sources, and the like. The superior attractions of the Persian legends had, indeed, as we learn from Ibn Hisham (ed. Wustenfeld, pp. 235-6), already caused the greatest vexation to the Prophet, who found his audiences melt away when an-Nadr b. al-HaYith al-'Abdari appeared on the scene to tell them tales of Rustam and Isfandiyar and the ancient kings of Persia.

As regards Philology proper, Goldziher specially mentions as champions of the Arab cause the great commentator az-Zamakhshari (also a Persian : t A.D. 1143-4), who in his preface thanks God for his learning in, and enthusiasm for, the Arabic language, and his exemption from *Shu'ubi* tendencies; Ibn Durayd († A.D. 933); and Abu'l-Husayn b. Faris (early eleventh century). Amongst their most notable opponents he reckons Hamza of Isfahan, who "was enthusiastic for the

¹ Goldziher, *op. cit.*, pp. 195-206,

Persians,"¹ and who shows his enthusiasm, amongst other ways, by finding Persian etymologies (rarely satisfactory) for names generally regarded as purely Arabic. Thus he explained the name of the town of Basra as " *Bas rah* " (" Far Road," or " Many Roads "); an etymology which reminds us of the statement in that late and greatly overestimated Persian work the *Dabistan* (see pp. 54-55 *supra*), that the original name of Mecca was " *Mah-gah* " which in Persian signifies " the Place of the Moon." Such childish etymologies are, unfortunately, only too popular with Persian writers down to the present day.²

The way in which the different sciences, especially History, arose amongst the Muslims in connection with the study of the Qur'an, and grouped themselves, as it were, round a theological kernel, is admirably sketched by that great Arabist, Professor de Goeje, in the article on *Tabari and Early Arab Historians* which he contributed to vol. xxiii (1888) of the *Encyclopedia Britannica*. The philological sciences naturally come first. With the influx of foreign converts to Islam an urgent need arose for grammars and dictionaries of the Arabic language in which the Word of God had been revealed. To elucidate the meanings of rare and obscure words occurring therein, it was necessary to collect as many as possible of the old poems, which constituted the inexhaustible treasury of the Arabic tongue. To understand these poems a knowledge of the *Ansab*, or genealogies of the Arabs, and of their Battles or " Days " [*Ayyam*] and their history (*Akhbar*) generally was requisite. To supplement the rules laid down in the Qur'dn for the conduct of life, it was

¹ Al-Biruni's *Chronology*, ed. Sachau, p. 52, cited by Goldziher, *op. cit.*, i, 209. The expression is " *ta'assaba li'l-Furs*."

² An English resident in Persia named Glover was metamorphosed into *Gul-dvar* ("Bringer of Roses"); less fortunate was a compatriot named Reid, a missionary, whose name ultimately necessitated a retreat from this field of activity.

necessary to find out, by questioning his "Companions" (*Ash&b*) or those who had associated with them and "followed" them (*Tawabi*, *tubba* or *tabi'unn*), what the Prophet had said and how he had acted under different circumstances ; whence arose the science of Tradition (*Hadith*). To test the validity of these traditions it was necessary to know not merely the content (*matn*) of each, but also its *isnad* i.e., the chain of persons through whom it had been handed down ere it was finally reduced to writing ; and to test this *isnad* a knowledge of the dates, characters, and circumstances of these persons was requisite, which again led in another way to the study of Biography and Chronology. Nor did the history of the Arabs alone suffice; it was necessary to know something of the history of their neighbours, especially the Persians, Greeks, Himyarites, Aethiopians, &c, in order to grasp the significance of many allusions in the Qur'an and in the old poems. A knowledge of Geography was essential for the same purpose, and also for more practical reasons connected with the rapid expansion of the Muhammadan Empire.

During the first century after the flight hardly any books were written ; all this knowledge continued to be handed down orally, and the Qur'an remained almost the only prose work (and it is chiefly written in rhymed prose) in Arabic. Such as desired to study Arabic philology, poetry, and legend had to go into the Desert amongst the Bedouin tribes to pursue their researches; such as sought a knowledge of Tradition and the religious sciences had to seek it at Madina. Knowledge could only be obtained by travelling, and this travelling " in search of knowledge " (*Fl talabi'l-ilm*), rendered necessary at first by the circumstances of the case, gradually became a fashion, and finally almost a craze, favoured and justified by such traditions as: "Whosoever goeth forth to seek for learning is in the Way of God until he returns home; the Angels blithely spread their wings over him, and

all creatures pray for him, even the fish in the water."¹ Makhul († A.D. 730), originally a slave in Egypt, would not on receiving his freedom leave that country "till he had gathered together all the learning which was to be found there ; " and, having accomplished this, he journeyed through Hijaz, 'Iraq, and Syria seeking for an authentic tradition as to the division of spoils taken in battle, which he at last obtained from an old man named Ziyad b. Jariya at-Tamimi, who had it on the authority of Habib b. Maslama al-Fihri.² Here we have an actual application of the principle enunciated in the following words ascribed to Abu'd-Darda: " If the explanation of a passage in the Book of God presented difficulties to me, and if I heard of a man in Birku'l-Jumad " (a most inaccessible spot in South Arabia, proverbially spoken of as equivalent to the ends of the earth) "who would explain it to me, I would not grudge the journey thither." ³

The two oldest Arabic prose works of importance (except the Qur'an) which have come down to us are Ibn Ishaq's († A.D. 767) *Biography of the Prophet* in the recension of Ibn Hishdm († A.D. 834),⁴ and a work on genealogy by Ibnu'l-Kalbi († A.D. 763-4), of which manuscripts exist in the libraries of the British Museum and the Escorial.⁵ Manuscript notes, however, were constantly made at an earlier date, during the first century of the Flight, by such men as Abu Hurayra, 'Abdu'llah b. 'Amr b. al-'Asi, az-Zuhri⁶ († A.D. 742) and Hasan of Basra,⁷ who in some cases ordered that these notes should be burned at their death, because they were mere aids to memory, "and what they knew these scholars had

¹ Goldziher, *op cit.*, vol. ii, p. 177 ; and on these journeys *fi talabi'l-ilm* generally, pp. 32-33 and 175 *et seqq.*

² Idem, p. 33.

³ Idem, pp. 176-177.

⁴ Edited by Wustenfeld (1858-60), and translated into German by Weil (1864).

⁵ These and the following particulars are chiefly drawn from de Goeje's excellent article in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica* to which I have already referred.

⁶ Goldziher, *op. cit.*, pp. 195-196.

⁷ De Goeje, *loc. cit*

handed on by word of mouth." Indeed, as Goldziher has shown,¹ there existed till well into the second century after the Flight a strong feeling against the writing down of traditions, so that 'Abdu'r-Rahman b. Harmala al-Aslami († A.D. 762) had to obtain a special permission from his teacher Sa'id b. al-Musayyib to reduce his teachings to writing, on the pretext that his memory was not strong enough to retain them without such aids. The grounds on which this objection rested were chiefly two : a fear lest the books wherein these holy sayings of the Prophet were recorded might not be treated with enough respect; and a fear lest, on the other hand, they might, as had happened in other religions, become invested, to the prejudice of the Book of God, with an undue authority. Against this objection stood the truer view embodied in such sayings as : " Knowledge not put on paper is lost; " " What is committed to memory passes away, but what is written remains ; " " The best teacher of traditions is the written record;" and the Imam Ahmad b. Hanbal's reputed aphorisms, " Publish traditions only after written texts," and " the book is the most faithful recorder."² Naturally such objections did not exist in the case of profane literature, and, in the short section which he devotes to the prose-literature of the Umayyad period, Carl Brockelmann³ mentions the following early works and writers : the Southern Arabians Wahb b. Munabbih (of Persian origin⁴) and 'Abid b. Shariya, both of San'a, of whom the former died at an advanced age in A.D. 728, and the latter in the reign of 'Abdu'l-Malik (A.D. 685-705); Abu Mikhnaḥ Lut b. Yahya al-Azdi, celebrated for his historical romances (d. circ. A.D. 750); the already-mentioned az-Zuhri (d. A.D. 742); and his pupil Muhammad b. 'Abdu'r-Rahman al-'Amiri († A.D. 737), author of an older *Muwatta'* than the well-

¹ *Op. cit.* ii, pp. 196, *et seqq.*

² *Ibid.*, p. 199.

³ *Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, i, pp. 64-67.

⁴ See Wustenfeld's *Geschichtschreiber der Araber*, p. 4, No. 16.

THE GOLDEN AGE OF ISLAM

known law-book of the same name compiled by the Imam Malik b. Anas (d. 795). Amongst the oldest Arabic pious works of which copies actually exist are the *KitdbiSz-Zuhd* (on Asceticism) of Asad b. Musa b. Ibrahim († A.D. 749) ; the *Kitdbu'l-Fawdmi'* (on Oneiromancy) of Muhammad b. Shirin (see p. 263, n. 1 *supra*); and the *Kitabu'I-Ishdra bi-'ilmi'l-ibara* of Muhammad b. 'All b. 'Umar as-Salimi. Last, but not least, is the Umayyad prince Khalid b. Yazid († A.D. 704), who studied Alchemy with a monk named Marianus, composed three treatises on Occult Science, and had for his pupil the celebrated occultist Jabir b. Hayyan (circ. A.D. 776).

Brockelmann in his admirable *Geschichte der Arabischen Litteratur* (Weimar, 1897-) divides the earlier portion or his subject into the following periods :—

I. The purely Arabian literature (almost entirely consisting of poems composed by pagan, and a few Jewish and Christian, poets), from the earliest times till the time of the Prophet.

II. The literature (also purely Arabian, and, with the exception of the Qur'an, poetical) of the Prophet and his time.

III. The literature (also purely Arabian) of the Umayyad period (A.D. 661-750).

IV. The classical period (A.D. 750-1000) of Muhammadan literature, composed in the Arabic language, but no longer exclusively, or even mainly, by Arabs.

V. The post-classical period (A.D. 1000-1258) of the same, down to the Mongol invasion, sack of Baghdad, and extinction of the 'Abbasid dynasty.

Of these periods the first three but slightly concern us, and all that is needful for our purpose has been already said. The periods subsequent to the Mongol invasion lie also beyond the scope of this work, since even before this momentous event the national life of Persia had been definitely detached from that of Arabia and Western Asia, and the Persian language had become the main vehicle of Persian thought.

The fourth and fifth periods, on the other hand, concern us closely; for during the first (A.D. 750-1000) the Persian tongue had scarcely re-emerged, as a literary language, from the eclipse which it suffered at the Arab Conquest; and during the second, although it was once more widely and successfully cultivated for all literary purposes, there was in Persia a large co-existent Arabic literature produced by Persians. The Arabic literature produced in Persia after the Mongol Invasion was far more restricted in scope, and was mainly confined to the domains of Theology, Philosophy, and Jurisprudence.

From the Persian point of view, then, whence we here regard the matter, it is the Arabic literature of 'Abbasid times with which our concern chiefly lies, and, in the present chapter, those writers who belong to what we have defined as "the Golden Age" (A.D. 749-847). A list of the most important of these, arranged in order of the dates of their decease, here follows.

(1) *Ibnu'l-Muqaffa'* (†A.D. 757), the converted Magian, who, notwithstanding the fact that he was born a Persian and a Zoroastrian, is counted by Ibn Muqla (†A.D. 939) and Ibn Khaldun the Moor (†A.D. 1405-6) amongst the past-masters of the Arabic tongue. He was also, as has been already remarked, an accomplished Pahlawi scholar, and translated from this language many works into Arabic. Of these, his Arabic version of *Kalila and Dimna*, still a classic in all Arabic-speaking countries, alone survives in its entirety, his much more important translation of the Pahlawi "Book of Kings" (*Khudhay-nama*) being only known to us by citations in later histories.

(2) *Ibn 'Uqba* (†A.D. 758), the oldest biographer of the Prophet, whose work, as it would seem, is unfortunately entirely lost.

(3) *Muhammad b. as-Sd'ib al-Kalbi* (†A.D. 763), who, together with his son Hisham b. al-Kalbi (†A.D. 820), was well versed in the history of the ancient Arabs.

(4) *'Isa b. 'Umar ath-Thaqafi* (+ A.D. 766), one of the founders of Arabic grammar, the teacher of both Khalil b. Ahmad (the alleged inventor of the Science of Prosody in Arabic) and the great Sibawayhi, the Persian.

(5) *Ibn Ishaq* (†A.D. 767), the biographer of the Prophet, whose work (though possibly, as de Goeje thinks, still extant in its original form in the Kyuprulu Library at Constantinople) is known to us only in the recension of Ibn Hisham.

(6) *Abu Hani'a an-Nu'man* (†A.D. 767), one of the four orthodox "Imdms" of the Sunnis, the founder of the Hanafi school, of Persian origin, and in strong sympathy with the descendants of 'AIL

(7) *Hammad b. Sabiir (Shapiir) ar-Rawiya* (†A.D. 772-775), of Persian (Daylamite) origin, the collector and editor of the seven ancient Arabic poems known as the *Mu'allaqat*.

(8) *Fabir b. Hayyan*, the occultist (circ. A.D. 776; see p. 274 *supra*)

(9) *Muhammad b. 'Abdu'llah al-Azdi* (circ. A.D. 777), who wrote a history of the Conquest of Syria.

(10) *Abd Dulama* (†A.D. yyy), a negro, "more jester and Court-fool than poet," who enjoyed the favour of the Caliphs al-Mansur and al-Mahdi.

(11) *Bashshdab. Burd* (†A.D. 783), the blind Persian sceptic and poet, to whom reference has already been made.

(12) *Al-Mufaddal ad-Dabbi* (†A.D. 786), tutor to the Caliph al-Mahdi during his youth, who made a collection of old Arabic poems not less important, though less celebrated, than the *Mu'allaqat*.

(13) *As-Sayyidu'l-Himyari* ("the Himyarite Sayyid," t A.D. 789), a zealous Shi'ite, "whose poems" (mostly in praise of the Prophet and his family) "are distinguished," says Brockelmann (p. 83), "like those of Abu'l-'Atahiya and Bashshar, by simplicity of language."

(14) *Khalil b. Ahmad* (†A.D. 791), the grammarian and prosodist mentioned under (4) *supra*.

(15) *Sibawayhi* (†A.D. 793), the Persian grammarian, also mentioned under (4) *supra*.

(16) *Abu Yusuf Ya'qub al-Ansdri* (†A.D. 795), jurisconsult and pupil of Abu Hanifa.

(17) *Malik b. Anas* (+ A.D. 795), the second of the four orthodox "Imams," the Founder of the Malikite school.

(18) *Mafwan b. Abi Hafsa* (†A.D. 797), poet, a Jew of Khurasan.

(19) *Muslim b. al-Walid* (†A.D. 803), court-poet of Harunu'r-Rashid and *prolige* of the Barmecides and Fadl b. Sahl.

(20) *Muhammad b. al-Hasan ash-Shaybani* (†A.D. 804), the Hanafi jurisconsult, and for a while Qadi of Raqqa in the reign of Harunu'r-Rashid.

(21) *'AU b. Hamza al-Kisd'i* (†A.D. 805), the grammarian, a Persian by birth, entrusted by Harunu'r-Rashid with the education of his two sons al-Amin and al-Ma'mun.

(22) *Al-'Abbas b. al-Ahnaḡ* (†A.D. 806), another half-Persian poet of the Court of Harunu'r-Rashid, chiefly celebrated for his love-poems.

(23) *Abu Nuwds* (†A.D. 806-813), also half Persian by birth, one of the most brilliant and shameless poets of Harunu'r-Rashid's Court. His discreditable adventures, ready resource, and unfailing wit are familiar to all readers of the Arabian Nights.

(24) *Ibn Zabala* (†A.D. 814), a pupil of Malik b. Anas, who wrote a History of Madina.

(25) *Yahyd b. Bitriq* (who flourished about A.D. 815), one of the translators of Aristotle and other Greek philosophers into Arabic.

(26) *Hisham b. al-Kalbi* (†A.D. 819-820), the historian; see (3) *supra*,

(27) *Ash-Shafi'i* (†A.D. 820), the third of the four orthodox "Imams" of the Sunnis, founder of the Shan'ite school.

(28) *Qutrub* Cf A.D. 821), grammarian and philologist, pupil of Sibawayhi and ath-Thaqafi.

(29) *Al-Farrd* (†A.D. 822), grammarian, pupil of al-Kisa'i, and, like him, of Persian origin.

(30) *Al-Waqidi* (†A.D. 823), the great historian of the Muslim conquests, who was liberally patronised by Yahya the Barmecide, and, on his death, left behind him 600 great boxes of books and manuscript notes, each one of which required two men to carry it.

(31) *Abu 'Ubayda Ma'mar b. al-Muthanna* (†A.D. 825), a philologist of strong *Shu'ubi* tendencies and of Jewish-Persian origin, the rival of al-Asma'i and the bitter satirist of the Arab tribes. See p. 269 *supra*.

(32) *Abul-'Atdhiya* (†A.D. 828), one of the most notable poets of this epoch, who, alike in his earnestness, his religious pessimism, and his extreme simplicity of speech, stands in the sharpest contrast to his contemporary the dissolute, immoral, and time-serving Abu Nuwas.

(33) *Al-'Akawwak* (†A.D. 828), a poet and panegyrist of Persian extraction.

(34) *Ibn Qutayba* (†A.D. 828), a historian of the first rank, also a Persian. Of the twelve works composed by him which Brockelmann enumerates (i, pp. 120-123) the best known are his *Kitdbu'l-Ma'drif* fed. Wuistenfeld, 1850), his *Adabu'UKdhib*, or Secretary's Manual (Cairo, A.H. 1300), and his *'Uyunu'l-Akhbar*, now being published by Brockelmann at Berlin.

(35) *Al-Asma'i* (†A.D. 831), the grammarian and philologist, a prominent member of that circle of learned men wherewith Harunu'r-Rashid surrounded himself.

(36) *Ibn Hisham* (†A.D. 834), the editor of Ibn Ishaq's *Biography of the Prophet*; see (5) *supra*.

(37) *Al-Akhfash* "the intermediate" (*al-Awsat*), or "the second" († A.D. 835, or earlier), grammarian and philologist, a pupil of Sibawayhi, and probably, like his master, of Persian extraction.

(38) *Qusta b. Luqa*, a Christian of Ba'labakk (Baalbek), a notable translator and compiler of medical, astronomical, and mathematical works, flourished about this time. He was still famous in Persia as an authority on these subjects in the middle of the eleventh century of our era, when Nasir-i-Khusraw wrote :—

*Hat kasi chizi hatni-guyad zi tira ra'y-i-khwish,
Ta guman dyad-t k'u Qustay bin Luqd-sti.*

" Every one, in his benighted ignorance, propounds some theory,
That thou may'st suppose him to be a Qusta b. Luqa."

(39) *Al-Mada'ini* (†A.D. 840-845), a prolific writer on history, of whose works, unfortunately, only the titles (of which HI are enumerated in the *Fihrist*) are preserved to us.

(40) *Al-Kindi* (†A.D. 841), the eminent Arabian philosopher and physician.

(41) *Ibnu'l-A'rdabi* (†A.D. 844), a well-known grammarian of Indian origin, the step-son and pupil of al-Mufaddal (see No. 12 *supra*).

(42) *Abu Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Sallam al-Jumahi* (†A.D. 845), the author of a Biography of Poets (*Tabaqdtu'sh-Shu'ard*), which is unfortunately lost, and is only known to us by citations.

(43) *Ibn Sa'd* (†A.D. 845), secretary to the celebrated *al-Waqidi* (see No. 30 *supra*), author of the great *Kitdbu't-Tabaqdti'l-Kabir*, which is to be published in the near future at Leyden.

(44) *Abu Tammam* (†A.D. 846), panegyrist of the Caliph al-Mu'tasim and later of 'Abdu'llah b. Tahir, the governor of Khurasan, but better known as the author of the great Anthology of ancient Arabic poetry called the *Hamasa*, "wherein," says his commentator at-Tabrizi, "he showed himself a better poet than in his own verses."

(45) *Dikul-Finn* (†A.D. 849), the Syrian *Shu'ubi* and Shi'ite poet.

Other names might be added, but for our present purpose these are sufficient, since they serve to indicate how large a proportion (thirteen out of forty-four) of the most celebrated contributors to "classical" Arabic literature were of Persian extraction. For fuller particulars of their works and characteristics the reader must refer to von Kremer, Brockelmann, and other writers on the *Litteraturgeschichte* and *Culturgeschichte* of the Arabs.

CHAPTER VIII

THE DEVELOPMENTS OF RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY IN THE GOLDEN AGE OF ISLAM.

Two of the most important early sects of Islam, the republican Kharijites and the legitimist Shi'ites, have been already discussed at some length ; while the extremists (*Ghulat*) of the latter body, with their wild doctrines of Incarnation (*Hulul*), " Return " (*Rij'at*) and Metempsychosis (*Tanasukh*), will form the subject of the following chapter (pp. 308 *et seqq.*). These sects may be regarded, primarily at least, as to a large extent political in their character, and as representing respectively the democratic Arabian and the monarchic Persian tendencies as applied to matters of religion. To them must be added a third sect of mainly political character, the *Murjiya*, and a fourth of more purely theological or speculative nature, the *Zadariyya* or *Mu'tazila*. These four sects are regarded by von Kremer,¹ who follows Ibn Hazm,² as the four primary divisions (*Hauptsekten*) of the Muhammadans;³ and, according

¹ *Gesch. d. Herrschenden Ideen d. Islams*, pp. 15 *et seqq.*

• Ibid., pp. 10 and 124. Ibn Hazm, a Spanish Arab of Cordova, died about A.D. 1054, and is the author of the oldest extant work on the Sects of Islam. MSS. of this work (which has never been printed) are very rare. See Flügel's *Vienna Catalogue*, vol. ii, pp. 197-199, and, for Ibn Hazm's biography, de Slane's transl. of *Ibn Khallikan*, vol. ii, pp. 267-272.

³ Shahrastani, who also reckons four, substitutes the *sifatīyya* for the *Murīyya*, while al-Ijī (A.D. 1355) enumerates seven principal heterodox sects. See Dr. H. Steiner's *Mu'taziliten*, pp. 2-3.

to his view,¹ the two last arose at the Umayyad capital, Damascus, partly under Christian influences, during the first half of the eighth century of our era (A.D. 718-747), while the two first, as we have already seen, were already in existence in the latter part of the seventh century.

The *Murjiya* (so called from the root *arja'a*, "he postponed," because they postpone or defer judgment against sinful Muslims till the Day of Resurrection,² and refuse to assert

The *Murjiya*.

that any true believer, no matter what sins he may have committed, is certainly damned) were essentially that body of Muslims who, unlike the Shi'ites and Kharijites, acquiesced in the Umayyad rule. In doctrine they otherwise agreed in the main with the orthodox party, though, as von Kremer thinks, they greatly softened and mitigated its more terrible features, holding "that no believing Muslim would remain eternally in hell,"³ and, in general, setting faith above works. Their views were so evidently adapted to the environment of the Umayyad Court, with which no sincere Shi'ite or Kharijite could have established any *modus Vivendi*, though Christians and other non-Muslims stood in high favour there, and held important offices,⁴ that it is hard to regard them otherwise than as time-servers of the Vicar of Bray type. With the fall of that ungodly dynasty their *raison d'etre* ended, and they ceased to exist as an independent party, though from their ranks arose the celebrated Abu Hanifa, the founder of one of the four orthodox schools of the Sunnis which endure to the present day.⁵

"It is much to be regretted," says von Kremer,⁶ "that we have so little accurate information about this sect, but they shared the fate of that whole epoch. The Arabic historical sources of the

¹ *Culturgesch. Streifzüge*, pp. 1-9.

² See Lane's *Arabic-English Lexicon*, Bk. i, p. 1033.

³ *Gesch. d. Herrsch. Idcen*, p. 25.

⁴ *Streifzüge* p. 2. The Court-poet al-Akhtal was a Christian,

⁵ *Ibid.*, p. 6, and *cf. Herrsch. Ideen*, p. 26. ⁶ *Ibid.*, p. 3.

Umayyad period perished altogether, and the oldest writings preserved to us arose in 'Abbasid times. We are therefore driven back for information as to the Murjiya to the scattered notices which we find in later Arabic writers."

Of much greater interest and importance was the sect of the *Zadariyya* ("Partisans of Free Will") or *Mu'taxila* ("Seceders,") whose leading idea, to quote Dr. The Mu'tazila.

Steiner,¹ "is best characterised as the enduring protest of sound human understanding against the tyrannical demands which the orthodox teaching imposed upon it." They called themselves *Ahlul-'Adl wa't-Tawhid*, or "Partisans of the Divine Justice and Divine Unity"; of the Divine Justice, because the orthodox doctrine of Predestination, which represented God as punishing man for sins forced upon him, as it were, by a Fate which he had no power to resist, made God in effect a pitiless Tyrant; of the Divine Unity, because, said they, the orthodox party, who make the Qur'an coeternal and coexistent with God, and who regard the Divine Attributes as separate or separable from the Divine Essence, are really Polytheists or *Mushrikun* (associaters of other gods with the One God). The account generally given of their origin and name is that Wasil b. 'Ata al-Ghazzal, a Persian disciple of the celebrated theologian Hasan of

Hasan of Basra
and Wasilb.'Ata.

Basra, differed from his master as to the question whether a believer, after he had committed a grievous sin, still deserved to be called by that appellation. Wasil held that such an one could neither be called a believer nor an unbeliever, but must be regarded as occupying a middle position between the two, and withdrew to a different part of the mosque to expound this view to those of his fellow-students who followed him; whereupon Hasan of Basra observed to those who stood round him, "*I'tazala i'an-nd*" ("He hath seceded from us"), in consequence of which saying Wasil's party were called by their opponents "*al-Mu'tazila*" ("the

¹ *Mu'taziliten*, p. 4.

Separatists" or "Seceders.")¹ This, the generally received account of the origin of the sect, would make 'Iraq—"cette antique Babylonie, ou la race semitique et la race perse se rencontraient et se melangeaient, et qui devint bientôt le centre de la science, puis, peu de temps apres, sous les 'Abbasides, le siege du gouvernement"—a—its birthplace and cradle; but von Kremer,³ as we have seen, thinks that their doctrines were developed at Damascus under the influence of Byzantine theologians, notably of John of Damascus and his disciple Theodore Abucara. The other and more definite name—2*adariyya* 4—by which they were known referred to their doctrine of man's free-will; and the spurious tradition "*al-2adariyyatu Majusu hadhihi l-Ummati*" "the Partisans of Free-will are the Magians of this Church" (because, as Steiner observes, to explain the existence of Evil they also set up a second Principle, the Will of Man, against the Will of God), was freely applied to them by their adversaries. Even in much later times, at the beginning of the thirteenth century of our era, we find the Persian Sufi poet Mahmud Shabistari referring to this tradition in that well-known manual for mystagogues the *Guhhan-i-Raz* 5 as follows :—

The *Qadariyya*
compared to
Magians.

*Hat an kas-ra ki madh-hab ghayr-i-Fabr-ast,
Nabi farmud ku manind-i- gabr-ast*

Every man whose faith is other than predestinarian
Is, according to the Prophet, even as a guebren.

Von Kremer, as already noticed, considers that the Doctrine of Free-will was already taught in Damascus at the end of the seventh century of our era by Ma'bad al-Juhani (died in A.D. 699), who had imbibed the doctrine from a Persian named Sinbuya, and who was put to death by the Umayyad

¹ See Steiner's *Mu'taziliten*, pp. 24-26, and Dozy's *Hist de l'Islamisme*, p. 204. ² Dozy, *op. cit.* p. 201. ³ *Streifzuge*, pp. 7-9.

⁴ On the quite opposite senses in which the word *qadar* is used, see Steiner, *op. cit.* pp. 26-28. ⁵ Ed. Whinfield, 1. 538, pp. 32 and 54.

Caliph 'Abdu'l-Malik, or, according to other narratives, by Hajjaj b. Yusuf. 'Awfi, the Persian thirteenth-century writer, in the account of the Umayyad Caliphs contained in bk. v of his immense collection of stories, the *Fawami'u'l-Hikayat* (which, unfortunately, exists only in rare manuscripts), says that Ghaylan the Qadari was put to death in Damascus by Hisham b. 'Abdu'l-Malik (A.D. 724-743) for teaching the doctrine of Free-will; and even describes how he was confuted by the Caliph in the presence of the doctors of Syria. Yazid II (A.D. 720-724), on the other hand, is said to have himself embraced the views of the Qadariyya, and, if 'Awfi may be believed, he also showed a marked partiality for the House of 'Ali. Shi'ite and Qadari tenets, indeed, often went together, and the Shi'ite doctrine current in Persia at the present day is in many respects Mu'tazilite, while Hasan al-Ash'arf, the great opponent of the Mu'tazilites, is by the Shi'ites held in horror. Muhammad Darabi,¹ the author of an Apology for the poet Hafiah,³ mentions as one of the three grounds whereon objection was commonly made to his verses that some of them appeared to indicate an inclination to the doctrines of al-Ash'ari, "which," he adds, "the doctors of the Imamiyya" (or Shakes of the Sect of the Twelve) "regard as false;" and he cites as an example of these Calvinistic leanings the verse :—

*Dar kuy-i-nik-nami mara guzar na-dadand :
Gar tu na-mi pasandi, taghyir kun qada-ra !*

" They suffered us not to enter the Street of Good Repute:
If thou likest it not, then change Destiny !"

It was, however, under the earlier 'Abbasid Caliphs, notably in the reign of the Caliph al-Ma'mun (A.D. 813-833) and his

¹ P. 5 of an excellent little pamphlet entitled *Latifa-i-Ghaybiyya*, lithographed in Tihiran in A.H. 1304 (A.D. 1887), to which my attention was directed by my friend Mr. Sidney Churchill, one of the finest Persian scholars I have ever met.

* *Diwan of Hafidh*, ed. Rosenzweig-Schwannau, vol. i, p. 16.

son al-Wathiq (A.D. 842-847), that the Mu'tazilite school was most powerful. It had taken possession of these Caliphs and their Courts, had enriched its stores of argument and methods of dialectic by the study of Greek Philosophy, and, supported thus by its internal strength and the external favour of the governing classes, bade fair altogether to extinguish the orthodox party, towards whom, in spite of its generally liberal and tolerant attitude, it showed itself irreconcilably hostile. The orthodox doctrine that the Qur'an was uncreate they held in particular detestation. In the year A.H. 211 (A.D. 826: Tabari iii, p. 1099) al-Ma'mun, having nearly provoked a civil war by his Shi'ite proclivities, and especially by his nomination of the Eighth Imam of the Shi'ites, 'All ar-Rida, as his successor to the throne (a difficulty whence, with singular inconsistency, he extricated himself by secretly poisoning the Imam and instigating the assassination of the too zealous minister, Fadl b. Sahl, who had counselled this step), proclaimed the doctrine that the Qur'an was created, not uncreate, as an indisputable truth; and seven years later, in the last year of his Caliphate, he compelled seven eminent men of learning (amongst whom was Ibn Sa'd, the secretary of the great historian al-Waqidf) to declare their adhesion to this doctrine, after which he wrote a long letter to Ishaq b. Ibrahim bidding him question such theologians as he suspected of holding the prohibited belief, and punish such as refused to declare the Qur'an to be created. Some two dozen eminent and highly esteemed Muslims, the most notable of whom was Ahmad b. Hanbal, the founder of one of the four orthodox schools of the Sunnites, were haled before this tribunal, and, by threats and imprisonment, most of them were induced to subscribe to the Caliph's declaration that the Qur'an was created, save Ahmad b. Hanbal, who stood firm, and, but for the sudden death of al-Ma'mun, which happened shortly afterwards, would have been in grave peril of his life.¹ Al-

¹ See *Tabari*, iii, pp. 1112-1131, where this transaction is very fully reported.

Wathiq followed his father's example, and thereby provoked in the year A.H. 231 (A.D. 845-6) a dangerous conspiracy headed by Ahmad b. Nasr al-Khuzd'i, which was, however, revealed by the indiscretion of several of the conspirators who had been indulging to an unwise extent in *nabldh*, or date-wine.¹ Notwithstanding this, in the exchange of prisoners effected in the same year² al-Wathiq caused each released Muslim captive to be questioned as to his belief on this burning question, and such as declared their belief that the Qur'an was uncreate he refused to receive (deeming them, as it would seem, outside the pale of Islam), but sent them back to their captivity. According to another account also given by Tabari,³ the released captives were likewise called upon to deny that God on the Last Day would be visible to men's eyes, this doctrine, like that of the uncreate Qur'an, being held by the orthodox, who in all things followed the very letter of God's Word, and utterly refused to exercise that process of *ta'wil*) or Allegorical Interpretation, affected by their antagonists. In this point again the Shi'ites of to-day are at one with the Mu'tazilites, and Muhammad Darabi, in the Apology for Hafidh already cited (p. 283, n. 1 *supra*) gives the following verse of that poet as one which has brought him under the suspicion of inclining to the revived orthodoxy associated with the name of al-Ash'ari:—

*In jan-i-'driyat ki bi Hafiah sipurd Dust—
Ruzi rukh-ash bi-binam, u taslim-i-way kunam.*

"This borrowed soul which the Friend [*i.e.*, God] entrusted to Hafidh—

One day / shall see His Face and shall yield it up to him."

It would not be just that our admiration for the Mu'tazilites, whose liberal views so greatly conduced to the splendour of this wonderful epoch, should tempt us to overlook their

¹ *Tabari*, iii, pp. 1343-1350. See also Dozy's *I'Islamisme*, pp. 238-239.

² *Ibid.*, p. 1351.

³ *ibid.*, pp. 1533-4

unusual and regrettable harshness towards those doctrines which are now generally prevalent and accounted orthodox in all Sunnite countries. Yet perhaps there was a reason for their harshness. They may have been conscious that doctrines of extreme Calvinism—or Fatalism, if the word be preferred—must in the long run (at least in Asia, which is more logical than Europe in its applications of theory to daily life) destroy effort and prevent progress; they may have foreseen that the literal interpretation of an inspired Scripture which followed naturally from a belief in its Eternity, not only in the future but in the past, would inevitably stereotype and narrow the religious outlook in such a way that all flexibility, all power of adapting itself to new conditions or carrying conviction to the minds of intelligent men, would be lost; and they may have felt that the belief that God could be seen by men must tend to an anthropomorphic and debased conception of the Deity. Whether or no they realised these results of the victory of orthodoxy, such were in reality its effects, and the retrograde movement of Islam, inaugurated by the triumph of al-Ash'ari (of which we shall speak in a later chapter), was but accelerated and accentuated by the overthrow of the Caliphate and the sack of Baghdad by the vandals of Mongolia in the middle of the thirteenth century. Changiz and Hulagu on the one hand, and al-Ash'ari on the other, probably contributed as much as any three individuals to the destruction of the material and intellectual glories of the Golden Age of the early 'Abbasid Caliphs.

The further development of the Mu'tazilite doctrine is admirably summed up by Dozy (Chauvin's French translation, pp. 205-207) :—

"This doctrine was subsequently remodelled and propagated under the influence of the Philosophy of Aristotle. The sect, as was in the nature of things, subdivided. All the Mu'tazilites, however, agreed in certain points. They denied the existence of the Attributes in God, and contested everything which could prejudice the dogma

Further develop-
ment of the
Mu'tazilite
doctrine.

of the Divine Unity. To remove from God all idea of injustice, they recognised man's entire freedom of action. They taught that all the truths necessary for salvation belong to the domain of reason, and that they may be acquired solely by the light of reason, no less before than after Revelation, in such wise that man, at all times and in all places, ought to possess these truths. But to these primary propositions the different sects added others peculiar to themselves. Most of them have treated theology with much profundity ; others, on the contrary, became involved in hair-splittings, or even diverged widely from the spirit of Islam. Some there were, for example, who believed in Metempsychosis, and who imagined that the animals of each species form a community which has as a prophet an animal like unto themselves ; strange to say they based this last doctrine on two verses of the Qur'an. And there were many other follies of the same kind. But it would be unjust to render all the Mu'tazilites responsible for the errors of some, and, when all is said and done, they deserve to be spoken of with respect. In meditating on what religion bade them believe, they became the rationalists of Islam. Thus it came about that one of their principal affirmations was that the Qur'an was really created, although the Prophet had asserted the contrary. 'Were the Qur'an uncreate,' they said, 'it would be necessary to admit the existence of two Eternal Beings.' From the moment when the Qur'an, or Word of God, was held as something created, it could no longer, having regard to the immutability of the Deity, be considered as belonging to His essence. Thereby the whole dogma of revelation was little by little seriously shaken, and many Mu'tazilites frankly declared that it was not impossible to write something as good as, or even better than, the Qur'an. They therefore protested against the dogma of the divine origin of the Qur'an and against Inspiration. The idea which they entertained of God was purer and more exalted than that of the orthodox. They would not listen to any corporeal conception of the Divinity. Mahomet had said, 'One day ye shall see your Lord as you saw the full moon at the Battle of Badr,' and these words, which the orthodox took literally, were for them an ever new stumbling-block. They therefore explained them away by saying that man, after his death, would know God by the eyes of the spirit, that is to say, by the reason. They equally refused to countenance the pretension that God created the unbeliever,¹ and showed them-

¹ Meaning, of course, that every man was created a potential believer, and that the unbelievers only became so by their own frowardness, not by God's will.

selves but little pleased with the consecrated formula which says of God that 'He hurteth and He advantageth.' They could not admit the miracles related in the Qur'an, and so denied that the sea was dried up to yield a passage for the Israelites led by Moses, that Moses' rod was changed into a serpent, and that Jesus raised the dead to life. Mahomet himself did not escape their attacks. There was one sect which maintained that the Prophet married too many wives, and that his contemporary Abu Dharr al-Ghifari had much more self-restraint and piety than him, which also was perfectly true."

The best European accounts of the Mu'tazilites with which I am acquainted, besides Dozy's, are those of Steiner¹ and von Kremer, but I must content myself here with briefly indicating the results of their investigations as to the progress, influence, relations, and final decline of this interesting movement. As to its origin these two scholars differ, the former regarding it, at least in its primary form, as "arising in Islam independently of all external influences," while the latter, as we have seen, considers that it was influenced even in its inception by Christian theology. Be this as it may, at a very early date it was profoundly influenced by Greek Philosophy.

The Mu'tazilite
and Greek
Philosophy.

"We may venture to assert," says Steiner (p. 5), "that the Mu'tazilites were the first who not only read the translations of the Greek Naturalists and Philosophers prepared under the auspices of al-Mansiir and al-Ma'mun (A.D. 754-775 and 813-833), and evolved therefrom all sorts of useful knowledge, but likewise exerted themselves to divert into new channels their entire thoughts, which had hitherto moved only in the narrow circle of ideas of the Qur'an, to assimilate to their own uses the Greek culture, and to combine it with their Muhammadan conscience. The Philosophers proper, al-Farabi (f A.D. 950), Ibn Sina (Avicenna, \ A.D. 1037), and Ibn Rushd (Averroes, t A.D. 1198), belong first to a later age. Al-Kindi (t circ. A.D. 864) was the earliest, and lived somewhat before them,

¹ Two pamphlets, both published in 1865. One is entitled *Die Mu'taziliten oder die Freidenker im Islam*; the other, *Die Mu'taziliten als Vorlauffer der islamischen Dogmahker und Philosophen, nebst Anhang, enthaltend kritische Anmerkungen zu Gazzdli's Munqidh*

but seems to have devoted his special attention to precisely those problems raised by the Mu'tazilites. His followers, however, avoided theological questions. Without directly assailing the Faith, they avoided all conflict with it, so far as possible. Theology and Natural Science, including Philosophy,¹ were treated as separate territories, with the harmonising of which no further trouble was taken. Ibn Sina appears to have been a pious Muslim; yet Shahristani includes him amongst those who properly belonged to no definite confession, but, standing outside Positive Religion, evolved their ideas out of their own heads (*Ahlu'l-ahwa*).[^] Ibn Rushd also is accounted a good Muslim. He endeavoured to show that philosophical research was not only allowed, but was a duty, and one enjoined even by the Qur'an; but, for the rest, he goes his own way, and his writings are, with few exceptions, of philosophic and scientific contents. Thus was the breach between Philosophy and Dogma already fully established with Ibn Sina. The Mu'tazilite party had exhausted its strength in the subtle controversies of the schools of Basra and Baghdad. Abu'l-Husayn of Basra, a contemporary of Ibn Sina, was the last who gave independent treatment to their teaching, and in some points completed it. Zamakhsharf (†A.D. 1143-4), the famous and extraordinarily learned author of the *Kashshaf*, reduced the moderate ideas of his predecessors to a pleasant and artistic form, and applied them consistently and adroitly to the whole region of Qur'anic exegesis, but gave to the teaching itself no further development."

The political power of the Mu'tazilites ceased soon after the accession of al-Mutawakkil, the tenth 'Abbasid Caliph (A.D. 847), but the school, as we have seen, was powerfully represented nearly three centuries later by Zamakhshari, the great commentator of the Qur'an. The subsequent fate of the views which they represented will be discussed to some extent in later chapters, but, for the convenience of the reader, and for the sake of continuity, we may here briefly summarise the chief stages which preceded the final "Destruction of the Philosophers" by al-Ghazzali and his successors, and the

¹ "The Arabian Aristotelians," says Steiner, "were properly rather Natural Scientists than Philosophers; their most signal achievements belong to the region of observation of natural phenomena, above all Medicine and Astronomy."

triumph of orthodox Islam in the form wherein it **now** prevails in all Sunnite countries.

(i) The *Period of Orthodox Reaction* began with al-Mutawakkil (A.D. 847-861), the brother and successor of al-Wathiq. Dozy, after describing some of the acts of barbarity and ingratitude committed by this "cruel and ungrateful tyrant,"¹ continues : " Notwithstanding all this, al-Mutawakkil was extremely orthodox, and consequently the clerical party judged him quite otherwise than we should do. A well-known Muslim historian (Abu'l-Fida) is of opinion that he went a little too far in his hatred for 'All, for the orthodox also held this prince, in his capacity of cousin and son-in-law of the Prophet, in high esteem ; ' but for the rest,' says he, ' he was of the number of the most excellent Caliphs, for he forbade man to believe that the Qur'an was created.' He was orthodox ; what matter then *if* he was a drunkard, a voluptuary, a perfidious scoundrel, a monster of cruelty ? But he was even more than orthodox : animated by a burning zeal for the purity of doctrine, he applied himself to the persecution of all those who thought otherwise, torturing and exterminating them as far as possible. The prescriptions relative to the Christians and Jews, which during the preceding reigns had almost fallen into oblivion, were renewed and aggravated."² Towards 'All and his descendants this wicked Caliph entertained a particular hatred : it pleased him that his Court jester should pad himself with a great paunch (for 'Ali had grown corpulent in later life) and, in the assumed character of the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law, should dance before him with all manner of grotesque buffooneries. A celebrated philologist who, in reply to his interrogations, ventured to prefer the sons of 'All to those of the tyrant Caliph, was trampled to death by the Turkish guards. The tomb or al-Husayn, the Martyr of Kerbela, was destroyed by his order,

¹ Dozy's *l'Islamisme* (Chauvin's translation), pp. 248 *et seqq.*

² See Tabari, iii, pp. 1389 *et seqq.*, and 1419.

and its site ploughed and sown, and the visitation thereof forbidden. Even the most eminent and honourable theologians, such as al-Bukhari, the great traditionist, were exposed to charges of heresy.

(2) *The Teaching of al-Asfarl.** So far, as Dozy points out, the triumph of the orthodox was merely material; intellectually, and in methods of dialectic, they retained the same inferiority as before in respect to their opponents the Mu'tazilites. Not till twelve years had elapsed after al-Mutawakkil's death was born (in A.H. 260 = A.D. 873-4) the man who, having been trained in the Mu'tazilite school, renounced their doctrines in his fortieth year, and, armed with the logical weapons with which they themselves had supplied him, deserted to the hostile camp, and, for the remainder of his life, carried on an energetic and successful campaign against their views. This was Abu'l-Hasan al-Ash'ari, a descendant of that foolish Abu Musa al-Ash'ari to whose ineptitude Mu'awiya owed so much in the arbitration of Dawmatu'l-Jandal. His literary activity was enormous, and after he had broken with his teacher, the Mu'tazilite doctor al-Jubba'1,² he produced polemical works on all manner of theological topics to the number of two or three hundred, of which Spitta³ enumerates the titles of one hundred. So distrustful of philosophy were the orthodox that many of them, especially the fanatical followers of Ibn Hanbal, unwilling to believe that an alliance with it could result in aught but evil, continued to regard al-Ash'ari with the deepest suspicion; but in the end his services to orthodoxy were fully recognised.

"In course of time," says Dozy, after speaking of the growing influence of al-Ash'ari's teaching, "the influence of the Mu'tazilites continued to diminish more and more. The loss of temporal power

¹ See Spitta's excellent monograph, *Zur Geschichte Abu'l-Hasan Al Ash'ari's* (Leipzig, 1876).

² Dozy, pp. 252-256.

³

Op. cit., pp. 62-81.

was the first misfortune which befel them; the defection of al-Ash'ari was the second. 'The Mu'tazilites,' says a Musulman author, 'formerly carried their heads high, but their dominion ended when God sent al-Ash'ari.' Nevertheless they did not disappear all at once, and perhaps they exist even at the present day, but they had no longer any power. Since the eleventh century¹ they have had no doctor who has achieved renown, while the system of al-Ash'ari, on the contrary, has been more and more elaborated, so that, in its ultimate form, it includes not only religious dogma, but also embraces matters purely philosophic, such as ontology, cosmology, &c."²

(3) *The Brethren of Purity* (Ikhwanu's-Safa). For our knowledge of this remarkable society or fraternity of Encyclopaedists and Philosophers we are chiefly indebted to Flugel³ and Dieterici,⁴ especially the latter, who has summarised and elucidated their teachings in a series of masterly monographs. Favoured by the liberal ideas of the Persian and Shf'ite House of Buwayh, who, displacing for a time the Turkish element, became practically supreme at Baghdad about the middle of the tenth century (A.D. 945), this somewhat mysterious society carried on the work of the Mu'tazilites, aiming especially at the reconciliation of Science and Religion, the harmonising of the Law of Islam with Greek Philosophy, and the synthesis of all knowledge in encyclopaedic form. The results of their labours, comprising some fifty separate treatises,⁵ were published, according to Flugel, about A.D. 970, and supply us with an admirable mirror of the ideas which prevailed at this time in the most enlightened circles of the metropolis

¹ Since Zamakhshari lived till A.D. 1144, it would seem better to substitute "twelfth" for "eleventh."

² Dozy, pp. 255-256.

³ z. D. M. G., vol. xiii, pp. I-43-

⁴ In some dozen publications (texts, translations, and dissertations), published between the years 1858 and 1886.

⁵ Published in four vols, at Bombay, A.H. 1305-6; a Persian version of the same, comprising fifty tracts (pp. 167), was lithographed at Bombay in A.H. 1301 = A.D. 1884. For the contents of these tracts see Dieterici's *Die Philosophie der Araber im x Fahrhundert nach Christ., erster Theil, Einleitung u. Makrokosmos* (Leipzig, 1876), pp. 131-137.

THE IKHWANU 'S-SAFA

of the 'Abbasid Caliphs. As authors of these tracts five men of learning are named by Shahrazuri, viz., Abu Sulayman Muhammad b. Nasr al-Busti, called also al-Muqaddasi (or al-Maqdasi), Abu'l-Hasan 'Ali b. Harun az-Zinjani, Abu Ahmad an-Nahrajani (or Mihrajani), al-'Awfi, and Zayd b. Rifa'a ; of whom, having regard to their *nisbas*, the first three at any rate would seem to have been Persians. So too was Ibn Sina (Avicenna), the great physician and philosopher with whose death (A.D. 1037), according to Dieterici,¹ "the development of philosophy in the East came to an end."

(4) *Al-Ghazzdli*, "the Proof of Islam" and Champion of Orthodoxy. This eminent theologian, who was professor at the Nidhdmiiyya College of Baghdad from A.D. 1091 to 1095, and died in A.D. 1105, who had explored all realms of speculation accessible to him, and had at last found refuge in the mysticism of the more moderate Sufis, "felt himself called," as Steiner says,² "to stand forth as the scientific apologist of Islam, and to restore the threatened faith to surer ground." Tholuck (*Bibl. Sacra* vi, 233), cited by H. A. Homes at pp. 7-8 of his translation of the Turkish version of the *Alchemy of Happiness* (Albany, N.Y., 1873) appraises him very highly. "Ghazzali," says he, "if ever any man has deserved the name, was truly a divine, and he may justly be placed on a level with Origen, so remarkable was he for learning and ingenuity, and gifted with such a rare faculty for the skilful and worthy exposition of doctrine. All that is good, worthy, and sublime which his great soul had compassed, he bestowed upon Muhammadanism ; and he adorned the doctrines of the Qur'an with so much piety and learning that, in the form given them by him, they seem, in my opinion, worthy the assent of Christians. Whatsoever was most excellent in the philosophy of Aristotle or in the sufi mysticism, he dis-

¹ *Die Philosophie der Araber im x Jahrhundert nach Christ, enter Theil, Einleitung u. Makrokosmos* (Leipzig, 1876), p. 158.

² *Mu'taziliten*, p. 12.

RELIGION AND PHILOSOPHY

creetly adapted to the Muhammadan theology. From every school he sought the means of shedding light and honour upon religion, while his sincere piety and lofty conscientiousness imparted to all his writings a sacred majesty. He was the first of Muhammadan divines." Dieterici, on the other hand, judges him harshly. "As a despairing sceptic," says he,¹ "he springs suicidally into the All-God [i.e., the all-pervading Deity of the Pantheists] to kill all scientific reflexion."

The teachings of the "Brethren of Purity" were carried to the West by a Spanish Arab of Madrid, Muslim b. Muhammad Abu'l-Qasim al-Majriti al-Andalusi, who died in A.D. 1004-1005. Thanks to them, and later to the great Moorish philosopher Ibn Rushd (Averroes), Spain became a centre of philosophical learning, whence, during the Middle Ages, Europe derived such light as it possessed on these great questions. "The strife between Nominalism and Realism," says Dieterici,² "which for centuries stirred the learned world, is a product of this development, and had already, during the ninth and tenth centuries, set in motion all the minds of the East."

Of the *Sunnites* little need here be said, since, though numerous in Persia under the various Turkish or half Turkish dynasties which generally prevailed there until the rise of the safawis in the beginning of the sixteenth century, and counting amongst their numbers Persians so eminent as Faridu'd-Din 'Attar, Sa'di, Jalalu'd-Din Rumi, and many others, they were never really in harmony with Persian tendencies and aspirations, and are at the present day almost extinct save at L*ai* and in a few other districts. It should be mentioned, however, that the founders of the four orthodox schools, those of the Hanafites, Malikites, Shafi'ites, and Hanbalites, all flourished during this period of Mu'tazilite domination. Of these the eldest, Abu Hanifa, was born in A.D. 700 and died in 767. He was of

¹ *Op. cit.*, p. 157.

² *op. cit.* p. 161.

Persian descent.¹ Malik was born at Madina in A.D. 713 or 714, and died in 795. He was cruelly flogged by al-Mansur for suspected disaffection towards the 'Abbasid dynasty ; " from which time," says Ibn Khallikan,² " he rose higher and higher in public estimation, so that the punishment he underwent seemed as if it had been an honour conferred upon him." Ash-Shafi'i was an Arab of the tribe of Quraysh, was born in the year (some say³ on the very day) of Abu Hanifa's decease, and died at Cairo in A.D. 820. Lastly, Ahmad b. Hanbal, a native of Merv, but apparently of Arab race, was born in A.D. 780, and died at Baghdad in 855. He was the favourite pupil of ash-Shafi'i, who said, on setting out for Egypt, " I went forth from Baghdad leaving behind me no more pious man and no better jurisconsult than Ibn Hanbal."⁴ To his steadfast courage in refusing to admit that the Qur'an was created allusion has already been made.

These are the four " Imams " of the orthodox Sunnites, and the schools which they founded differ but in minor points, and are on good terms with one another. The Hana-
The four ortho-
dox schools
of the Sunnis.
 fite school prevails in Turkey, the Malikite in Morocco, the Shafi'ite in Egypt and Arabia, and the Hanbalite in some parts of Africa. All are held in equal contempt by the Shi'ites ; and Nasir-i-Khusraw, the great Isma'ili poet and propagandist of the eleventh century of our era, goes so far as to accuse them of sanctioning the most detestable vices⁵—a charge which, save in so far as concerns the alleged crudely anthropomorphic tendencies of the Hanbalites, merits no serious consideration.

Of the Shi'ites it will be more convenient to speak at length
The Shi'ites
 in a subsequent chapter, but it may be noted that the great schism which divided them into the

¹ See de Slane's translation of *Ibn Khallikan*, vol. iii, p. 555.

² *Ibid.*, vol. ii, p. 547. This probably occurred in A.D. 764-5.

³ *Ibid.*, vol. ii, p. 571.

⁴ *Ibid.*, vol. i, p. 44.

⁵ See his *Diwan*, lithographed at Tabriz in A.H. 1280, pp. 115 and 209. Cf. Dozy's *Islamisme* pp. 441-443.

"Sect of the Seven " (*Sab'iyya*) or Isma'ilis, and the " Sect of the Twelve " [*Ithna 'ashariyya*] which prevails in Persia at the present day, had its origin in this period which we are considering. In the doctrine of the Imamate, the belief that the supreme spiritual authority must be vested in one of the descendants of 'Ali, designated in each case by his predecessor, and endowed with supernatural or even divine attributes, both sects are agreed, and they are also agreed as to the succession of Imams as far as the sixth, Ja'far as-Sadiq, who died A.D. 765.- Here, however, the difference begins. Ja'far had in the first instance designated his eldest son Isma'il to succeed him, but later (owing, it is generally said, to his discovery that Isma'il had indulged in the forbidden juice of the grape) he took the Imamate from him and conferred it on his younger brother Musa, called al-Kadhim. Soon afterwards Isma'il died, and his body was publicly shown ere its interment, in order that there might be no doubt as to the fact of his death. Yet, though most of the Shi'ites transferred their allegiance to Musa, some remained faithful to Isma'il, either refusing to believe that he was dead (for he was reported by some to have been seen subsequently to the date of his alleged death at Basra),¹ or maintaining that the Imamate had been transmitted through him (since he had predeceased his father, and had therefore, in their view, never actually assumed the Imam's functions) to his son Muhammad ; in either case fixing the total number of Imams at seven, and repudiating the claims of Musa and his five successors. Further discussion of the developments of these two sects may be conveniently deferred to a subsequent chapter.

Lastly, a few words must be said here of the earlier sufis, or Mystics, whose fully developed system of Spiritualistic Pantheism will be described in another place. The early sufis. Their name, as is now generally admitted, has nothing at all to do with the Greek σοφός (which appears,

¹ *Shahristani*, ed. Cureton, p. 146.

written with **the** soft letter *sin*, not the hard *sad* in the Arabic *faylasuf* "philosopher," and *safsati* "sophist"); nor, as the Sufis themselves pretend, with the Arabic root *safa* "purity"; nor with the *ahlu's-suffa*, or "people of the bench," religious mendicants of the early days of Islam who sat outside the mosque craving alms from the devout; but is simply derived from the Arabic word *suf*, "wool," as is shown, amongst other things, by the Persian epithet *pashmina-push*, "wool-clad," which is commonly applied to them. Woollen garments were from the first regarded as typical of the primitive simplicity affected by the early Muslims: of 'Umar, the second Caliph, Mas'udi tells us¹ that "he used to wear a *jubba* of wool (*suf*) patched with pieces of leather and the like," while Salman the Persian is described by the same historian² as "wearing woollen raiment," and the same fact is recorded³ of Abu 'Ubayda b. al-Jarrah. Later, when luxury became prevalent, those who adhered to the old simple ways of the Prophet's immediate successors, silently protesting against the growing worldliness and extravagance of their contemporaries, were termed "Sufis," and, in this earliest form, alike in respect to their simple attire, their protest against ostentation and extravagance, their piety and quietism, they present a remarkable analogy with the early Quakers. There is always in extreme quietism, and that spirituality which is impatient of mere formal worship and lip-service, a tendency towards Pantheism; but in these early Sufis this tendency is much less noticeable than, for instance, in Eckhart, Tauler, and the fourteenth-century German mystics; though later, under the influence of Neo-Platonist ideas, it became very conspicuous. Of the early sufis al-Qushayri (d. A. D. 1073) speaks as follows:—4

"Know that after the death of the Apostle of God the most excellent of the Muslims were not at the time distinguished by any

¹ *Muruju'dh-Dhahab*, ed. Barbier de Meynard, vol. iv, p. 193.

² *Ibid.*, p. 195.

³ *ibid.*, p. 196.

⁴ Cited at p. 31 of Jami's *Nafahatu'l-Uns*, ed. Nassau Lees, Calcutta, 1858.

distinctive name save in regard to their companionship with the Apostle, seeing that there existed no greater distinction than this; wherefore they were called 'the Companions.' And when those of the second period came in contact with them, such of these as had held converse with the 'Companions' were named the 'Followers,' a title which they regarded as of the noblest. Then those who succeeded them were called 'Followers of the Followers.' Thereafter men differed, and diverse degrees became distinguished, and the elect of mankind, who were vehemently concerned with matters of religion, were called 'Ascetics' and 'Devotees.' Then heresies arose, and there ensued disputes between the different sects, each one claiming to possess 'Ascetics,' and the elect of the people of the *Sunna* (the Sunnites), whose souls were set on God, and who guarded their hearts from the disasters of heedlessness, became known by the name of *sufis*; and this name became generally applied to these great men a little before the end of the second century of the Flight" (A.H. 200 = A.D. 815-816).

A little further on (*op. cit.*, p. 34) Jami explicitly states that the term "Sufi" was first applied to Abu Hashim, who was born at Kufa, but passed most of his life in Syria, and died in A.D. 777-8; and (p. 36) that the Sufi doctrines were first explained and expressed by Dhu'n-Nun of Egypt, a pupil of Malik (the founder of the Malikite school mentioned above), who died in A.D. 860, that they were expanded, systematised, and reduced to writing by Junayd of Baghdad (d. A.D. 910), and openly preached in the pulpit by Shibli (d. A.D. 945). Very few of the great Sufi teachers lived before the close of the second century of the Flight (A.D. 815-816): Ibrahim b. Adham († A.D. 777), Da'ud of Tayy († A.D. 781), Fudayl b. 'Ilyad († A.D. 803), and Ma'ruf of Karkh († A.D. 815), were, I think, the only ones of note except the above-mentioned Abu Hashim. Hasan of Basra († A.D. 728), who has been already spoken of in connection with the Mu'tazilites, is sometimes reckoned amongst them; but, as Dozy has pointed out,¹ his sombre religion, chiefly inspired by fear, contrasts

¹ *L'Islamisme* (Chauvin's French translation), pp. 310-320. Cf. also pp. 201-202, where Hasan's character is well depicted.

sharply with the religion of love proper to the mystics. The saintly woman Rabi'a al-'Adawiyya¹ († 752-753) is a far better type of the true mystic, and many of her sayings strongly recall those of Saint Theresa. It is in allusion to her that Jami says in his *Nafahat* (ed. Nassau Lees, p. 716) :—

Wa law kana 'n-nisa'u ka-ma dhakarna
La faddaltu 'n-nisa'a 'ala'r-rijali ;
Fa lat-ta'nithu li'smi 'sh-shamsi 'ayb^{un},
Wa la 't-ladhkiru fakhr^{un} li'l-hilali.

"Were women all like those whom here I name,
 Woman to man I surely would prefer;
 The Sun is feminine,³ nor deems it shame;
 The Moon, though masculine,⁹ depends on her."

The following anecdote told by Dozy 3 is typical of her attitude : One day, being ill, she was visited by Hasan of Basra and Shaqiq of Balkh. The former said, "That one is not sincere in faith who does not patiently endure the chastening of the Lord." Shaqiq, desiring to improve upon this, said, "That one is not sincere in faith who does not find pleasure in the chastening of the Lord." But Rabi'a replied, "That one is not sincere in faith who, in the contemplation of the Lord, does not forget the chastening."

It is related in the *Memoirs of the Saints* compiled by Shaykh Faridu'd-Din 'Attar, a great Persian mystic of the thirteenth century, that she was once asked, "Dost thou hate the Devil?" "No," she replied. They asked, "Why not?" "Because," said she, "my love for God leaves me no time to hate him." "I saw the Prophet of God," she continued, "in a dream, and he asked me, 'O Rabi'a, dost thou love me?' 'O Apostle of God,' I replied, 'who is there who loveth thee not? But the love of God hath so taken possession of every particle

¹ See de Slane's translation of *Ibn Khallikan*, vol. i, pp. 515-517.

² In Arabic grammar.

³ *Op. cit.*, p. 319.

of my being that there is no room left me to love or hate any one else."

These sayings, which might be indefinitely multiplied, will indicate the character of this early mysticism of Islam. The wild pantheistic character which is later assumed, especially in Persia, was, as I think, superadded to it at a much later date. The philosophy—so far as it can be called a philosophy—which it gradually developed is, in my opinion, mainly of Neo-Platonist origin,¹ and, contrary to a view which, though losing ground, is still very prevalent, was very little, if at all, influenced by Indian speculations.² Von Kremer differentiates the earlier Arabian quietist Sufiism from the later Persian pantheistic development, expressing the opinion³ "that Sufism proper, as it finds expression in the different Dervish orders (which I sharply distinguish from the simple ascetic aim which already appeared in the earliest Christianity, whence it passed over into Islam) arose essentially from Indian ideas, and in particular from that school of Indian philosophy known by the name of Vedanta."

In another place⁴ he says :—

"It appears, indeed, that Sufism took into itself two different elements, an older Christian-ascetic, which came strongly to the front even in the beginning of Islam, and then later a Buddhist-contemplative, which soon, in consequence of the increasing influence of the Persians on Islam, obtained the upper hand, and called into being the Mystics proper of Islam. The former aim expressed more the Arabian character, the latter the Persian."

Fully admitting the force and value of this distinction, I am

¹ This point has been very admirably worked out by my friend and former pupil, Mr. R. A. Nicholson, in his *Selected Poems from the Divan-t. Shams-i-Tabriz* (Cambridge, 1898), especially pp. xxx-xxxvi. Cf. von Kremer, *Gesch.-Streifzuge*, p. 45.

² This is, for example, Dozy's view (*l'Islamisme*, p. 317), and he cites Trumpp (*Z. D. M. G.*, xvi, p. 244) as saying "Dass der Sufismus ein indisches Produkt ist, darüber kann kein Zweifel obwalten, und noch näher bestimmt ist der Sufismus ein speziell Buddhistisches Erzeugniss."

³ *Gesch.-Streifzuge*, p. 46. ⁴ *Herrsch. Id.*, p. 67.

not convinced that the existence of Indian influence has been satisfactorily proved. Persian studies have suffered much at the hands of Indianists and Comparative Mythologists and Philologists, *eg.*, in the attempts made to explain the Avesta solely from the Vedas without regard to the Zoroastrian tradition on the one hand, and in the favour accorded, particularly in England and Germany, to the hideous Indian pronunciation of the modern language on the other, not to mention the exaggerated admiration often expressed for the Persian compositions of Indian writers, and the concurrent neglect of all Persian literature produced in Persia during the last four centuries * ; and we have good reason to be on our guard against the tendency of Indianists to trace everything, so far as possible, to an Indian origin, or to generalise about "the Aryan genius." Long before Neo-Platonism came to the Arabs it was, as has been already observed (p. 167 *supra*) brought to Persia in the days of Nishirwan (sixth century of our era), and I confess that, so far as I can judge, Sufi pantheism presents far more striking analogies with Neo-Platonism than with either Vedantism or Buddhism, while historically it is much more likely that it borrowed from the first than from either of the two last. To the later developments of Sufiism, to which alone those remarks apply, we shall recur in a subsequent chapter.

Before leaving the religious manifestations of this epoch, it is proper to remind the reader what religions, besides Judaism, Zoroastrianism, and Christianity, and what philosophies, besides those of the Greeks, were still active and potent forces in Western Asia. Apart from Manichaeism, of which we shall have a few more words to say, elements of the old Babylonian civilisation were

The Mandaean
or *Mughtasila*.

¹ See, for example, the article on *Persian Literature* in the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*. Dr. Ethe does more justice to the modern poets of Persia in his article *Neufersische Litteratur* (pp. 311-316) in vol. ii of Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie* (Strassburg, 1897).

represented by the Mandaeans or true Sabaeans (*Sabiyun*) of the marshes between Wasit and Basra (the ancient Chaldaea), also named by the Arabs from their frequent ceremonial ablutions *al-Mughtasila*, which term, misapprehended by the Portuguese navigators of the seventeenth century, gave rise in Europe to the absurd misnomer "Christians of St. John the Baptist."¹

From these true Sabaeans the pseudo-Sabaeans of Harran (the ancient Carrhae) must be carefully distinguished. The learned Chwolson was the first to explain in his great work *Die Ssabier und der Ssabismus* (2 vols., St. Petersburg, 1856) the apparently hopeless confusion which till that time had surrounded the term "Sabaeon." Here we must confine ourselves to stating the curious fact which he brought to light, viz., that since about A.D. 830 two perfectly distinct peoples have been confounded together under this name, to wit, the above-mentioned Mandaeans or *Mughtasila* of Chaldaea, and the Syrian heathens who flourished at Harran (about half-way between Aleppo and Mirdin) until the eleventh century of our era,² and that this confusion was brought about in the following way.³ When the Caliph al-Ma'miin passed through the district of Harran on his last campaign against the Byzantines, he remarked amongst the people who came out to meet him and wish him God-speed certain persons of strange and unfamiliar appearance, wearing

The Pseudo-
Sabaeans of
Harran.

¹ See Chwolson's *Ssabier und Ssabismus*, vol. i, p. 100. The most important works on the Mandaeans are : Dr. A. J. H. Wilhelm Brandt, *Die Mandd'lische Religion* (1889); Idem, *Manddische Schriften* (1893); *Hand. Grammatik* by Th. Noldeke, 1875 ; H. Pognon, Consul de France a Alep, *Inscr. Mand. des coupes de Khouabir* (1898). Of the book of the Mandaeans, the *Sidrd Rabba* or *Ginza*, there are two editions, Norberg's, in three vols. (1815-1816), and Petermann's, in two vols., (1867). Noldeke describes their literature as "eine Literatur, welche voll des grossten Widersinns ist, geschrieben in eine Mundart von der ein Kenner des Syrisches zunächst den Eindruck starker Entartung erhalt."

² Chwolson, *op. cit.*, i, pp. 669, 671.

³ Ibid., ii, pp. 14-19. The facts are recorded in the *Fihrist* (ed. Flugel, pp. 320-321) on the authority of an almost contemporary Christian writer, Abu Yusuf al-Qati'i.

their hair extremely long, and clad in tightly-fitting coats (*qaba*). Al-Ma'mun, astonished at their appearance, inquired who and what they were, to which they replied, "Harranians." Being further questioned, they said that they were neither Christians, Jews, nor Magians ; while to the Caliph's inquiry "whether they had a Holy Book or a Prophet," they returned "a confused reply." Convinced at last that they were heathens (" *Zindiqs* and worshippers of idols"), the Caliph ordered them, under pain of death, either to embrace Islam, or to adopt "one of the religions which God Almighty hath mentioned in His Book," giving them respite for their decision till his return from the war. Terrified by these threats, the Harranians cut their long hair and discarded their peculiar garments, while many became Christians or Muhammadans; but a small remnant would not forsake their own religion, and were greatly perplexed and troubled until a Muhammadan jurist offered, for a consideration, to show them a way out of their difficulty. So they brought him much fine gold from their treasuries, and he counselled them to call themselves Sabaeans when al-Ma'mun returned to question them, since the Sabaeans were mentioned in the Qur'an, yet, since little was known of them, the change of name would involve no change of beliefs or customs. But al-Ma'mun returned not, for death overtook him on that march ; and most of the Harranians who had declared themselves Christians at once openly apostatised, and returned to their old beliefs, which their brethren who had adopted Islam dared not do, since apostasy is punished with death in the Muhammadan law. And "since that time," says the narrator, "they have kept this name (of Sabaeans) ; for previously there were in Harran and the surrounding district no people who bore the name of Sabaeans."

Now these pseudo-Sabaeans of Harran, a remnant of the ancient Syrian pagans of Mesopotamia, included "une elite d'hommes fort instruits, un corps d'aristocrates d'esprit, qui se sont distingues dans les sciences, et qui ont enrichi les litteratures

syrienne et arabe d'un grand nombre d'ouvrages traitant de diverses matieres." ¹ Harran, since the time of Alexander the Great, had been deeply under the influence of Greece, so that it was surnamed **Ἑλληνόπολις**, and its inhabitants, though speaking at this time the purest dialect of Syriac, were in many cases partly Greek by extraction. Strongly opposed to the Christianity professed by most of their compatriots, they were deeply attached to Greek culture, and more particularly to the Neo-Platonist philosophy; and for this reason their city had long served as a rallying-point for all those, including the Emperors Caracalla and Julian the Apostate, who clung passionately to pagan Culture. And now, under the 'Abbsid Caliphate, it was these pagans of Harran who, more than any one else, imparted to the Muslims all the learning and wisdom of the Greeks which they had so jealously guarded; providing the capital of the Caliphs with a series of brilliant scholars, such as Thabit b. Qurra (t A.D. 901), his son Abu Sa'id Sinan, his grandsons Ibrahim and Abu'l-Hasan Thabit, his great-grandsons Ishaq and Abu'l-Faraj, and many others, whose biographies will be found in chap. xii of the first book of Chwolson's great work. Many of these attained positions of the greatest eminence as physicians, astronomers, mathematicians, geometricians, and philosophers; and, thanks to their influence at a Court singular in the world's history for its devotion to learning, their co-religionists were suffered to continue in their thinly-disguised paganism.²

The Syrians, both heathen and Christian, were, indeed, the

¹ Kunik's compte-rendu of Chwolson's work, *Melanges Asiatiques*, vol. i, p. 663.

² Several sects existing in Western Asia at the present day, such as the Nusayris, the Yezidis (or so-called "Devil-worshippers,") &c, are, as Chwolson and others have pointed out, almost certainly survivals of ancient pagan communities; though, to secure a doubtful tolerance from their Muhammadan governors, they have been careful to conceal their real beliefs and practices, and to vindicate their right to be regarded and treated as "

"People of the Book," by a liberal, though not always skilful use of names regarded by the Muslims as holy.

great transmitters of Greek learning to the East, whence it was brought back by the Arabs to the West. The matter is so important that I subjoin a translation of Carl Brockelmann's excellent remarks :—I

" Syria and Mesopotamia were, from the time of Alexander the Great and his followers, exposed to the influences of Greek civilisation. The supremacy of the Romans and their successors the Byzantines in Syria furthered in every way the diffusion of Hellenic culture, which made special progress from the time when, associated with Christianity, it began to react on the religious sense of the people. The Syrians were, indeed, but feebly disposed for original production, but they were extraordinarily inclined and fitted to assimilate to themselves the results of foreign intellectual endeavour. Thus there arose in the Syrian monasteries numerous translations, not only of the spiritual literature most widely current in the Greek Church, but also of nearly all the profane authors (notably of Aristotle, Hippocrates, and Galen) who dominated the secular learning of that epoch.

" Already in the Persian Empire under the rule of the Sasanians the Syrians were the transmitters of Greek culture. Naturally it was only secular learning which was there promoted by the Court and Government. About the year A.D. 550 Khusraw Anushirwan founded at Jundi-Shapur in Khuzistan a university for the pursuit of philosophical and medical studies, and this plant of Græco-Syrian culture continued to flourish even into 'Abbasid times.

" Greek learning found a third home in the Mesopotamian city of Harran, whose inhabitants, surrounded by a wholly Christianised population, had retained their ancient Semitic heathenism. With them, as formerly in Babylon, the disposition for mathematical and astronomical studies was closely united therewith. But with them also, notwithstanding the fairly high level which they had already attained through the Assyrian-Babylonian civilisation, these studies did not remain uninfluenced by the Greek spirit.

" From all these three sources, now, was Greek learning brought to the Arabs in translations. Already at the Court of al-Mansur we meet with a physician from Jundi-Shapur, who is supposed to have translated medical works into Arabic, while under Harun flourished the translator Yuhanna b. Masawayhi. But it was the Caliph al-Ma'mun, himself filled with understanding of, and a lively interest in,

¹ *Gesch. d. Arabische Litteratur*, vol. i, pp. 201 et seqq.

all scientific endeavours, who gave the greatest impulse to this activity. The *Baytu l-Hikma* (' House of Wisdom '), with its attached library and astronomical observatory, founded by him in Baghdad, was the culminating point of an active endeavour to promote learning. The translations produced under him and his immediate successors have entirely overshadowed those of the older school, and are alone preserved to us."

Amongst the most eminent translators whose names here follow are the Christians, Qusta b. Luqa of Ba'labakk (Baalbek) ; Hunayn b. Ishaq of Hira, his son Ishaq, and his nephew Hubaysh.

Thus did the civilisation of 'Abbasid Baghdad become the inheritor of the ancient wisdom of Assyria, Babylonia, Persia, India, and Greece; and for this it was chiefly indebted to heathens like Thabit b. Qurra, Christians like Hunayn and Qusta, Magians, converted or unconverted, like Ibnu 'I-Muqaffa,¹ or Mu'tazilite "heretics" like 'Amr b. Bahr al-Jahidh, besides sundry Jews and Nabathaeans. To this splendid synthesis the Arabs, though, as it has been said, " one of the acutest peoples that have ever existed," lent little save their wonderful and admirable language ; but the functions of assimilation, elucidation, and transmission they performed in a manner which has made mankind, and especially Europe, their debtors. That they were sensible of their own indebtedness to these non-Muslims, who bestowed upon them the wisdom of the ancients, appears, amongst other things, from the elegy composed in praise of Thabit b. Qurra, the Sabaeen physician and mathematician, by the poet Sari ar-Raffa,² wherein he

¹ Amongst translators from Pahlawi into Arabic are mentioned in the *Fihrist* (ed. Flugel, pp. 244-245), besides Ibnu'l-Muqaffa', the family of Naw-Bakht (see also *op. cit.*, pp. 177 and 274), who were ardent Shi'ites, Bahrain, the son of Mardan-shah, *mubad* of Nishapur, and a dozen others. Mention is also made of two learned Indians who made translations from the Sanskrit, and of the celebrated Ibnu' l-Wahshiyya who translated the *Book of Nabathcean Agriculture*.

² Ibn Khallikan, Wiistenfeld's text, vol. i, No. 127; de Slane's transl., vol. i, pp. 288-289.

HERESY IN FASHION

says: "Philosophy was dead, and he revived it amongst us; the traces of medicine were effaced, and he restored them to light."

Strange and heterogeneous were the elements which made up the intellectual atmosphere of Baghdad during the first century of 'Abbasid rule. The pious Muslims of Mecca and Madina who came thither were scandalised to find unbelievers invested with the highest offices at Court, and learned men of every religion holding friendly debate as to high questions of ontology and philosophy, in which, by common consent, all appeal to revealed Scripture was forbidden. Yet was there one religious community which seemed wholly excluded from the general toleration of that latitudinarian Court: to wit, the Manichaeans, or *Zindiqs* as they were generally called. Persecutions of the *Zindiqs* are mentioned by Tabarī as occurring in the reign of al-Mahdī (A.D. 780, 782) and al-Hādī (A.D. 786-7). In the reign of Harunū'r-Rashid a special Inquisitor (*Sahibū 'z-Zandīqa*) was appointed to detect and punish Manichaeans,¹ amongst whom not only Persians and other foreigners, but even pure Arabs, like the poets Salih b. 'Abdu'l-Quddus and Mutl' b. Ayas, were numbered. In the reign of al-Ma'mun, whose truly Persian passion for religious speculation earned him the title of *Amirī'l -kafirīn*, "Commander of the Unfaithful,"² the lot of the *Zindiqs* was less hard; nay, according to von Kremer³ it was fashionable to pose as a heretic, and we find a poet remonstrating in the following lines with one of these sheep dressed in wolf's clothing :—

" O Ibn Ziyad, father Oj Fafar!

*Thou professest outwardly another creed than that which thou
hidest in thy heart.*

Outwardly, according to thy words, thou art a Zindiq,

But inwardly thou art a respectable Muslim.

*Thou art no Zindiq, but thou desirest to be regarded as in the
fashion!"* _____

¹ Von Kremer's *Streifzuge*, pp. 210 et scqq.

² Al-Ya'qubi, ed. Houtsma, p. 546.

³ *op. cit.*, pp. 41-42.

CHAPTER IX

THE GREAT PERSIAN HERESIARCHS OF THIS PERIOD

THE active life of the pre-Muslim creeds of Persia, as opposed to outwardly Muhammadan heresies embodying and reviving in new forms pre-Muslim and non-Muslim ideas, finds its latest expression in the Pseudo-Prophet Bih-afaridh the son of Mahfunidhin, of whom scanty accounts are preserved to us in the *Fihrist* (p. 344) and in al-Bfrunl's *Chronology of Ancient Nations* (Sachau's transl., pp. 193-4), whereof the latter is as follows:—

" In the days of Abu Muslim, the founder of the 'Abbasid dynasty, came forward a man called Bih-afaridh the son of Mahfurudhin in Khwaf, one of the districts of Nishapur, in a place called Sirawand, he being a native of Zawzan. In the beginning of his career he disappeared and betook himself to China¹ for seven years. Then he returned, bringing with him amongst other Chinese curiosities a green shirt, which, when folded up, could be held in the grasp of a man's hand, so thin and flexible it was. He went up to a temple during the night, and on descending thence in the morning was observed by a peasant who was ploughing part of his field. He told this man that he had been in heaven during his absence from them, that heaven and hell had been shown unto him, that God had inspired him, had clothed him in that shirt, and had sent him down to earth in that same hour. The peasant believed his words, and told people that

• Perhaps influenced by the legend of Mani (Manes).

he had beheld him descending from heaven. So he found many adherents amongst the Magians when he came forward as a prophet and preached his new doctrine.

"He differed from the Magians in most rites, but believed in Zoroaster and claimed for his followers all the institutes of Zoroaster. He maintained that he secretly received divine revelations, and established seven prayers for his followers, one in praise of the one God, one relating to the creation of heaven and earth, one relating to the creation of the animals and their nourishment, one relating to death, one relating to the Resurrection and Last Judgment, one relating to those in heaven and hell and what is prepared for them, and one in praise of the people of Paradise.

"He composed for them a book in Persian. He ordered them to worship the substance of the Sun, kneeling on one knee, and in praying always to turn towards the Sun wherever it might be ; to let their hair and locks grow ; to give up the *zamzama*¹ at dinner ; not to sacrifice small cattle unless they were already enfeebled ; not to drink wine ; not to eat the flesh of animals that have died a sudden death, as not having been killed according to prescription ; not to marry their mothers, daughters, sisters, or nieces,² and not to exceed the sum of four hundred *dirhams* as dowry. Further, he ordered them to keep roads and bridges in good condition by means of the seventh part of their property and of the produce of their labour.

"When Abu Muslim came to Nishapur, the *mubadhs* and *herbadhs*³ assembled before him, telling him that this man had infected Islam as well as their own religion. So he sent 'Abdu'llah b. Shu'ba to fetch him. He caught him in the mountains of Badghis and brought him before Abu Muslim, who put him to death, together with such of his followers as he could capture.

"His followers, called *Bih-afaridhiyya*, still keep the institutes of their founder, and strongly oppose the *Zamzamis* amongst the Magians. They maintain that the servant of their prophet had told them that the prophet had ascended into heaven on a common dark-brown horse, and that he will again descend unto them in the same way as he ascended, and will take vengeance on his enemies."⁴

¹ That is, the mumbling of prayers and graces characteristic of the Zoroastrian practice.

² These marriages (called *khvetu-das*) were not only sanctioned but approved by Zoroastrianism.

³ The priests of the second and third grades of the Zoroastrian religion. The chief priests are called *dastur*.

⁴ Compare the expectations entertained by the followers of al-Muqanna,

According to the short account in the *Fihrist* (p. 344), Bih-afaridh accepted Islam at the hands of two of Abu Muslim's *da'is* named Shabib b. Dah and 'Ab du'lldh b. Sa'id, and adopted the black raiment of the 'Abbasids ; but afterwards apostatised and was slain. This account, which rests on the authority of Ibrdhim b. al-'Abbas as-Suli (t A.D. 857-8), adds that "there are to this day in Khurasan a number of people who hold his doctrine." The sect is also mentioned, with the alternative name of Saysdniyya, by Shahristinf (p. 187), who describes them as "the most hostile of God's creatures to the Zamzaml Magians," adding that "they recognise the prophetic mission of Zoroaster, and honour those kings whom Zoroaster honours."

The meagre information which we possess concerning Bih-afaridh does not permit us to form a clear idea as to the essential nature of his doctrine, of which the two most important features, perhaps, are the prominence accorded to the number seven, and the belief in the "occultation" and "return" of the founder. Of the importance attached to certain numbers (7, 12, 19, &c.) by various sects deriving from the extreme Shi'ites (*Ghulat*), and of the persistent recurrence of the belief in the "Return" (*rij'at*) of their heroes, we shall come across numerous examples from this epoch down to our own days. Concerning these *Ghulat* or extreme Shi'ites Shahristanf says (p. 132) :—

"They are such as hold extreme views (*ghalaw*) in respect to their Imams, so that they raise them above the limits of created beings, and ascribe to them Divine virtues, so that often they liken one of the Imams to God, and often they liken God to mankind, thus falling into the two extremes of excess (*ghuluww*) and defect (*taqsir*). These anthropomorphic tendencies of theirs are derived from the sects of the *Hululiyya*

as to his "Return" in the section devoted to him a few pages further on. Al-Balkhi, writing about A.H. 350 (A.D. 960), speaks of the Bih-afaridhis as existing in his time from personal knowledge. See vol. i of CI. Huart's ed. and transl. of the *Kitdbu'l- Bad' wa 't-Tctrikh*, p. 164 of the translation.

[who believe that the Deity can pass into a human form], the *Tandsukhiyya* [who hold the doctrine of Metempsychosis], the Jews, and the Christians. For the Jews liken the Creator to the creature, while the Christians liken the creature to the Creator. And these anthropomorphic tendencies have so infected the minds of these ultra-Shi'ites that they ascribe Divine virtues to some of their Imams. This anthropomorphism belongs primarily and essentially to the Shi'a, and only subsequently was adopted by certain of the Sunnis. . . . The heretical doctrines of the ultra-Shi'ites are four :— Anthropomorphism (*tashbih*), change of [Divine] Purpose (*badd*), return [of the Imam; *rij' at*], and Metempsychosis (*tandsukh*). In every land they bear different names; in Isfahan they are called *Khurramiyya* and *Kudiyya*, in Ray *Mazdakiyya* and *Sinbdiyya*, in Adharbayjan *Dhaquliyya*, in some places *Muhammira* (wearing red as their badge), and in Transoxiana *Mubayyida* (wearing white as their badge)."

These ultra-Shi'ite sects, then, which we have now to consider, and which, under the leadership of Sinbadh the Magian, al-Muqanna' " the Veiled Prophet of Khurasan," Babak, and others, caused such commotion in Persia during this period, do but reassert, like the later Isma'ilis, Batinis, Carmathians, Assassins, and Hurufis, the same essential doctrines of Anthropomorphism, Incarnation, Re-incarnation or "Return," and Metempsychosis; which doctrines appear to be endemic in Persia, and always ready to become epidemic under a suitable stimulus. In our own days they appeared again in the Babi movement, of which, especially in its earlier form (A.D. 1844-1852), they constituted the essential kernel; though in later time, under the guidance of Baha'u'llah († A.D. 1892) and now of his son 'Abbas Efendi "the Most Great Branch " (who appears to be regarded by his followers as a "Return" of Jesus Christ, and is so considered by the now fairly numerous adherents of this doctrine in America), they have been relegated to a subordinate, or at least a less conspicuous, position. The resemblance between these numerous sects, whose history can be clearly traced through the last eleven centuries and a half, is most remarkable, and

extends even to minute details of terminology, **and to the** choice of particular colours (especially red and white) as badges. Thus the early Babis, like the *Mubayyida* of the period now under discussion, wore *white* apparel,¹ while they imitated the *Muhammira* in their fondness for *red* by their choice of ink of that colour in transcribing their books. An interesting question, for the final solution of which material is still wanting, is the extent to which these ideas prevailed in other forms in pre-Muhammadan Persia. The various ultra-Shi'ite risings of which we shall have to speak are commonly regarded, alike by the oldest and the most modern Muhammadan historians, as recrudescences of the doctrines of Mazdak, of whom we have already spoken in the chapter on the Sds&nians (pp. 168-172 *supra*). This is probable enough, but unfortunately our knowledge of the principles on which the system of Mazdak reposed is too meagre to enable us to prove it. It is, however, the view of well-informed writers like the author of the *Fihrist* (pp. 342-345), who wrote in A.D. 987 ; Shahrastim (pp. 193-194), who wrote in A.D. 1127 ; the celebrated minister of the Seljuqs, Nidhamu'l-Mulk (*Siydsat-ndmay*, ed. Schefer, pp. 182-183), who was assassinated in A.D. 1092 by an emissary of those very Isma'ilis whom he so fiercely denounced in his book as the renovators of the heresy of Mazdak, and others ; while the modern Babis have been similarly affiliated both by the historians *Lisdnu' l-Mulk* and Rida'-quli Khan in Persia, and by Lady Sheil² and Professor Noldeke³ in Europe. In the *Fihrist* the section dealing with the movements of which we are about to speak is entitled (p. 342) " the Sect of the Khurramiyya and Mazdakiyya," these being regarded as identical with one another, and with the *Muhammira* (" those who made red their badge"), the

¹ See my translation of the *New History of . . . the Bab* (Cambridge, 1893), pp. 70, 283.

² *Glimpses of Life and Manners in Persia* (1856), p. 180.

³ In an article entitled *Orientalischer Socialismus*, in vol. xviii, pp. 284-291 of the *Deutsche Rundschau* (1879).

followers of Babak "al-Khurrami," and, apparently, the *Mudimiyya*, or sects who believed that Abu Muslim was the Imam, or even an incarnation of the Deity, amongst whom Sinbadh the Magian and Ishdq "the Turk" (so called, we are told, not because he was of Turkish race, but because "he entered the lands of the Turks and summoned them to believe in the Apostolic Mission of Abu Muslim") are included. Similarly of al-Muqanna' ai-Binim says {*pp. laud.*, p. 194) that "he made obligatory for them (i.e., his followers) all the laws and institutes which Mazhdak had established," while Shahristani, as we have already seen, regards the terms Mazdaki, Sinbadi, Khurrami, Mubayyida, and Muhammira as synonymous. The Nidhamu'l-Mulk, in chap. xlv of his *Siyasat-nama* (ed. Schefer, pp. 182-183, French translation, pp. 265-268¹) is more explicit. According to him, after Mazdak's execution his wife, named Khurrama, fled from Ctesiphon to Ray with two of her husband's adherents, and continued to carry on a successful propaganda in that province. The converts to her doctrine were called either Mazdakites (after her husband) or Khurramites (*Khurram-dlnan* or *Khurramiyya*) after her. The sect continued to flourish in Azarbaijan, Armenia, Daylam, Hamadan, Dinawar, Isfahan, and Ahwaz—in other words, throughout the north and west of Persia (*Fihrist*, p. 342)—until the days of Abu Muslim, and was amongst the disaffected elements whose support and sympathy he succeeded in enlisting in his successful attempt to overthrow the Umayyad Caliphate.

To the reverence and even adoration with which Abu Muslim was regarded by his followers we have already alluded (p. 243 *supra*), and his murder by the Caliph ai-Mansur was almost immediately followed by the rebellion of Sinbadh the

Rebellion of
Sinbadh the
Magian
A.D. 755-756—

¹ From chap. xl of this work onwards the numbers of the chapters in the translation are one ahead of those they bear in the text, two successive sections in the text (pp. 125 and 131) being called "fortieth."

Magian,¹ who had been Abu Muslim's friend and partisan—a significant fact, as showing that the great propagandist's religious views were not sufficiently intolerant to alienate from his cause even "guebres." Starting from Nishdpur, his native place, with the avowed intention of avenging Abu Muslim, he soon collected a numerous following, occupied Qumis and Ray (where he took possession of the treasures which Abu Muslim had deposited in that city), and declared his intention of advancing on the Arabian province of the Hijaz and destroying the Ka'ba. He soon attracted to him hosts of Magians from Tabaristan and elsewhere, Mazdakites, Rafidis (Shi'ites), and "Anthropomorphists" (*Mushabbiha*), whom he told that Abu Muslim was not dead, but that, being threatened with death by al-Mansur, he had recited the "Most Great Name" of God, and turned himself into a white dove,³ which flew away. His armed followers are said to have numbered some 100,000 men, and if, as stated by al-Fakhri, 60,000 of these were left dead on the field when he was finally, after many successes, defeated and slain by the 'Abbasid general Jahwar b. Marrar, this can be no exaggeration. This insurrection, though formidable, was short-lived, only lasting seventy days, according to the most trustworthy accounts, though the Nidhamu'l-Mulk says seven years, which is certainly an error.

Ishaq "the Turk," whom we have already mentioned, was another of Abu Muslim's *dd'is* or propagandists, who, on the death of his master, fled into Transoxiana, and taught that Abu Muslim was not dead, but concealed in the mountains near Ray, whence he would issue forth in the fulness of time. According to the

Ishaq "the Turk."

¹ Some account of this is found in al-Fakhri (p. 203); Tabari iii, 119-120; Mas'udi's *Muruju'dh Dhahab*, vi, 188-189; al-Ya'qubi, ii, 441-442; Idem, *KitabiCl-Buldan* (de Goeje's *Bibl. Gcogr. Arab.*, vol. vii), p. 303; Dorn's *Gesch. von Tabaristan*, &c, p. 47; Idem, *Auszuge . . . betreffend die Gesch. . . . der Sudl. Kusienlander des Kaspischen Mccres*, pp. 442-444; Justi's *Iranisches Namenbuch*, pp. 314-315, article *Sumbat* {*Sunfudh*}, § 19.

² Cf. Shahrastani, *op. cit.*, p. i l l, and al-Ya'qubi, ii, p. 313.

Fihrist (p. 345) he was a descendant of Zayd the 'Alid, and therefore presumably claimed himself to be the Imdm, though he took advantage of Abu Muslim's popularity to recommend himself to his followers ; but according to another authority cited in the same work as " well informed as to the affairs of the Muslimiyya," he was a common and illiterate man of Transoxiana who had a familiar spirit which he used to consult, and who declared that Abu Muslim was a prophet sent by Zoroaster, and that Zoroaster was alive and had never died, but would reappear in due season to restore his religion. ^a Al-Balkhi," adds our author, "and some others call the Muslimiyya (or followers of Abu Muslim) Khurram-diniyya" ; "and," adds he, " there are amongst us in Balkh a number of them at a village called . . . ,¹ but they conceal themselves."

The next manifestation of these anthropomorphic ultra-Shi'ites took place a year or two later (A.D. ^{The} Rawandiyya. 758~9),² and is thus described by Dozy 3 :—

" Still more foolish were those fanatics who, inspired by Indo-Persian ideas, named their prince 'God.' So long as the victory remained doubtful the 'Abbasids had been able to tolerate this species of cult, but since they had gained the mastery they could do so no longer, for they would have aroused against themselves not only the orthodox but the whole Arab race. On the other hand they alienated the sympathy of the Persians by refusing to be God for them; but they had to choose, and the poor Persians, who all the while meant so well, were sacrificed to the Arabs. The Rawandis (of Rawand near Isfahan⁴) learned this to their cost when

¹ Name uncertain ; perhaps *Khurramabad*, a common name of Persian villages.

² Tabari (iii, 129 *et seqq.* and 418) mentions the incident first recorded under the year A.H. 141 (A.D. 758-9), but adds that some place it in A.H. 136 01 137 (A.D. 753-5), while he records a similar narrative under A.H. 158 (A.D. 774-5). The last two dates are those of the accession and decease of al-Mansur, and the narrative may simply have been recorded there by one of his authorities as a piece of undated general information about that Caliph. See also Dinawari, p. 380, and al-Fakhri, p. 188.

³ *L'Islamisme* (transl. of V. Chauvin), pp. 241-243.

⁴ There were two places called Rawand, one near Kashan and Isfahan,

they came to present their homage to al-Mansur; they called him their God, and believed that they saw in the governor of Mecca the Angel Gabriel, and in the captain of the bodyguards him into whom the soul of Adam had migrated.* Not only was their homage rejected, but their chiefs were cast into prison.² From this moment al-Mansur ceased in the eyes of the Rawandis to be Caliph. The ideas of legitimate prince and of God were for them two inseparable things, and if the sovereign declared himself not to be God, he could be nothing but a usurper, and ought to be deposed. This project they immediately prepared to carry out. They proceeded to the prison, but to avoid exciting attention they took with them an empty bier, which they caused to be carried before them, as though they were about to bury some one. On arriving at the prison they broke down its doors, released their chiefs, and then attacked the Caliph's palace. There was an extremely critical moment, but at length troops hastened up in sufficient numbers, and the Rawandis fell beneath the blows of their swords. None the less there were thousands of people in Persia who thought as they did, and for whom the 'Abbasids were no longer Caliphs since they had refused to be God. Hence the reason why such as had fewer scruples in this matter found in this country a soil wherein the seed of revolt bore fruit with vigour."

The total number of these Rawandis who walked round the Caliph's palace at Hashimiyya (for Baghdad was not yet built)

crying, "This is the Palace of our Lord!" was
Doctrines of the Rawandis. only about six hundred,³ yet the sect, as Tabari tells us (iii, 418), continued to exist till his own time—that is, until the beginning of the tenth century. Besides the doctrines of Incarnation and Metempsychosis, they seem to have held Mazdak's views as to the community of wives, and to have believed themselves to be possessed of miraculous powers. Some of them, we learn, cast themselves from high

the other near Nishapur (see de Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikan's *Biographical Dictionary*, vol. i, p. 77). Dozy seems to be mistaken in supposing that the former is here meant, since Tabari (iii, 129), al-Fakhri (188), &c, speak of these Rawandis as "from Khurasan."

¹ Al-Fakhri only says "a certain other man." Tabari (iii, 129) says that they supposed 'Uthman b. Nahik and al-Haytham b. Mu'awiya to be incarnations of Adam and Gabriel respectively.

² Two hundred of them were so imprisoned. ³ Tabari, iii, p. 130.

places, believing that they could fly, and were dashed to pieces. They were certainly, as Dinawarī says (p. 380), connected with Abu Muslim, whose death it was one of their objects to avenge. The peril in which for a short while the life of the Caliph al-Mansur was placed for lack of a good horse led to the institution of the *farasu'n-nawba* (Persian, ^{The Farasu'n-nawba.} *asp-i-nawbati*) or "sentry-horse," a good horse, saddled, bridled, and equipped, which was henceforth always in readiness at the Caliph's palace in case of emergency. The same institution prevailed till much later times at the Courts of local rulers—e.g., with the Samanid kings in the tenth century of our era.¹

In the years A.D. 766-768, still in the reign of al-Mansur, another Persian pseudo-prophet named Ustidhsis, rose in revolt in the districts of Hedit, Badghis, and Sisrin,³ ^{Ustidhsis (A.D. 766-8.)} collected a following of 300,000 men, and caused much trouble to the Government ere he was finally defeated by Khazim b. Khuzayma. Seventy thousand of his followers were slain, and fourteen thousand more, taken captive, were beheaded immediately after the battle. Ustidhsis shortly afterwards surrendered, was sent in chains to Baghdad, and was there put to death. Thirty thousand of his followers who surrendered with him were set at liberty. Al-Khayzurdn, the wife of al-Mahdi and mother of al-Hadi and Hdrunur-Rashid, was, according to Sir William Muir (who, however, does not give his authority), the daughter of Ustidhsis. ³ She is mentioned by ath-Tha'alibi in his *Latd'ifu'l-Ma'drif* (ed. de Jong, p. 54) as one of the three women who gave birth to two Caliphs. One of the two others was likewise a Persian, namely, Shdh-Parand, the grand-daughter of Yazdigird the last Sasanian king, who was married to Walid b. 'Abdu'l-

¹ Cf. my translation of the *Chahar Maqala* of Nidhami-i-'Arudi-i-Samarqandi in the *J. R. A. S.* for 1899, p. 55 of the *tiragc-h-part*

² Tabari, iii, 354-8 ; al-Ya'qubi, ii, 457-8. The latter writer distinctly states that he claimed to be a Prophet. 3 *op. cit.*, p. 459.

Malik, the Umayyad Caliph, and bore him Yazid III and Ibrahim.

About ten years later (A.D. 777-780), at the beginning of the reign of al-Mahdi, took place the much more serious rising of al-Muqanna', the "Veiled Prophet of Khurasan" celebrated by Moore in *Lalla Rookh*, by the side of which the less known and more obscure insurrection of Yusufu'l-Barm, "whose object was naught else than to exhort men to good and turn them aside from evil,"¹ sinks into insignificance. Of this celebrated heresiarch al-Biruni gives the following account in his *Chronology of Ancient Nations* (Sachau's translation, p. 194 ; text, p. 211) :—

"Thereupon came forward Hashim b. Hakim, known by the name of al-Muqanna', in Merv, in a village called Kawakimardan. He used to veil himself in green silk, because he had only one eye. He maintained that he was God, and that he had incarnated himself, since before incarnation nobody could see God. He crossed the river Oxus and went to the districts of Kash and Nasaf (Nakhshab). He entered into correspondence with the Khaqan, and solicited his help. The sect of the *Mubayyida* + and the Turks gathered round him, and the property and women (of his enemies), he delivered up to them, killing everybody who opposed him. He made obligatory for them all the laws and institutes which Mazhdak had established. He scattered the armies of al-Mahdi, and ruled during fourteen years, but finally he was besieged and killed in A.H. 169 (A.D. 785-786). Being surrounded on all sides he burned himself, that his body might be annihilated, and that, in consequence, his followers might see therein a confirmation of his claim to be God. He did not, however, succeed in annihilating his body; it was found in the oven, and his head was cut off and sent to the Caliph al-Mahdi, who was then in Aleppo. There is still a sect in Transoxiana who practise his religion, but only secretly, while in public they profess Islam. The history of

¹ See van Vloten's *Recherches sur la Domination Arabe*, p. 59 ; Tabari, iii, 470 ; al-Ya'qubi, ii, pp. 478-479.

² So called, as already explained, because of their white raiment, which won for them amongst the Persians the title, *Sapid-Famagan*.

al-Muqanna' I have translated from the Persian into Arabic, and the subject has been exhaustively treated in my history of the *Mubayyida* and Carmathians."¹

The three things connected with al-Muqanna' which are best known and most widely celebrated are the mask of gold (or veil of green silk, according to some accounts) which he continually wore, to spare his followers the dazzling and insupportable effulgence of his countenance, as he asserted, or, as his opponents said, to conceal from them his deformed and hideous aspect ; the false moon which he caused, night after night, to rise from a well at Nakhshab (whence he is often called by the Persians *Mah-sazanda*, " the moon-maker ") ; and the final suicide of himself and his followers, by which, as it would appear, he desired not only to avoid falling into the hands of his enemies, but to make his partisans believe that he had disappeared and would return again, with which object he endeavoured to destroy his own body and those of his companions. Of the false moon al-Qazwini (who wrote during the first half of the thirteenth century of our era) speaks as follows in his *Atharu'l-Bilad* (ed. Wustenfeld, p. 312), under the heading *Nakhshab* :—

Al-Qazwini's
account of
al-Muqanna'.

" *Nakhshab*. A famous city in the land of Khurasan, from which have arisen many saints and sages. With it was connected al-Hakim al-Muqanna',² who made a well at Nakhshab whence there rose up a moon which men saw like the [real] moon. This thing became noised abroad through the horizons, and people flocked to Nakhshab to see it, and wondered greatly at it. The common folk supposed it to be magic, but it was only effected by [a knowledge of] mathematics and the reflection of the rays of the moon; for they [afterwards] found at the bottom of the well a great bowl filled with quicksilver. Yet withal he achieved a wonderful success, which was disseminated

¹ These works of al-Biruni are unfortunately lost to us.

² *Ibnul-Muqaffa* in the text is, of course, an error for *al-Muqanna'*. From al-Biruni's account (cited above) it would appear that his own name was *Hashim*, and his father's name *Hakim*, but al-Qazwini seems to have taken the latter as a common noun in the sense of " The Sage."

through the horizons and noised abroad until men mentioned him in their poems and proverbs, and his memory abode amongst mankind."

Ibn Khallikin in his celebrated *Biographies* (translation of Baron MacGuckin de Slane, vol. ii, pp. 205-206) thus speaks of him ¹ :—

" Al-Muqanna' al-Khurasani, whose real name was 'Ata, but whose father's name is unknown to me (though it is said to have been Ibn Khallikan's ^{account of} Hakim), began his life as a fuller at Merv. Having acquired some knowledge of Magic and Incantations, he pretended to be an Incarnation of the Deity, which had passed into him by Metempsychosis, and he said to his partisans and followers : ' Almighty God entered into the figure of Adam ; for which reason He bade the angels adore Adam, "*and they adored Him, except Iblis, who proudly refused,*" * whereby he justly merited the Divine Wrath. Then from Adam He passed into the form of Noah, and from Noah into the forms of each of the prophets and sages successively, until He appeared in the form of Abu Muslim al-Khurasani (already mentioned), from whom He passed into me/ His pretensions having obtained credence with some people, they adored him and took up arms in his defence, notwithstanding what they beheld as to the extravagance of his claims and the hideousness of his aspect; for he was ill-made, one-eyed, short in stature [and a stutterer], and never uncovered his face, but *veiled* it with a mask of gold, from which circumstance he received his appellation of ' the Veiled' (*al-Muqanna*). The influence which he exercised over the minds of his followers was acquired by the delusive miracles which he wrought in their sight by means of magic and incantations. One of the deceptions which he exhibited to them was the image of a moon, which rose so as to be visible to the distance of a two months' journey, after which it set; whereby their belief in him was greatly increased. It is to this moon that Abu'l-'Ala al-Ma'arri alludes in the following line :—

" Awake [from the delusions of love] ! *That full moon¹ whose head is shrouded in a veil*
Is only a snare and a delusion, like the Moon of al-Muqanna'!"

¹ For the text of this passage, see Wiistenfeld's ed., Biography No. 431.

² Qur'an ii. 31.

"This verse forms part of a long *qasida*. To it also alludes Abu'l-Qasim Hibatu'llah b. Sina'u'l-Mulk (a poet of whom we shall speak presently) in the course of a *qasida* wherein he says :—

"' Beware t For the Moon of al-Muqanna' does not rise
More fraught with magic than my turbaned moon / "'

" When the doings of al-Muqanna' became notorious, and his fame was spread abroad, the people rose up against him and attacked him in his castle wherein he had taken refuge, and besieged him there. Perceiving that death was inevitable, he assembled his women and gave them a poisoned drink, whereby they died ; after which he swallowed a draught of the same liquor and expired. On entering the castle, the Muslims put all his partisans and followers to the sword. This happened in the year A.H. 163 (A.D. 779-780): may God's curse rest upon him, and with God do we take refuge from such deceptions ! — I never found the name or the situation of this castle mentioned by any person, that I might record it, until at last I read it in the *Kitabu'sh-Shubuhat* of Yaqutu'l-Hamawi (who will be mentioned presently, if God please), which he wrote to differentiate those places which participate in the same name.² He there says, in the section devoted to *Sanam*, that there are four places of this name, whereof the fourth is the Castle of Sanam constructed by al-Muqanna* the Kharijite [*i.e.*, the heretic rebel] in Transoxiana. God knows best, but it would appear that this is the castle in question.—I have since found in the History of Khurasan that it is the very one, and that it is situated in the district of Kashsh ;³ but God knows best I "

Ibnu'l-Athir in his great chronicle (Cairo ed., vol. vi, pp. 13-14 and 17-18, under the years A.H. 159 and 161) confirms

¹ *I.e.*, the beautiful face, surmounted by a turban, of my beloved.

² This work, properly entitled *Kitabu'l-Mushtarik*, or " Lexicon of geographical homonyms," was published by Wiistenfeld at Gottingen in 1846. The passage to which allusion is here made occurs on p. 254. Shaykh Shihabu 'd Din Abu 'Abdi'llah Ydqut al-Plamawi, the last great Muslim geographer, was of Greek origin. He was born about A.D. 1178, and died about 1229.

³ This is confirmed by al-Ya'qubi in his *Kitabu'l-Buldan* (Bibl. Geogr. Arab., vol. vii, p. 304). It is there stated that al-Muqanna' and his followers, when hard pressed by the besiegers, " drank poison, and all died together." See also Tabari, iii, 484 and 494.

most of the above particulars. According to him al-Muqanna' was named Hakim, and only made known his pretensions to be a Divine Incarnation to a select circle of his Followers, declaring that from Abu Muslim the Divinity had passed into Hashim, by which name he intended himself, so that the war-cry of his followers was, "O Hashim, help us!" ("YA Hashim, a'in-na!"). He was supported by the *Mubayyida*, or "White-clad" heretics, in Sughd and Bukhara, and also by many of the pagan Turks. He held Abu* Muslim to be superior to the Prophet, and one of his avowed objects was to avenge the death of Yahya b. Zayd, a great-grandson of al-Husayn, who was killed in A.D. 742-3. The number of his followers who deserted him at the last, on a promise of quarter from Sa'id al-Harashi, the general in command of the beleaguering forces, is stated at 30,000, while those who remained with him were about 2,000.

"When he saw that death was inevitable," says Ibnu'l-Athir (who is followed by al-Fakhri), "he assembled his women and his family, and gave them poison to drink, and commanded that his own body should be burned with fire, that none [of his enemies] might obtain possession of it. Others say that he burned all that was in his castle, including beasts and clothing and the like, after which he said, 'Let him who desires to ascend with me into heaven cast himself with me into this fire.' So he cast himself into it, with his family, and his women, and his chosen companions, and they were burned, so that when the army entered the Castle, they found it empty and void. This was one of the circumstances which added to the delusion of such as remained of his followers, of whom are they who are called the *Mubayyida* in Transoxiana, save that they conceal their belief. But some say that he, too, drank poison and died, and that al-Harashi sent his head to al-Mahdi, and that it reached him when he was at Aleppo on one of his campaigns in A.H. 163 (= A.D. 779-780)." These *Mubayyida*, or followers of al-Muqanna', seem to have continued to exist until the eleventh century.¹ Abu'l-Faraj (Bar-Hebraeus),² who flourished in the thir-

¹ They are spoken of by Shaykh Abu'l-Mudhaffar Tahir al-Isfara'ini (t. A.D. 1078-9) as existing in his time. See Haarbrücker's translation of Shahrastani's *Kitabu'l-Milal*, pp. 378 and 409.

² Beyroul ed. of 1890, pp. 217-218.

teenth century of our **era** (A.D. 1226-1286), adds that al-Muqanna, "had promised his followers that his spirit would pass into the form of a grizzle-headed man riding on a grey horse,¹ and that he would return unto them after so many years, and cause them to possess the earth."

Our information as to the details of the doctrines **held** by the heresiarchs mentioned above is lamentably defective, but all that we know confirms the statement of Shah-ristini (already cited)² as to the essential identity of the sects which were called after Mazdak, Sinbadh, and al-Muqanna', and which were also denoted by the name *Khurramiyya*, *Mubayyida*, and *Muhammira*. Under one of these names (or the Persian equivalent of the last, *Surkh* "Alam, "Red Standards") we find risings of these schismatics chronicled in A.D. 778-9 (Tab. iii, 493 ; Din. 382 ; *Siydsat-nd'ma* pp. 199-200); in A.D. 796-7 (Tab. iii, 645); and in A.D. 808 (Tab. iii, 732 ; Din. 387). The next great heresiarch, however, appeared in the reign of al-Ma'mun. This was Babak, called *al-Khurrami*, who is first mentioned by Tabari under the year A.H. 201 (A.D. 816-817), and who for more than twenty years (till A.D. 838) was the terror of Western and North-Western Persia, defeating in turn Yahya b. Ma'adh, 'Isa b. Muhammad, Muhammad b. Humayd of Tus, and other generals sent against him, and was only at last conquered and captured with much difficulty, through cunning stratagems, by the celebrated Afshin. Of these wars full accounts are given by all the principal Muhammadan historians, especially Tabari ;³ but of Babak's private life, character and

¹ Cf. what is said on p. 309 *supra* as to the expected return of Bih-afaridh.

² See Haarbrucker's translation, p. 200 ; Cureton's text, p. 132 ; Schefer's *Chresiomathie Persane*, vol i, p. 177 ; the Nidhamu'l-Mulk's *Siyasat-nama* (ed. Schefer), p. 199.

³ See particularly Tabari, iii, pp. 1015, 1039, 1044, 1045) 1099, 1101, 1165, 1170-1179, 1186-1235, and, for Afshin's fall and death, 1308-1314 ; Dinawari, PP- 397-401 ; Baladhuri, pp. 329-330 and 340 ; Ya'qubi, pp. 563-565, 575, 577-579, and for Afshin, 582-584 ; the Fihnst, pp. 342-344 ; Qaswini's

doctrine the most detailed information is contained in the following passage of the *Fihrist* (pp. 342-344), the author of which wrote about A.D. 987, a hundred and fifty years after BEbak's death. After speaking of the Khurramis and Mazdakis, this writer passes to the Babaki Khurramis, concerning whom he says :—

"Now as for the Babaki Khurramis, their founder was Babak al-Khurrami, who used to say to such as he desired to lead into error that he was God, and who introduced into the Khurrami sects murder, rapine, wars and cruel punishments, hitherto unknown to them.

Account of Bibak
in the Fihrist

" *Cause of the origin of his pretensions, his rebellion, his wars and his execution.*

"Says Waqid b. 'Amr at-Tamimi, who compiled the history of Babak: 'His father was an oil-seller of al-Mada'in (Ctesiphon) who emigrated to the frontiers of Adharbayjan and settled in a village called Bilal-abadh, in the district of Maymadh.^x He used to carry his oil in a vessel on his back, and wander through the villages in the district. He conceived a passion for a one-eyed woman, who afterwards became the mother of Babak, and with her he cohabited for a long while. And while she and he were [on one occasion] away from the village, enjoying one another's company in a glade, and devoting themselves to wine which they had with them, behold, there came women from the village to draw water from a fountain in that glade, and they heard the sound of a voice singing in the Nabathan tongue. They made in that direction and fell upon the two of them. 'Abdu'llah fled, but they seized Babak's mother by the hair, brought her to the village, and exposed her to contumely there.'

" Says Waqid : 'Then this oil-seller petitioned her father, and he gave her to him in marriage, and she bore him Babak. Then he

Atharu'l-Bilad, 213, 344; *Siyasat-nama*, pp. 200-203 ; Ibn Khallikan (de Slane's translation), vol. iii, p. 276 ; Ibn Qutayba's *Kitabu'l-Ma'drif* p. 198 ; de Goeje's *Bibl. Geogr. Arab*, i, 203 ; vi, 121 ; v, 52, 284-285, 307, 309 ; vii, 259, 272 ; viii, 88, 170, 352-353 ; Mas'udi's *Muruju'dh-Dhahab* (ed. B. de Meynard), vi, 187 ; vii, 62, 123-132, 138-139, &c.

¹ In the district of Ardabil and Arrajan. See B. de Meynard's *Diet de la Perse*, p. 557.

BABAK AL-KHURRAMI

went forth in one of his journeys to the Mountain of Sabalan,¹ where there fell upon him one who smote him from behind and wounded him so that he died after a little while. And Babak's mother began to act as a professional wet-nurse for wages till such time as he reached the age of ten years. It is said that she went forth one day to seek Babak, who was pasturing the cattle of a certain tribe, and found him lying naked under a tree, taking his noontide sleep; and that she saw under each hair on his breast and head a drop of blood. Then he woke up suddenly from his sleep, and stood erect, and the blood which she had seen passed away and she found it not. "Then," said she, "I knew that my son was destined for some glorious mission."

"Says Waqid: 'And again Babak was with ash-Shibl ibnu'l-Mu-naqqa al-Azdi in the district of Sara,² looking after his cattle, and from his hirelings he learned to play the drum. Then he went to Tabriz in Adharbayjan, where he was for about two years in the service of Muhammad ibnu'r-Rawwad al-Azdi. Then he returned to his mother, being at that time about eighteen years of age, and abode with her.'

"Says Waqid b. 'Amr: 'Now there were in the mountain of al-Badhdh and the hills connected therewith two men of the barbarians⁴ holding the Khurrami doctrine, possessed of wealth and riches, who disputed as to which should hold sway over the Khurramis inhabiting these hills, that the supremacy might belong exclusively to one of them. One was named Jawidan the son of Suhrak,⁵ while the other was better known by his *kunya* of Abu 'Imran; and there was continual war between them during the summer, while in winter-time the snow kept them apart by closing the passes. Now Jawidan, who was Babak's master, went forth from his city with two thousand sheep, which he intended to bring into the town of Zanjan, one of the towns in the marches of Qazwin. So he entered it, sold his sheep, and turned back to the mountain of al-Badhdh, where, being overtaken by the snow and the night in the district of Mimad,⁶ he turned aside to the village of Bilalabadh,

¹ A high mountain, covered with perpetual snow, near Ardabil. See *Diet de la Perse*, p. 300.

² Or Saraw, in Adharbayjan. See *Bibl. Geogr. Arab.*, vii, 271, last line.

³ This was, till the last, Babak's great and chiefest stronghold.

⁴ Probably Persians. The arrogance of the Arabs impelled them, like the Greeks, to regard all foreigners as barbarous folk.

⁵ Concerning this name, see Justi's *Iranisches Namenbuch*, p. 292.

⁶ See Barbier de Meynard's *Diet de la Perse*, p. 557.

where he sought hospitality from the *jazir*¹ of the place, who, holding Jawidan in light esteem, passed him on to the mother of Babak, bidding her entertain him. And she, by reason of poverty and straitened means, had no food [to set before him], wherefore she rose up and kindled a fire, being unable to do more than this [for his entertainment], while Babak waited upon his servants and beasts, and tended them, and gave them water to drink. And Jawidan sent him out to buy for him food and wine and fodder, and when he brought him these things, he conversed and talked with him, and found him, notwithstanding his detestable character, and though his tongue was cramped by outlandish speech, of good understanding, and saw him to be a cunning rogue. So he said to Babak's mother, "Oh woman, I am a man from the mountain of al-Badhdh, where I enjoy consideration and opulence, and I need [the services of] this thy son, wherefore give him to me, that I may take him with me, and make him my agent over my farms and estates, and I will send thee his wages, fifty *dirhams* every month." She replied, "Thou seemest well-intentioned, and the signs of opulence are apparent in thee, and my heart feels confidence in thee ; take him with thee, therefore, when thou departest."

"Then Abu 'Imran came down from his mountain against Jawidan, and fought with him, but was routed and slain by him. And Jawidan returned unto his mountain, bearing a wound which caused him anxiety, and abode in his house three days, and then died. Now his wife had conceived a passion for Babak, who had yielded to her guilty desires, and so, when Jawidan died, she said to him, "Verily thou art strong and cunning ; Jawidan is dead, and I have not mentioned this to any one of his followers. Prepare thyself for to-morrow, when I will assemble them before thee, and will inform them that Jawidan said : 'I desire to die this night, and that my spirit should go forth from my body, and enter into the body of Babak, and associate itself with his spirit. Verily he will accomplish for himself and for you a thing which none hath heretofore accomplished and which none shall hereafter accomplish ; for verily he shall take possession of the earth, and shall slay the tyrants, and shall restore the Mazdakites, and by him shall the lowest of you become mighty, and the meanest of you be exalted.'" And Babak's ambition was aroused by what she said, and he rejoiced thereat, and prepared himself to undertake it.

¹ According to the *Muhifu'l-Muhit* this word has in 'Iraq the special signification of one chosen by his fellow-villagers to entertain official guests quartered on the village.

" So when it was morning, she assembled before her the army of Jawidan, and they said, " How is it that he doth not summon us and give us his instructions ?" She answered, " Naught prevented him from so doing save that ye were scattered abroad in your homes in the villages, and that, had he sent to assemble you, tidings of this would have been spread abroad; wherefore he, fearing the malice of the Arabs towards you, laid upon me that which I now convey to you, if ye will accept it and act in accordance with it." " Tell us," they answered, " what were the wishes he expressed to thee, for verily we never opposed his commands during his life, nor will we oppose them now that he is dead." " He said to me," she replied, "' Verily I shall die this night, and my spirit will go forth from my body, and will enter into the body of this lad, my servant, and I purpose to set him in authority over my followers, wherefore, when I am dead, make known to them this thing, and that there is no true religion in him who opposeth me herein, or who chooseth for himself the contrary of what I have chosen.'" They answered, " We accept his testament to thee in respect to this lad."

" Then she called for a cow, and commanded that it should be slain and flayed, and that its skin should be spread out, and on the skin she placed a bowl filled with wine, and into it she broke bread, which she placed round about the bowl. Then she called them, man by man, and bade each of them tread the skin with his foot, and take a piece of bread, plunge it in the wine, and eat it, saying, " I believe in thee, O Spirit of Babak, as I believe in the spirit of Jawidan ;" and that each should then take the hand of Babak, and do obeisance before it, and kiss it. And they did so, until such time as food was made ready for her ; then she brought forth food and wine to them, and seated Babak on her bed, and sat beside him publicly before them. And when they had drunk three draughts each, she took a sprig of basil and offered it to Babak, and he took it from her hand, and this was their marriage. Then [their followers] came forth and did obeisance to the two of them, acknowledging the marriage. . . ."

Doctrines of
Babak.

The most important statements contained in the above narrative as to Babak's doctrines are :—

(1) That he declared himself to be God, or at least a Divine Theophany.

(2) That he declared that the soul of his master Jawidan had passed into him.¹ He thus held two at least, and probably

¹ This is confirmed by Tabari, iii, 1015.

three, of the four doctrines (*hulul*, or the passing of God into human form ; *tandsukh*, or the passing of the soul from one body to another ; and *rij'at*, or the return of a departed soul in a new tabernacle of flesh) regarded by Shahristanl (see p. 311 *supra*) as characteristic of all sects of the *Ghulat* or "immoderate" Shi'ites. Whether Babak was of pure Persian extraction is doubtful, for the *Fihrist* represents his father as singing songs in the Nabathæan language, while Dinawari (p. 397) expresses the opinion = that he was one of the sons of Mutahhar the son of Fatima the daughter of Abu Muslim. The Nidhamu'l-Mulk mentions in his *Siyssat-nama* (ed. Schefer, p. 204) that the Khurramfs in their secret gatherings used first to call down blessings on Abu Muslim, the Mahdl, and Ffruz, the son of the above-mentioned Fatima, whom they called "the Wise Child" (*Kudak-i-Da'na'fo* and who may perhaps be identical with Babak's father Mutahhar. It also appears that Babak in the main merely perpetuated doctrines already taught by his master Jawldan (whose followers are called by Tabarf, iii, 1015, *al -Fawldaniyya*), only adding to them, in the words of the *Fihrist* above cited, "murder, rapine, wars, and cruel punishments, hitherto unknown to them." He certainly seems to have been of a bloodthirsty disposition, for according to Tabarf (iii, p. 1233) he slew in twenty years 255,500 persons, while Mas'iidf (*Kitabut-tanblh*, p. 353) estimates the number of his victims as " 500,000 at the lowest computation." As regards his relation to the other sects which we have mentioned, he was, as the *Fihrist* tells us, " to restore the doctrines of the Mazdakites ; " and we find (*Siydsat-nama*, p. 201) one of his generals bearing the name of 'All Mazdak. He is generally called *al-Khurraml*, a title which the *Fihrist* also applies to Jawfdan and his rival Abu 'Imran, and which, according to the *Siydsat-nama* (p. 182) was simply synonymous with Mazdakite. His followers are commonly spoken of as

¹ Babak's pedigree was, however, very uncertain. Cf. Tabarf, iii, p. 1232.

the Khurramfe, but sometimes (e.g., Tabarf, iii, 1235, where they are described as fighting for Theophilus against the Muslims) as *al-Muhammira*, "the Wearers of Red."

It is unnecessary for our purpose to recount the long wars of Babak against the Muslims, or to enumerate his many and brilliant successes. Suffice it to say that, after enjoying complete impunity for twenty-two years (A.H. 201-222 or 223, A.D. 816-838), he was ultimately defeated and taken captive by Afshn, sent to Surra-man-ra'a, and there put to death before the Caliph al-Mu'tasim. His body was crucified there on a spot called *al-'Aqaba* ("the Hill"), still famous for this in Tabari's time (iii, 1231), while his head was sent to Khurasan. His brother 'Abdu'llah was sent in the custody of Ibn Sharwfn at-Tabari to Baghdad, where he suffered a like fate. On the way thither the prisoner was lodged in the Castle of Baradan. "Who art thou?" he inquired of his custodian. "The son of Sharwin, Prince of Tabaristan," replied the other. "Praise be to God!" exclaimed Babak's brother, "that He hath vouchsafed to me one of the *dihqans* (Persian landed gentry) to superintend my execution!" Ibn Sharwin pointed to Nudnud, Babak's executioner, and said, "It is he only who will superintend thy execution." "Thou art my man," said 'Abdu'llah, turning towards him, "and this other is only a barbarian. Tell me now, wert thou bidden to give me anything to eat, or not?" "Tell me what you would like," replied the executioner. "Make for me," said 'Abdu'llah, "some sweet wheaten porridge (*faltdhaj*)."

Having eaten heartily of this nocturnal meal, he said, "O So-and-so, to-morrow thou shalt know that I am a *dihqan* (i.e., a Persian gentleman of the old stock), if it please God." Then he asked for some date-wine, which was also given to him, and which he drank slowly and deliberately, till it was near morning, when the journey was continued to Baghdad. When they reached the head of the Bridge, the Governor,

Execution of
Babak and his
brother
'Abdu'llah.

Ishaq b. Ibrahim, ordered 'Abdu'llah's hands and feet to be cut off, during which he uttered no sound and spoke no word. Then he was crucified on the eastern side of the river, between the two bridges. Yet was he not mocked to the same degree as Babak, who was brought forth mounted on an elephant, clad in a robe of brocade, and crowned with a round *qalansuwa*, or Persian cap, of marten-skin.

About a year later (September, A.D. 840) the body of Mazyar, the rebel prince of Tabaristan, was gibbeted beside that of Babak, concerning which pitiable spectacle the poet Abu Tammim (t A.D. 845-6) has the following verses¹ :—

Execution of
Mazyar, who is
gibbeted beside
Babak.

*" The fever of my heart was cooled when Babak became the neighbour of Mazyar ;
He now makes the second with him under the vault of heaven;
but he was not like, 'the second of two, when they were both in the Cave.' •
They seem to stand aside that they may conceal some news from the curious inquirer.
Their raiment is black, and the hands of the Samum³ might be supposed to have woven for them a vest of pitch.
Morning and evening they ride on slender steeds, brought out for them from the stables of the carpenters.
They stir not from their place, and yet the spectator might suppose them to be always on a journey."*

With them was soon associated a third, no less than Afshin himself, the conqueror of Babak, the secret abettor of Mazyar in his revolt against 'Abdu'llah b. Tahir, the Caliph's governor of Khurdsan. He too, though formerly one of the Caliph's chief generals and favourite courtiers, was not less Persian by birth and sympathy than the

Execution of
Afshin.

* Cited by Ibn Khallikan, ed. Wiistenfeld, No. 709; de Slane's trans., voi. iii, p. 276, which version is here given.

¹ Allusion is made to the prophet and Abu Bakr in the Cave of Thawr.
See Qur'an ix, 40.

² The burning poisonous wind of the desert, commonly called *Simoom*.

two others who bore him company at that grim trysting-place.¹ Of his trial a very interesting account is given by Tabarf (Hi, pp. 1308-1313), which is significant as showing how thin a veneer of Islam sufficed for a high officer of the Commander of the Faithful (until he fell into disgrace for purely political reasons) at this period. The substance of this narrative, which is on the authority of an eye-witness, Harun b. 'Isd h. Mansur, is as follows :—

Amongst those present at the trial were Ahmad b. Abi Du'ad, Ishaq b. Ibrahim b. Mus'ab, Muhammad b. 'Abdu'l-

Malik az-Zayyat, who acted as prosecutor,
Trial of Afshin. Mazyar (who had turned " King's evidence," but,

as we have already seen, with no benefit to himself), the Mubadh, or high-priest of the Magians, a prince of Sughd, and two men from the same province clad in tatters. These two last were first examined. They uncovered their backs, which

were seen to be raw from scourging. " Knowest thou these men ?" inquired Ibnu'z-Zayyat of Afshin. " Yes," replied he : " this one is a *muadhdhitty* and that one an *imam*; they built a mosque at Ushrusna, and I inflicted on each of them a thousand stripes, because I had covenanted with the princes of Sughd that I would leave all men unmolested in the religion which they professed, and these two fell upon a temple wherein were idols worshipped by some of the people of Ushrusna, cast them forth, and made the place into a mosque; wherefore I punished each of them with a thousand stripes, because they had acted aggressively and hindered the people in their worship,"

¹ See especially, as illustrating his hatred of the Arabs, pp. 199-207 of the *Tarikh-i-Bayhaqi* (Calcutta, 1862), and the translation of this remarkable passage given by Kazimirski at pp. 149-154 of his edition of the *Diwan cf Manuchihr* (Paris, 1886), and cf. de Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikan, vol. i, p. 63, and p. 72, n. 9, where, on the authority of Ibn Shakir, Afshin is said to have been descended from the old Persian kings, an assertion confirmed by Bayhaqi (*op. cit.*, p. 203, ll. 1-2 = Kaaimiraki, *op. cit.*, p. 151, last five lines).

Ibnu'z-Zayyat then passed to another count. "What," inquired he, "is a book in thy possession which thou hast adorned with gold, jewels and brocade, and which contains blasphemies against God?" "It is a book," replied Afshin, "which I inherited from my father, and which contains some of the wisdom of the Persians; and as for its alleged blasphemies, I profit by its literary merit and ignore the rest. And I received it thus sumptuously adorned, nor did need arise to compel me to strip it of its ornaments, so I left it as it was, just as you have the *Book of Kallla and Dimna* and the *Book of Mazdak*ⁱ in your house, nor did I deem this incompatible with my profession of Islam."

Then the Magian priest came forward and said, "This man was in the habit of eating the flesh of animals killed by strangulation, and used to persuade me to eat it, pretending that it was more tender than the flesh of beasts slain with the knife. Moreover, he used every Wednesday to slay a black sheep, cutting it in two with his sword, and then passing between the two pieces, and afterwards eating its flesh. And one day he said to me, 'I have become one of these people [/.*, the Arabs] in everything which I detest, even unto the eating of oil, and the riding of camels, and the wearing of sandals, but to this day not a hair hath fallen from me,' meaning that he had never used depilatories, nor submitted to circumcision." "Tell me," said Afshin, "whether this fellow, who speaketh in this fashion, is worthy of credence in his religion." Now the Mubad was a Magian who afterwards embraced Islam in the reign of al-Mutawakkil, one of whose intimates he became; so they answered, "No." "Then," said Afshin,

ⁱ This book, as Noldeke has remarked (*Gesch. d. Sasaniden*, p. 461, n. 2 *ad calc*), "which Ibnu'l-Muqaffa' translated [into Arabic], and Aban al-Lahiqi re-edited, no doubt in metrical form [*Fihrist*, pp. 118 and 163], was not religious, but was a work designed merely to amuse, classed with the *Book of Kalila and Dimna*, and regarded as harmless for a Muslim."

"what means your acceptance of the testimony of one in whom you have no reliance, and whom you do not regard as trustworthy?" Then he turned to the Mubad and said, "Was there a door or a window between my house and thine through which thou could'st observe me and have knowledge of my doings?" "No," answered the Mubad. "Was I not wont," continued Afshin, "to bring thee in unto myself, and to tell thee my secrets, and to talk with thee on Persian matters, and of my love for the things and the people of Persia?" "Yes," replied the Mubad. "Then," said Afshin, "thou art neither true in thy religious professions, nor generous in thy friendship, since thou hast brought up against me in public matters which I confided to thee in secret."

The Marzuban of Sughd was next brought forward, and Afshin was asked if he knew him, to which he replied in the negative. Then the

the accuSng' whether he knew Afshin, to which he answered people of divine that he did, and, turning to the accused, cried,

"O trickster, how long wilt thou defend thyself and strive to gloss over the truth?" "What sayest thou, O long-beard?" answered Afshin. "How do thy subjects write to thee?" continued the other. "As they used to write to my father and grandfather," replied Afshin. "Tell us how they address you," pursued the Marzuban. "I will not," said Afshin. "Do they not in their letters address thee as So-and-so and So-and-so in the language of Ushrusna?" demanded the other, "and does this not signify in Arabic, '*to the God of gods^ from his servant So-and-so the son of So-and-so* ?'" Yes, they do," answered Afshin. "Do Muslims suffer themselves to be addressed thus?" cried Ibnu'z-Zayyat; "what, then, hast thou left for Pharaoh, when he said to his people, '*am your Lord the Supreme* ?'" "I This," said Afshin, "was the custom of the people in respect to my father, my grandfather,

¹ Qur'an, lxxix, 24.

and myself, ere I adopted Islam ; and I was unwilling to lower myself in their eyes, lest their allegiance to me should be weakened." " Out upon thee, O Haydar !" exclaimed Ishaq b. Ibrdhim b. Mus'ab; " how dost thou swear to us by God, and we give thee credence, and accept thine oath, and treat thee as a Muslim, whilst thou makest such pretensions as Pharaoh made ? " " O Abu'l-Husayn ! " replied Afshin, 'this passage was cited by 'Ujayf against 'Ali b. Hisham, and now thou citest it against me! See who will cite it against thee to-morrow !'

Then Mazyar, the Ispahbad of Tabaristdn, was brought forward, and Afshin was asked, " Knowest thou this man ? "

"No," he answered. Then *Mizyir* was asked whether he knew Afshin, to which he replied in the affirmative. " This," said they to Afshin, "is Mazyar." "Yes," said Afshin, "I recognise him now." " Hast thou corresponded with him ?" they inquired. " No," said Afshin. " Has he written to you ?" they demanded of *Mizyir*. " Yes," he replied, "his brother Khish wrote to my brother Qiihyar, saying, ⁴None can cause this Most Luminous Religion¹ to prevail save I, and thou, and Babak, As for Babak, he hath caused his own death by his folly, and, though I strove to avert death from him, his own folly would not brook intervention until it cast him into the catastrophe which befell him. If thou dost revolt, the people [i.e., the Arabs] have none but me to send against thee, and with me are the knights, and the valiant and brave; so that *if* I be sent against thee, there remain to do battle with us only three sorts of men, the Arabs, the Moors,⁹ and the Turks. The Arab is like a dog ; I will throw him a crust, and then smash his head with a mace. And these

¹ I presume that the religion of Zoroaster is intended, or else the doctrine of Mazdak as revived by Babak.

² Or *Maghribis* (pi. *Maghdriba*), i.e., Arabs and Berbers from N. and N.W. Africa.

Fifth charge: of secretly inciting Mazyar to revolt, and encouraging him in his rebellion.

flies' (meaning the Moors) ' are but few in numbers ; * while as for these sons of devils' (meaning the Turks), ' it needs but a short while to exhaust their arrows, after which the cavalry will surround them in a single charge and destroy them all, and religion will return to what it ever was in the days of the Persians.'"²

To this Afshin replied, " This man brings against his brother and my brother charges which do not affect me. And even had I written this letter to him, that I might incline him to myself, and that he might regard my approach with equanimity, there would be nothing objectionable therein ; for since I helped the Caliph with my hands, I had the better right to help him by my wits, that I might take his enemy unawares and bring him before him, that I might thereby be honoured in my master's eyes even as 'Abdu'llah b. Tahir thus won honour."

Some further details of the trial are given, especially Afshin's attempt to defend himself for his neglect to undergo the rite of circumcision ("wherein," said Ibn AM Du'ad, "is the whole of Islam and of legal purity"), on the ground that he feared harm to his health from the operation. His excuses were scouted : was it possible that a soldier, constantly exposed to lance-thrust and sword-blow, should be afraid of this ? Afshin saw that he was doomed, and, in the bitterness of his heart, exclaimed to Ibn Ab! Du'ad, "O Abu 'Abdi'llah, thou raisest up thy hood (*taylasan*) with thy hand, and dost not suffer it to fall on thy shoulder until thou hast slain thereby a multitude."³ "It hath become apparent to you," said

¹ Literally, "are eaters of a head," meaning, "they are few ; one head satisfying their stomachs." See Lane's *Arabic Lexicon*, Bk. i, Part I, p. 73.

² It seems quite clear from all this that Afshin, though from Tans-oxiana, was not, as has been sometimes alleged, a Turk, but wholly Persian in feeling and sympathy.

³ Meaning that he was what we should call "a hanging judge." The *aylasan*, says Lane in his *Lexicon* (Bk. i, Part 5, p. 1867, s.v.), "seems to have resembled our academic hood, of which it was perhaps the original." It was worn by men of learning, doctors of Theology, Law, Medicine, and the like.

Ibn AW Du'ad, addressing the audience, "what he is"; then to Bugha the Turk (called "the Elder"), "Away with him!" Thereupon Bugha seized Afshin by the girdle, and, as he cried out, "This is what I expected from you!" cast the skirt of his robe over his head, and, half throttling him, dragged him back to his prison. The Caliph al-Mu'tasim, disregarding his piteous appeal for clemency, caused him to be slowly starved to death, after attempting, as it would appear, to poison him in some fruit which he sent to him by the hand of his son HaViin, who afterwards succeeded to the Caliphate under the title al-Wathiq bi'llah.* The body, crucified for a while between Babak and Mazyar, as already described, was afterwards burned, and its ashes cast into the Tigris. In Afshin's house were found, besides sundry idols set with jewels, many books of the religion to which he was secretly attached, including a "Magian book" called *Zardwa*. His death took place in June, A. D. 841, SO that he must have languished in prison for nine months after his trial and the execution of Mazyar.

It was the policy of the early 'Abbasids, and of al-Ma'mun in particular,^a to exalt the Persians at the expense of the Arabs; and in this chapter we have examined some of the more open and undisguised manifestations of the old Persian racial and religious spirit—actual attempts to destroy the supremacy of the Arabs and of Islam, and to restore the power of the ancient rulers and teachers of Persia.³ Such aspirations after an irrevocable past may be said, in a certain sense, to have been crucified on the three gibbets at Surra man-ra'a; and yet so strongly did these Persianising ideas, which they represented in their different ways, continue to work, that, in the words of Abu Tammam already quoted (p. 330 *supra*) "the spectator might suppose them to be always on a journey."

¹ See the interesting narrative of Hamdun b. Isma'il given by Tabari (iii, pp. 1314-1318).

² His reasons for mistrusting the Arabs are clearly set forth in Tabari, iii, p. 1142.

³ Cf. Goldziher's luminous chapter on the *Shu'ibiyya*, or "Gentile Faction," in his *Muhammedanische Studien*, pp. 147 *et seq.*, especially p. 150.

BOOK IV

*ON THE FIRST PERIOD OF THE DECLINE OF
THE CALIPHATE, FROM THE ACCESSION
OF AL-MUTA WAKKIL TO THE ACCES-
SION OF SULTAN MAHMUD
OF GHAZNA*

(A.D. 850-1000)

CHAPTER X

THE GENERAL PHENOMENA OF THE FIRST PERIOD OF **THE**
DECLINE OF THE CALIPHATE (A.D. 847-1000), **FROM**
THE ACCESSION OF AL-MUTAWAKKIL TO THE ACCESSION
OF MAHMUD OF GHAZNA.

THE period which we have now to consider is one which, though politically far less brilliant than the last, is in many respects quite as interesting. The sudden reversion from the broad and tolerant spirit of al-Ma'mun and his successors to a narrow and bigoted orthodoxy seems to have encouraged rather than repressed the development of several most remarkable religious and philosophical movements, notably amongst the former the Carmathian or Isma'ili propaganda which culminated in the establishment of the Fitimide Anti-Caliphate of North Africa and Egypt, and amongst the latter the philosophical fraternity known as the *Ikhwanu's Safa* or "Brethren of Purity." The growing paralysis of the Court of Baghdad, primarily caused by the ever-increasing lawlessness and tyranny of the Turkish "Praetorian Guard," wherewith, in an evil moment, the Caliphs had surrounded themselves, led directly to the formation in most parts of the Muhammadan Empire, notably in Persia, of practically independent or semi-independent dynasties, whose courts often became *foci* for learning and literature, more apt in many ways to discover

and stimulate local talent than a distant and unsympathetic metropolis. And withal the disadvantages of the greater decentralisation which characterises later epochs were not yet apparent: Arabic still remained the language of diplomacy, science, and culture throughout the vast domains of which Baghdad was still the intellectual, and, to a large extent, the political centre; and communications, both material and spiritual, were sufficiently unimpeded to allow of the free interchange of ideas, so that men of learning passed readily from one centre of culture to another, and theories propounded in Spain and Morocco were soon discussed in Khurasan and Transoxiana.

From our special point of view, moreover, this period is of particular interest, since it gave birth to what we ordinarily understand by Persian literature, that is the post-Muhammadan literature of Persia. We have already spoken in an earlier chapter (pp. 11-18 *supra*) of the slender evidences which can be adduced of the existence of neo-Persian (as opposed to Pahlawi) writings of an earlier date, and have seen that while it is likely enough that occasional memoranda, or even small manuals, may have existed before the middle of the ninth century, it is very doubtful if we possess the text of even a line of Persian which was composed before the middle of the ninth century; since the Persian poem alleged by 'A'wfi to have been composed in A.D. 809 by a certain 'Abbas of Merv¹ on the occasion of the visit paid by al-Ma'mun to that city is, as Kazimirski has pointed out,² of very suspicious authenticity. Yet no sooner had Khurasan, the province of Persia most remote from Baghdad, begun to shake itself free from the direct control of the Caliphs, than Persian poetry began to flourish, at first sporadically under the

¹ See Etche's tract entitled *Rudagi's Vorlauffer und Zeitgenossen, ein Beitrag zur Kenntniss der altesien Denkmiller neupersischer Poesie*, pp. 36-8, and Horn's *Geschichte der persischen Litteratur* (Leipzig, 1901), pp. 47-8.

² *Afenoutchehri*, pp. 8-9 of the Introduction.

Tahirid (A.D. 820-872) and Saffarid (A.D. 868-903) dynasties, and then copiously under the dynasty, at once more national than the former and more noble than the latter, of the Samanids (A.D. 874-999), while in the Ghaznawf epoch, which immediately follows that which we are about to discuss, it may be said to have attained its full development, if not its zenith.

To this subject we shall return in another chapter, but it will be well first of all to treat more broadly of the general history of this period of the Caliphate, alike in its political, its religious, and its literary aspects. We shall therefore divide this Book, like the preceding ones, into three chapters, in the first of which we shall endeavour to present the reader with a conspectus of the whole period with which we are now dealing, while in the second we shall discuss more fully certain aspects of the religious and philosophical movements of the time, reserving for the last an account of the earliest period of Persian literature. And should the reader be tempted to complain of so much space being still devoted to phenomena which centre round Baghdad and appear more closely connected with Arabic than with Persian literature, he must remember that this is an essential part of the scheme on which this history is constructed, it being the author's profound conviction that the study of Persian, to prove fruitful, cannot be divorced from that of Arabic, even in its purely literary aspects, still less in the domains of religion and philosophy into which anything beyond the most superficial reading of the *belles lettres* of Persia must inevitably lead us. To those whose horizon of Persian literature is bounded by the *Gulistan*, the *Bustan* the *Anwdr-i-Suhayli*, the *Diwan* of, Hafidh, and the Quatrains of 'Umar Khayyam, this book is not addressed.

Our period opens with the comparatively long and wholly deplorable reign of the Caliph al-Mutawakkil (A.D. 847-861), which is characterised politically by the ascendancy of the

Turkish party and the repression of the Arabs, and, to a less extent, of the Persians; and intellectually by the reaction against the liberal Mu'tazilite doctrines and philosophical tendencies of the previous Caliphs, and a fanatical hatred of 'AH and his *Shi'a* or faction. The place of the Barmecides and other noble Persians is taken by Turkish soldiers of fortune (originally, as a rule, slaves captured in the religious wars waged on the frontiers of Khurasan against heathen Turkish tribes), whose barbarous names well accord with their savage acts. The pages of the chronicles are filled with such : *Bogha* ("the Bull"), an older and a younger ; *Baghir*, *Utamish* (who became Prime Minister two or three years after al-Mutawakkil's murder), *Bayabak*, *Kalbatakin*, and the like. The names of these Turkish mercenaries, even when they are in Arabic, denote their origin ; *Wasif*, for instance, one of the chief regicides who compassed al-Mutawakkil's death, stands revealed by his name as originally a slave.¹ It was an evil day for the Caliphs when, ceasing to trust or sympathise with their own people, they surrounded themselves with these savage and self-seeking men of violence, and transferred their residence from Baghdad to *Surra-man-ra'a* (or Samarra), which, being interpreted, means "gladdened is he who hath beheld it," "from the beauty of its site," as Muir observes,² "or, as was wittily said, 'Whoever saw it with the Turks settled there, rejoiced at Baghdad being well rid of them.'" And though this had happened already in the reign of al-Mu'tasim, the bitter fruits thereof first matured in the days of al-Mutawakkil.

The latter, it is true, had thought in the latter part of his reign (A.D. 858) of moving his capital, but it is characteristic of his admiration for the Umayyads and his anti-Shi'ite prejudices that it was Damascus, not Baghdad, which he had in mind. His religious

Caliphate of
al-Mutawakkil.

Bigotry of al-
Mutawakkil.

¹ See Dozy's *Supplement aux Dictionnaires Arabes*, vol. ii, p. 810, sv.

² *The Caliphate*, 2nd ed. (1892), p. 509 *ad calc.*

bigotry, which was especially directed against the Shi'a, but which also found its expression in vexatious enactments directed against the Jews and Christians, was, indeed, in complete keeping with his Turkish proclivities, and makes us liken him rather to a gloomy and fanatical Ottoman sultan than to the heir of al-Mansur and al-Ma'mun. As regards his attitude towards the Shi'a, it was not enough that he should on occasions shed their blood, as he did in the case of the tutor of his sons, Ibnu's Sikkit, the celebrated grammarian¹ (A.D. 857), and, for more reason, of 'Isa b. ja'far, who was, by his command, beaten to death in A.D. 855 for speaking ill of Abu Bakr, 'Umar, 'A'isha, and Hafsa, and his body refused burial and cast into the Tigris "asa warning to every heretic in the Faith who dissented from the body of believers";² his hatred extended itself to the great Imams of the Shi'a, 'Ali and al-Husayn, whom all good Muslims, be they of the Sunna or the Shi'a, revere. Thus in A.D. 851 he caused the holy shrine of Kerbela, built to commemorate the martyrdom of al-Husayn, to be destroyed, and forbade men to visit the spot,³ which was ploughed over and sown with crops; and he suffered, and apparently approved, a buffoon who, padded with pillows to give him an artificial paunch, used to hold up 'Ali to ridicule before him and his courtiers.

As regards the Jews and Christians, many of whom, as we have seen, stood high in honour with his predecessors, his first enactment against them was issued early in his reign (A.D. 850), and the second three or four years later. They were thereby compelled to wear "honey-coloured gowns (*taylasan*)⁴ parti-coloured

Enactments
against the Jews
and Christians.

¹ Muir, *op. cit.* p. 525; Brockelmann, *Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, i, p. 117.

² Tabari's *Annals*, Ser. iii, pp. 1424-1426.

³ Ibid., Ser. iii, p. 1407.

⁴ The dull yellow garments which the Zoroastrians of Persia (Yazd and Kinnan) are still compelled to wear are the last remnant of these old disabilities. Sa'di, writing in the thirteenth century, still spoke of them as "asal-i-dukhta," "sewed [i.e. made up] honey." See n. 3 on p. 335 *supra*.

badges, and caps and girdles of certain ignoble patterns; to ride only on mules and asses, with wooden stirrups and saddles of strange construction ; and to have placed over the doors of their houses effigies of devils. Such of their churches and temples as were of recent construction were destroyed, or converted into mosques ; their tombs were to be level with the ground ; and they were forbidden to gather in the streets or to exhibit the sign of the cross, while their children might not learn to write Arabic or receive instruction from a Muhammadan tutor.¹

Ahmad b. Hanbal (t A.D. 855), the founder of the narrowest and least spiritual of the four orthodox schools of Sunni doctrine, was now the dominating religious influence, and was able to pay back with interest the harsh treatment which he had suffered at the hands of the Mu'tazilites. These, needless to say, fared but ill under the new *rigime*, which was, indeed, generally unfavourable to men of science and philosophers. Thus the physician B6kht-Yishu,² the grandson of him who was Director of the Hospital and Medical School at Junde-Shapur in the Caliphate of al-Mansur, was deprived of all his possessions and banished to Bahrayn (A.D. 858) for some trifling cause, and it is not surprising to find how comparatively small is the number of writers and scholars of eminence who flourished in al-Mutawakkil's time. Ibn Khurdadhbih wrote the first edition of his " Book of Itineraries " (*Kitabiil-Masdlík wa' l-Mamalik*)³ about the beginning of this period : 'Abdu'llah b. Sallam al-Jumahi, the author of a Memoir of

Thinkers and
writers of this
period.

¹ Muir's *Caliphate*, pp. 521-2 ; Tabari's *Annals*, Ser. iii, pp. 1389, *et seqq.* and 1419.

² The meaning of this name is " Jesus hath delivered " : the first part of it is from an old Persian verb *bokhtan*, " to save," " deliver," and has nothing to do with *bakht*, " fortune." See an interesting note in Noldeke's *Gesch. b. Artachsir-i-Papakan*, p. 49, n. 4, *ad calc.*

³ Published, with French translation, in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1865 (Ser. vi, vol. 5, pp. 1-127 and 227-295 and 446-527), and in vol. vi of de Goeje's *Bibl. Geogr. Arab.*

the Poets (*Tabaqatu-sh-Shu^card*) ; al-Waqidi's secretary, Ibn Sa'd the historian ; the Christian mathematician and man of science, Qusta b. Luqa; and the Syrian Shi'ite and Shu'ubi poet, Diku'l-Jinn, who flourished about the same time or a little earlier, have been already mentioned, as have the unfortunate Ibnu's-Sikkit and Bokht-Yishu', and the now triumphant Ahmad b. Hanbal (t A.D. 855). Apart from some other writers of note who flourished at this time, but whose names will be recorded according to the dates of their decease, almost the only men of letters who need be mentioned are the physician and translator from the Greek Yahya b. Masawayh (d. A.D. 856), the historian of Mecca, al-Azraqi (t A.D. 858), and the poet Di'bil, who was also a Shi'ite (t A.D. 860). To these might be added the Egyptian mystic Dhu'n-Nun and his earlier congener al-Muhasibi; the ill-fated poet 'AH b. Jahm as-Sami, one of whose panegyrics on al-Mutawakkil is still extant; the poetess Fadl of Yamama ; the musician Ishaq, son of the celebrated minstrel of Harun's Court, Ibrahim al-Mawsilf, and a few others.

At the end of the year A.D. 861 al-Mutawakkil, while overcome with drink, was murdered by his Turkish guards, who were instigated thereto by his son al-Muntasir ; but the parricide did not survive his victim a year. He and his three successors, al-Musta'fn, al-Mu'tazz, and al-Muhtadi, reigned in all only about nine years, and the three last were all in turn done to death, generally with circumstances of great brutality, by the Turks, who were now paramount. Al MuhtadI showed the greater spirit. "Earlier," says Muir (p. 535), "and supported by the Arabs, he might have restored life to the Caliphate. But now, both as regards number and discipline, foreigners had the upper hand." Yet he made a brave attempt to repress the growing presumption, arrogance, and violence of these blood-thirsty mercenaries, of which attempt his successor at any rate reaped the benefit.

AJ-Mutawakkil's
our successors.

It was during this turbulent epoch that Persian independence may be said to have been revived by the remarkable

achievements of Ya'qub the son of Layth " the
Beginnings of
 Persian independence. Coppersmith " (*as-Saffar*) who, notwithstanding

his humble origin, succeeded in founding a dynasty which, though short-lived, made its power felt not merely in Sastan, the place of its origin, but throughout the greater part of Persia and almost to the walls of Baghdad. The Tahirids are, it is true, generally reckoned an earlier Persian dynasty, and in a certain sense they were so. Their ancestor, Tahir "the Ambidexter" (*Dhu'l-Yaminayn*)' was rewarded by al-Ma'mun for his signal services in the field with the government of Khurdsan (A.D. 820), and the continuance of this dignity to his heirs unto the third generation gave to the family a local authority and position which previous governors, appointed only for a term of years and removable at the Caliph's pleasure, had never enjoyed. It is a matter of common observation that settlers in a country, often after a comparatively brief residence, outdo those native to the soil in patriotic feeling, a fact of which the history of Ireland in particular affords plentiful examples ; for what proportion of the foremost leaders of Irish struggles against English authority—the Fitzgeralds, Emmetts, Wolfe Tones, and Napper Tandy of the '98—could claim to be of purely Irish extraction ? And so it would not be a surprising phenomenon if the Tahirids, notwithstanding their Arab extraction, had become wholly Persianised. But though the earliest Persian poet, whose verses have been preserved to us—Handhala of Badghis—appears to have lived more or less under their patronage, it is doubtful whether they really sought, as did their successors, the Saffarids and Simanids, to foster the renaissance of the Persian language and literature. Dawlatshah,¹ discussing the origins of Persian poetry relates that on one occasion a man came to the Court of 'Abdu'IIah b. Tahir

¹ See p. 30 of my edition of Dawlatshah.

(A.D. 828-844) at Nishdpur and offered him an ancient Persian book. To his inquiry as to its nature the man replied, " It is the Romance of Wimiḡ and 'Adhrd, a pleasing tale which was compiled by wise men and dedicated to King Nushirwan." The Amir replied, " We are men who read the Qur'an, and need not such books, but only the Scripture and Tradition. This book, moreover, was composed by Magians, and is accursed in our eyes." He then ordered the volume to be cast into the water, and issued instructions that wherever in his territories any Persian book of Magian authorship might be discovered it should be destroyed. Without attaching too much historical importance to this story, we may yet take it as representing more or less correctly the attitude of the Tdhirids to things Persian 5 and an anecdote related by Dawlatshdh immediately after this, in which the little son of Ya'qib the Coppersmith is represented as spontaneously producing, in an access of childish glee, the first rude Persian verse of Muhammadan times, may at least be taken as indicating a general conviction that to the Saffdrids Persia owed in no small measure the recovery of her national life.

It was in the very year of al-Mutawakkil's death that this Ya'qub first appears on the scene, emerging from his native Sistan and advancing on Herat.¹ Some eight years later (A.D. 869) we find him in possession of Kirman, and sending gifts to the Caliph al-Mu'tazz. From this time onwards until his death (A.D. 876) we find him steadily enlarging his domains, to which Balkh, Tukhdristan, Sind, Nishapur, part of Tabaristan, Pars, Ram-Hurmuz, and Ahwaz were successively added. A full account of his career, based on the best authorities, has been given by Professor Noldeke of Strassburg in his admirable *Sketches from Eastern History* (J. Sutherland Black's translation, pp. 176-206), to which the reader is referred for fuller particulars. The dynasty

¹ Tabari's *Annals*, Ser. iii, p. 1500.

founded by Ya'qub practically ceased with the defeat of his brother and successor 'Amr at Balkh by Isma'ill b. Ahmad the Samanid in A.D. 900, but it had at least succeeded in reviving the national life of Persia, and in detaching its history definitely from that of the 'Abbasid metropolis.

About the same time (A.D. 865) another province of Persia, Tabaristan, the strip of fen and forest land lying between the Elburz Mountains and the southern shore of the Caspian Sea, gained a precarious independence under a scion of the House of 'Ali named Hasan b. Zayd, called "the Stone-lifter" (*Falibul-hijara*) because of his great strength. He was succeeded by several other Sayyids of his house, whose virtues, princely generosity, charities and encouragement of learning, form a favourite theme of Ibn Isfandiyar¹ (who wrote early in the thirteenth century) and other historians of this province. Needless to say that they were all ardent supporters of the Shi'ite doctrine and cause. Some of them were not only patrons of letters and founders of colleges, but poets as well, and Ibn Isfandiyar cites in his work a number of Arabic verses composed by them, including a polemic in verse against the Sunni Ibn Sukkara by Sayyid Abu'l-Husayn al-Mu'ayyad bi'llah. It is not unlikely that verses in the dialect of Tabaristan (from which are descended the modern Mazandaranf and Gilaki idioms) may also have been composed at this epoch, though the earliest which I have met date from the Seljuq period only, or at most (*e.g.*, Pindar of Ray, who flourished early in the eleventh century) from a slightly earlier epoch.

¹ This valuable work exists only in manuscript. Copies of it are preserved in the British Museum, the Bodleian, the India Office, the Bibliothèque Nationale, and St. Petersburg. A long extract from it relating to early Sasanian times was published with a French translation by the late Professor James Darmesteter in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1894, pp. 185-250 and 502-555. The account of the poet Firdawsi cited in it from the *Chahar Maqala* was also used (before the latter work was rendered generally

Persia, then, at the epoch of which we are now speaking, was beginning to struggle into a new national life, and to give fresh expression to its marked preference for the Shi'ite doctrine. For Ya'qub b. Layth, if we are to credit the long account of his successful revolt against the Caliphate (for such, in effect, it was) given by the Nidhamu'l-Mulk in his "Treatise on the Art of Government" (*Siyasat-nama* ed. Schefer, pp. 11-17) had strong Shi'ite leanings; though of course what is there said about his relations with the Fdtimid Caliph (who only began to establish his power some thirty-five years after Ya'qub's death) is an absurd anachronism. And in the Biography of eminent Shi'ites lithographed at Tihra in A. H. 1268 (A. D. 1851-2) under the title of *Majalilsu'l-Muminin*¹ ("Assemblies of True Believers") the Saffarids are included amongst the adherents of the Shi'a cause. The evidence there adduced for Ya'qub's religious standpoint is rather quaint. Information was communicated to him that a certain Abu Yusuf had spoken slightly of 'Uthman b. 'Affan; and Ya'qub, thinking that a Sistani noble of this name was intended, ordered him to be punished. But when he was informed that it was the third Caliph, the successor of 'Umar, who had been thus reviled, he countermanded the punishment at once, saying, "I have nothing to do with the 'Companions.'"

A third great event belonging to this period was the formidable rebellion of negro slaves (Zanj = Ethiopian) which for nearly fourteen years (A. D. 869-883) caused the utmost alarm and anxiety to the metropolis of Islam. The scene of this stubborn and, for a long while, successful revolt was the marshes lying between Basra and Wasit, and the leader of these African

The Zanj
rebellion.

accessible by my translation of it in the F. R. A. S. for 1899) by Dr. Ette and Professor Noldeke.

¹ The utility of this valuable work, written about A. D. 1585, by Sayyid Nuru'llah b. Sayyid Sharif al-Mar'ashi of Shushtar, is, unfortunately, greatly marred by the fact that in the lithographed edition the pages are not numbered, and there are no indices.

slaves was a Persian, 'All b. Muhammad of Waraanin (near Ray), who, though boasting descent from 'All and Fatima, proclaimed the doctrines not of the Shi'ites but of the Kharijites. The explanation of this curious fact is given by Professor Noldeke in the excellent account of this " Servile War in the East " given in his *Sketches from Eastern History* (chap, v, pp. 146-175): the rebel leader knew his *clientele* too well to tempt them with a bait which, though efficacious enough with his own countrymen, would have entirely failed to appeal to minds far more ready to absorb the democratic views of the Kharijites than the sentimental legitimist aspirations of the Shi'a. And so, as Noldeke has pointed out (*op. cit.*, p. 152)—

" It is abundantly clear why Karmat, one of the founders of the Karmatians, an extreme Shi'ite sect which was destined soon after this to fill the whole Mohammedan world with fear and dismay, should, on religious grounds, have decided not to connect himself with the negro leader, however useful this association might otherwise have been to him."

The year A.H. 260 (= A.D. 873-4) was in several respects an important epoch in Muhammadan, especially in Shi'ite, history; but, before speaking of it, we may briefly mention the chief men of letters who died during the decade which preceded it, which includes the first four years of al-Mu'tamid's Caliphate.

Men of letters
who died be-
tween A.D. 863
and 873.

Abu Hatim of Sajistin (Sistan), who died about A.D. 864, was the pupil of al-Asma'i and the teacher of the celebrated al-Mubarrad. Some thirty-two of his works are enumerated in the *Fihrist*, but the only one preserved to us in its entirety (and that only in the unique Cambridge manuscript, which formerly belonged to the traveller Burckhardt) is the *Kitabu'l-Mu'ammarn* (" Book of the Long-lived "), published with introduction and notes by the learned Goldziher (Leyden, 1899).

Abu Hatim of
Sistan.

Much more important was 'Amr b. Bahr, surnamed "al-Jahidh" because of his prominent eyes, a man of great erudition and remarkable literary activity (tA.D. 869). He was a staunch adherent of the Mu'tazilite doctrine, of which one school bears his name. Of his works, which chiefly belong to the class of *belles lettres* (*adab*) several have been published : the *Kitabu'l-Bayan wa't-tibydn* in Cairo; and the *Kitabu'l-Bukhald* ("Book of Misers") in Leyden by Van Vloten. He also wrote a tract "on the Virtues of the Turks," which exists in several manuscripts. He stood in high favour under al-Ma'mun and his two successors, but narrowly escaped death on the fall and execution of his patron, the *wazir* Ibnu'z-Zayyat. His writings are equally remarkable for style and contents, and entitle him to be placed in the foremost rank of early Arabic prose writers.

A year later than al-Jahidh (A.D. 870) died the great traditionist al-Bukharf, the author of the celebrated Collection of Traditions called the *Sahih*, which, amongst all Sunn! Muhammadans, ranks as the highest authority on this subject. Another work on the same subject, and bearing the same title, was compiled by Muslim of Nishapur, who died a few years later (A.D. 875); another by at-Tirmidhi (t A.D. 892), and a fourth by an-Nasa'f (t A.D. 914). These four great traditionists were all natives of Khurasan, and were probably of Persian extraction.

The only other writers of this period who need be mentioned are the poetess Fadl of Yamama (t A.D. 873), who in her earlier life professed Shi'ite views, and the Christian physician and translator Hunayn b. Ishaq, who poisoned himself in A.D. 873 on account of the vexation caused him by his excommunication by his bishop Theodosius.

We now come to the year A.H. 260 (= A.D. 873-4), a year memorable for the following important events: (1) the

Al-Bukharf,
Muslim, at-
Tirmidhi and
an-Nasal

" Occultation " or Disappearance of the Twelfth Imam of the Shf'ite " Sect of the Twelve ; " (2) the beginning of the Propaganda of the Shi'ite "Sect of the Seven,"* or Isma'ilis, which led directly to the rise of the Carmathians (*2armatl*, pi. *2aramita*) and the foundation of the Fatimid Anti-Caliphate of North Africa and Egypt ; and (3) the establishment of the Simdnid dynasty in Khurasan. In this year also the great Sufi saint Bayazid of Bistdm died, and the theologian Abu'l-Hasan al-Ash'ari was born ; he who was destined to give the *coup de grace* to the Mu'tazilite ascendancy in Islam, and to give currency and form to that narrower and more illiberal doctrine which has given to the Muhammadan religion its rigid and stereotyped character. The religious phenomena of this critical period will be more fully discussed in the following chapter, and here we shall continue to speak chiefly of external and political events.

The year A.H.
360.

The Saminid
Dynasty.

The rise of the Samdnid dynasty coincided with, and indeed brought about, the fall of the short-lived power of the Copper-smith's sons Ya'qub and 'Amr, and marks the really active beginning of the Persian Renaissance. Saman, after whom the dynasty is called, claimed descent from Bahram Chubfn (see p. 181 *supra*), and the genuineness of this pedigree is admitted by the learned and exact Abu Rayhan al-Birunf.¹ He was converted from the Zoroastrian faith to Islm by Asad b. 'Abdu'lldh, the governor of Khurasan, after whom he named his son. His four grandsons all had provincial governments in Khurasan in the Caliphate of al-Ma'mun (about A.D. 819), but Ahmad, the second of them, was most successful in extending and consolidating his dominions, and his two sons, Nasr I and Isma'il, succeeded in overthrowing the Saffarid power,"taking 'Amr b. Layth (who succeeded his brother Ya'qub in A.D. 876) captive

¹ See p. 48 of Sachau's translation of his *Chronology of Ancient Nations*. Al-Biruni died in A.D. 1048.

in A.D. 900, and establishing a dynasty which flourished for nearly 125 years ere it was in turn overthrown by the rising might of the House of Ghazna.

Two anecdotes concerning the Saffarids, both to be found in the Nidhamu'l-Mulk's *Siyasat-nAma* (ed. Schefer, pp. 13-16), are too typical and too celebrated amongst the Persians to be omitted here. The first concerns the elder brother Ya'qub. When, after his defeat by the troops of the Caliph al-Mu'tamid on the occasion of his persistent attempt to enter Baghdad, he lay dying of colic, the Caliph, still tearing him, sent him a conciliatory letter, wherein, while reproaching him for his disobedience, he held out conditional promises of forgiveness and compensation.

Anecdote concerning the death of Ya'qub b. Layth.

"When Ya'qub had read the Caliph's letter," says the narrator, "his heart was in no way softened, neither did he experience any remorse for his action; but he bade them put some cress and fish and a few onions on a wooden platter, and set them before him. Then he bade them introduce the Caliph's ambassador, and caused him to be seated. Then he turned his face to the ambassador and said, 'Go, tell the Caliph that I am the son of a coppersmith, and learned from my father the coppersmith's craft. My food has been barley bread, fish, cress and onions. This dominion and gear and treasure and goods I won by cunning and courage; I neither inherited them from my father nor received them from thee. I will not rest until I send thy head to Mahdiyya' and destroy thy House: I will either do this which I say, or I will return to my barley bread and fish and cress. Behold, I have opened the doors of my treasure-houses, and have again called out my troops, and I come on the heels of this message.'"²

This anecdote well illustrates the character of the doughty coppersmith.

¹ The genuineness of this speech is disproved by this anachronism. Mahdiyya, the first capital of the Fatimid Caliphs, was not founded for more than thirty years after Ya'qub's death, which happened in June, A.D. 879.

³ Cf. Noldeke's *Sketches*, English translation, p. 193, and also *Ibnu'l-Athir*, Cairo ed., vol. vii, p. 107.

The second anecdote, which is even more celebrated, concerns the final defeat of 'Amr b. Layt, Ya'qub's brother and successor, who, having been declared a rebel by the Caliph al-Mu'tamid in A.D. 884, was restored to favour for a brief period in A.D. 890, then again disavowed, until in May, A.D. 895, he was utterly routed near Balkh by Isma⁴¹ b. Ahmad the Samanid, whom the Caliph had incited to attack him. Of the seventy thousand horsemen whom he had reviewed before the battle, all were scattered, though, it is said, not one was even wounded ; and evening saw the fallen prince a captive in the enemy's camp, and in want of a supper. A *farrdsh*, who had formerly been in his employment, happened to pass by, and took pity on him. He bought some meat, borrowed a frying-pan from one of the soldiers, made a fire of camel-dung, and set the pan over it, supported on a few clods of earth. Then he went off to get some salt, and while he was gone a hungry dog, attracted by the savoury smell, came up and thrust its nose into the frying-pan to pick out a bone. The hot frying-pan burned its nose, and as it drew back its head the ring-like handle of the pan fell on its neck, and when it took to its heels in terror it carried the frying-pan and the supper with it. When 'Amr saw this, he turned to the soldiers and sentinels who stood by and said, "Be warned by me ! I am he whose kitchen it needed four hundred camels to carry this morning, and to-night it has been carried off by a dog ! " Abu Mansur ath-Tha'alibi remarks in his *Lata'ifu'l-Ma'drif* (ed. de Jong, p. 88) that two of the most extraordinary battles were this one, which put an end to the Saffarid power, when an army of fifty thousand escaped, though utterly routed, only the leader being taken captive; and the battle between al-'Abbas b. 'Amr and the Carmathians at Hajar, wherein the ten thousand soldiers of the former perished to a man, and only their leader escaped.

About the year A.D. 880 there rose to brief but considerable

Anecdote concerning 'Amr b. Layt's defeat by Isma'U the Samanid.

power a certain Ahmad of Khujistan (near Herat) who deserves a passing mention because of the manner in which, according to the author of the *Chahar Maqala* (who wrote about the middle of the twelfth century),¹ his ambition was first stirred by two Persian verses of the poet Handhala of Badghis. He was asked, "How did'st thou, who wert originally an ass-herd, become Amir of Khurasan?" "One day," he answered, "I was reading the Diwan of Handhala of Badghis in Badghis of Khujistan when I chanced on these two couplets:—

Ahmad al-Khujistini.

'If lordship lies within the lion's jaws,
Go, risk it, and from those dread portals seize
Such straight-confronting death as men desire,
Or riches, greatness, rank and lasting ease."

At this time the Saffarids were at the zenith of their power, and al-Khujistanf, moved by a new ambition, sold his asses, bought a horse, and entered the service of 'Amr b. Layth. Later he renounced his allegiance to them, and took Khwaf, Bayhaq, and Nishapur. "My affairs prospered and improved," says he, "until all Khurasan lay open to me, and I took possession of it for myself. Of all this, these two verses of poetry were the cause." This story, told by an old and generally accurate authority, is to my mind the best proof of the existence of a considerable amount of Persian poetry even before the time of the Samanids; though of poets who flourished under the Tahirids and Saffarids the names of only some half-dozen at most—the above Handhala, Mahmud the bookseller (*warraq*, Firuz-i-Mashriqi, Abu Salik of Gurgan and one or two more—are preserved to us.

Poetry under the Samanids.

Under the Samanids (A.D. 874-999) the case was different, and we find Persian verse, and to a "lesser extent Persian prose, flourishing full vigour, the most celebrated poet of this period being Rudagi (or

¹ See pp. 43-44 of the separate reprint of the translation which I published in the *R. A. S.* for 1899.

Rawdhaki), who flourished in the first half of the tenth century. Indeed his fame, so far outshone that of his predecessors that he is often reckoned the first Persian poet : thus in an Arabic "Book of Origins" written early in the thirteenth century = occurs the following passage :—

"The first to compose good poetry in Persian was Abu *Ab-di'llah Ja'far b. Muhammad b. Hakim b. 'Abdu'r-Rahman b. Adam *ar-Rawdhaki*," that poet so piquant in expression, so fluent in verse¹, whose *Diwan* is famous amongst the Persians, and who was the leader in Persian poetry in his time beyond all his contemporaries. The minister Abu'l-Fadl al-Bal'ami used to say, 'Rawdhaki has no equal amongst the Arabs or the Persians.'"

The minister above cited was *wazir* to Ismail b. Ahmad, and died in 940 ; he is not to be confounded with his son Abu 'Ali al-Bal'ami, who was *wazir* to the Amir Mansur b. Nuh, translated Tabarfi's great chronicle into Persian, and died in A.D. 996.

Turning once more to Baghdad, and to the metropolitan, as opposed to the provincial, writers of al-Mu'tamid's Caliphate (A.D. 870-893), we need notice only, amongst events of general importance, the suppression of the Zanj insurrection in A.D. 883, and the increasing activity of the Carmathians, whose history and doctrines will be more fully discussed in the next chapter. The chief writers and thinkers who died between A.D. 874 and 900 were the following : The "Philosopher of the Arabs," Abu Yusuf Ya'qub b. Ishaq al-Kindi, whose literary activity chiefly belongs to an earlier and more liberal period, is supposed to have died about A.D. 874. He is notable as one of the few pure Arabs who were really distinguished in the domain of thought and letters. Hunayn b. Ishaq, the physician and translator, who died about the same time, has been already

¹ See my *Hand-list of the Muhammadan MSS. in the Cambridge University Library*, pp. 125-6.

² See Carra de Vaux, *Avicenne*, pp. 80-88.

mentioned. Ibnu'l-Wahshiyya, the author of the celebrated "Book of Nabathæan Agriculture," wherein he sought to demonstrate the superiority of the old Babylonians to the Arabs in point of civilisation, flourished about this period. Da'ud b. 'Ali, the founder of the Dhahiri (or Zahirite) school, who held strongly to the literal meaning of the Qur'an and Traditions, and discountenanced all allegorical interpretations,² died in A.D. 883. Abu Ma'shar, the great astronomer, one of al-Kindi's pupils, died in A.D. 885, about which time al-Fakihi, the historian of Mecca, wrote. Ibn Maja († A.D. 885) should have been mentioned in connection with al-Bukhari and his successors in the Science of Tradition. Sahl b. 'Abdu'llah of Shushtar, mystic and Qur'an-reader, was a pupil of the earlier mystic Dhu'n-Nun, and died about A.D. 886. As a collector and critical editor of old Arabic poems (e.g., the Diwan of the poets of the tribe of Hudhayl) as-Sukkan, one of al-Asma's pupils, deserves a passing mention († A.D. 888). The erotic and satirical poet Ibnu'r-Riimi owed his death (A.D. 889 or 896) to his bitter tongue. Ibn Abi'd-Dunya (d. A.D. 894), tutor to the Caliph al-Muktafi in his youth, was the author of several collections of stories and anecdotes. Ai-Buhturi the poet (A.D. 897) and al-Mubarrad the philologist († A.D. 899) ought also to be mentioned. Much more important, however, from our point of view are the four historians Ibn Qutayba († A.D. 889), al-Baladhuri († A.D. 892), ad-Dinawari († A.D. 895), and Ibn Wadih al-Ya'qubi, who wrote about this time.³ Of these, the first three were Persians, while the last was an

1 See a monograph on this school by Dr. Ignaz Goldziher, *Die ZdhinUn* Leipzig, 1884

² See Brockelmann's *Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, vol. i, pp. 120, 123, and 141.

3 The works of these writers, which have been published and are easily accessible, and which should be read by all students of Persian history, are : the *Kitabu'l-Ma'drif* of Ibn Qutayba (ed. Wustenfelf, Gottingen, 1850); the *Futuku'lBuldan* (ed. de Goeje, Ley den, 1855); the *Akhbdru't-Tiwal* of Dinawari (ed. Guirgass, Leyden, 1888); and al-Ya'qubi's *History* (ed. Houtsma, Leyden, 1883, 2 vols.).

ardent Shi'ite, which gives his admirable history a special interest, since he speaks at greater length of the Imams, and cites many of their sayings. Indeed Goldziher and Brockelmann, two of the greatest living authorities on Arabic literature in its widest sense, agree in the opinion "that the historical sense was entirely lacking in the ancient Arabs," and that "the idea or historiography was first inspired in them by Persian culture."^x To the writers above enumerated we may add the celebrated mathematician Thabit b. Qurra the Harrdnian, and the geographer Ibnu'l-Faqih al-Hamadani, both of whom died about the beginning of the tenth century of our era.

On the death of the Caliph al-Mu'tadid and the accession of his son al-Muktaff the Samanids were practically supreme in Persia, while around Baghdad and Basra, in Syria and in Yaman the terrible Carmathians, under their able leader Zikrawayh, inspired the utmost terror—a terror which cannot be regarded as ill-founded when we remember that on the occasion of one of their attacks on the pilgrim-caravans returning from Mecca 20,000 persons are said to have been left dead on the field. Only two writers of note who died during this period need be mentioned: the Shi'ite divine al-Qummi († A.D. 903), and the royal poet Ibnu'l-Mu'tazz, who is notable as having produced one of the nearest approximations to an epic poem to be found in Arabic literature,² and also one of the "Memoirs of the Poets" (*Tabaqat*), which served as a model to ath-Tha'dlibf, al-Bakharzf, and other compilers of such biographical anthologies.

We next come to the comparatively long reign of al-Muqtadir (A.D. 908-932), of which the most important

¹ Brockelmann, *op. cit.*, p. 134.

² See pp. 83-86 of Brockelmann's *Gesch. a. Arab. Litt.* (in vol. vi of Amelang's monographs, Leipzig, 1901; not to be confounded with the more scientific work by the same author, and with almost the same title, published at Weimar in 1897-).

political event was **the** establishment of the Fatimid, or Isma'ili, Anti-Caliphate in North Africa (A.D. 909), with Mahdiyya ("the City of the Mahdi," i.e., of 'Ubadu'llah, the first Caliph of this dynasty) as its capital. The activity of the Carmathians continued unabated, in spite of the deaths of their leaders Zikrawayh and al-Jannabi the Elder : in A.D. 924 they entered Basra ; in the following year they again attacked the Pilgrim-caravan; in A.D. 929 they invaded Mecca itself, and, to the unspeakable horror of all pious Muslims, carried off the Sacred Black Stone, which they kept for twenty years; while, in the closing years of al-Muqtadir's reign, they entered Kufa and took possession of 'Umman. About this time, however, their activity was checked, not so much by any external force, as by the scandals connected with the appearance of the false Mahdi Ibn Abl Zakariyya,¹ whose abominable teachings are summarised by al-Biruni in his *Chronology of Ancient Nations*,² Yet some years later, in A.D. 939, we find them still levying blackmail (*khifara*) on the pilgrims to Mecca.³

To turn now to Persian affairs at this period, we may notice first the final suppression, even in Sistan, of the House of Layth (the Saffarids) about A.D. 910, when Tahir and Ya'qub, the grandsons of 'Amr, were taken prisoners and sent captive to Baghdad. In A.D. 913 Nasr II succeeded to the Samanid throne, and in his long reign (he died in A.D. 942) the power and splendour of that illustrious House reached their zenith,⁴ and Rudagi, the first great Persian poet, was at the height of his renown and popularity. Yet Tabaristan was wrested from him by the 'Alawi Sayyid Hasan b. 'AU Utrush, whose family maintained their footing there till A.D. 928, when Mardiwij b. Ziyar succeeded in seizing the province and establishing there a

Persian affairs
at this period.

¹ See de Goeje's *Carmathes du Bahrein*, p. 131.

² Sachau's translation, pp. 196-7. De Goeje, *op. cit.*, p. 140.

⁴ *Chahar Maqala*, separate reprint, p. 51.

dynasty (known as the Ziyarids) which endured, and played an honourable part in the promotion of learning and the protection of letters, for more than a century, ere it was extinguished by the Ghaznawis. And in yet another way Mardawij played an important part in Persian history, for to him the great House of Buwayh, which by the middle of the tenth century was practically supreme throughout Southern Persia and in Baghdad itself, owed its first fortunes ; and from him 'Alib. Buwayh, who afterwards, with the title of 'Imadu'd-Dawla, ruled over Fars, or Persis proper, received his first appointment as governor of Karach.

Amongst the men of learning who flourished at this epoch the first place must without doubt be assigned to the historian

Abu Ja'far Muhammad b. Jarir at-Tabari († A.D. 923),¹ whose great Chronicle ends ten years earlier (A.H. 300 = A.D. 912-913), thus depriving us of one of our best sources of information, though the Supplement of 'Arib b. Sa'd of Cordova carries us down to the end of al-Muqtadir's Caliphate (A.H. 320 = A.D. 932), after which we have to depend chiefly for general history on Ibnu'l-Athir (t A.D. 1232-3), the author of the great *Kamilu't-Tawarikh*.*

"In this year" (A.H. 310), says the latter, "died at Baghdad Muhammad b. Jarir at-Tabari, the historian, who was born in A.H. 224 (= A.D. 838-9). He was buried by night in his house, because the mob assembled and prevented him from being buried by day, declaring that he was a Rafidi (Shi'ite) and even a heretic. And 'Ali b. 'Isa used to say, 'By Allah, were these people to be questioned

¹ The edition of this great work by Professor de Goeje and a small body of the most distinguished Arabic scholars must be regarded as the greatest achievement of Oriental scholarship in Europe in recent times. This edition comprises 13 vols, of text and 2 vols, of Indices and Apparatus Criticus; the publication was begun at Leyden in A.D. 1879, and completed in 1901. 'Arib's *Tabari continuatus*, edited by de Goeje, was published in 1897.

² Tornberg's edition (Leyden, 1851-1876) in 14 vols, is the best, as it has an index, which the Cairo edition of A.H. 1303 (the text which I have used throughout) has not.

as to what was meant by a Rafidi or a heretic, they would neither know nor be capable of understanding !' Thus Ibn Miskawayh, the author of the *Tajaribu'l-umam*, who defends this great leader of thought (*Imam*) from these charges. Now as to what he says concerning the fanaticism of the mob, the matter was not so ; only some of the Hanbalites, inspired with a fanatical hatred of him, attacked him, and they were followed by others. And for this there was a reason, which was that Tabari compiled a book, the like of which had never been composed, wherein he mentioned the differences of opinion of the theologians, but omitted all reference to Ahmad b. Hanbal. And when he was taken to task about this, he said, ' He was not a theologian, but only a traditionist;' and this annoyed the Hanbalites, who were innumerable in Baghdad ; so they stirred up mischief against him, and said what they pleased."

Of an utterly different character to this sober and erudite historian was another Persian of this period, whose reputation —somewhat transfigured, it is true, by pious <sup>Al-Husaynb.
Mansur al-Hallaj.</sup> hagiologists—is at least as enduring amongst his countrymen, and to whom admiring references are frequently made by the Persian Sufi poets, such as Faridu'd-Din 'Attar, Hafidh and the like. This was al-Husayn b. Mansur " the Wool -carder " (al-Hallaj), who was arrested for preaching heretical doctrines in Baghdad and the neighbourhood in A.D. 913 (Tabari, iii, p. 2289), and put to death with circumstances of great cruelty in A.D. 921. The charge against him which is chiefly remembered is that in a state of ecstasy he cried, " Ana'l-Haqq " (" I am the True One," or "the Fact," i.e. God), and the Sufis regard this utterance as the outcome of a state of exaltation wherein the Seer was so lost in rapture at the contemplation of the Beatific Vision of the Deity that he lost all cognisance and consciousness of himself, and indeed of all Phenomenal Being. At most, say they, his crime was only that he revealed the secret; and generally he is regarded as a saint and a martyr. Thus Hafidh says (ed. Rosenzweig-Schwannau, vol. i, p. 364) :—

*Chu Mansur an murad anan ki bar darand bar dar-and,
Ki ba in dard agar dar band-i-darmdn-and, dar tndnand.*

"Those who attain their desire are, like Mansurs, crucified,
For if, [being afflicted] with this grief, they hope for a remedy,
they 'fail [to find it]."

And again in another poem (not given in the above edition)
he says :—

*Kashad naqsh-i- 'ANA'L-HAQQ' bar zamin khun,
Chu Mansur ar kashi bar dar-am imshab !*

"My blood would write 'I am the True One' on the ground,
If thou wert to hang me, like Mansur, on the cross to-night.

The later Sufi conception of this man may be found in such works as the *Tadhkiratu l-Awliya'* of Faridu'd-Din 'Attar, or the *Nafahatu'l-Uns* of Jami, or, for European readers, in Tholuck's *Ssufismus* (Berlin, 1821), pp. 68, 152, &c.; but the older and better authorities, Tabari (iii, p. 2289), Ibn Mis-kawayh and the *Kitdbu'l- 'Uyun* (cited on pp. 86-108 of de Goeje's ed. of 'Arib), and the *Fihrist* (pp. 190-192), present him in a different light as "a wily conjuror," "bedecking his doctrines in the phraseology of the Sufis," "an ignorant and forward pretender to all the sciences," "a dabbler in Alchemy," a dangerous and impudent political intriguer, claiming to be an Incarnation of the Deity and outwardly professing the Shi'ite doctrine, but actually in league with the Carmathians and Isma'ilis. Some forty-five books composed by him are enumerated by the *Fihrist* (p. 192), and what we learn ('Arib, p. 90) as to the sumptuous manner in which they are written out, sometimes with gold ink, on Chinese paper, brocade, silk, and the like, and magnificently bound, reminds us strongly of the Manichaeans. In short, as to the extreme unorthodoxy of this Persian, whose near ancestors had held the Magian faith, there can be little doubt, though the great al-Ghazzdli himself undertook his defence in the *Mishkatu'l-Anwar* ('Arib, p. 108) ; he certainly held all the cardinal doctrines of the *Ghulat* or extreme Shi'ites; to wit,

Hulul (Incarnation), *Rij'at* (Return to the life of the world in another body), and the like. But he is a remarkable figure, and has created a deep impression on the minds of his countrymen, while some of his Arabic verses are really strong and original, as, for instance, the following ('*Arib*, p. 106) :—

" My Friend is unrelated to aught of ruth:

He gave me to drink of the Cup which He quaffs, as doth host with guest.

And when the Cup had gone round, He called for the sword and the headsman's carpet:

Thus fares it with him who drinks Wine with the Dragon in Summer."

His master and teacher Junayd (also, as it would appear, a Persian), who died in A.D. 910, was only a little less celebrated, and not much more orthodox.

Junayd of
Baghdad.

Amongst other eminent men who died during the Caliphate of al-Muqtadir were Ishaq b. Hunayn, like his father a physician and translator into Arabic of works on Greek

Other eminent
men of al-
Muqtadir's
Caliphate.

Philosophy († A.D. 911); an-Nasa'i, the traditionist († A.D. 914); Abu Bakr Muhammad b.

Zakariyya ar-Razi, the eminent physician known

to mediaeval Europe as *Rhazes* († A.D. 923 or 932), whose most celebrated work, the *Mansuri*, was dedicated to the Samanid Prince Mansur b. Ishaq; the historian al-A'tham of Kiifa, whose History of the Early Caliphs is remarkable for its strong Shi'ite bias, and is only known to us through its much later Persian translation (lithographed at Bombay A.H. 1305); Muhammad b. Jabir b. Sinan al-Battani, the astronomer, known to mediaeval Europe as Albategnius († A.D. 929); and the poet Ibnu'l Allaf († A.D. 930), a friend of Ibnu'l-Mu'tazz, whose cruel death, which could not be openly deplored, is supposed to form the real subject of the celebrated poem professedly written on the death of a favourite cat killed by a pigeon-fancier on account of its depredations.¹ Lastly we

¹ See de Slane's *Ibn Khallikan*, vol. i, pp. 400-401,

may mention Ibn Muqla, the famous calligraphist, who was *wazir* to al-Muqtadir and his two immediate successors.

The short reigns of the next four Caliphs, al-Qahir, ar-Radf, al-Muttaqi and al-Mustakfi (A.D. 932-946), were chiefly-remarkable for the rise of the Buwayhid power, of which the first beginnings have been already mentioned. With the help of their Daylamf and

A.D. 932-946.—
Rise of the Bu-
wayhid power.

Gfldni troops, the three sons of Buwayh, 'Ali *'Imadu d-Dawla*, Hasan *Ruknu d-Dawla* and Ahmad *Mu'izzu;d-Dawla*. having successively subdued Isfahan, Arrajdn, Nawbandajdn, Kazanin, Shfrdz, Kirmdn and Ahwaz, obtained effective control of Baghdad itself during the short reign of al-Mustakff, who, besides the honorific titles given above in italics, conferred on the third brother the style and rank of *Jmlru'I-Umaryd* or Chief Noble.¹ These Buwayhids were Persians and Shfites : they claimed (though, as al-Biruni holds,² on insufficient grounds) descent from the Sasanian King Bahram Gur; and they were generous patrons of literature and science.

Philosophy especially, which had been stifled by Turkish ascendancy and Hanbalite fanaticism, as well as by the growing strength of al-Ash'arfs doctrines, once more revived, and soon found expression in the formation of that remarkable fraternity of encyclopaedists known as the *Ikhwanus-Safd*, or "Brethren of Purity," who summed up the physical and metaphysical sciences

of their time in a series of fifty-one tracts, the contents of which have been largely rendered accessible to European readers by Professor F. Dieterici's numerous publications on this subject. In the Caspian provinces the House of Ziyar maintained an authority curtailed in other directions by their own *protigh*, the Buwayhids ; which authority

Their beneficent
influence.

The *Ikhwanu's-
Safa*.

The Ziyarids in
Tabaristan.

¹ Lane's *Muhammadan Dynasties*, pp. 139-144.

² Al-Biruni's *Chronology of Ancient Nations* (Sachau's translation), pp. 45-46.

was wielded for thirty-two years (A.D. 935—957) by Washmgir, the son of Ziyar and brother of Mardawij.

In the north-east of Persia, Khurdsin and Transoxiana the Samanid power, represented by Nasr II and his son Nuh, was still at its height, and the literary revival of which their Court was the centre continued in full vigour. But it must not be supposed, as has sometimes been done, that the encouragement of Persian literature, for which these princes are so remarkable indicated any tendency or desire on their part to repress or restrict the use of the Arabic language. Abundant evidence of their liberal patronage of Arabic letters is afforded by the entire fourth volume of the *Yatlmatu'd Dahr*, the celebrated Arabic anthology of Abu Mansur 'Abdu' l-Malik ath-Tha'alibi of Nishapur (b. A.D. 961, d. A.D. 1038). The substance of this portion of his work has been rendered accessible to the European reader by M. A. C. Barbier de Meynard in two articles published in the *Journal Asiatique* for Feb.-March, 1853 (PP- 69-2 39), and " March-April, 1854 (pp. 291-361), under the title " Tableau litteraire du Khorassan et de la Transoxiane au quatrieme siecle de l'Hegire" ; but one passage of the original work (Damascus ed., vol. iv, pp. 33-4) so strongly emphasises this point that it is here given in translation:—

" Bukhara was, under the Samanid rule, the Focus of Splendour, the Shrine of Empire, the Meeting-place of the most unique intellects of the Age, the Horizon of the literary stars of the World, and the Fair of the greatest scholars of the Period. Abu Ja'far Muhammad b. Mtisa al-Miisawi related to me as follows. ' My father Abu'l-Hasan received an invitation to Bukhara in the days of the Amir-i-Sa'id [Nasr II b. Ahmad, reigned A.D. 913-942], and there were gathered together the most remarkable of its men of letters, such as Abu'l-Hasan al-Lahham, Abu Muhammad b. Matran, Abu Ja'far b. al-'Abbas b. al-Hasan, Abu Muhammad b. Abu 'th-Thiyab, Abu'n-Nasr al-Harthami, Abu Nasr adh-Dharlfi, Rija b. al-Walid al-Isbahani, 'All b. Harun ash-Shaybani, Abu Ishaq al-Farsi, Abu'l-Qasim ad-Dinawari, Abu 'Ali az-Zawzani, and others belonging to

Literary splendour of Bukhari under the Samanids.

the same class.¹ And when these were settled in familiar conversation one would engage with another in plucking the fringes of some discussion, each offering to the other fragrant flowers of dialectic, and pursuing the perfumes of Culture, and letting fall in succession necklaces of pearls, and blowing on magical knots.* And my father said to me, "O my son, this is a notable and red-letter day: make it an epoch as regards the assembling of the standards of talent and the most incomparable scholars of the age, and remember it, when I am gone, amongst the great occasions of the period and the notable moments of thy life. For I scarcely think that in the lapse of the years thou wilt see the like of these met together." And so it was, for never again was my eye brightened with the sight of such a gathering."

Amongst the men of learning and letters who died during these fourteen years were the following: Abu'l-Hasan al-Ash'ari († A.D. 935), the chief promoter or
Necrology of the
years A.D. 932-
946. the orthodox reaction, to whom most justly might the Mu'tazilites to whom he owed his education apply the words of the poet:—

*U'alhmuhu'r- rtmdyata kulla yawmin,
Fa-lamma 'shtadda sa'iduhu, rama-ni !*

"I taught him daily how to use the bow,
And when his arm grew strong he laid me low!"

Ibn Durayd, the philologist († A.D. 934), author of the Arabic lexicon entitled the *Jamhara*. Sa'id b. al-Batriq, better known as Eutychius († A.D. 929), the Christian patriarch of Alexandria, author of a well-known history. Ibn 'Abd Rabbihi of Cordova († A.D. 940), poet and historian,

¹ Literally, "and such as were strung on their string," the simile being derived from a necklace of pearls.

² Eloquence is called by the Muslims "*sihri-i-halal*," "lawful Magic." Concerning "blowing on knots," see the commentaries on Sura cxiii of the Qur'an. "This" (blowing on knots as a magical practice), says Sale, "was a common practice in former days: what they call in France *nouer l'aiguillette*, and the knots which the wizards in the northern parts tie, when they sell mariners a wind (if the stories told of them be true), are also relics of the same superstition."

Al-KuHnI (or Kulayni, † A.D. 939), a celebrated theologian of the Shi'a, author of the *Kafi*. **The** physicians Sinan b. Thabit b. Qurra († A.D. 942), his son Ibrahim († A.D. 947), and 'Ubaydu'llah b. Jibril b. Bokht-Yishu' († A.D. 941). The theologian al-Maturdfdf († A.D. 944) ; Ibn Serapion († circ. A.D. 945), the author of the very interesting description of Baghdad published and translated in the *journal of the Royal Astatic Society* by Mr. Guy le Strange in 1895 ; **the** historian as-Sulf († A.D. 946), a converted Magian of Gurgan ; and the Sufi saint ash-Shibli (d. A.D. 946) of Khurasan, the disciple of Junayd of Baghdad, and fellow-student of Husayn b. Mansur al-Hallaj. For religious manifestations this period was not remarkable : the Carmathians, as has been already noted, discouraged by the scandals connected with their false Mahdi Ibn Abi Zakariyyi, were remarkably quiet: their eminent general Abu Tahir al-Jannabi died in A.D. 944 : the power of the Fatimid Caliphs was seriously checked in North Africa;¹ and a few years later (A.D. 950) we find the Black Stone restored to Mecca and Carmathian soldiers in the service of the Buwayhid prince Mu'izzu'd-Dawla.

We now come to the long reign of al-Mutf (A.D. 946-974), during which the general political conditions in

Caliphate of
al-Muti' (A.D.
946-974).

Persia underwent little change, the Simanids still holding the north and north-east, the Ziyarids the Caspian provinces, and the House of Buwayh the south and (save in name) Baghdad, where, under the title of *Amiru'l-Umara*, they were practically supreme. During the last decade of this period the Fdtimid anti-Caliph al-Mu'izz Abu Tamfm Ma'add obtained possession of Egypt, and transferred his capital from Mahdiyya to Cairo, which thenceforward till the extinction of the dynasty in A.D. 1171 remained the centre of their power. About the same time a quarrel arose between them and their former allies the

¹ See de Goeje's *Memoire sur les Carmathes*, &c. (Leyden, 1886), pp. 142-3.

Carmathians, who about A.D. 971 even allied themselves with the 'Abbasids.¹

Turning once more to the world of literature and science, we may note the following events. In A.D. 950 died Abu

Nasr al-Farabi, the greatest philosopher of Islam before Avicenna, and, curiously enough, of Turkish origin.² About the same time al-Istakhri the

geographer produced his recension of al-Balkhi's work, and the Persian sea-captain Buzurg b. Shahriyar of Ramhurmuz wrote in Arabic, from his own recollections and information derived from other travellers, his curious work on *the Marvels of India*.

The death of Rudagi generally regarded as the father of Persian poetry, and the birth of another Persian poet, Kisa'i, also happened at this time. About A.D. 956 died the great historian al-Mas'udf, of Arab extraction and alleged Mu'ta-

zilitic leanings, of whose voluminous writings the *Kitdbu't-Tanblh wa'l-Ishraf* is accessible to

students in the original Arabic, and the better known *Murhju 'dh-Dhahab* both in the original and in the French translation of M M. Barbier de Meynard and Pavet de Courteille.

Narshakhi, the historian of Bukhara (preserved to us only in the later Persian translation of al-Qubawi made about A.D. 1128) died in A.D. 959. Giishydr, the astronomer or

Gilan, flourished about the same time; as did also the Christian physician 'Isi b. 'Ali, who compiled a *Biography of Oculists*. In A.D. 961 was born Abu Mansur 'Abdu'l-

Malik ath-Tha'alibi, the author of the *Yatlmatu' d-Dahr* cited above, as well as of many other important

and interesting works, at Nishapur. About three years later the minister of Mansur I the Samanid, Abu 'Ali Muhammad al-Bal'ami, at the com-

Literary manifestations of this period.

Al-Mas'udi.

Al-Bal'ami's Persian version of at-Tabari's history.

¹ De Goeje, *of. laud.*, pp. 176 and 183 *et seqq.*

² See Moritz Steinschneider's *Al-Farabi des arabischn Philosophen Leben und Schriften* in vol. xiii of the *Mini, de l'Acad. de St P.*; Carra de Vaux's *Avicenne*, pp. 91 *et seqq.* &c.

mand of his royal master, translated into Persian in an abridged form the great history of Tabari, which is one of the earliest important prose works in Persian which have come down to us. This version has been published in a French translation by Dubeux and Zotenberg (Paris, 1867-1874), and the number of excellent and carefully written old MSS. of it which exist in our public libraries show in what high esteem it was held.

A few years later (A.D. 965) died al-Mutanabbi, who, though disparaged by some European scholars, is generally regarded by all Arabic-speaking people as the

Al-Mutanabbi.

greatest poet of their race. Von Hammer calls him, in the translation of his poems which he published at Vienna in 1823, "der grosste Arabische Dichter"; and Jules Mohl (*Journal Asiatique* for 1859, series v, vol. 14, pp. 36-7) has the following most sensible remarks on him :—

" Quant au rang que chaque poete doit occuper dans sa litterature nationale, il n'appartient qu'a sa propre nation de le lui assigner, et s'il le garde pendant des siecles, comme Motanabbi l'a garde, il ne nous reste qu'a accepter l'opinion de ses juges naturels, dont la decision, apres les discussions prolongees et passionnees, parait etre que Motanabbi, malgre ses defauts et son inegalite, est le meilleur representant du gout et des sentiments des Arabes musulmans, comme les auteurs des Moallakat sont les representants les plus fideles des sentiments des Arabes du desert."

The influence of al-Mutanabbi and one or two other Arabic poets on the early developments of Persian poetry was also, as has been pointed out by Kazimirski in his edition and translation of the *Diwan* of Minuchihrf (Paris, 1886, pp. 143 and 316), very great, and for this reason alone his works ought to be read by every serious student of the origins of Persian poetry. The far-fetched conceits and rhetorical figures which abound in his verses will hardly appeal to many European readers as they do to the poet's countrymen, and at times he gives expression to ideas which to our taste are grossly unpoetical;¹

¹ For a striking instance of this see Dieterici's edition of his *Diwan* (Berlin, 1861), p. 8, verse 7.

others of his verses, however, breathe the old Bedouin spirit, amongst these being the verse which, as Ibn Khallikan says,¹ "caused his death." For, as he was returning from Persia with a large sum of money which had been bestowed on him by the Buwayhid prince 'Adudu'd-Dawla, he was attacked near Kufa by Arabs of the tribe of Asad. Being worsted in the combat, he was preparing to take to flight when his slave cried to him : " Let it never be said that you fled from the combat, you who are the author of this verse :—

' I am known to the horse-troop, the night and the desert's expanse,
Not more to the paper and pen than the sword and the lance ! "'

So al-Mutanabbi turned again to the combat and met his death like a true son of the desert. The Arab pride of race which animated him is shown by the following incident. One day a number of learned men² were conversing in the presence of that illustrious prince Sayfu'd-Dawla, and the grammarian Ibn Khalawayh was expressing his views on some point of Arabic philology, when al-Mutanabbi interrupted him, saying, " Silence, fellow ! What hast thou to do with Arabic, thou who art a Persian of Khuzistan ? "

More admirable, according to Western taste, than al-Mutanabbi, though less celebrated, was his contemporary Abu Firas, the cousin of the above-mentioned prince Sayfu'd-Dawla, to whose " circle " also (along with a galaxy of less famous poets like an-Nami, an-Nashi, az-Zahi, ar-Raffa' and al-Babbagha) he belonged. Von Kremer³ esteems him very highly, and concludes his notice of him in these words :—

"Thus is Abu Firas the picture of the stirring times in which he lived : in him once again the old, proud, warlike spirit of antiquity was re-incarnated, only the finer feelings being the outcome of the

¹ See de Slane's translation, vol. i, pp. 105-6.

² Ibid., p. 109.

³ *Culturgeschichte*, vol. ii, pp. 381-6.

later culture. The inner history of Arabic poetry ought, indeed, to conclude with him, had not a greater and more lofty genius¹ stepped forth, who independently gave a new and important development to the philosophical and speculative turn of thought first introduced by Abu'l-'Atahiya."

Abu Firas was killed in battle in A.D. 968, a year remarkable also for the birth of one of the great mystical poets of Persia, Abu Sa'id b. Abi'l-Khayr, the author of a celebrated collection of quatrains. About the same time died Abu'l-Faraj of Isfahan, the compiler of that vast thesaurus of Arabic verse known as the *Kitabu'l-Aghani* or "Book of Songs," a work which in the Cairo edition comprises twenty volumes. He also was of Arab, and, as it is asserted, of Umayyad descent, and belonged to the "circle" of Sayfu'd-Dawla. About A.D. 971 died the poet Ibn Kushajim, remarkable for his Indian descent and the high position which he held in the Carmathian government;² and in the same year was born the poet Abu'l-Fath al-Busti, one of the earliest literary *protégés* of the Ghaznawi dynasty. Finally, the last year of the Caliphate of al-Muti is notable for the birth of two very eminent men, the poet Abu'l'Ala al-Ma'arri and al-Biruni.

We come now to the Caliphate of at-Ta'i (A.D. 974-991), whose contemporaries were the Samanid Nuh II b. Mansur (A.D. 976-997) in Khurasan, Qabus b. Washmgir the Ziyarid (A.D. 976-1012) in Tabaristan, 'Adudu'd-Dawla in Fars, Kirman, Ahwaz, and Southern Persia, and in Egypt the Fatimid Anti-Caliph al-'Aziz Abu Mansur Nazar (A.D. 975-996). About the same time there rose into prominence Sabuktigin (A.D. 976-997), "the true founder of the Ghaznawi dynasty," as Stanley Lane-Poole says, whose son Mahmud achieved so mighty a renown as a warrior and champion

Caliphate of
al-Ta'i (A.D. 974-
991)—Political
condition of
Persia at this
time.

¹ i.e., Abu'l'Ala al-Ma'arri, b. A.D. 973.

² See de Goeje's *Carmathes*, pp. 151-2.

of Islam. This Sabuktagin was originally one of the Turkish slaves of Alptagin, himself in turn one of the Turkish slaves and favourites of 'Abdu'l-Malik the Samanid ; and he enlarged the little kingdom founded by his predecessors Alptagin and his two sons Ishaq and Balkatagin in the fastnesses of the Sulayman Mountains by the capture of Pishawar from the Rajputs, and by the acquisition of the government of Khurasan in A.D. 994 under the nominal suzerainty of the Samanids.

In the literary history of this period we have to notice first the death of the Persian poet Daqiqi (A.D. 975), who began the composition of the *Shahnama* which was afterwards so gloriously completed by Firdawsi. About a year later was composed a very important Arabic work, now rendered accessible to all scholars in the excellent edition of Van Vloten (Leyden, 1895) named " the Keys of the Sciences " (*Mafalhu'l-'Ulum*), by Abu 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Ahmad b. Yusuf al-Khwarazmi, which, in a small compass, gives a conspectus of the sciences, both indigenous and foreign, known to the Muslims of that time, together with their terminology. About the same time Ibn Hawqal^r re-edited al-Istakhris recension of the geography composed by Abu Zayd al-Balkhi, a pupil of the philosopher al-Kindi. About a year later (A.D. 978) died the Arabic grammarian as-Sirafi, who was not only a Persian but the son of a Zoroastrian named Bihzad. In A.D. 980, was born the great philosopher and physician Abu 'Ali b. Sina (Avicenna), also a Persian. A year later died a mystic of some note, Abu 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Khafif of Shiraz. In A.D. 982 died Ibrahim b. Hilal as-Sabi, one of the heathen of Hararn, whose great history of the Buwayhids, entitled *Kitdbu't-Taj* ("the Book of the Crown"), has unfortunately not come

¹ This forms the second volume of de Goeje's *Bibliotheca Geographorum Arabicorum* (Leyden, 1873).

down to us. This work was written in the highly artificial and rhetorical style which was now coming into fashion, and replacing the simple, unvarnished narratives of the earlier historians, and which, as Brockelmann points out, had a great influence on the formation of the prose style of the more ambitious Persian writers. Another writer of the same

Ibn Nubata type, Ibn Nubdta the Syrian, Court preacher to Sayfu'd-Dawla, who died in A.D. 984, is still read in the East, where some of his writings have been printed. The Fatimid poet Tamim b. al-Mu'izz

(† A.D. 984), brother of the Anti-Caliph al-'Aziz, in whose honour he composed panegyrics, deserves mention. The traveller and geographer al-Maqdisi, or

Al-Muqaddasi, composed his important work, entitled *Ahsanu't-Taqaim fi ma'rifati-Aqalim*¹ in A.D. 985, a work which has received the highest tributes of praise from several eminent Orientalists.² A year later was

Al-Qushayri. born al-Qushayri, the author of an important treatise on Sufiism. About A.D. 988 was composed the

The *Fihrist*, *Fihrist*, or "Index," one of the most important sources of knowledge for the literary and religious history of the early Muslim period, and even for the more ancient times which preceded it, whereof the author, Abu'l Faraj Muhammad b. Ishaq an-Nadim al-Warriq al-Baghdadi, died some six years later. Of his valuable work Brockelmann speaks as follows : 4 " His book, which he named simply the *Fihrist*, i.e., Index/was intended to include all books in the Arabic language available in his time, whether original compositions or translations. After an introduction on the different kinds of scripts, he deals with the revealed books of the different religions, then

¹ This forms the third volume of de Goeje's *Bibl. Geogr. Arab.* (Leyden, 1877).

² See Von Kremer's *Culturgeschichte*, vol. ii, pp. 429-433, where a long extract from his Preface is translated.

³ Edited with copious notes by Flugel (Leipzig, 1871).

⁴ *Gesad, Arab. Litt*, p. III.

with each individual branch of Literature, from the Qur'an and the writings connected therewith down to the Occult Sciences. In each section he groups the individual writers in approximately chronological order, and communicates what is known to him of their lives and works. To this book we owe many valuable data for the history of the civilisation and literature, not only of the Arabs, but generally of the whole of the Nearer

East." About the same time (A.D. 988) was
History of Qum.

composed one of the earliest local histories of Persia, a monograph on the city of Qum, which is preserved in a Persian translation (made in A.D. 1128),¹ though the Arabic original is lost. The work was dedicated to that great

patron of literature the Sahib Isma'il b. 'Abbad
The Sahib Is-
-ma'il b. 'Abbad.

(b. A.D. 936, d. 995), who was minister to the two Bu way hid rulers Mu'ayyidu'd-Dawla and Fakhru'd-Dawla, and who was himself the author of a copious Arabic dictionary called the *Muhl* ("Comprehensive"), still partly preserved, and of a treatise on Prosody called the *Iqnfr* ("Satisfaction"), of which a fine MS., dated A.H. 559 (= A.D. 1164), formerly in the possession of M. Schefer, is now in the Bibliotheque Nationale at Paris. Of the crowd of poets and men of letters whom the Sahib's generosity drew round him we read in ath-Tha'alibi's *Yatimatu'd-Dahr* (vol. iii, pp. 31 *et seqq.*); to his unparalleled generosity all writers bear testimony, so that the contemporary poet Abu Sa'Id ar-Rustami exclaims in a threnody which he composed on his patron's death :² "God hath willed that the hopes of the needy and the gifts of the generous should perish by the death of Ibn 'Abbad, and that they should never meet again till the day of resurrection." His love of books was such that, being invited by the Samanid King Nuh II b. Mansur to become his prime minister, he excused himself on this ground, amongst others,

¹ The MS. is in the British Museum, OR. 3391.

² See the interesting notice of the Sahib given by Ibn Khallikan (de Slane's translation, vol. i, p. 216).

that four hundred camels would be required for the transport of his library alone.¹ Poet, philologist, patron of letters, statesman and wit, the Sahib stands out as one of the brightest ornaments of that liberal and enlightened Buwayhid dynasty of which, unfortunately, our knowledge is so much less complete than we could desire.

Amongst other men of letters and science belonging to this period, we can only mention the great Shi'ite theologian Ibn Babawayh († A.D. 991),² whose work on jurisprudence called *Kitabu man la yahduruhu'l-faqih* (" the Book of him who hath no lawyer at hand ") is still of high authority in Persia ; the physician 'Ali b. 'Abbas al-Majusi († A.D. 994),³ whose father was, as his name implies, an adherent of the Zoroastrian faith ; the Dhimiloeist al-Mubarrad, author of the celebrated *Kamil*; 4 and last, but not least, the great Avicenna (Abu 'Ali b. Sma), philosopher, physician, and statesman († A.D. 1037), who at this time, being only about seventeen years of age, established his medical reputation by curing the Samanid ruler Nuh II b. Mansur, whose favour and protection he thus secured. Of this great man we shall have more to say in a subsequent chapter.

We have now brought our history to the end of the tenth century of our era, at which point we may pause to survey, before proceeding further, the scientific and literary achievements of this period, its religious and philosophical movements, and more particularly the earliest developments of that revival of the Persian national literature which now, having once been inaugurated, goes forwards with ever-increasing force. This period which we are discussing began, as we have seen, with a Turkish ascendancy fraught with peril alike to the Caliphate and to the civilisation

¹ Ibid., p. 215, and the *Yatima*, vol. iii, pp. 35-6.

² Brockelmann's *Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, vol. i, p. 187.

³ Ibid., p. 236. ⁴ Edited by Dr. W. Wright, Leipzig, 1864.

of Islam, and ended with the sudden rise to almost unlimited power of another Turk, Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna (succeeded to the throne, A.D. 998 ; died A.D. 1030), who, ^{Mahmud of Ghazna.} beginning with the small kingdom inherited from his father Sabuktagin, overthrew the tottering House of Saman ; invaded India in twelve separate campaigns (A.D. 1001-1024), wherein he slew innumerable " idolators," destroyed many idol-temples, and permanently annexed the Panjab; reduced Ghur (A.D. 1012); annexed Transoxiana (A.D. 1016), and struck a death-blow at the House of Buwayh, from whom he wrested Isfahan. But between these two extremes we see Persia, ever more detached from the direct control of the Caliph, divided between several noble and enlightened dynasties of Persian extraction, the Houses of Saman, Buwayh, and Ziyar, free once more to develop on its own lines and to produce in its native tongue a splendid and extensive literature.

CHAPTER XI

THE STATE OF MUSLIM LITERATURE AND SCIENCE AT THE BEGINNING OF THE GHAZNAWI PERIOD

IT seems desirable that at this point, standing, as it were, on the threshold of modern Persian literature, we should consider in somewhat greater detail the state of development attained by the Science and Literature of the Muslims, which were the common heritage of all those nations who had embraced Islam. Persian is often spoken of as a very easy language, and this is true, so far as the language itself is concerned ; but to be a good Persian scholar is very difficult, since it involves a thorough familiarity, not only with the Qu'ran, the Traditions of the Prophet, and the ancient Persian legends, but with the whole scientific and literary point of view which prevailed in the Muhammadan East. This applies more particularly to those writers who lived before the terrible devastation wrought by the Mongol invasion of the thirteenth century, for never after this did the literature and science of the Muslims reach their old level, owing to the wholesale massacres and acts of incendiarism perpetrated by these hateful savages. The scientific outlook of the later writers is much more circumscribed ; the Arabic language ceased to be generally used throughout the realms of Islam ; and, owing to the destruction of Baghddad and the Caliphate, there was no longer a metropolis

of Culture and Learning to co-ordinate, concentrate, and combine the intellectual efforts of the Muslim world.

We possess fortunately three admirable sources of information on the range and scope of the literature and science of Islam at the period (i.e., the end of the tenth century of our era) of which we are speaking, viz. :—

(1) The Treatises of the *Ikhwanu's-Safa*, or "Brethren of Purity," that society of encyclopaedists and philosophers of which we have already spoken in the last chapter.

(2) The *Mafatihul-'Ulum*, or "Keys of the Sciences," composed in A.D. 976 by Abu 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Yusuf al-Katib ("the Scribe") of Khwarazm, and recently edited (Leyden, 1895) by Van Vloten.

(3) The *Fihrist*, or "Index," of Abu'l-Faraj Muhammad b. Ishaq al-Warraaq ("the Bookseller" or "Copyist") of Baghdad, better known as Ibn Abi Ya'qub an-Nadim, composed in A.D. 988, and edited by Flugel in 1871-2.

All these works are written in Arabic, and are of an essentially encyclopaedic character. The two first deal more particularly with Philosophy and Science, and the third with Literature and "Culturgeschichte." I propose to discuss them in the order given above, and to give some account of their scope and contents.

I. *The Treatises of the Ikhwanu's-Safa.*

This society of encyclopaedists flourished at Basra in the latter half of the tenth century of our era, and included, amongst the five or six of its members whose names have come down to us, men from Bust in the far east of Persia, Zanzan in the north-west of the same country, and Jerusalem ; while, of the remaining three, one was certainly Persian, and the other two were probably of Arab extraction.¹ This society summed up the philosophical and scientific learning of the time in a series of fifty-one anonymous tracts, written in a popular style,

¹ For their names, see Brockelmann's *Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, vol. 1, pp. 213-214.

THE IKHWANUS-SAFA

of which a complete edition was printed at Bombay in four volumes, comprising some 1,134 pages, in A.H. 1305-6 (A.D. 1887-9). Complete or partial translations of these tracts (*Rasa'il*) exist in several other Eastern languages, viz., Persian (lith. Bombay, A.D. 1884), Hindustani, and Turkish. For a knowledge of their contents and an exposition of their teachings we are indebted chiefly to the learned and indefatigable Dr. Friedrich Dieterici of Berlin, who published between 1858 and 1895 seventeen valuable monographs (including six texts) on Arabian Philosophy in the ninth and tenth centuries of our era, with especial reference to the *Ikhwanu's-Safa*. The fifty-one tracts published by this fraternity covered the whole ground of Philosophy, as understood by its members, pretty exhaustively. But of course the aspirant after philosophical knowledge was supposed to be already well grounded in the ordinary subjects of study, which are thus enumerated by Dieterici¹:—

I. Mundane Studies.

1. Reading and Writing.
2. Lexicography and Grammar.
3. Calculation and Computation.
4. Prosody and the Poetic Art.
5. The Science of Omens and Portents.
6. The Science of Magic, Amulets, Alchemy, and Legerdemain.
7. Trades and Crafts.
8. Buying and Selling, Commerce, Agriculture, and Cattle-farming.
9. Biography and Narrative.

II. Religious Studies.

1. Knowledge of the Scripture (*i.e.*, the *Qur'an*).
2. Exegesis of the Scripture.
3. The Science of Tradition.
4. Jurisprudence.
5. The Commemoration of God, Admonition, the Ascetic Life, Mysticism (Sufiism), and the Ecstatic or Beatific Vision.

The philosophic studies properly so called include—

¹ *Einleitung und Makrokosmos* (Leipzig, 1876), pp. 124 *et seqq.*, and the preface to the text of the *Abhandlungen der Ikhwan es Safa* (Leipzig, 1886), pp. vi-vii.

III. *Philosophic Studies.*

(i) Mathematics, Logic, &c. (*ar-Riyadiyyat wa'l-Mantiqiyyat* == *ραροπααιδευτικά και τὰ λογικά*), discussed in Tracts i-xiii (= vol. i), which treat of such things as Number, Geometry, Astronomy, Geography, Music, Arithmetical and Geometrical Relation, Arts and Crafts, Diversity of Human Character, the *εισαγωγή*, the Categories, the *ερμηνευτικά*, and the *ἀναλυτικά*.

(ii) Natural Science and Anthropology (*af-Tabi'iyat wa'l-Insaniyyat* = *τὰ φυσικά και τὰ ἀνθρωπολογικά*), discussed in Tracts xiv-xxx (= vol. ii), which treat of Matter, Form, Space, Time, and Motion ; Cosmogony ; Production, Destruction, and the Elements ; Meteorology ; Mineralogy ; the Essence of Nature and its Manifestations ; Botany ; Zoology ; Anatomy and Anthropology ; Sense-perceptions ; Embryology ; Man as the Microcosm ; the Development of the Soul (Psychical Evolution) ; Body and Soul ; the true nature of Psychical and Physical Pain and Pleasure ; Diversity of Languages (Philology).

(iii) Psychology (*an-Nafsaniyyat* = *τὰ ψυχικά*), discussed in Tracts xxxi-xl (= vol. iii), which treat of the Understanding, the World-Soul, &c.

(iv) Theology (*al-Ilahiyyat* = *τὰ θεολογικά*), discussed in Tracts xli-li, which treat of the ideals and methods of the *Ikhwanu's-Safa* , the Esoteric Doctrine of Islam ; the Ordering of the Spirit World ; the Occult Sciences.

The *Ikhwanu's-Safa* were essentially synthetical and encyclopaedic, seeking, as Dieterici says (*Makrokosmos*, p. iv), "to correlate all the materials of knowledge, so far as these had reached them; and to construct a synthetic view of the material and spiritual worlds which would guarantee an answer to all questions, conformable to the standpoint of the Culture of that time." In general the topics discussed by them may be divided, according to Dieterici's plan, into—

(i) The Macrocosm, or the Development of the Universe as the Evolution of Plurality out of Unity, an Evolution by Emanation from God through Intelligence, Soul, Primal Matter, Secondary Matter, the World, Nature, and the Elements to the final Products, or "Threefold Progeny," *i.e.*, the Animal, Vegetable, and Mineral Kingdoms.

(ii) The Microcosm (Man), or the Return ("Remanatio") from Plurality to Unity.

The general character of their system was a "combination of Semitic Monotheism with Neo-Platonism," so that in a sense Philo-Judaeus may, I suppose, be regarded as their prototype. To this synthesis they were impelled, as Dieterici implies (*Makrokosmos*, pp. 86-88), by a conviction of the unity of all truth, religious, philosophical, and scientific. Co-ordinating all the sciences known to them with this view and for this object, they studied each not only for its own sake, but in its relation to Truth as a whole, and endeavoured to embody their conceptions in an intelligible, attractive, and even popular form, to which end they made extensive use (as in their celebrated apologue of *the Beasts and Man*) of simile, allegory, and parable. In their prehistoric and scientific conceptions they were most influenced by Aristotle as regards Logic and Natural Science, by the Neo-Pythagoreans and Neo-Platonists in their theories of Numbers and Emanations, by Ptolemy in their ideas of Natural History, and by Galen in Anthropology and Medicine, the whole synthesis being informed by a strong Pantheistic Idealism.¹ They believed that perfection was to be reached by a combination of the Greek Philosophy with the Arabian Religious Law.² They were the successors of al-Kindi and al-Farabi, and the predecessors of the Great Avicenna, with whom, as Dieterici observes,³ "the development of Philosophy in the East came to an end." From the East this system, the so-called "Arabian Philosophy," passed to the Moors in Spain; whence, after undergoing further development at the hands of Averroes (Ibn Rushd, † A.D. 1135), it became diffused in Europe, and gave rise to the Christian Scholastic Philosophy, to which, according to Dieterici,⁴ it rendered the greatest service in restoring the Aristotelian element, which, in the earlier systems of Christian philosophy, had been almost ousted by the Neo-Platonist element.

¹ Dieterici, *Makrokosmos*, pp. 138-140.

² *Ibid.*, p. 146.

³ *Ibid.*, p. 159.

⁴ *Ibid.*, p. 159.

II The *Mafatluh*-*Ulum*.

Turning now to the *Mafatihu*-*Ulum*, we find the sciences primarily divided into two great groups, the indigenous or Arabian, and the exotic, which are for the most part Greek or Persian.

i. *The Indigenous Sciences.*

1. Jurisprudence (*fiqh*), discussed in n sections, including First Principles (*usul*), and Applications (*furu*), such as Legal Purity; Prayer; Fasting; Alms; Pilgrimage; Buying and Selling; Marriage; Homicide, Wounding, Retaliation, Compensation, and Blood-wit, &c.

2. Scholastic Philosophy (*kalam*), discussed in 7 sections, including its subject-matter; the various schools and sects of Muslims, Christians, Jews, and Gentiles (Persians, Indians, Chaldaeans, Manichaeans, Marcionites, Bardesians, Mazdakites, Sophists, &c.); Arabian heathenism, and the First Principles of Religion discussed and established by this science.

3. Grammar (*nahw*), discussed in 12 sections.

4. The Secretarial Art (*kiidbat*), discussed in 8 sections; including explanations of all the technical terms employed in the various Government offices.

5. Prosody (*'anid*) and the Poetic Art (*shi'r*), discussed in 5 sections.

6. History (*akhbdr*), discussed in 9 sections; especially the history of Ancient Persia, Muhammadan history, pre-Muhammadan history of Arabia, especially Yaman, and the history of Greece and Rome.

ii. *The Exotic Sciences.*

7. Philosophy (*falsafa*), discussed in 3 sections, including its subdivisions and terminology; the derivation of the word (correctly explained from the Greek); and the proper position in relation to it of Logic (*manfiq*), the Natural Sciences (Medicine, Meteorology, Mineralogy, Botany, Zoology, and Alchemy), and the Mathematical Sciences, Geometry, Astronomy, Music, &c).

8. Logic (*mantiq*), discussed in 9 sections.

9. Medicine (*ṭibb*), discussed in 8 sections, including Anatomy, Pathology, Materia Medica and Therapeutics, Diet, Weights and Measures, &c.

10. Arithmetic (*arithmdtiqi*, *'ilmu*-*l-'adad*, *hisdb*), discussed in 5 sections, including the elements of Algebra.

I I . Geometry (*handasa*, *jumetriya*), discussed in 4 sections.

12. Astronomy (*'ilmu*-*n-nujtitn*), discussed in 4 sections, treating

of the names of the Planets and Fixed Stars; the composition of the Universe according to the Ptolemaic system; Judicial Astrology; and the instruments and apparatus used by astronomers.

13. Music (*musiqi*), discussed in 3 sections; including an account of the various musical instruments and their names, and musical notation and terminology.

14. Mechanics (*'ilmu'l-hiyal*; "the 'Science of Devices"), in 2 sections, including Hydrostatics.

15. Alchemy (*kimiya*), in 3 sections, including an account of the apparatus, the substances, and the processes used by those who practice it.

III. *The Fihrist.*

The *Fihrist*, or "Index," of Muhammad b. Ishaq an-Nadim is one of the most remarkable and valuable works in the Arabic language which has survived to our days. Manuscripts of it are rare, and more or less defective. Flugel's edition is based on two Paris MSS. (of which the more ancient codex contains the first four of the ten *Maqalat* or "Discourses" into which the book is divided, and the more modern, transcribed for de Slane in Constantinople, presumably from the MSS. numbered 1134 and 1135 in the Kiiprulu-zade Library, the latter portion of the work, from the fifth section of the fifth discourse onwards); two Vienna MSS., both incorrect and incomplete; the Leyden MS., which contains only *Maqalas* vii-x; and two Leyden fragments.¹ Sprenger hazarded a conjecture that the work was in reality a *Catalogue raisonné* of some large library, but this view is rejected by Brockelmann.²

Be this as it may, I know of no Arabic book which inspires me at once with so much admiration for the author's enormous erudition, and so much sadness that sources of knowledge at once so numerous and so precious as were available when he wrote should, for the most part, have entirely perished. Of authors who are known to us only by a few small fragments,

¹ See pp. xvi-xix of the Preface to Flugel's edition.

² *Gesch. d. arab. Litt.*, vol. i, p. 147.

he enumerates dozens or scores of works, but even these are the fortunate few, for the majority are known to us only or chiefly by his notices. His preface is such a model of conciseness, such a pleasing contrast to the empty rhetoric which disfigures, as a rule, at any rate the opening pages of most later Arabic and Persian works, that I cannot forbear translating it here.

" Lord, help man by Thy Mercy to reach upwards beyond preliminaries to conclusions, and to win to the aim in view without prolixity of words! And therefore have we limited ourselves to these words at the beginning of this our Book, seeing that they sufficiently indicate our object in compiling it, if it please God. Therefore we say (and in God do we seek help, and of Him do we pray a blessing on all His Prophets and His servants who are single-hearted in their allegiance to Him : and there is no strength and no power save in God, the Supreme, the Mighty):—This is the Index of the books of all peoples of the Arabs and non-Arabs whereof somewhat exists in the language and script of the Arabs, on all branches of knowledge ; together with accounts of their compilers and the classes of their authors, and the genealogies of these, the dates of their births, the extent of their lives, the times of their deaths, the location of their countries, and their virtues and vices, from the time when each science was first discovered until this our age, to wit the year three hundred and seventy-seven of the Flight (= A.D. 987-8)."

Translation of
Preface to the
Fihrist.

The author then immediately proceeds to summarise the contents of his book in the following epitome :—

First Discourse, in three Sections.

Section i. Describing the languages of the different peoples, Arab and non-Arab, the characteristics of their writings, the varieties of their scripts, and the forms of their written character.

Contents of the
Fihrist.

Section iiii On the names of the Books of the Law (*i.e.*, the Scriptures) revealed to the different sects of Muslims (*i.e.*, Jews, Christians, and Sabeans)¹ and the different sects of those who follow them.

¹ *Islam* means the submitting or resigning of one's self to God's will, and in the wider sense the term Muslim includes the faithful followers of

Section Hi. Describing the Book " which falsehood approacheth not from before nor from behind, a Revelation from One Wise and Laudable " ;¹ and the names of the books composed on the sciences connected therewith, with notices of the Readers, and the names of those who handed down their traditions, and the anomalies of their readings.

Second Discourse, in three Sections, on the Grammarians and Philologists.

Section i. On the Origin of Grammar, with accounts of the grammarians of the School of Basra, and the Stylists of the Arabs, and the names of their books.

Section ii. Account of the Grammarians and Philologists of the School of Kufa, and the names of their books.

Section iii. Account of a school of Grammarians who strove to combine the views of the two schools (above mentioned), and the names of their books.

Third Discourse, in three sections, on History, Belles Lettres, Biography, and Genealogies.

Section i. Account of the Historians, Narrators, Genealogists, Biographers, and Chroniclers, and the names of their books.

Section ii. Account of the Kings, Secretaries, Preachers, Ambassadors, Chancellors, and Government Officials (who composed books), and the names of their books.

Section iii. Account of the Courtiers, Favourites, Minstrels, Jesters, and Buffoons (who composed books), and the names of their books.

Fourth Discourse, in two sections, on Poetry and Poets.

Section i. On the groups of the Heathen Poets, and such of the Muslim poets as reached back to the Pagan Period (of the Arabs), and of those who collected their *diwans*, and the names of those who handed down their poems (till they were collected and edited).

Section ii. On the groups of the Muslim Poets, including the modern poets down to this our time.

each prophet recognised by the Muhammadans down to the close of his dispensation. Thus Abraham taught the faith of Islam, and Bilqis, Queen of Sheba, on her conversion, " becomes a Muslim with Solomon the son of David."

¹ i.e., the Qur'an, whence (xli, 42) this phrase is taken.

Fifth Discourse, in five sections, on the Scholastic Philosophy and the School-men.

Section i. On the origin of the Scholastic Philosophy, and of the School-men of the Mu'tazilites and Murjites, and the names of their books.

Section ii. Account of the School-men of the Shi'ites, whether Imamis, Zaydis, or other of the Extremists (*Ghuldt*) and Isma'ilis, and the names of their books.

Section iii. On the School-men of the Predestinarians and the Hashwiyya, and the names of their books.

Section iv. Account of the School-men of the Kharijites, their classes, and the names of their books.

Section v. Account of the wandering mendicants, recluses, devotees, and Sufis, who taught a scholastic philosophy based on their fancies and reveries, and the names of their books.

Sixth Discourse, in eight sections, on Jurisprudence, and the Jurisconsults and Traditionists.

Section i. Account of Malik and his disciples, and the names of their books.

Section ii. Account of Abu Hanifa an-Nu'man and his disciples, and the names of their books.

Section iii. Account of the Imam ash-Shan'i and his disciples, and the names of their books.

Section iv. Account of Da'ud b. 'Ali . . b. Khalaf al-Isfahani and his disciples, and the names of their books.

Section v. Account of the Shi'ite Jurisconsults, and the names of their books.

Section vi. Account of the Jurisconsults who were at the same time Traditionists and transmitters of Tradition, and the names of their books.

Section vii. Account of Abu Ja'far at-Tabari, and his disciples, and the names of their books.

Section viii. Account of the Kharijite Jurisconsults, and the names of their books.

Seventh Discourse, in three sections, on Philosophy and the Ancient Sciences.

Section i. Account of the Materialist Philosophers and the Logicians, and the names of their books and the versions and commentaries of these, alike such as still exist, and such as are mentioned but are no longer extant, and such as were extant but are now lost.

Section ii. Account of the Mathematicians, Geometricians,

Arithmeticians, Musicians, Accountants, and Astronomers, and the makers of [scientific] instruments, and the Mechanics and Engineers.

Section tti. On the origins of Medicine, with accounts of the physicians amongst the Ancients and the Moderns, and the names of their books, with their versions and commentaries.

Eighth Discourse, in three sections, on Legends, Fables, Charms, Magic, and Conjuring.

Section i. Account of the Story-tellers, Saga-men and Artists, and the names of the books composed on Legends and Fables.

Section ii. Account of the Charm-mongers, Conjurors and Magicians, and the names of their books.

Section iii. On books composed on divers other topics, whereof the authors and compilers are unknown.

Ninth Discourse, in two sections, on Sects and Creeds.

Section i. Describing the Sects of the Harranian Chaldaeans, called in our time Sabaeans, and the Sects of Dualists, whether Manichaeans, Bardesanians, Khurramis, Marcionites, Mazdakites, and others, and the names of their books.

Section ii. Describing sundry strange and curious sects, such as those of India and China, and others of other like peoples.

Tenth Discourse, containing accounts of the Alchemists and seekers after the Philosopher's Stone amongst the Ancient and Modern Philosophers, and the names of their books.

Besides these three books there is another and earlier work, the *Kitibu'l-Ma'arif* of Ibn Qutayba († circ. A.D. 889), of which the text was published at Göttingen by the indefatigable Wiistenfeld in 1850, which gives us a good idea of the historical and biographical knowledge deemed necessary for all who had any pretensions to be fairly well read. In this book the author treats of the following subjects: the Creation (pp. 6-10); Sacred History, giving a brief account of the Patriarchs and Prophets (including not only those mentioned in the Old Testament, but others, such as Hud and Salih, mentioned in the Qur'an), and Christ (pp. 10-27); Profane

History, including the chronology and racial divisions of mankind, the names of the true believers amongst the Arabs before the Mission of the Prophet, the Genealogies of the Arabs (pp. 28-56) ; the Genealogy and Kinsfolk of the Prophet, including his wives, children, clients, and horses, the history of his Mission, wars, triumph, and death (pp. 56-83) ; the History of the Four Orthodox Caliphs (pp. 83-106), of 'All's sons, of Zubayr, Talha, 'Abdu'r-Rahman b. 'Awf, Sa'd b. Abi Waqqas and other eminent Muslims of early times, concluding with a brief list of "the Hypocrites " (pp. 106-174) ; History of the Umayyads, and of the 'Abbasid Caliphs down to al-Mu'tamid, in whose time the author wrote (pp. 175-200) ; biographies of famous statesmen, officers, and governors of the Muhammadan Empire, and of notable rebels (pp. 201-215) ; biographies of the *Tabi'un* or successors of the " Companions " of the Prophet (pp. 216-248) ; biographies of the chief doctors and teachers of Islam, of the founders of its principal schools of thought, of the traditionists, "readers" of the Qur'an, genealogists and historians, grammarians and transmitters of verse, &c, of the principal mosques, of the early conquests of the Muslims and other matters concerning them, and of the chief outbreaks of plague and pestilence (pp. 248-293); account of the great "Days" (i.e., the famous battles) of the Arabs, of those amongst them whose names became a proverb, of their religions before the time of Islam, of the chief sects in Islam, and of the manner in which certain peoples (e.g., the Kurds and Jews) came by their names (pp. 293-304) ; and histories of the Kings of Yaman, Syria (Ghassdnids), Hira, and Persia, from the time of Jamshid to the end of the Sasanian dynasty (pp. 304-330).

It will be seen from what has been said above how wide a range of knowledge is required to enable the student of Muhammadan literature fully to understand and appreciate all the allusions which he will meet with even in the poets,

especially those who lived in the palmy days of the Caliphate. And apart from this general knowledge, and a thorough understanding of the language (whether Persian or Arabic) which constitutes the vehicle of utterance, he must, in order to derive the fullest pleasure from the poetry of these nations, possess a considerable amount of technical knowledge, not only of Prosody and Grammar, but of the various branches of Rhetoric (*'Ilmu'l-Ma'ani wa'l-Bayan*, "the Science of Ideas and their Expression") and Euphuism (*'Ilmu'l-Badai'i*), so that he may at once recognise and appreciate the various tropes, similes, metaphors, inuendos, hyperboles, antitheses, quotations, aetiologies, amphibologies, homonymies, anagrams, and the like, which he will come across at every turn, especially in the *qasidas*, or panegyrics, to which most of the older Persian poets devoted so large a portion of their energies and talents, for the reason that they were for the most part Court poets, and wrote not for the general public but for their patrons, on whose liberality they depended for their livelihood. This is why many of those poets, such as 'Unsuri, Farrukhi, Khaqani, Anwari, Dhahir of Faryab, and the like, whom the Persians reckon amongst their greatest, could never, no matter with what skill they might be translated, appeal to the European reader, whose sympathies will rather be won by the epic, lyric, didactic, mystic, satiric or pessimist poets, such as Firdawsi, Hafidh, Sa'di, Nasir-i-Khusraw, 'Attar, Jalalu'd-Din Rumi, 'Ubayd-i-Zakani, and 'Umar Khayyam, each of whom, in a different way, appeals to some ground common to all mankind.

In spite of the excellent works on the Prosody and Rhetoric of the Persians by Gladwin, Ruckert, Blochmann, and other scholars, I might perhaps have thought it desirable to speak at greater length on these subjects had it not been for the masterly Prolegomena prefixed by my lamented friend Mr. E. J. W. Gibb (whose death on December 5, 1901, after a short illness, at the early age of forty-four, has inflicted an incalculable loss

on Oriental scholarship) to the first volume of his great *History of Ottoman Poetry* (London : Luzac & Co., 1900). Nearly twenty years ago we spent several weeks together in London, studying Persian and Turkish, and cultivating the society of various educated and intelligent Muslims, chiefly Persians, who happened at that time to be resident in the metropolis. Of these the late Mirza Muhammad Baqir of Bawanat in Fars, whose personality I attempted to depict in the Introductory Chapter of my *Year amongst the Persians* (London : A. and C. Black, 1893), was beyond question the most talented and original. From that time till his death Gibb and I were in frequent communication, and the hours which I was able from time to time to spend with him in his study in London were amongst the happiest and most profitable of my life. Within the last few months it has been my sad duty to examine his books, manuscripts, and papers, to catalogue the rare and precious volumes which he had so sedulously sought out from the East, and to set in order the unpublished portions of the great work to which his life was devoted. H i g h as was the opinion I had already formed of the first volume of his book, which alone has yet been published, I should never have realised the labour it had cost him, or the extent of his reading, his fine scholarship and his critical judgment, had I not obtained the insight into his work which this examination gave me ; and I should be happy to think that I could ever produce half so fine a work on Persian poetry as he has done on Turkish. The Prolegomena at least of this great book should be read by every student of Muhammadan Literature.

CHAPTER XII

RELIGIOUS MOVEMENTS OF THIS PERIOD

I. THE ISMA'ILIS AND CARMATHIANS, OR THE "SECT OF THE SEVEN."

T H E religious and political position assumed by the *Shi'a*, or "Faction" of 'All ibn Abi Talib, has been already discussed at some length, together with the causes which rendered it specially attractive to the Persians. In this chapter we shall have to examine one of the developments of this school of thought, which, though at the present day of comparatively little importance, played a great part in the history of the Muhammadan world down to the Mongol Invasion in the thirteenth century, and to which, therefore, we shall have to refer repeatedly in the subsequent portion of this work.

The *Shi'a* agree generally in their veneration for 'All and their rejection of his three predecessors, Abu Bakr, 'Umar, and 'Uthman, and in their recognition of the Imams of the House of 'All as the chosen representatives of God, supernaturally gifted and divinely appointed leaders, whose right to the allegiance of the faithful is derived directly from Heaven, not from any election or agreement of the Church (*Ijma'-i-sunnat*). Briefly they may be described as the supporters of the principle of Divine Right as opposed to the principle of Democratic Election.

Further, as we have already seen, most of the *Shi'ites*

(especially those of Persia) attached great importance to the fact that all their Imams subsequent to 'Ali (who was the Prophet's cousin) were descended also from Fatima (the Prophet's daughter), and hence were the direct and lineal descendants of the Prophet himself; and to the alleged fact (see pp. 130—134 and 229 *supra*) that all the Imams subsequent to al-Husayn (†the third) were also the lineal descendants of the Sasanians, the old Royal Family of Persia.

There were, however, other sects of the Shi'a (Kaysiniyya and Zaydiyya) who recognised as Imams descendants not only of al-Husayn's brother al-Hasan (Imams, that is to say, who made no claim of descent from the House of Sasan) but of his half-brother Muhammad Ibnu'l-Hanafiyya ("the son of the Hanafite woman"), who were not children of Fatima,¹ and hence were not the direct descendants of the Prophet. These sects, however, seem, as a rule, to have had comparatively little hold in Persia save in Tabaristān (where, as we have seen, a dynasty of "Zaydite" Imams flourished from A.D. 864 to 928), and need not further claim our attention, which must rather be concentrated on the Imamiyya, or Imdmites proper, and its two great branches, the "Sect of the Twelve" (*Ithnā-[<]ashariyya*), which prevails in Persia to-day, and the "Sect of the Seven" (*Sab'iyya*) or Isma'illīs, with its various branches, including the notorious Assassins (*Malahida*, or "heretics" *par excellence*, as they were generally called by their opponents in Persia), who will form the subject of a later chapter. The fourth and subsequent Imams of both these important branches of the Shi'a were descendants of al-Husayn, and, as has been already emphasised, enjoyed in the eyes of their followers the double prestige of representing at the same time the Prophetic House of Arabia and the Royal House of Persia.

¹ Rashidu'd-Din Fadlu'llah says in the section of his great history (†the *Jami'u't-Tawarikh*), which deals with the Isma'ilīs, that in Abu Muslim's time the descendants of 'Ali based their claim to the Caliphate "on the nobility of their descent from Fatima."

As far as the sixth Imam, Ja'far as-Sadiq ("the Veridical"), the great-grandson of al-Husayn, who died in A.H. 148 (A.D. 765), the Sects of the Seven and of the Twelve agree concerning the succession of their pontiffs, but here the agreement ceases. Ja'far originally nominated as his successor his eldest son Isma'il, but afterwards, being displeased with him (because, as some assert, he was detected indulging himself in wine^x), he revoked this nomination and designated another of his sons, Musa al-Kadhim (†the seventh Imam of the Sect of the Twelve) as the next Imam. Isma'il, as is generally asserted, died during his father's lifetime ; and, that no doubt might exist on this point, his body was publicly shown. But some of the Shi'a refused to withdraw their allegiance from him, alleging that the nomination could not be revoked, and that even if he did drink wine this was done deliberately and with a high purpose, to show that the "wine" forbidden by the Prophet's teaching was to be understood in an allegorical sense as spiritual pride, or the like—a view containing the germ of that extensive system of *ta'wil*, or Allegorical Interpretation, which was afterwards so greatly developed by the Sect of the Seven. Nor did Isma'il's death put an end to the sect which took its name from him, though differences arose amongst them ; some asserting that he was not really dead, or that he would return ; others, that since he died during his father's lifetime he never actually became Imam, but that the nomination was made in order that the Imamate might be transmitted through him to his son Muhammad, whom, consequently, they regarded as the Seventh, Last, and Perfect Imam ; while others apparently regarded Isma'it and his son Muhammad as identical, the latter being a return or re-incarnation of the former. Be this as it may, de Sacy is probably right in conjecturing² that until the appearance of 'Abdu'lldh b.

¹ This is stated, for example, in the *Jami'u't-Tawarikh* mentioned in the last note.

² *Exposé "de la Religion des Druzes*, vol. i, p. lxxii.

Maymun al-Qaddah (of whom we shall speak presently) about A. H. 260¹ (A. D. 873-4), "the sect of the Isma'ilis had been merely an ordinary sect of the Shi'ites, distinguished from others by its recognition of Muhammad b. Ismail as the last Imam, and by its profession of that allegorical doctrine of which this Muhammad, or perhaps his grandfather Ja'far as-Sadiq, had been the author.

The genius which gave to this comparatively insignificant sect the first impulse towards that might and influence which it enjoyed for nearly four centuries came, as usual, from Persia, and in describing it I cannot do better than cite the words of those great Dutch scholars de Goeje and Dozy.

"It was," says the former,² "an inveterate hatred against the Arabs and Islam which, towards the middle of the third century of the *hijra*, suggested to a certain 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun, an oculist (*Qaddah*) by profession and a Persian by race, a project as amazing for the boldness and genius with which it was conceived as for the assurance and vigour with which it was carried out."

"To bind together³ in one association the conquered and the conquerors ; to combine in one secret society, wherein there should be several grades of initiation, the free-thinkers, who saw in religion only a curb for the common people, and the bigots of all sects ; to make use of the believers to bring about a reign of the unbelievers, and of the conquerors to overthrow the empire which themselves had founded; to form for himself, in short, a party, numerous, compact, and schooled to obedience, which, when the moment was come, would give the throne, if not to himself, at least to his descendants ; such was the dominant idea of 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun ; an idea which, grotesque and audacious though it was, he realised with astonishing tact, incomparable skill, and a profound knowledge of the human heart."⁴

"To attain this end a conjunction of means was devised which may fairly be described as Satanic ; human weakness was attacked

¹ *Fihrist*, p. 187. ² *Memoire sur les Carmathes*, Leyden, 1886.

³ Here speaks Dozy (*Histoire des Musulmans de l'Espagne*, vol. iii, pp. 8 *et seqq.*), whom de Goeje cites in this place.

⁴ Here the citation from Dozy ends, and what follows is in the words of de Goeje.

on every side; devoutness was offered to the believing; liberty, not to say licence, to the reckless; philosophy to the strong-minded; mystical hopes to the fanatical, and marvels to the common folk. So also a Messiah was presented to the Jews, a Paraclete to the Christians, a Mahdi to the Mussulmans, and, lastly, a philosophical system of theology to the votaries of Persian and Syrian paganism. And this system was put in movement with a calm resolve which excites our astonishment, and which, if we could forget the object, would merit our liveliest admiration."

The only criticism I would make on this luminous description of the Isma'ilf propaganda is that it hardly does justice to those, at any rate, by whose efforts the doctrines were taught, amidst a thousand dangers and difficulties ; to that host of missionaries (*da'i*, plural *du'at*) whose sincerity and self-abnegation at least are wholly admirable. And here I cannot refrain from quoting a passage from the recently published *Histoire et Religion des Nosairis* (Paris, 1900) of Rene Dussaud, one of the very few Europeans who have, as I think, appreciated the good points of this remarkable sect.

"Certain excessess," he says (p. 49), "rendered these doctrines hateful to orthodox Musulmans, and led them definitely to condemn them. It must be recognised that many Isma'ili precepts were borrowed from the Mu'tazilites, who, amongst other things, repudiated the Attributes of God and proclaimed the doctrine of Free Will. Notwithstanding this lack of originality, it appears that the judgments pronounced by Western scholars are marked by an excessive severity. It is certainly wrong to confound, as do the Musulman doctors, all these sects in one common reprobation. Thus, the disappearance of the Fatimids, who brought about the triumph of the Isma'ili religion in Egypt, concludes an era of prosperity, splendour, and toleration such as the East will never again enjoy."

And in a note at the foot of the page the same scholar remarks with justice that even that branch of the Isma'ilis from whom was derived the word "Assassin," and to whom it was originally applied, were by no means the first community to make use of this weapon of a persecuted minority against

their oppressors, and that " the Old Man of the Mountain " himself was not so black as it is the custom to paint him.¹

Let us return, however, to 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun al-Qaddah, to whom is generally ascribed the origin of the Isma'ili power and organisation and the real parentage of the Fatimid Caliphs of Egypt and the West; and let us take the account of him given in the *Fihrist* in preference to the assertions of more modern and less accurate writers. He was, according to this work, a native of Ahwdz; and his father Maymun the Oculist was the founder of the Maymuniyya sect, a branch of the Khattdbiyya, which belonged to the *Gkulat* or Extreme Shi'ites, teaching that the Imams, and in particular the sixth Imam Ja'far as-Sadiq, the father of Isma'il, were Divine incarnations.² 'Abdu'llah claimed to be a Prophet, and performed prodigies which his followers regarded as miracles, pretending to traverse the earth in the twinkling of an eye and thus to obtain knowledge of things happening at a distance; an achievement really effected, as the author of the *Fihrist* asserts, by means of carrier-pigeons despatched by his confederates.³ From his native village he transferred his residence after a time to 'Askar Mukram, whence he was compelled to flee in succession to Sabat Ab! Nuh, Basra, and finally Salamiyya near H i m s (Emessa) in Syria. There he bought land, and thence he sent his *da'is* into the country about Kufa, where his doctrines were espoused by a certain Hamdan b. al-Ash'ath, of Quss Bahram, nicknamed *armat* on account of his short body and legs, who became one of the

¹ See my remarks on the " Ethics of Assassination," on pp. 371-3 of the second volume of *The Episode of the Bab* (Cambridge, 1891).

² See Shahrastani's *Kitabu'l-Milal*, pp. 136-138.

³ Cf de Goeje's *Carmathes*, p. 23. A similar use was made of carrier-pigeons by Rashidu'd-Din Sinan, one of the Grand Masters of the Syrian Assassins in the twelfth century of our era. See Stanilas Guyard's charming monograph in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1877, pp. 39 and 41 of the *tirage-a-part*. The employment of carrier-pigeons was apparently common in Persia in Samanid times (tenth century). See my translation of the *Chahar Maqala*, pp. 29-30 of the *tirage-a-part*

chief propagandists of the sect, besides giving its members one of the names (Carmathians ; Ar. *Qirmati* or *Qirmiti* pl. *Qaramita*) by which they were subsequently known.¹ One of Hamdan's chief lieutenants was his brother-in-law 'Abdan, the author of a number of (presumably controversial) books, who organised the propaganda in Chaldaea, while Hamdan resided at Kalwadha, maintaining a correspondence with one of the sons of 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun al-Qaddah who abode at Taliqan in Khurasan.

About this time 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun died (A.H. 261 = A.D. 874-5) and was succeeded first by his son Muhammad, secondly by a certain Ahmed (variously described as the son or the brother of him last named) called Abu Shala'la', and thirdly by Sa'id b. al-Husayn b. Abdu'llah b. Maymun al-Qaddah, who was born in A.H. 260 at Salamiyya in Syria, a year before the death of his grandfather. To him at length was it granted to reap the fruits of the ambitious schemes devised and matured by his predecessors. In A.H. 297 (A.D. 909), learning from his *da'i* Abu 'Abdi'llah that the Berbers in North Africa were impregnated with the Isma'ili doctrines and were eagerly expecting the coming of the Imam, he crossed over thither, declared himself to be the great-grandson of Muhammad b. Isma'il and the promised Mahdi, took the name of Abu Muhammad 'Ubaydu'llah, placed himself at the head of his enthusiastic partisans, overthrew the Aghlabid dynasty, conquered the greater portion of North Africa, and, with the newly-founded city of Mahdiyya for his capital, established the dynasty which, because of the claim which it maintained of descent from Fatima, the Prophet's daughter, is known as the Fatimid. Sixty years later (A.H. 356 = A.D. 969) Egypt was wrested by them from the House of Ikhshid, and at the end of the tenth century of our era most

¹ See de Goeje's learned note on this much-debated etymology at pp. 199-203 of his *Memoire sur les Carmathes*. For a full account of the conversion of Hamdan, see de Sacy's *Expose*, vol. i, pp. clxvi-clxxi.

of Syria was in their hands. This great Shi'ite power was represented by fourteen Anti-Caliphs, and was finally extinguished by Saladin (Salahu'd Din) in A. H. 567 (A. D. 1171).

The genuineness of the pedigree claimed by the Fatimids has been much discussed, and the balance of evidence appears to weigh strongly against it: there is little doubt that not 'Ali and Fatima, but 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun al-Qaddah was their real ancestor. The matter is discussed at length by de Goeje¹ with his usual learning and acumen. Amongst the many arguments that he adduces against their legitimacy it is sufficient to cite here one or two of the strongest. Their descent from Fatima was denied alike by the 'Abbasid Caliphs (who made no attempt to contest the pedigrees of the numerous 'Alid pretenders, some of them dangerous and formidable enough, who were continually raising the standard of rebellion against them); by the Umayyads of Cordova; and, on two separate occasions (A. H. 402 and 444 = A. D. 1011-1012 and 1052-3), by the recognised representatives of the House of 'All at Baghdad. Moreover, the Buwayhid 'Adudu'd-Dawla, in spite of his strong Shi'ite proclivities, was so far from satisfied with the results of an inquiry into their pedigree which he instituted in A. H. 370 (A. D. 980-1) that he threatened to invade their territories, and ordered all their writings to be burned. And on the other hand it is frankly admitted in the sacred books of the Druzes, a sect (still active and numerous in Syria) which regards al-Hakim, the sixth Fatimid Caliph, as the last and most perfect Manifestation or Incarnation of the Deity, that 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun al-Qaddah was the ancestor of their hero.³ When we reflect on the inward essence of the Isma'ili doctrine, and its philosophical and cosmopolitan character, we might well imagine that to the fully-initiated members of the sect at any rate it would be a matter of comparative indifference whether their spiritual and

¹ *Carmaihes de Bahrain*, pp. 4-11.

² De Goeje, *loc. cit.*, p. 10; de Sacy's *Expose*, pp. lxxvii, 35 and 84-87.

temporal rulers were or were not descended from the Prophet through his daughter Fatima. But, as we shall see in a later chapter, one of their most talented missionaries in Persia, the poet and traveller Nasir-i-Khusraw, who held the high title of *Hujjat*, or "Proof," of Khurasan—a man of fiery zeal and transparent sincerity—certainly believed in the genuineness of the Fatimid pedigree.

As regards the rule of the Fatimids, it was on the whole, despite occasional acts of cruelty and violence inevitable in that time and place, liberal, beneficent, and favourable to learning.

"The (Isma'ili) doctrines," says Guyard,¹ "were publicly taught at Cairo in universities richly endowed and provided with libraries, where crowds assembled to listen to the most distinguished professors. The principle of the sect being that men must be converted by persuasion, the greatest tolerance was shown towards other creeds. Mu'izz (the fourth Fatimid Caliph, reigned A.D. 952-975) permitted Christians to dispute openly with his doctors, a thing hitherto unheard of; and Severus, the celebrated bishop of Ushmunayn, availed himself of this authorisation. Out of the funds of the Treasury Mu'izz rebuilt the ruined church of St. Mercurius at Fustat, which the Christians had never hitherto been permitted to restore. Certain Musulman fanatics endeavoured to prevent this, and on the day when the first stone was laid a Shaykh, leaping down amongst the foundations, swore that he would die rather than suffer the church to be rebuilt. Mu'izz, being informed of what was taking place, caused this man to be buried under the stones, and only spared his life at the instance of the Patriarch Ephrem.* Had the Isma'ili doctrine been able to maintain itself in Egypt in its integrity, it would have involved the civilisation of the Muslim world. Unfortunately, as an actual consequence of this doctrine, a serious change was about to take place in the sect;³

¹ *Un grand maitre des Assassins*, pp. 14-15 of the *tirage-a-part*.

² Guyard refers here to Quatremere's *Vie du khalife fatimite Moezz li'din-Allah* (extract from the *Journal Asiatique*), pp. 118 *et seqq.*, and to an article by Defremery (*Nouvelles Recherches sur les Ismailiens*) in the same *Journal*, Ser. V, vol. iii, p. 404.

³ Allusion is here made to the monstrous pretensions **advanced** by al-Hakim, the grandson of al-Mu'izz, who claimed to be an Incarnation

while, on the other hand, the excesses of the Isma'ilis of Persia and Syria armed against Egypt, the focus of the sect, the pious and orthodox Nuru'd-Din (†the Atabek of Syria, A.D. 1146-1173), who succeeded in overthrowing the Fatimid dynasty."

Nasir-i-Khusraw, who was at Cairo in the middle of the eleventh century of our era, during the reign of al-Mustansir, the eighth Fatimid Caliph, gives an equally favourable picture.

"Every one," says he,¹ "has perfect confidence in the Sultan, and no one stands in fear of myrmidons or spies, relying on the Sultan to oppress no one and to covet no one's possessions. There I saw wealth belonging to private individuals such that if I should speak of it or describe it the people of Persia would refuse to credit my statements. I could neither limit nor define their wealth, and nowhere have I seen such prosperity as I saw there. There I saw a Christian who was one of the richest men in Egypt, so that it was said that his ships, his wealth, and his estates surpassed computation. My object in mentioning him is that one year the water of the Nile fell short and corn became dear. The Sultan's *wazir* summoned this Christian and said, 'The year is not good, and the Sultan's heart is weighed down with anxiety for his people. How much corn could you supply, either for a price or as a loan ?' The Christian answered, 'Thanks to the fortunate auspices of the Sultan and the *wazir*, I have in store so much corn that I could supply all Egypt with bread for six years.'² Now the population of Egypt at this time was certainly, at the lowest computation, five times that of Nishapur ; and any one versed in statistics will readily understand what vast wealth one must possess to hold corn to such an amount, and what security of property and good government a people must enjoy amongst whom such things are possible, and what great riches; and withal neither did the Sultan oppress or wrong any one, nor did his subjects keep anything hidden or concealed."

of God, and was accepted as such by the sect of Isma'ilis still known as the Druzes, after al-Hakim's minister and abettor the Persian Hamza ad-Duruzi.

¹ *Safar-nama*, edited in the original Persian, with a French translation, by the late M. Ch. Schefer (Paris, 1881), pp. 155-6 of the translation, PP- 56~7 of the text.

² Or perhaps "Cairo," which, as well as the country of which it is the capital, is commonly called *Mi\$*r by the Muslims.

It does not appear that Nasir-i- Khusraw had embraced the Isma'ili doctrine before he made his journey to Egypt and the West, and we may fairly assume that the admirable example presented to other governments of that period by the Fatimids had no inconsiderable effect in his conversion to those views of which, till the end of his long life, he was so faithful an adherent and so earnest an exponent. That he was familiar with the Gospels is proved by several passages in his poems ; and no doubt he held that men cannot gather grapes from thorns or figs from thistles, and that a doctrine capable of producing results which contrasted so favourably with the conditions prevalent under any other contemporary government had at any rate a strong *prima facie* claim to serious and attentive consideration.

Before we proceed to speak of this doctrine, however, it is necessary to say something of a less orderly and well-conducted branch of the Isma'ilis, whose relation to the Fatimid Caliphs still remains, in spite of the investigations of many eminent scholars, notably de Goeje, somewhat of a mystery. Mention has already been made of Hamdan Qarmat, from whom the Carmathians (*Qaramita*) derive their name. These Carmathians, the followers of the above-named Qarmat and his disciple 'Abdan (†the most prolific writer of the early Isma'ilis),¹ are much less intimately connected with Persian history than the Fatimid Isma'ilis, and their power was of much shorter duration ; but for about a hundred years (A.D. 890-990) they spread terror through the realms of the 'Abbasid Caliphs. Already, while the Zanj insurrection was in progress, we find Qarmat interviewing the insurgent leader and endeavouring to arrive at an understanding with him, wh«ch, however, proved to be impossible.³ Very shortly

¹ *Fihrist*, p. 189, where eight of his works are mentioned as having been seen and read by the author. Another work mentioned in this place (*al-Baldghdtu 's-safra*, in the sense, apparently of "the Seven Initiations") was known, by name at least, to the Nidhamu'l-Mulk. See his *Siyasat-nama*, ed. Schefer, p. 196.

² De Goeje's *Carmathes*, p. 26 ; and p. 350 *supra*.

after this (A.D. 892) the increasing power of the Carmathians began to cause a lively anxiety at Baghdad.¹ About five years later they first rose in arms, but this insurrection, as well as those of A.D. 900, 901, and 902, was suppressed. Yet already we find them active, not only in Mesopotamia and Khuzistin, but in Bahrayn, Yaman, and Syria; on the one hand we hear of them in the prison and on the scaffold; and on the other, led by their *da'is* Zikrawayh and Abu Sa'id Hasan b. Bahram al-Jannabi (both Persians, to judge by their names), we find them widely extending their power and obtaining absolute control of vast tracts of country. In A.D. 900 the Caliph's troops were utterly routed outside Basra, and only the general, al-'Abbas b. 'Amr al-Ghanawi, returned to tell the tale at Baghdad;² while a year or two later "the Master of the Camel" (*Sahibu'n-naqa*), and after his death his brother, "the Man with the Mole" (*Sahibu'sh-Shama*, or *Sahibu'l-Khal*), were ravaging Syria up to the very gates of Damascus. The success of this last was, however, short-lived, for he was taken captive and put to death in December, A.D. 903, and the death of Zikrawayh in the defeat inflicted on him three or four years later saved Syria for the time being from further ravages. His last and most signal achievement was his attack on the pilgrim-caravan returning from Mecca, in which fearful catastrophe no less than twenty thousand victims are said to have perished.

The Fatimid dynasty had been firmly established in North Africa for some years before we hear much more of the Carmathians;³ but in A.D. 924 Abu Tahir al-Jannabi (the son and successor of the Abu Sa'id al-Jannabi mentioned above) raided Basra and carried off a rich booty; a few months

¹ De Goeje's *Carmathes*, pp. 31-2.

² His own narrative is given in translation by de Goeje, *op. cit.*, pp. 40-43. See also p. 354 *supra*.

³ De Goeje (*op. cit.*, p. 75) speaks of "the almost complete inactivity of the Carmathians during the six years which immediately followed the death of Abu Sa'id" (who was assassinated in A.D. 913-914).

THE CARMATHIANS

later another pilgrim-caravan was attacked (2,200 men and 300 women were slain, and a somewhat greater number taken captive, together with a vast booty);¹ and soon afterwards Kufa was looted for six days, during which the Carmathian leader quartered his guard in the great mosque. In the early spring of A.D. 926 the pilgrim-caravan was allowed to proceed on its way after payment of a heavy ransom, but during the three following years passage was absolutely barred to the pilgrims. But it was in January, 930, that the Carmathians performed their greatest exploit, for in the early days of that month Abu Tahir, with an army of some six hundred horsemen and nine hundred unmounted soldiers, entered the sacred city of Mecca itself, slew, plundered, and took captive in the usual fashion, and—the greatest horror of all in the eyes of pious Muslims—carried off the Black Stone and other sacred relics. In this culminating catastrophe 30,000 Muslims are said to have been slain, of whom 1,900 met their death in the very precincts of the Ka'ba ; the booty carried off was immense ; and the scenes which accompanied these sacrilegious acts baffle description.²

It is unnecessary to follow in detail the further achievements of the Carmathians, who continued to raid, plunder, massacre, and levy taxes on the pilgrims until the death of Abu Tahir in A.D. 944. Six years later the Black Stone, having been kept by the Carmathians of al-Ahsa for nearly twenty-two years, was voluntarily restored by them to its place in the Ka'ba of Mecca. " We took it by formal command (of our Imam), and we will only restore it by a command (from him) " had been their unvarying reply to all the attempts of the Muslims to persuade them to yield it up in return for enormous ransoms ; but at length the order was issued by the Fatimid Caliph al-Qa'im or al-Mansur,³ and the stone was once more

¹ De Goeje, *op. cit.*, p. 85.

² See de Goeje's graphic account, *op. cit.*, pp. 104-113.

³ *Ibid.*, *op. cit.*, p. 144.

set in **its** place, to the infinite joy and relief of all pious Muhammadans. Very soon after the Fitimids had obtained possession of Egypt (A.D. 969) a quarrel arose between them and their Carmathian co-religionists,¹ and a year or two later we actually find some of the latter fighting on the side of the 'Abbasids against their ancient masters.

The exact relations which existed between the apparently antinomian, democratic, and predatory Carmathians and the theocratic Fatimids, whose just and beneficent rule has been already described,² are, as has been said, somewhat obscure. But de Goeje has conclusively proved, in the able and learned treatise so frequently quoted in this chapter, that these relations were of the closest; that the Carmathians recognised to the full (save in some exceptional cases) the authority, temporal and spiritual, of the Fatimid Caliphs, even though it often seemed expedient to the latter to deny or veil the connection³; and that the doctrines of both were the same, due allowance being made for the ruder and grosser understandings of the Bedouin Arabs from whom were chiefly recruited⁴ the ranks of the Carmathians, who were, as de Goeje observes, "as was only natural, absolute strangers to the highest grade of initiation in which the return of Muhammad b. Isma'fl was spiritually explained."

Of what is known concerning the internal organisation of the Carmathians; of their Supreme Council, the white-robed *lqdaniyya*, to whom was given power to loose and to bind; of their disregard of the ritual and formal prescriptions of Islam, their contempt for the "asses" who offered adoration to shrines and stones, and their indulgence in meats held unlawful by the orthodox; and of their revenues, commerce, and treatment of strangers, full details will be found in de Goeje's

¹ Concerning the very obscure causes of this incomprehensible event, cf. de Goeje, *op. cit.*, pp. 183 *et seqq.*

² See pp. 399-401 *supra*; and also de Goeje, *op. cit.*, pp. 177-8.

³ *Op. cit.*, pp. 81-83. ⁴ *Op. cit.*, pp. 161-165 and 173.

THE CARMATHIANS

monograph. Of the many interesting passages cited in that little volume (a model of scholarly research and clear exposition) the reader's attention is specially directed to the narrative of a woman who visited the Carmathian camp in search of her son (pp. 51-56) ; the poems composed by Abu Tahir al-Jannabi after the sack of Mecca (p. no) and Kufa (pp. 113-115); the scathing satire composed in Yaman against the Carmathian chief (pp. 160-161) ; the narrative of a traditionist who was for a time a captive and a slave in the hands of the Carmathians (pp. 175-6) ; and the replies made by a Carmathian prisoner to the Caliph al-Mu'tadid (pp. 25-6). That morally they were by no means so black as their Muslim foes have painted them is certainly true, but of the terrible bloodshed heralded by their ominous and oft-repeated formula " Purify them " (by the sword) there is unfortunately no doubt whatever.

We must now pass to an examination of the Isma'ili doctrine—a doctrine typically Persian, typically Shi'ite, and possessed of an extraordinary charm for minds of a certain type, and that by no means an ignoble or ignorant one.¹ And here I will cite first of all the concluding paragraphs of an article which I contributed in January, 1898, to the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* on the *Literature and Doctrines of the Huru'fi Sect* (pp. 88-9):—

"The truth is, that there is a profound difference between the Persian idea of Religion and that which obtains in the West. Here it is the ideas of Faith and Righteousness (in different proportions, it is true) which are regarded as the essentials of Religion ; there it is Knowledge and Mystery. Here Religion is regarded as a rule by which to live and a hope wherein to die ; there as a Key to unlock the Secrets of the Spiritual and Material Universe. Here it is associated with Work and Charity ; there with Rest and Wisdom. Here a creed is admired for its simplicity; there for its complexity.

¹ Cf. de Goeje, *op. cit.*, p. 172.

To Europeans these speculations about 'Names' and 'Numbers' and 'Letters' ; this talk of Essences, Quiddities, and Theophanies ; these far-fetched analogies and wondrous hair-splittings, appear, as a rule, not merely barren and unattractive, but absurd and incomprehensible; and consequently, when great self-devotion and fearlessness of death and torture are witnessed amongst the adherents of such a creed, attempts are instinctively made by Europeans to attribute to that creed some ethical or political aim. Such aim may or may not exist, but, even if it does, it is, I believe, as a rule, of quite secondary and subordinate importance in the eyes of those who have evolved and those who have accepted the doctrine. . . .

"The same difference of ideal exists as to the quality and nature of Scripture, the Revealed Word of God. Provided the ethical teaching be sublime, and there be peace for the troubled and comfort for the sorrowful, we care little, comparatively, for the outward form. But in the eyes of the Musulmans (including, of course, the followers of all those sects, even the most heretical, which have arisen in the bosom of Islam) this outward form is a matter of the very first importance. Every letter and line of the Qur'an (which always remains the model and prototype of a Revealed Book, even amongst those sects who claim that it has been abrogated by a newer Revelation) is supposed to be fraught with unutterable mystery and filled with unfathomable truth. Generations of acute minds expend their energies in attempts to fathom these depths and penetrate these mysteries. What wonder if the same discoveries are made quite independently by different minds in different ages, working with the same bent on the same material? In studying the religious history of the East, and especially of Persia, let us therefore be on our guard against attaching too much importance to resemblances which may be the natural outcome of similar minds working on similar lines, rather than the result of any historical filiation or connection."

The Isma'ili doctrine was, as we have seen, mainly devised and elaborated (though largely from ideas and conceptions already ancient, and, as has been remarked, almost endemic in Persia) by 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun al-Qaddah. Great stress is generally laid, both by Oriental and European writers, on the primarily political motive which is supposed to have inspired him, the desire, namely, to destroy the power of the Arabs, and the religion of Islam whence that power was derived, and

THE ISMA'ILI DOCTRINE

to restore to Persia the dominant position which she had previously held, and to which, in his opinion, she was entitled.¹ I myself am inclined to think that, to judge by the Persian character, in which the sentiment of what we understand by patriotism is not a conspicuous feature, and by what I have myself observed in the analogous case of the Babis, this quasi-political motive has been unduly exaggerated ; and that 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun and his ally, the wealthy astrologer Dandan (or Zaydan)² exerted themselves as they did to propagate the system of doctrine about to be described not because it was Persian, but because, being Persian, it strongly appealed to their Persian minds.³

The doctrine which we are about to describe is, it must be repeated, the doctrine evolved by 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun al-Qaddah. " The sect of the Isma'ilis," says Guyard in his *Fragments relatifs a la Doctrine des Ismailis* (Paris, 1874, p. 8), " was primarily a mere subdivision of the Shi'ites, or partisans of 'Ali ; but, from the time of 'Abdu'llah, surnamed Qaddah, the son of Maymun Qaddah, and chief of the sect, towards the year A. H. 250 (A. D. 864), it so greatly diverged from its point of departure that it met with the reprehension of the Shi'ites themselves, who denounced as impious such as would embrace it." The chief thing which it derived from Isma'il the seventh Imam was its name *Isma'ili*; but it bore several other names, such as *Sab'i* (" the Sect of the Seven "); *Batinî* (" the Esoteric Sect "); *Ta'limi* (" doctrinaire "), because, according to its tenets, the true " teaching " or " doctrine " (*ta'lim*) could only be obtained from the Imam of the time ; *Fatimi*

¹ See, for instance, the *Fihrist*, p. 188, where the same design is ascribed to Abu Muslim; Guyard, *Un Grand Maître des Assassins*, pp. 4-5 and 10-13 5 d^e Goeje's *Carmathes*, pp. 1-2 ; von Hammer's *Histoire de l'Ordre des Assassins* (Paris, 1833), p. 44, &c.

² See de Goeje, *op. cit.*, p. 15 and note 2 *ad calc.*

³ No doubt Persian national feeling was appealed to, when it could serve the purpose of the *da'i*, but he was just as ready to appeal to similar sentiments in the Arabs and other peoples. See de Sacy's *Exposé*", p. cxii.

("owing allegiance to the descendants of Fatima," the Prophet's daughter and 'All's wife) ; Qirmati or Carmathian, after **the** *da'i* Hamdan Qarmat already mentioned. By their foes, especially in Persia, they were very commonly called simply *Malahida* ("impious heretics"), and later, after the New Propaganda of Hasan-i-Sabbah (of whom we shall speak in a later chapter), *Hashishi* ("hashish-eaters").

Their doctrine, as already indicated, and as will shortly appear more plainly, hinges to a large extent on the number *seven*, and, to a less degree, on the number *twelve*; numbers which are written plain in the universe and in the body of man. Thus there are seven Planets and twelve Zodiacal Signs; seven days in the week and twelve months in the year; seven cervical vertebrae and twelve dorsal, and so on : while the number seven appears in the Heavens, the Earths, the Climes, and the apertures of the face and head (**†**two ears, two eyes, two nostrils, and the mouth).

Intermediate between God and Man are the Five Principles or Emanations (†he Universal Reason, the Universal Soul, Primal Matter, Pleroma or Space, and Kenoma or Time¹), making in all Seven Grades of Existence.

Man cannot attain to the Truth by his unaided endeavours, but stands in need of the teaching (*ta'lim*) of the Universal Reason, which from time to time becomes incarnate in the form of a Prophet or " Speaker " (*Natiq*), and teaches, more fully and completely in each successive Manifestation, according to the evolution of the Human Understanding, the spiritual truths necessary for his guidance. Six great Prophetic cycles have passed (†hose of Adam, Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus, and Muhammad), and the last and seventh cycle, in which for the first time the Esoteric Doctrine, the true inwardness of **the** Law and the Prophets, is made clear, was inaugurated by Muhammad b. Isma'fī, the *Qa'im* (" He who ariseth ") or *Sa'hibu'z-Zama'n* (" Lord of the Time "). Each Prophet or

¹ See the footnote on p. n of Guyard's *Grand Maître des Assassins*.

" Speaker " (*Natiq*) is succeeded by seven Imams (called *Samit*, " Silent"), of whom the first (called *Asas*, " Foundation," or *Sus*, " Root," " Origin ") is always the intimate companion of the *Natiq*, and the repository of his esoteric teaching. The series in detail is as follows :—

<i>Natiq.</i>	<i>Asas</i> , who is the first of the Seven <i>Samits</i> or <i>Imams</i> .
x. Adam.	Seth. (Each <i>Samit</i> , or Imam, has twelve <i>Hujjats</i> , " Proofs," or Chief <i>Da'is</i> .)
2. Noah.	Shem.
8. Abraham.	Ishmael.
4. Moses.	Aaron. John the Baptist was the last <i>Samit</i> of this series, and the immediate precursor of Jesus, the next <i>Natiq</i> .
5. Jesus.	Simon Peter.
6. Mufammad.	'Ali, followed by al-Hasan, al-Husayn, 'Ali Zaynu'l-'Abidin, Muhammad al-Baqir, Ja'far as-Sadiq, and Isma'il.
7. Muhammad b. Isma'il.	'Abdu'llah b. Maymun al-Qaddah, followed by two of his sons, Ahmad and Muhammad, and his grandson Sa'id, later known as 'Ubaydu'llah-al-Mahdi (who pretended to be the grandson of Muhammad b. Isma'il), the founder of the Fatimid Dynasty.

In the correspondence established between the Grades of Being and the Isma'illi hierarchy there seems to be a lacuna, since God, the Primal Unknowable Essence, is represented by no class in the latter. As to the last term also I am in doubt. The other correspondences are as follows :—

1. God.
2. The Universal Reason (*'Aql-i-Kulli*), manifested in the *Natiq* or Prophet.
3. The Universal Soul (*Nafs-i-Kulli*), manifested in the *Asas* or first Imam.
4. Primal Matter (*Hayyula*, ;), manifested in the *Samits* or Imams.

5. Space, or Pleroma (*al-Mala*), manifested in the *Hujjat* or "Proof."
6. Time, or Kenoma (*al-Khala*), manifested in the *Da'i* or Missionary.
7. ? The Material Universe, manifested in ? The Believer.

Corresponding still with the dominant number are the degrees of initiation through which, according to his capacity and aptitude, the proselyte is successively lead by the *da'i*; though these were afterwards raised to nine (perhaps to agree with the nine celestial spheres, i.e., the seven planetary spheres, the Sphere of the Fixed Stars, and the Empyrean). These degrees are very fully described by de Sacy (*Exposi*, vol. i, pp. lxii-cxxxviii), who follows in the main the account of the historian an-Nuwayri († A.D. 1332). Before speaking of them, however, a few words must be said about the *da'i* or propagandist.

The type of this characteristically Persian figure seems scarcely to have varied from the time of Abu Muslim to the present day, when the *da'i* of the Babis still goes forth on his perilous missions between Persia, his native land, and Syria, where his spiritual leaders dwell in exile. These men I have described from personal knowledge in another book,¹ and I have often pleased myself with the thought that, thanks to these experiences, it is almost as though I had seen with my own eyes Abu Muslim, 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun al-Qaddah, Hamdan Qarmat, and other heroes of the 'Abbasid and Isma'ilf propaganda. But if the type of *da'i* is, so far as we can judge, almost unvarying in Western Asia, it differs very greatly from that of the European missionary, whose learning, knowledge of character and adaptability to circumstances fall short by as much as his material needs and national idiosyncrasies exceed those of the *da'i*.

The *da'i* commonly adopted some ostensible profession,

¹ *A Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 210-212, 271, 301 *et seqq.*, 331 *et seqq.*, 481-3, &c.

such as that of a merchant, physician, oculist, or the like, and, in this guise, arrived at the place where he proposed to begin operations.¹ In the first instance his aim was to impress his neighbours with a high idea of his piety and benevolence. To this end he was constant in alms-giving and prayer, until he had established a high reputation for devout living, and had gathered round him a circle of admirers. To these, especially to such as appeared most apt to receive them, he began gradually and cautiously to propound his doctrines, striving especially to arouse the curiosity of his hearers, to awaken in them a spirit of inquiry, and to impress them with a high opinion of his wisdom, but prepared at any moment to draw back if they showed signs of restiveness or suspicion. Thus he speaks of Religion as a Hidden Science, insists on the symbolic character of its prescriptions, and hints that the outward observance of Prayer, the Fast, the Pilgrimage, and Alms-giving is of little value if their spiritual significance be not understood. If curiosity and an eagerness to learn more are manifested by his hearer, the *da'i* begins an explanation, but breaks it off in the middle, hinting that such divine mysteries may only be disclosed to one who has taken the oath of allegiance to the Imam of the age, the chosen representative of God on earth, and the sole repository of this Hidden Science, which he confides only to such as prove themselves worthy to receive it. The primary aim of the *da'i* is, indeed, mainly to secure from the proselyte this allegiance, ratified by a binding oath and expressed by the periodical payment of a tribute of money. Of the questions whereby he seeks to excite the neophyte's curiosity the following are specimens :—

"Why did God take seven days to create the universe, when He could just as easily have created it in a single moment?"

"What in reality are the torments of Hell? How can it be true

¹ The particulars which follow are almost entirely drawn from de Sacy (*Expose*, pp. lxxiv-cxxxviii), who cites the account of Akhu Muhsin given by Nuwayri.

that the skins of the damned will be changed into other skins, in order that these, which have not participated in their sins, may be submitted to the Torment of the Fire ?"

"What are the Seven Gates of Hell-Fire and the Eight Gates of Paradise ?"

"Why were the heavens created according to the number Seven, and the Earths likewise ? And why, also, is the first chapter of the Qur'an composed of seven verses ?"

"What means this axiom of the philosophers, that man is a little world (Microcosm) and the World a magnified man ? Why does man, contrary to all other animals, carry himself erect ? Why has he ten digits on the hands, and as many on the feet; and why are four digits of the hand divided each into three phalanges, while the thumb has only two ? Why has the face alone seven apertures,¹ while in all the rest of the body there are but two ? Why has he twelve dorsal and seven cervical vertebrae ? Why has his head the form of the letter *mint*, his two hands that of a *ha*, his belly that of a *mim*, and his two legs that of a *dal*, in such wise that he forms, as it were, a written book, of which the interpretation is the name of *Muhammad* (M.H.M.D.) ? Why does his stature, when erect, resemble the letter *alif*, while when he kneels it resembles the letter *Iam*, and when he is prostrate² the letter *ha*, in such wise that he forms, as it were, an inscription of which the reading is *Ilah* (I. L. H.), God ?"

"Then," says de Sacy,³ "addressing themselves to those who listen to them, they say : *Will you not reflect on your own state ? Will you not meditate attentively on it, and recognise that He who has created you is wise, that He does not act by chance, that He has acted in all this with wisdom, and that it is for secret and mysterious reasons that He has united what He has united, and divided what He has divided ? How can you imagine that it is permissible for you to turn aside your attention from all these things, when you hear these words of God (*Qur'an*, li, 20-21) : " *There are signs on the earth to those who believe with a firm faith ; and in your own selves ; will ye not then consider*" And again (*Qur'dn*, xiv, 30), "*And God propounds unto mankind parables, that perchance they may reflect thereon.*" And again (*Qur'an*, xli, 53), "*We will show them our signs in the horizons and in themselves, that it may become clear unto them*"

¹ See p. 40S *supra*.

² These are the three positions in prayer named *qiyam*, *ruku*, and *sujud*.

³ *Op. cit.*, pp. lxxxvii-lxxxix.

THE ISMA'IL! DOCTRINE

that this is the Truth" . . . And again (Qur'dn, xvii, 74), " Whosoever is blind in respect to [the things of] this life is also blind in respect to [the things of] the other life, and follows a misleading path." ' ' "

Finally, by some or all of these means, the *da'i* prevails upon the neophyte to take the oath of allegiance, saying ¹—

"Bind yourself, then, by placing thy right hand in mine, and promise me, with the most inviolable oaths and assurances, that you will never divulge our secret, that you will not lend assistance to any one, be it who it may, against us, that you will set no snare for us, that you will not speak to us aught but the truth, and that you will not league yourself with any of our enemies against us."

The full form of the oath will be found, by such as are curious as to its details, at pp. cxxxviii-cxlvii of de Sacy's *Expose*.

The further degrees of initiation are briefly as follows :—

Second Degree. The neophyte is taught to believe that God's approval cannot be won by observing the prescriptions of Islam, unless the Inner Doctrine, of which they are mere symbols, be received from the Imam to whom its guardianship has been entrusted.

Third Degree. The neophyte is instructed as to the nature and number of the Imams, and is taught to recognise the significance in the spiritual and material worlds of the number Seven which they also represent. He is thus definitely detached from the *Imamiyya* of the Sect of the Twelve, and is taught to regard the last six of their Imams as persons devoid of spiritual knowledge and unworthy of reverence.

Fourth Degree. The neophyte is now taught the doctrine of the Seven Prophetic Periods, of the nature of the *Natiq*, the *Sus* or *Asas* and the remaining six *Samits* ("Silent" Imams)² who succeed the latter, and of the abrogation by each *Natiq* of the religion of his predecessor. This teaching involves the admission (which definitely places the proselyte outside the pale of Islam) that Muhammad was

¹ De Sacy (*op. cit.* p. xciii).

² They are called " silent" because, unlike the Prophet who introduces each Period, they utter no new doctrine, but merely teach and develop that which they have received from the *Natiq*.

not the last of the Prophets, and that the Qur'an is not God's final revelation to man. With Muhammad b. Isma'il, the Seventh and Last *Natiq*, the *Qa'im* ("He who ariseth"), the *Sahibu'l-Amr* ("Master of the Matter"), an end is put to the "Sciences of the Ancients" (*'Uluinu'l-awwalin*), and the Esoteric (*Bdtini*) Doctrine, the Science of Allegorical Interpretation (*ta'wil*), is inaugurated.

Fifth Degree. Here the proselyte is further instructed in the Science of the Numbers and in the applications of the *tawit*, so that he discards many of the traditions, learns to speak contemptuously of the state of Religion, pays less and less heed to the letter of Scripture, and looks forward to the abolition of all the outward observances of Islam. He is also taught the significance of the number Twelve, and the recognition of the twelve *Hujjas* or "Proofs," who primarily conduct the propaganda of each Imam. These are typified in man's body by the twelve dorsal vertebrae, while the seven cervical vertebrae represent the Seven Prophets and the Seven Imams of each.

Sixth Degree.—Here the proselyte is taught the allegorical meaning of the rites and obligations of Islam, such as prayer, alms, pilgrimage, fasting, and the like, and is then persuaded that their outward observance is a matter of no importance, and may be abandoned, since they were only instituted by wise and philosophical lawgivers as a check to restrain the vulgar and unenlightened herd.

Seventh Degree. To this and the following degrees only the leading *da'is*, who fully comprehend the real nature and aim of their doctrine, can initiate. At this point is introduced the dualistic doctrine of the Pre-existent (*al-Mufid*, *as-Sabiq*) and the Subsequent (*al-Mustafidj at-Tali*, *al-Lahiq*), which is destined ultimately to undermine the proselyte's belief in the Doctrine of the Divine Unity.

Eighth Degree. Here the doctrine last mentioned is developed and applied, and the proselyte is taught that above the Pre-existent and the Subsequent is a Being who has neither name, nor attribute, of whom nothing can be predicated, and to whom no worship can be rendered. This Nameless Being seems to represent the *Zerwan Akarana* ("Boundless Time") of the Zoroastrian system, but, as may be seen by referring to de Sacy's *Expose* (pp. cxxi-cxxx) some confusion exists here, and different teachings were current amongst the Isma'ilis, which, however, agreed in this, that, to quote Nuwayri's expression, "those who adopted them could no *longer* be reckoned otherwise than amongst the Dualists and Materialists." The proselyte is also taught that a Prophet is known as such not by miracles,

but by his ability to construct and impose on mankind a system at once political, social, religious, and philosophical—a doctrine which I myself have heard enunciated amongst the Babis in Persia, one of whom said to me that just as the architect proved himself to be such by building a house, or the physician by healing sickness, so the prophet proved his mission by founding a durable religion.' He is further taught to understand allegorically the end of the world, the Resurrection, Future Rewards and Punishments, and other eschatological doctrines.

Ninth Degree. In this, the last degree of initiation, every vestige of dogmatic religion has been practically cast aside, and the initiate is become a philosopher pure and simple, free to adopt such system or admixture of systems as may be most to his taste. "Often," says Nuwayri, "he embraces the views of Manes or Bardesanes; sometimes he adopts the Magian system, sometimes that of Plato or Aristotle: most frequently he borrows from each of these systems certain notions which he combines together, as commonly happens to these men, who, abandoning the Truth, fall into a sort of bewilderment."

Space does not permit us to cite the pledge or covenant whereby the proselyte bound himself to obey the *da'i* nor to enlarge on the methods whereby the latter sought to approach the adherents of different sects and creeds in order to gain their allegiance. For these and other most interesting matters we must refer the reader to de Sacy's *Expose*, vol. i, pp. cxxxviii-clxiii *et passim*, Guyard's *Fragments relatifs a la Doctrine des Ismaklis* and *Un Grand maitre des Assassins*, and other monographs alluded to in the notes to this chapter. The further developments of this sect will be discussed in another portion of this work.

¹ Cf. my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 303-306, 367-8, &c

CHAPTER XIII

RELIGIOUS MOVEMENTS OF THIS PERIOD

IL THE Sufi MYSTICISM.

ALTHOUGH the full development of that system of pantheistic, idealistic, and theosophic mysticism known amongst Muhammadans as *tasawwuf*, and in Europe as Sufism belongs to a rather later period than that which we are now considering, it was already when the *Finrist* was composed (A.D. 987) a recognised school of thought, and may therefore conveniently be considered in this place, more particularly as some knowledge of its nature and teachings is essential for the understanding of a certain proportion of even the older Persian poets who lived before the time of Sana'i (circ. A.D. 1131), 'Attar († A.D. 1230) and Jalalu'd-Din Rumi († A.D. 1273), Shaykh Abu Sa'id b. Abi'l-Khayr († A.D. 1049), whose mystical quatrains form the subject of one of Dr. Ethe's excellent monographs,¹ and for whose biography we possess, thanks to Professor Zhukovski, unusually copious materials,² was perhaps the first purely mystical Persian poet whose works have survived to our time, but Sufi influences may be traced in the

¹ Published in the *Sitzungsberichte der Königl.-bayer. Akad. d. Wissenschaften* for 1875, Phil. hist. Cl., pp. 145-168.

² These texts were published in St. Petersburg in 1899, and comprise the *Life and Sayings of the Saint* (pp. 78), and the *Mysteries of the Divine Unity* with the *Risala-i-Hawra'iyya* (pp. 493).

writings of some of his contemporaries if not of his predecessors.

A number of derivations have been proposed at different times for the term Stiff, but it is now quite certain that it is derived from the word *suf*, "wool," which view is confirmed by the equivalent *pashmina-push*, "wool-wearer," applied to these mystics in Persian. From the earliest times woollen raiment was regarded as typical of that simplicity of life and avoidance of ostentation and luxury enjoined by the Prophet and his immediate successors, as clearly appears from Mas'udi's account of the "Orthodox Caliphs" in the *Muruju'dh-Dhahab** The term Suff was therefore in later times applied to those ascetic and pious devotees who, like the early Quakers in England, made the simplicity of their apparel a silent protest against the growing luxury of the worldly. It does not appear to have come into use till about the middle of the second century of the Flight (end of the eighth century of our era), for Jami expressly states in his *Nafahatul-Uns* (ed. Nassau-Lees, p. 34) that it was first applied to Abu Hashim the Syrian, a contemporary of Sufyan ath-Thawrf, who died in A.D. 777. This derivation may be regarded as quite certain, and it is sufficient merely to mention the attempts made to connect the word with the Greek the Arabic *safa*, "purity" (a fanciful etymology favoured by Jami in his *Bahdristan*), or the mendicant *ahlu's-Suffa* ("People of the Bench") of early Muhammadan times.² Al-Qushayrf, 3 indeed, is quite explicit as to the period when this term first

¹ See the extract at the end of Socin's *Arabic Grammar* (English edition of 1885), pp. 72-3, 75, 76, and 77.

* See Herman Frank's *Beitrag zur Erkenntniss des Sufismus* (Leipzig, 1884), pp. 8-10.

³ 'Abdu'l-Karim b. Hawazin al-Qushayri (f A.D. 1046-7), the author of the well-known Sufi treatise entitled *ar-Rislatu'l-Qushayriyya*, which was printed at Bulaq in A.H. 1284 (A.D. 1867). The passage in question is cited by Jami at p. 31 of Nassau-Lees's edition of the *Nafahat*.

came into use, viz., a little before A.H. 200 (A.D. 816) ; and the earliest Stiff writer known to the author of the *Fihrtst* seems to have been Yahyd b. Mu'ddh of Ray (probably, therefore, a Persian), whose death he places in A.H. 206 (A.D. 821-2).¹ Still earlier mystics (who, whether so entitled or not, were essentially Sufis, and are claimed as such by their successors) were Ibrahim Adham († circ. A.D. 777), Da'ud at-Ta'i (t A.D. 781-2), Fudayl 'Iyad (t A.D. 803), and the woman Rdbi'a al-'Adawiyya, who was a contemporary of the above-mentioned Sufyan ath-Thawrf. The beginnings of Suffism may, in short, be pretty certainly placed at the end of the eighth and beginning of the ninth centuries of our era.

The views which have been advanced as to the nature, origin, and source of the Sufi doctrine are as divergent as the etymologies by which it is proposed to explain its name. Briefly they may be described as follows :—

Theories as to
the origin of
Sufism.

(1) *The theory that it really represents the Esoteric Doctrine of the Prophet* This is the prevalent view of the Sufis themselves,

and of those Muhammadans who are more or less in sympathy with them ; and though it can hardly commend itself to European scholars, it is by no means so absurd or untenable a hypothesis as is often assumed in Europe. Without insisting too much on the (probably spurious) traditions constantly cited by the Sufis as the basis of their doctrine, such as God's alleged declaration, " *I was a Hidden Treasure and I desired to be known, therefore I created Creation that I might be known ;* " or, " *God was, and there was naught beside Him ;* " or, " *Whosoever knoweth himself knoweth his Lord ;* " there are in the Qur'an itself a few texts which lend themselves to a mystical interpretation, as, for instance, the words addressed to the Prophet concerning his victory over the heathen at the battle of Badr (Qur'an, viii, 17) : " *Thou didst not shoot when thou didst shoot, but God shot.* " This on the face of it means no more than that God strengthened the arms of the Muslims against their foes ; but it involves no great straining of the

² Jami, however, gives A.H. 258 (A.D. 872) as the date of his death (*Nafahat*, p. 62).

THEORIES OF ITS ORIGIN

words to deduce therefrom that God is the Absolute Agent (*Fa'al-i-Mutlaq*) and man but "as the pen between the fingers of the scribe, who turns it as he will." However little a critical examination of the oldest and most authentic records of the Prophet's life and teachings would warrant us in regarding him as a mystic or ascribing to him an esoteric doctrine, it must be avowed without reserve that such is the view taken by the more moderate Sufis, and even of such philosophically minded theologians as al-Ghazzali († A.D. 1111-2).

(2) *The theory that it must be regarded as the reaction of the Aryan mind against a Semitic religion imposed upon it by force.*

2. The "Aryan
Reaction
theory."

This theory has two forms, which may be briefly described as the Indian and the Persian. The former, taking note of certain obvious resemblances which exist between the Sufi doctrines in their more advanced forms and some of the Indian systems, notably the Vedanta Sara, assumes that this similarity (which has, in my opinion, been exaggerated, and is rather superficial than fundamental) shows that these systems have a common origin, which must be sought in India. The strongest objection to this view is the historical fact that though in Sasanian times, notably in the sixth century of our era, during the reign of Nushirwan, a certain exchange of ideas took place between Persia and India, no influence can be shown to have been exerted by the latter country on the former (still less on other of the lands of Islam) during Muhammadan times till after the full development of the Sufi system, which was practically completed when al-Biruni, one of the first Musulmans who studied the Sanskrit language and the geography, history, literature, and thoughts of India, wrote his famous Memoir on these subjects. In much later times it is likely enough, as shown by von Kremer,¹ that considerable influence was exerted by Indian ideas on the development of Sufiism. The other, or Persian, form of the "Aryan Reaction theory" would regard Sufiism as an essentially Persian product. Our comparative ignorance of the undercurrents of thought in Sasanian times makes it very difficult to test this theory by the only safe method, the historical; but, as we have already seen, by no means all the early Sufis were of Persian nationality, and some of the most notable and influential mystics of later times, such as Shaykh Muhiyyu'd-Din ibnu'l 'Arabi († A.D. 1240-1), and Ibnu'l Farid († A.D. 1234-5), were men of Arabic speech in whose veins there was not a drop of Persian blood. Yet the first of these exerted

² *Culturgeschichtliche Streifzüge auf dem Gebiete des Islams* (Leipzig, 1873), PP. 45-55.

an enormous influence over many of the most typical Persian Sufis, such as 'Iraqi (f A.D. 1287), whose *Lama'at* was wholly inspired by his writings, Awhadu'd-Din Kirmani († A.D. 1297-8), and indirectly on the much later Jami († A.D. 1492-3), while even at the present day his works (especially the *Fususul-hikam*) are widely read and diligently studied by Persian mystics.

(3) *The theory of Neo-Platonist influence.* So far as Sufiism was not an independent manifestation of that mysticism which, because it meets the requirements and satisfies the cravings of a certain class of minds existing in all ages and in most civilised communities, must be regarded as a spontaneous phenomenon, recurring in many similar but unconnected forms wherever the human mind continues to concern itself with the problems of the Wherefore, the Whence, and the Whither of the Spirit, it is probable that it has been more indebted to Neo-Platonism than to any other system. This view, which I have long held, has been very admirably worked out by my friend and pupil Mr. R. A. Nicholson in his *Selected Poems from the Divan-i-Shams-i-Tabriz* (Cambridge, 1898), pp. xxx-xxxvi; but he is mistaken in stating (p. xxx) that "the name of Plotinus was unknown in the East," for this philosopher is explicitly mentioned by name in the *Fihrist* (p. 255), though he is more generally referred to (e.g., by Shahrastani, in his *Kitabu'l-Milal*) as "the Greek Teacher" (*ash-Shaykhu'l-Yundni*).¹ Porphyry, however, was much better known to the Muslims, and seven or eight of his writings are enumerated in the *Fihrist* (p. 253). But even admitting the connection between Neo-Platonism and Sufiism, there remain several subsidiary questions to which it is not possible, in the present state of our knowledge, to give a definite answer: such as—(i) "What elements of their philosophy did the Neo-Platonists originally borrow from the East, and especially from Persia,⁹ which country Plotinus visited, as we learn from his biographer Porphyry, expressly to study the systems of philosophy there taught?"³ (2) "To what

¹ See Haarbrucker's translation of Shahrastani, vol. ii, pp. 192 *et seqq.*, and 429-430.

² Bouillet in his translation of the *Enneads* of Plotinus (Paris, 1857) speaks (p. xiii.) of "la filiation qui existe entre certaines idées de Plotin et les doctrines mystiques de l'Orient;" and again (p. xxvii) of "la trace des doctrines theologiques tirees de l'Orient."

³ Idem, p. 41: "Il prit un si grand gout pour la philosophic qu'il se proposa d'etudier celle qui etait enseignee chez les Perses et celle qui prevalait chez les Indiens. Lorsque l'empereur Gordien se prepara a faire son expedition contre les Perses, Plotin, alors age de trente-neuf ans, se mit

THEORIES OF ITS ORIGIN

extent did the seven Neo-Platonist philosophers who, driven from their homes by the intolerance of Justinian, took refuge at the Persian court in the reign of Nushirwan (about A.D. 532) found a school or propagate their ideas in that country?"¹ In the ninth century of our era, in the Golden Age of Islam, the Neo-Platonist philosophy was certainly pretty well known to thinking Muslims, but till the two questions posed above have received a definite answer we cannot exclude the possibility that its main doctrines were familiar to, if not derived from, the East at a very much earlier date.

(4) *The theory of independent origin.* As has been already hinted, there remains the possibility that the Sufi mysticism may be an entirely independent and spontaneous growth. "The identity of two beliefs," as Mr. Nicholson well remarks (*pp. cit.*, p. xxx), "does not prove that one is generated by the other : they may be results of a like cause." Any one who has read that charming work, Vaughan's *Hours with the Mystics*, will easily recall to mind some of the many striking resemblances, both in substance and form, in the utterances of mystics of the most various creeds, countries, and epochs, between whom it is practically certain that no external relation whatever can have existed; and I would venture to assert that many of the utterances of Eckart, Tauler, or Santa Teresa would, if translated into Persian, easily pass current as the words of Sufi Shaykhs.

Now we must not fall into the error of regarding Sufiism as a doctrine equally definite and systematised with that, for example, of the Isma'Ilfs, which was considered in the last chapter. The Sufi is essentially an eclectic, and generally a latitudinarian : "the ways of God," says one of his favourite aphorisms, "are as the number of the souls of men" while the tradition, "Seek knowledge, were it even in China," is constantly on his tongue. No one, perhaps, did more to gain for Sufiism a good repute and to give it a philosophical form

a la suite de l'armee. Il avait passe dix a onze annees entieres pres d'Ammonius. Gordien ayant ete tue en Mesopotamie, Plotin eut assez de peine a se sauver a Antioche."

¹ See ch. xl of Gibbon's *Decline and Fall* (ed. 1813, vol. vii, pp. 149-152). Agathius is the chief authority for this curious episode. The philosophers in question were Diogenes, Hermias, Eulalius, Priscian, Damascius, Isidore, and Simplicius.

than the great theologian al-Ghazzali, "The Proof of Islam" († A.D. 1111-1112), and this is how he describes his eagerness to understand every point of view in his treatise entitled *al-Munqidh min al-Dalal* ("The Deliverer from Error"):—

"In the prime of my youth, since I was come to full understanding and ere I reached my twentieth year, until this present time, when my age exceedeth two score and ten, I have never ceased to explore the depths of this deep sea, or to plunge into its expanse as plunges the bold, not the timorous and cautious diver, penetrating into every dark recess, attacking every difficulty, braving every whirlpool, investigating the creed of every sect and unravelling the mysteries of every school, in order that I might learn to distinguish between the true and the false, the observer of authorised practices and the heretical innovator. Wherefore I never meet a *Batini* ("Esoteric," i.e., Isma'ili) without desiring to inform myself of his Esotericism (*Batiniyyaf*), nor a *Dhahiri* ("Externalist," "Litteralist") without wishing to know the outcome of his Externalism (*Dhahiriyyaf*), nor a philosopher without endeavouring to understand the essence of his philosophy, nor a schoolman (*Mutakallim*) without striving to comprehend the result of his scholasticism (*Kalam*) and his controversial method, nor a Sufi without longing to divine the secret of his mysticism, nor a devout believer without wishing to ascertain what he hath gained by his devotion, nor a heretic (*Zindiq*) nor an atheist without endeavouring to discover behind him an admonition as to the causes which have emboldened him to profess his atheistical or heretical doctrine. A thirst to comprehend the essential natures of all things was, indeed, my idiosyncrasy and distinctive characteristic from the beginning of my career and prime of my life : a natural gift and temperament bestowed on me by God, and implanted by Him in my nature by no choice or device of mine own, till at length the bond of blind conformity was loosed from me, and the beliefs which I had inherited were broken away when I was yet little more than a boy."

Sufiism, then, by reason or that quietism, eclecticism and latitudinarianism which are amongst its most characteristic features, is the very antithesis, in many ways, to such definite doctrines as the Manichæan, the Isma'ili, and others, and would be more justly described as an indefinite immobility than as a definite movement. This point is often overlooked, and

RELATION TO OTHER SECTS

even scholars—especially such as have never visited the East—often speak of such sects as the Isma'ilis or the Babis of to-day as though they were akin to the Sufis, whereas a great hostility usually exists between them, the natural antagonism between dogmatism and eclecticism. The Babis in particular equal their Shi'ite foes in their hatred of the Stiffs, whose point of view is quite incompatible with the exclusive claims of a positive and dogmatic creed, and this same abhorrence of the Stiff latitudinarianism is very noticeable in the writings of the Christian missionary Henry Martyn. As for the Shi'ite *mullas*, their general attitude towards the Stiffs is admirably depicted by Morier in the twentieth chapter of his incomparable *Hajji Baba*. Yet Suffism has at various times, more especially, perhaps, in Sunni countries, stood the orthodox in good stead, and any one who is familiar with the *Mathnawi* of that greatest of all the Stiff poets, Jalalu'd-Din Rumi, will recall passages directed against the Mu'tazilites, philosophers, and other free-thinkers. And many of those who suffered death for their religious opinions, though subsequently canonised by the Stiffs, were in reality the exponents of various heretical doctrines; as was the case, for instance, with Husayn b. Mansur al-Hailaj (of whom something will be said later in this chapter), who appears to have been a dangerous and able intriguer, in close touch with the Carmathians; with Shaykh Shihabu'd-Din Yahya Suhrawardi "the Martyr" (*al-Maqtul*, put to death in A.D. 1191), the author of the *Hikmatu'l-Ishraq* ("Philosophy of Illumination,")¹ who, as Jami tells us (*Nafahat*, pp. 683-4) was charged with atheism, heresy, and believing in the ancient philosophers; with Fadlu'llah the inventor of the Hurufi doctrine,² who was put to death by Timur in A.D. 1401-2, and his follower Nasimi,

¹ Not to be confounded with Shaykh Shihabu'd-Din 'Umar Suhrawardi, with whom Sa'di was acquainted (*Bustan*. ed. Graf, p. 150), and who died in A.D. 1234-5.

See my article on this sect in the *J. R. A. S.* for January, 1898, pp. 61-94; and Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. i, pp. 336-388.

THE SUFI MYSTICISM

the Turkish poet, who was flayed alive at Aleppo in A.D. 1417-8. The garb of a Sufi dervish or religious mendicant was one of the most obvious disguises for a heretical propagandist to assume, and in fact it was on numerous occasions adopted by the *fida'is* of the Assassins.

But even the genuine Sufis differed considerably one from another, for their system was essentially individualistic and little disposed towards propagandism. The fully developed '*Ar'if*, " Gnostic " or Adept, had passed through many grades and a long course of discipline under various *pirs*, *murshids*, or spiritual directors, ere he had attained to the Gnosis ('*Irfan*) which viewed all existing religions as more or less faint utterances of that great underlying Truth with which he had finally entered into communion ; and he neither conceived it as possible nor desirable to impart his conceptions of this Truth to any save those few who, by a similar training, were prepared to receive it. The three great classes into which Vaughan divides all mystics, the theosophic, the theopathic, and the theurgic, are all represented amongst the Sufis; but it is the second which most prevails in the earlier time which we are chiefly considering in this chapter. If we read what is recorded in the hagiologies of al-Qushayrf, al-Yafi'i, Faridu 'd-Din 'Attar, Jami, and others, concerning the earlier Sufis, such as Ibrahim Adham († A.D. 777-8), and his contemporaries Sufyan ath-Thawri, Da'ud of Tayy, Abu Hashim and the woman Rabi'a al-'Adawiyya, or of Fudayl 'Iyad († A.D. 803), Ma'ruf of Karkh († A.D. 815-6), ' Bishr b. al-Harith († A.D. 841-2), Ahmad b. Khidrawayh († A.D. 854-5), al-Muhasibf († A.D. 857-8), Dhu'n-Nun of Egypt († A.D. 859-860), Sirri as-Saqati († A.D. 867) and the like, we find their utterances reflecting little more than a devout quietism, an earnest desire for something deeper and more satisfying to ardent souls than the formalism generally prevalent in Islam, and a passionate love of God for His own sake, not for the sake of the rewards or punishments

which He may bestow. The following sayings, taken almost at random from the biographies of some of the above-mentioned devotees given by 'Attar in his *Tadhkiratu'* Awliya and by Jami in his *Nafahat* and *Baharistan* will sufficiently serve to illustrate this point.

Sayings of Ibrahim Adham. "O God, Thou knowest that in mine eyes the Eight Paradises weigh no more than the wing of a gnat compared with that honour which Thou hast shown me in giving me Thy love, or that familiarity which Thou hast given to me by the commemoration of Thy Name, or that freedom from all else which Thou hast vouchsafed to me when I meditate on the Greatness of Thy Glory." (*'Attar.*)

Being once asked why he had abandoned his kingdom of Balkh, he replied—

"One day I was seated on the throne when a mirror was presented to me. I looked therein, and perceived that my destination was the tomb, wherein I should have no friend to cheer me, and that I had before me a long journey for which I had made no provision. I saw a Just Judge, and myself equipped with no proof, and my kingdom grew distasteful to my heart." (*'Attar.*)

A man offered him ten thousand *dirhams*, but he refused them, saying—

"Wouldst thou for such a sum of money erase my name from the register of Dervishes?" (*'Attar.*)

"Three veils must be removed from before the Pilgrim's heart ere the Door of Happiness is opened to him. First, that should the dominion of both worlds be offered to him as an Eternal Gift, he should not rejoice, since whosoever rejoiceth on account of any created thing is still covetous, and 'the covetous man is debarred' (from the knowledge of God). The second veil is this, that should he possess the dominion of both worlds, and should it be taken from him, he should not sorrow for his impoverishment, for this is the sign of wrath, and 'he who is in wrath is tormented.' The third is that he should not be beguiled by any praise or favour, for whoever is so beguiled is of mean spirit, and such an one is veiled (from the Truth): the Pilgrim must be high-minded." (*'Attar.*)

Sayings of Sufyan ath-Thawri. "When the dervish frequents the rich, know that he is a hypocrite; but when he frequents kings, know that he is a thief." (*Attar.*)

"Glory be to that God who slays our children, and takes away our wealth, and whom withal we love." (*Attar.*)

"If thou art better pleased when one saith unto thee, 'Thou art a fine fellow,' than when one saith unto thee, 'Thou art a rascal,' then know that thou art still a bad man." (*Attar.*)

Sayings of Rabi'a al-'Adawiyya. "The fruit of Wisdom is to turn one's face towards God." (*Attar.*)

"O God! Give to Thine enemies whatever Thou hast assigned to me of this world's goods, and to Thy friends whatever Thou hast assigned to me in the Life of the Hereafter, for Thou Thyself art sufficient for me." (*Attar.*)

"I ask God's forgiveness for my lack of faithfulness in asking His forgiveness." (*Jami.*)

"O God! If I worship Thee for fear of Hell, send me to Hell; and if I worship Thee in hopes of Paradise, withhold Paradise from me; but if I worship Thee for Thine own sake, then withhold not from me the Eternal Beauty." (*Attar.*)

Sayings of Fudayl b. 'Iyad. "I worship God in love, because I cannot refrain from worshipping Him." (*Jami.*)

"I would that I were ill, so that I need not attend congregational prayers, for 'there is safety in solitude.'" (*Attar.*)

"Whoever fears to be alone and craves for men's society is far from salvation." (*Attar.*)

"All things fear him who fears God, while he who fears aught else but God is in fear of all things." (*Attar.*)

It would be easy to multiply these aphorisms of the early Sufis a hundredfold, but they are sufficient to illustrate the main characteristics of Muhammadan mysticism in its earliest stage : to wit, asceticism, quietism, intimate and personal love of God, and disparagement of mere lip-service or formal worship. This ascetic Sufism is regarded by von Kremer as the early Arabian type, which, if influenced at all from without, was influenced rather by Christian monasticism than by Persian, Greek or Indian ideas.

It is with Sufis like Abu Yazid (Bayazid) of Bistam, a Persian, and the great-grandson of a Magian (his grandfather

BAYAZID AND JUNAYD

Adam being the first of the family to embrace Islam), and Junayd of Baghdad (also, according to Jami, a Persian), called *Sayyidu't-Ta'ifa*, "the Chief of the Community" that, in the latter part of the ninth and the beginning of the tenth centuries of our era, the pantheistic element first makes its definite appearance. The former is said¹ to have declared that he was "an unfathomable ocean, without beginning and without end ;" that he was the Throne (*'arsh*) of God, the "Preserved Tablet" (*lawh-i-mahfudh*), the "Pen" or Creative Word of God, the prophets Abraham, Moses, and Jesus, and the Archangels Gabriel, Michael, and Israfil; "for," added he, "whatever attains to True Being is absorbed into God and becomes God." "Praise be to Me," he is reported to have said on another occasion ; "I am the Truth ; I am the True God ; I must be celebrated by Divine Praises." 'Attar also reports him as saying, "Verily I am God : there is no God but me, therefore worship me ;" and adds that "when his words waxed great, so that the formalists could not stomach them, seven times in succession they thrust him forth from Bistam." Yet he remarked on one occasion, "Should I speak of my greater experiences, you could not bear to hear them ; therefore I tell you only somewhat of the lesser ones."

Junayd spoke much in the same fashion. "For thirty years," said he, "God spoke with mankind by the tongue of Junayd, though Junayd was no longer there, and men knew it not." "The supreme degree of the Doctrine of the Divine Unity is the denial of the Divine Unity." In short, with these men, whom the Sufis reckon amongst their greatest teachers, a very thorough-going pantheism is superadded to the quietism of the older mystics. The transition is in reality a natural one : from regarding God as the only proper object of love and subject of meditation ; man as a mere instrument under His controlling Power, "like the pen in the hands of the scribe ;" and the Spiritual Life alone as important, to

¹ See the article *Sufi* in Hughes's *Dictionary of Islam*.

regarding God as the One Reality and the Phenomenal World as a mere Mirage or Shadow of Being, is but a short step. It is noteworthy that both Bayazid and Junayd were Persians, and may very likely have imported into the mysticism which they so ardently embraced ideas long endemic in their country, for it was certainly the Persian Sufis who went to the greatest lengths in developing the Pantheistic aspect of Sufism; yet we must bear in mind that, as appears from a study of other forms of Mysticism, the step from Quietism to Pantheism is neither long nor difficult^

Here it behoves us to say something of the celebrated Husayn b. Mansur al-Hallaj, who, as has been already hinted, was probably, to judge by the oldest and most credible records, a much less innocuous teacher than even the more advanced Sufis, though by the later mystics, such as Farfdu'd-Dm 'Attar, Hafidh, and the like, he is regarded as a hero, whose only fault, if fault he had, was "that he divulged the secret." Of this man, who flourished at the beginning of the tenth century, and was put to death for heterodoxy during the Caliphate of al-Muqtadir in A. D. 922, chiefly, as commonly asserted, because in one of his ecstasies he had cried out, "I am the Truth !" (i.e., God), the most circumstantial of the older accounts are given in the *Fihrist* (pp. 190-192), and in 'Arib's Supplement to Tabari's History (ed. de Goeje, pp. 86-108), to which Ibn Miskawayh's narrative is appended by the learned editor. According to the *Fihrist* he was a Persian, but whether of Nishapur, Merv, Taliqan, Ray, or Kuhistan is uncertain. He is there described as "a wily fellow, expert in conjuring, affecting the doctrines of the Suffs, adorning his discourse with their expressions, and claiming acquaintance with every science, though in fact devoid of all. He knew something of Alchemy, and was an ignorant, pushing, headstrong fellow, over-bold against authorities, meddling in high matters, eager to subvert governments, claiming divinity amongst his disciples, preaching the Doctrine of Incarnation, pretending to kings that he was

of the Shi'a, and to the common folk that he held the opinions of the Stiffs . . . claiming that the Deity had become incarnate in him, and that he was God (Mighty and Holy is He, and far above what such as these assert !). " Being arrested in the course of his wanderings (in A.D. 913, according to Tabari, iii, p. 2289), he was examined by Abu'l-Hasan 'Ali b. 'Isi, the *wazir* of the Caliph al-Muqtadir, who found him " totally ignorant of the Qur'an and its ancillary sciences of Jurisprudence, Tradition, &c, and of Poetry and Arabic philology," and told him that " it would be better for him to study how to purify himself and observe the obligations of Religion than to compose treatises in which he knew not what he said, uttering such wild rhapsodies as, ' *There descendeth the effulgent Lord of Light, who flasheth after His shining,*' and the like." After being affixed for a while (apparently with cords, not nails) to a cross or gibbet first on one and then on the other side of the Tigris in the presence of the soldiers of the guard, he was committed to prison, where he strove to win favour by conforming in some measure to the Sunnite ritual. He was originally one of the missionaries or propagandists of Ali ar-Rida, the Eighth Imam of the Shi'a of the " Sect of the Twelve," in which capacity he was arrested and punished by scourging in Kuhlstan, in Persia. He attempted to win over Abu Sahl Naw-Bakhti, who offered to believe in him, together with many others, if he would produce from the air not an ordinary *dirham*, but one inscribed with his name and that of his father ; but this al-Hallaj declined to attempt. He pretended to perform miracles, such as stretching forth his hand into the air and withdrawing it filled with musk or coins, which he scattered amongst the spectators. The titles of forty-six of his books and treatises are enumerated in the *Fihrist* (p. 192), and

¹ The Arabic MS. Add. 9692 in the British Museum (ff. 317 to end) contains a considerable quantity of his rhapsodies, which, so far as I have examined them, are very much in the style of this citation.

in one of them, it is said, occurred the words, " *I am He who drowned the people of Noah and destroyed 'Ad and Thamud.*" ¹

The first appearance of al-Hallaj, according to the same authority, was in A.D. 911-2, ten years before his cruel execution in A.D. 922. He was betrayed at Sus by a woman who had observed from her house the assemblies which frequented his domicile, and, though he strove to deny his identity, he was recognised by one of his former disciples by a certain scar resulting from a wound on his head. After he had been scourged with a thousand stripes, and his hands and feet cut off, he was put to death, and his body burnt with fire.

According to 'Arib, al-Hallaj pretended to be all things to all men—a Sunni to the Sunnis, a Shi'i to the Shi'a, and a Mu'tazilite to the Mu'tazilites. Medicine, as well as Alchemy and Conjuring, is numbered amongst his accomplishments. He claimed to be an Incarnation of God, " and grievous were his calumnies against God and His apostles." To his disciples he would say, to one, "Thou art Noah;" to another, "Thou art Moses;" to another, "Thou art Muhammad;" adding, "I have caused their spirits to return to your bodies." The historian as-Suli, who had himself repeatedly met al-Hallaj, described him as "an ignorant fellow who pretended to be clever, an unready speaker who would pass as eloquent, and a rogue *who clothed himself in woollen raiment (suf) and made a parade of piety.*" ²

To what has been said about him, Ibn Miskawayh and the *Kitabu'l-Uyun* (cited by de Goeje at the foot of 'Arib's less detailed notice) add the following particulars. The attention of Hamid the *wazir* was directed to al-Hallaj by rumours of the influence which he was obtaining over the lower grades

¹ Two idolatrous tribes of the ancient Arabs to whom were sent respectively the Prophets Hud and Salih, and who for their obstinate unbelief were destroyed, the one by a violent tempest, the other by a terrible noise from heaven. See Qur'an, *Sura vii.*

² See what is said as to the derivation of the word *Sufi* on p. 417 *supra.*

of officials and the common folk, who believed that he raised the dead to life, compelled the *jinn* to serve him and to bring him whatever he pleased, and performed such miracles of the former prophets as he pleased. Three persons, one as-Simari, a scribe and a Hashimite, were indicated as his "prophets" (*nabi*), he himself claiming to be God; and these, being arrested and interrogated by Hamid, admitted that they were his missionaries and regarded him as God, able to raise the dead to life. All this was strenuously denied by al-Hallaj, who was at this time confined in prison, but allowed to receive whom he would, and who, besides his proper name, was known by the *alias* of Muhammad b. Ahmad al-Farisi. A daughter of his "prophet" as-Simari gave a detailed and most damaging statement of his sayings and practices, and in the houses of as-Simari, Haydara, and al-Qunna'f the Hashimite were found many of his writings, some inscribed with gold on Chinese paper,¹ brocade and silk, and richly bound in morocco. Then two of his missionaries in Khurdsan, named Ibn Bishr and Shakir, were arrested, and the instructions which al-Hallaj had issued to them and his other agents were found, whereby the case was made heavier against him. Other of his pretended miracles are related, as, for instance, how he could expand his body so as to fill the whole room where he was, and how he restored a dead parrot to life for the Caliph al-Muqtadir, who was so far impressed by his achievements that he was very unwilling to consent to his death. Al-Hallaj was a great traveller, and visited India in order to see the celebrated Rope Trick, in which a rope is thrown up into the air and the performer (in this case a woman) climbs up it and disappears. Another of the heresies discovered by Hamid in his books consisted in elaborate instructions whereby the ceremony of the Pilgrimage could be performed anywhere, in a room specially prepared for the

¹ Compare what is said of the books of the Manichaeans on p. 165 *supra*.

purpose; which heresy, along with others, he pretended to have derived from the writings of Hasan of Basra. On this he was condemned to the cruel death above mentioned (scourging, amputation, decapitation and cremation), and the execution thereof was entrusted to the Captain of the Guard (*Sahibu' sh-Shurta*) Muhammad b. 'Abdu's Samad, who was specially cautioned not to give ear or pay heed to anything that he might say. After his head had been exposed for a while on the bridge over the Tigris, it was sent to Khurdsdn ; but his disciples there maintained (as did the Gnostics, and after them the Muhammadans, concerning Christ) ¹ that not he, but one of his foes transformed into his likeness, suffered death and mutilation ; and some of them even pretended to have seen and conversed with him since his reported death. The booksellers were made to take an oath that they would neither buy nor sell any of his writings. The period of his captivity from his first arrest till his execution was eight years seven months and eight days.

The following further particulars from al-Hamadhani are added by de Goeje at the foot of his edition of 'Arib (pp. 96-101). Al-Hallaj's disciple as-Simari, examined by Hamid, stated that his master had in mid-winter, when travelling with him near Istakhr in Fars, produced a fresh cucumber for him out of the snow, and that he had actually eaten it; whereupon Hamid cursed him for a liar and commanded those who were present to smite him on the mouth. Another witness stated that the fruits apparently produced from nothing by al-Hallaj turned to dung as soon as men took them in their hands. There was a great flood in the Tigris shortly after his execution, and his followers declared that this was because the ashes of his burnt body had been cast into the river ; while some of them pretended to have seen him on the road to Nahruwdn riding on an ass, and to have heard him say that a beast transformed into his likeness had undergone the punishment destined for him.

¹ See Qur'an, iv, 156,

Amongst the Arabic verses of al-Hallaj cited are the following (P. 97) :—

*" Ne'er for my heart did I comfort or pleasure or peace obtain:
Wherefore, indeed, should I seek them, prepared as I was for
pain f*

*I mounted the steed of a perilous quest, and wonder is mine
At him who hopeth in hazardous pathways safety to gain.*

*'Tis as though I were caught in waves which toss me about,
Now up, now down, now down, now up in the perilous main.
There burns a fire in my vitals, there dwells a grief in my
heart;*

Summon my eyes to witness, for my tears bear witness plain."

Some of the Sufis, adds al-Hamadhani, claim that to al-Hallaj was revealed the Mystery, yea the Mystery of all Mysteries. He is reported to have said, " O God, Thou lovest even such as vex Thee : how then shalt Thou not love such as are afflicted for Thy sake?" On one occasion Ibn Nasr al-Qushuri was sick, and desired to eat an apple, but none were to be obtained, till al-Hallaj stretched forth his hand and drew it back with an apple which he claimed to have gathered from the gardens of Paradise. " But," objected a bystander, " the fruit of Paradise is incorruptible, and in this apple there is a maggot." " This," answered al-Hallaj, " is because it hath come forth from the Mansion of Eternity to the Abode of Decay : therefore to its heart hath corruption found its way !" The author adds that those present applauded his answer more than his achievement; and, after reporting a conversation between him and ash-Shibli, states that the name *al-Hallaj* ("the wool-carder") was metaphorical, and was given to him because he could read man's most secret thoughts, and extract from their hearts the kernel of their imaginings as the wool-carder separates the cotton-grains from the cotton. Others, however, say that the name was given to him by a wool-carder at Wasit whom he had miraculously assisted in his work. The Sufis differ as to whether he was of them or not. During his execution a

woman named Fatima of Nishipur was sent to him by ash-Shibli (a recognised saint of the Stiffs) to ask him, amongst other things, what Sufiism was ; to which he replied : " That which is mine, for by God I never distinguished for a moment between pleasure and pain !"

The following additional particulars from Ibnu'l-Jawzi are also given by de Goeje at the foot of 'Arib's text (pp. 101-8). On Wednesday and Thursday, December 1-2, A.D. 912, al-Hallaj was crucified alive on the east shore of the Tigris, and on the two following days on the west side.¹ In the following year (having, it would appear, been released after this first severe punishment) he was arrested again at Sus with one or his followers, and brought into Baghdad on a camel as a public spectacle, while a herald proclaimed before him, " This is one of the *da'is* of the Carmathians : take note of him !" His subsequent examination before the *wazir* 'All b. 'Isa is described as on p. 429 *supra*, and his second crucifixion and imprisonment. Again, under the year A. H. 309 (A. D. 921-2), in recording his death, the same author adds some further details. Al-Hallaj, whose grandfather is said to have been a Magian of Bayda ("the White Castle," *Dizh-i-Sapla*) in Fars, was brought up in Wasit or Shushtar. Later he came to Baghdad, and associated with the Sufis, including their great Shaykhs al-Junayd and Sufyan ath-Thawri. Then he travelled widely in India, Khurdsan, Transoxiana, and Turkistan. Men differ concerning him, some regarding him

¹ The later Sufis generally imply that he was put to death by crucifixion, being possibly influenced by a desire of establishing a resemblance between him and Christ. In A.H. 1305 (A.D. 1887-8) there was actually published at Bombay a collection of Persian poems purporting to be by Husayn b. Mansur al-Hallaj, and to this impudent forgery is prefixed a rude woodcut of Christ on the Cross (evidently taken from some Christian book), surmounted by a well-known verse from the *Mathnawi* of Jalalu'd-Din Rumi to this effect:—

" *Whene'er the unjust judge controls the pen,
Some Mansur dies upon the gibbet then*"

as a magician, others as a saint able to work wonders, and others as an impostor. The opinion of Abu Bakr as-Suli concerning him, recorded on p. 430 *supra*, is cited again in nearly the same words. His professed object in visiting India was, according to a contemporary traveller who sailed in the same ship with him, to study magic ; and he declared himself able to compose verses equal to those of the Qur'an—rank blasphemy worthy of death in the eyes of all good Muslims ! Ibnu'l-Jawzi then mentions that he had composed a monograph on the sayings and doings of al-Hallaj, to which he refers the reader for further information. The same heresies (Incarnation, "Return" or Re-incarnation, and Anthropomorphism) are charged against al-Hallaj as by the authors already cited. His execution is stated to have taken place on Tuesday, March 26, A.D. 922. He walked fearlessly and even exultingly to the place of execution, reciting the following verses (see p. 363 *supra*) :—

*" My Friend doth unrelated stand to aught of ruth or clemency :
 From His own cup He bade me sup, for such is hospitality !
 But when the Wine had circled round, for sword and carpet¹
 called He.
 Who with the Dragon drinketh Wine in Summer, such his fate
 shall be!"*

Just before his head was struck off, he bade his disciples be of good cheer, for he would return to earth again in thirty days. Three years later three of his disciples, Haydara, ash-Sha'rani, and Ibn Mansur, who refused to renounce their belief in him, were decapitated and crucified by Nazuk, the Captain of the Guard.

¹ The *nat*, or executioner's carpet, is a large circular piece of skin or leather, round the margin of which are holes or eyes through which a cord is run. By tightening this cord the carpet is made concave, so as to catch the blood ; and when the victim's head has been struck off the cord is drawn quite tight, so that a bag is formed in which the remains are removed.

Adh-Dhahabi also wrote a monograph (probably no longer extant) on al-Hallaj, and in his *Annals* he speaks briefly of him as consorting with al-Junayd, 'Amr b. 'Uthman al-Makki and other Sufi Shaykhs, and feigning an ascetic life, but being led astray by his megalomania and love of power until he "quitted the circle of the Faith." Nevertheless, says this author, many of the later Sufis almost deify him, and even the great "Proof of Islam" al-Ghazzali in his *Mishkatu'l-Anwar* makes excuses for him, "explaining away his sayings in a sense admirable enough, but far removed from the obvious meaning of the Arabic language. He is also mentioned by Abu Sa'id an-Naqqash in his *History of the Sufis* as accused by some of magical practices and by others of heresy (*zindiq*,) and indeed the general view of some half-dozen other writers of authority cited by adh-Dhahabi is to the effect that al-Hallaj was "a detestable infidel" (*Kafir khabith*).

I have dwelt thus fully on the oldest and most authentic accounts of this remarkable man because he became one of the favourite heroes and saints of most of the later Sufis, the Persian mystical poets in particular constantly referring to him with approval and even enthusiasm. Moreover, he may probably be credited with introducing to a large extent the more avowedly pantheistic and thaumaturgic forms of Sufiism with which henceforth we constantly meet. Fandud-Din 'Attar speaks of him in his *Memoirs of the Saints* as "that Martyr of God in the Way of God, that Lion of the Thicket of the Search after Truth . . . that Diver in the Tempestuous Sea," &c, praises his character and attainments, celebrates his miracles, and adds that "some charge him with practising magic, while some externalists denounce him as an infidel." "I am astonished," he remarks a little lower, alluding to Moses and the Burning Bush, "at those who consider it proper that the words, 'Verily I am God,' should come from a Tree which was as though non-existent, and who yet regard it as improper that the words, 'I am the Truth,' should come

PERSIAN SUFI POETS

from the Tree of Husayn b. Mansur's being when Husayn was no longer there." ¹ Abu Sa'id b. Abi'l-Khayr, the earliest Persian mystical poet, declared that al-Hallaj was unequalled in his time, either in the East or the West, in the exaltation of his ecstasies ;² and Jami, who cites this opinion, as well as Hafidh and most of the later mystics, speak in similar terms of admiration.

It was at a later period, probably during the latter part of the eleventh century, that Sufiism was gradually moulded by al-Ghazzali and others into a more or less philosophical system, and was also, to a considerable extent, brought into alliance with orthodoxy. In this connection it is a notable fact that Sand'i, 'Attar, and Jalalu'd-Din Rumi, the three greatest of the older Persian mystical poets, were all Sunnis ; their poems abound with laudatory mentions of Abu Bakr and 'Umar, and they are the declared foes of the Mu'tazilites and Philosophers ; while the greatest Shi'ite poets of Persia in early times, Firdawsi and Ndsir-i-Khusraw the Isma'ili, had little of the Sufi about them. Besides Firdawsi we find mentioned in that section of the *Majalisu'l-Muminin*, or "Assemblies of [Shi'ite] Believers," which deals with Persian poets claimed as their own by the Shi'a, the following names: Asadi, Ghada'iri of Ray, Pindar (or Bundar) of Ray, Abu'l-Mafakhir of Ray, Qiwami of Ray, Khaqani of Shirwan, Anwari, Salman of Sawa, Yaminu'd-Din of Faryumad, and practically no other early poets of any eminence. Even the great Sa'di's grave at Shiraz is neglected, and has been insulted, by his later compatriots because he is known to have been a Sunn(3 The immense popularity enjoyed by Jalalu'd-Din Rumi in Turkey, where his *Mathnawi* is the object of the most affectionate and careful

¹ He means that the Being of both these veils of Theophany was overshadowed and absorbed, as it were, by the Divine Effulgence which was manifested in them. Jami's *Nafahat*, p. 169.

³ See my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 281-2.

study, especially amongst the Mevlevi (or so-called "Dancing") Dervishes, who take their name from him, their great "Master" (*Mevla*, the Turkish pronunciation of *Mawla*), is no doubt due in great measure to the fact that, apart from his transcendental rhapsodies, he is "orthodox." And here it may be added that all dervishes or *faqirs* (both words meaning "poor," i.e., religious mendicants who have embraced a life of voluntary poverty for God's sake) are professedly more or less Suffs, though many of them are, of course, ignorant fellows, who, notwithstanding their glib talk of "ecstasies," "stations," and "Annihilation in God," have very little comprehension of the real scope and purport of the Sufi doctrine.

Of this doctrine it is necessary in conclusion to give a brief sketch, premising that in the form in which it is here presented it is to some extent the product of a later age, and is to be found most fully elaborated in the works of poets like 'Iraqi and Jami. In Arabic the poems of 'Umar ibnu'l-Farid and the voluminous writings of the great mystic of the West Shaykh Muhiyyu'd-Din ibnu'l-'Arabi have not yet received the attention they merit from students of Sufiism who choose to regard it as essentially and exclusively Persian in its origin, and who consequently confine their attention to its Persian manifestations.

The Sufi system starts from the conception that not only True Being, but Beauty and Goodness, belong exclusively to God, though they are manifested in a thousand ~~God alone~~ ' mirrors in the Phenomenal World. "God was,"
really exists.

says one of their favourite aphorisms, "and there was naught beside Him ; " to which are sometimes added the words, "and it is now even as it was then" God, in short, is Pure Being, and what is "other than God" (*ma siwa'u 'Ila'h*) only exists in so far as His Being is infused into it, or mirrored in it. He is also Pure Good (*Khayr-i-mahd*) and Absolute Beauty: whence He is often called by the mystics in their pseudo-erotic poems, "the Real Beloved," "the Eternal

EXPOUNDED BY JAMI

Darling," and the like. Thus Jam! says, in a passage of which I have published a full translation in another place ¹:—

"Whatever heart
Doth yield to Love, He charms it. In His love
The heart hath life. Longing for Him, the soul
Hath victory. That heart which seems to love
The fair ones of this world loves Him alone.
Beware ! Say not, ' He is All-Beautiful,
And we His lovers !' Thou art but the glass,
And He the Face confronting it which casts
Its image in the mirror. He alone
Is manifest, and thou in truth art hid.
Pure Love, like Beauty, coming but from Him,
Reveals itself in thee. If steadfastly
Thou canst regard, thou wilt at length perceive
He is the Mirror also ; He alike
The Treasure and the Casket. I and 'Thou'
Have here no place, and are but phantasies
Vain and unreal."

This, then, is how the Sufis understand the Doctrine of the Divine Unity (*Tawhid*) : not merely is there "no god but God," as the Muhammadan profession of Faith declares, but there is nothing but God. The World of Phenomena and of the Senses is a mere Mirage—a reflection of Being on Not-Being, manifesting the Attributes of Being as the reflection manifests its original, but not really participating in its nature. An illustration commonly employed by the Stiffs is that of the Sun (which typifies Being) reflected in a pool of water (Not-Being). The reflection of the Sun (the Phenomenal World) is entirely "contingent" : it may be blotted out instantly by a passing cloud, or marred by a sudden gust of wind ; it is entirely dependent on the Sun, while the Sun is absolutely independent of it ; yet, while it lasts, it more or less faithfully

¹ *Religious Systems of the World* (Swan Sonnenschein, 1892), pp. 314-332 : an article on *Sufism* originally delivered as a lecture at the South Place Ethical Institute.

reveals the Nature and Attributes of its Unchanging Prototype. This idea is finely expressed in one of the odes of Shams-i-Tabriz, rendered into English verse by my friend Mr. R. A. Nicholson {*op. cit.*, p. 343) :—

"Poor copies out of heaven's original,
Pale earthly pictures mouldering to decay,
What care although your beauties break and fall,
When that which gave them life endures for aye?"

It is the essential nature of Beauty to desire to reveal and manifest itself, which quality it derives from the Eternal Beauty. "I was a Hidden Treasure" God is described by the Stiffs as saying to David, "*and I wished to be known, so I created creation that I might be known*" Now a thing can only be known through its opposite—Light by Darkness, Good by Evil, Health by Sickness, and so on ; hence Being could only reveal itself through Not *Beings* and through the product of this admixture (to use a not very accurate expression), namely, the Phenomenal World. Thus Eternal Beauty manifests itself, as it were, by a sort of self-negation ; and what we call "Evil" is a necessary consequence of this manifestation, so that the Mystery of Evil is really identical with the Mystery of Creation, and inseparable therefrom. But Evil must not be regarded as a separate and independent entity : just as Darkness is the mere negation of Light, so Evil is merely the Not-Good, or, in other words, the Non-Existent. All Phenomenal Being, on the other hand, necessarily contains some elements of Good, just as the scattered rays of the pure, dazzling white light which has passed through the prism are still light, their light more or less "coloured" and weakened. It is from this fall from the "World of Colourlessness" (*'alam-i-bi-rangi*) that all the strife and conflict apparent in this world result, as it is said in the *Mathnawi*:—

Cause of Creation.

The Nature of Evil.

EXPOUNDED BY JAMI

*" When Colourlessness became the captive of Colour,
A Moses was at war with a Moses." ¹*

And so speaks Jami:—

*" Thou art Absolute Being; all else is naught but a Phantasm,
For in Thy universe all things are one.
Thy world-captivating Beauty, to display its perfections,
Appears in thousands of mirrors, but it is one.
Although Thy Beauty accompanies all the beautiful,
In truth the Unique and Incomparable Heart-enslaver is one.
All this turmoil and strife in the world is from love of Him :
It hath now become known that the Ultimate Source of the Mischief
is one"*

From another aspect, which harmonises better with the Neo-Platonist doctrine (to which, as we have already seen, Sufiism was apparently so much indebted for its later more philosophical form), the Grades of Being may be conceived of as a series of Emanations, which become weaker, more unreal, more material and less luminous as they recede further from the Pure Light of Absolute Being.

So far we have spoken chiefly of the " Arc of Descent," but there is also the " Arc of Ascent," whereby Man, the final product of this evolutionary chain, returns to his original home, and, by "Annihilation in God" (*Fana fi'llah*), is once more merged in the Divine Essence which is the only True Being : as it is said, " *Everything returns to its Source*" Here it is that the Ethics, as opposed to the Metaphysics, of Sufiism begin. Evil is, as we have seen, illusion ; its cure is to get rid of the ignorance which causes us to take the Phantasms of the World of Sense for Realities. All sinful desire, all sorrow and pain, have their root in the idea of Self, and Self is an illusion. The first and greatest step in the Sufi "Path" (*Tariqat*) is, then, to

¹ I.e., with Pharaoh, who is conceived of by Jalalu'd-Din as " walking in the right way " with Moses, though seemingly opposed to him, and yet bitterly lamenting this apparent antagonism. See Whinfield's *Masnavi* (abridged translation, Trubner, 1898, second ed.), pp. 37-38.

escape from self, and even an earthly love may, to some extent, effect this deliverance. It is here especially that the emotional character of Sufiism, so different from the cold and bloodless theories of the Indian philosophies, is apparent. Love here, as with so many of the Mystics in all ages and all countries, is the Sovereign Alchemy, transmuting the base metal of humanity into the Divine Gold. Once more let Jami speak :—¹

"Though in this world a hundred tasks thou tryest,
Tis Love alone which from thyself will save thee.
Even from earthly love thy face avert not,
Since to the Real it may serve to raise thee.
Ere A, B, C, are rightly apprehended,
How canst thou con the pages of the Qur'an?
A sage (so heard I) unto whom a scholar
Came craving counsel on the course before him,
Said, 'If thy steps be strangers to Love's pathways,
Depart, learn love, and then return before me !
For, should'st thou fear to drink wine from Form's flagon,
Thou canst not drain the draughts of the Ideal.
But yet beware ! Be not by Form belated;
Strive rather with all speed the bridge to traverse.
If to the bourn thou fain would'st bear thy baggage
Upon the bridge let not thy footsteps linger.'"

Hence the Sufis say : "*Al-majazu qantaratu'l I-Haqiqat*" ("The Phantasmal is the Bridge to the Real") : by the typical love the Pilgrim (*sa'ik*) learns to forget self and to see only the beloved, until he at length realises that what he loves in his beloved is a mere dim reflection of the Eternal Beauty, which "appears in thousands of mirrors, yet is but One." Of this rather than of the cold metaphysics of Buddhism might Sir Edwin Arnold have been writing where he says²:—

¹ The passage is more fully given on p. 326 of *Religious Systems of the World* (Swan Sonnenschein, 1892).

² *Light of Asia* (ed. 1882, Trubner), pp. 226.

"ANNIHILATION IN GOD"

"For love to clasp Eternal Beauty close,
For glory to be Lord of self, for pleasure
To live beyond the gods; for countless wealth
To lay up lasting treasure

Of perfect service rendered, duties done
In charity, soft speech, and stainless days:
These riches shall not fade away in life,
Nor any death dispraise.

While his equally beautiful definition of Nirvana¹ admirably describes the Sufi idea of "Annihilation in God" :—

" Seeking nothing, he gains all;
Foregoing self, the Universe grows ' I ' :
If any teach Nirvana is to cease,
Say unto such they lie.

If any teach Nirvana is to live,
Say unto such they err, not knowing this,
Nor what light shines beyond their broken lamps,
Nor lifeless, timeless bliss."

Sufiism has been discussed by other writers so much more fully than most of the topics mentioned in these pages that I do not propose to devote more space to it in this volume. As already remarked, it essentially differs from most of the creeds hitherto described in its latitudinarian and non-proselytising character. It seeks not so much to convert those of other faiths as to understand what particular aspect of Truth each of these creeds represents. How it understands the Muhammadan doctrine of the Divine Unity we have already seen. In the Dualism of the Magians and the Manichaeans it sees typified the interaction of Being and Not Being wherefrom the Phenomenal World results. The Christian Trinity typifies the Light of Being, the Mirror of the purified human soul, and the Rays of the Divine Outpouring. Even from Idolatry

¹ *Light of Asia*, p. 231.

there are lessons to be learned.¹ How far removed is this attitude of mind from that of the dogmatic and exclusive creeds which have hitherto occupied our attention !²

¹ See *Religious Systems of the World*, p. 325.

² As this subject is of great importance for the understanding of much that is best in Persian literature, I here enumerate some of the best books and treatises on it to which the European reader can refer. I. *Translations*.—'Attar's *Mantiq'u't-Tayr* ("Language of Birds"), French translation by Garcin de Tassy, Paris, 1864; Jalalu'd-Din Rumi's *Mathnawi*, abridged translation by E. Whinfield (2nd ed., London, Trubner, 1898) ; Shabistari's *Gulshan-i-Raz* ("Rose-garden of Mystery"), ed. and transl. by Whinfield, Trubner 1880, one of the best Oriental manuals, with excellent Introduction and traminating comments; Jami's *Yusuf-u-Zulaykhd*, ed. and German transl. by V. von Rosenzweig (Vienna, 1824) ; Hafidh, *Diwan*, ed. and German translation by Rosenzweig-Schwannau (Vienna, 1858-1864), and John Payne's English verse transl. published for the Villon Society. II. *Original Works*.—Tholuck's *Ssufismus, sive Theosophia Persarum Pantheistica* (Berlin, 1821) ; Ibid., *Bluthensammlung aus der Morgenlandischen Mystik* (Berlin, 1825) ; Vaughan's *Hours with the Mystics*, Book vii ; Hughes' *Dictionary of Islam*, sub voc.; my own article in *Religious Systems of the World*, pp. 314-332 ; Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. i (London, Luzac ; 1900), pp. 53-67. These books will suffice to give the general reader an adequate and correct notion of the Sufi system.

CHAPTER XIV

THE LITERATURE OF PERSIA DURING THIS PERIOD

As has been already observed, Arabic continued during the whole of the period which we are now discussing to be the chief literary medium in Persia, not only for prose but for verse. Nevertheless Persia again begins, under those semi-independent dynasties, the Saffarids and Samanids, and even under the earlier Tahirids, to be employed as a literary language: more, indeed, for verse than prose, but to some extent for both. In this chapter we shall have to consider chiefly the poets of Persian nationality, first those who used their mother-tongue, and secondly those who employed the Arabic language.

Our authorities for the latter are fuller, though, with one exception, not much more accessible, than for the former; and the chief one is the *Yatimatu'd-Dahr* (or "Unique Pearl of the Age") of Abu Mansur 'Abdu'l-Malik b. Muhammad b. Isma'il ath-Tha'alibi¹ of Nishapur in Khurasan, who, according to Ibn Khallikan, was born in A.D. 961 and died in A.D. 1038. This valuable anthology of Arabic verse was published at Damascus in A.D. 1885 and following years in four volumes; of which the *first* deals in ten chapters (pp. 536) with the poets of Syria

Authorities for
the Arabic-
writing poets.
i (i) The *Yatima*
of ath-Tha'alibi.

¹ He was called *Tha'alibi* (from *tha'lab*, a fox, pi. *tha'alib*) because he was by trade a furrier and dealt in the skins of that animal.

(including the " Circle of Sayfu'd-Dawla," Abu Firas, the House of Hamdan and al-Mutanabbi), Egypt, the Maghrib and Mosul ; the *second*, in ten chapters (pp. 316), with the poets of Baghdad and Arabian 'Iraq who flourished under the patronage of the noble House of Buwayh ; the *third*, in ten chapters (pp. 290), with the poets of Persia (except Khurasan), who were patronised by the Buwayhids of Persia and their ministers (notably the Sahib Isma'il b. 'Abbad), and the rulers of Tabaristin, especially the Ziyarid Qabus b. Washmgir, a glowing encomium of whose virtues and talents concludes the volume ; and the *fourth and last*, also in ten chapters (pp. 332), with the poets of Khurasdn and KhwaVazm, who flourished under the protection of the House of Saman. This work is a perfect treasury of information as to the literary condition of Persia in this period (circ. A.H. 350-403 = A.D. 961-1012), and gives us an extraordinary idea of the extent to which the Arabic language was cultivated throughout Persia, even as far as khwarazm, at this time; for here we find Persian poets adaressing their Persian patrons in excellent Arabic verse, occasionally extemporised on the spur of the moment ; so that it would seem that at this epoch Arabic must have been as well understood in Persia by persons of education as English is in Wales at the present time ; and that there were eloquent Persians then who could wield the Arabic language as skilfully and successfully as several Welsh orators can the English language in this our day. This is certainly a far closer analogy than that afforded by the Greek and Latin verses now produced in England by classical scholars, which, however good they may be, are the outcome of much thought and labour, and lack, I imagine, the quality of spontaneity. In order to ascertain the effect produced by these Arabic verses composed by Persian poets on one whose native language was Arabic, and who knew no Persian, though deeply learned in his own tongue and its literature, I seized the occasion of a visit paid to me at Cambridge two or three summers ago by Shaykh Abu'n-Nasr,

formerly *repititeur* of Arabic at the admirably organised *Ecole des Langues Orientales Vivantes* of Paris, to read with him some thirty pages of the last volume of the *Yatima*, dealing with the poets of Khurasdn ; and he assured me that the verses were excellent Arabic, and, as a rule, so far as the language went, showed no trace of foreign origin. The lack of Persian verse produced at this epoch does not, then, arise from any lack either of talent or of literary ability, but simply from the fact that it was still the fashion to use Arabic instead of the native speech for literary purposes ; and I cannot help feeling astonished that those who concern themselves with Persian literature (unless they regard literature as merely expressing the speech and not at all the genius of a people) should have hitherto ignored almost entirely this rich field of study, with which those scholars whose interest lies primarily with the Arabs and other Semitic peoples are more naturally disinclined to trouble themselves. Indeed the only considerable study of the *Yatima* (in so far as it concerns Persia) with which I am acquainted is M. Barbier de Meynard's interesting series of articles in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1853 (pp. 169-239), and 1854 (pp. 291—361), entitled *Tableau Littéraire du Khorassan et de la Transoxiane au IVe siècle de l'Hégire*, which contains a translation of pp. 2-114 of the fourth volume of the *Yatima*. If we are entitled to look for the Celtic genius in the poems of Moore, Yeats, or Lewis Morris, surely we may expect to discover some characteristics of the Persian mind in these poets, who, though Arabic in speech (at least for literary purposes), were Iranian by race.

With the precursors of the *Yatima* (such as the *Hamdsas*; the "Classes," or *Tabaqat*, of Ibn Qutayba and Abu 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Sallam al-Jumahi ; the *Kitabu'l-Aghani*) & C.),¹ we need not here further concern ourselves, but a few words must be said concerning its supplements, which, unfortunately, since they exist only in

Supplement to
the *Yatima*.

¹ See the separate reprint of my article on *The Sources of Dawlatshah* in the *J. R. A. S.* for January, 1899, pp. 47-48.

rare manuscripts, I have not been able at present to read or examine at leisure. Two only need be mentioned, of which the first and most important is the *Dumyatu 'l-Qasr* of al-Husayn b. 'Ali al-Bakharzi († A.D. 1074-5). Of this work the British Museum possesses at least two manuscripts (Add. 9994 and Add. 22,374), and its contents are fully described at pp. 265-271 of the old Arabic Catalogue. It comprises seven chapters, of which the *first* treats of the poets of the Arabian Desert and Hijaz (27 notices); the *second* of the poets of Syria, Diyar Bakr, Mesopotamia, Adharbayjdn, and other lands west of Persia proper (70 notices); the *third* of the poets of 'Iraq (64 notices); the *fourth* of the poets of Ray, al-Jibal, Isfahan, Pars, and Kirman (72 notices); the *fifth* of the poets of Jurjan, Astarabdd, Qumis, Dihistan, and Khwarazm (55 notices); the *sixth* of the poets of Khurasan, Kuhistan Bust, Sistan, and Ghazna (225 notices); and the *seventh* of eminent literary men who were not poets (20 notices). In this work one is struck not only by the very large number of natives of Persia who appear as the authors of Arabic verse, but by the essentially Persian names or titles of many of them. Some were recent converts from Zoroastrianism (perhaps in some cases actual Zoroastrians), such as Ibn Mahabzud (i.e., *Mah-afzud*) "the Magian" (*al-Majust*), and Mahyar b. Marzuya of Daylam, who was converted to Islam in A.D. 1003-4 by the Sharif ar-Radi, a much more famous poet than himself;¹ others have names, such as Khusraw Firuz, Durustuya, and Fand-Khusraw (for Panah-Khusraw), or titles, such as Dihkhuda, Div-dadi, so essentially Persian that no doubt as to their origin is possible. Other later works of the same class are the *Zaynatuz-Zaman* of Shamsu'd-Din Muhammad of Andakhud, the *Kharidatu 'l-Qasr* of 'Imadu'd-Din al-Katib al-Isfahani, &c.

¹ Sec de Slane's transl, of Ibn Khallikan, vol. iii, p. 517; and T. W. Arnold's *Preaching of Islam* (London, 1896), p. 180.

For the Persian-writing poets of Persia the chief primary authorities now extant are the *Chahar—Maqala*, or "Four Discourses" of the Ghurid court-poet Nidhami-
Primary sources for Persian-writing poets of this period. i-'Arudi of Samargand (written about A.D. 1155), and the *Lubabu'l Albab of Muhammad Awfi* (written in the first half of the thirteenth century). Of the former I published in the *J. R. A. S.* for 1899 a complete translation (obtainable also as a *tirage-a-part*), based on the Tihiran lithographed edition (A.H. 1305 = A.D. 1887-8) and the two British Museum manuscripts (Or. 2,956 and Or. 3507); while
The Chahar Maqala. the latter, based on the Elliot Codex described by 'Awfi's *Lubab*.
Abu Tahir al-Khatuni. N. Bland in the *J. R. A. S.*, vol. ix, pp. 112 *et seqq.* and the Berlin Codex (Sprenger 318 = No. 637 of Pertsch's Catalogue), will form the next volume of my Persian Historical Text Series.¹ Another important work (unfortunately, as it would appear, no longer extant) was the *Manaqibu sh-Shu'ara* ("Traits of the Poets") of Abu Tahir al-Khatuni,² a well-known poet and writer of the Seljuq period. All these authorities were used directly and indirectly by Dawlatshah (wrote in A.D. 1487), and by the later compilers of *Tadhkiras* ("Memoirs") of the Persian poets; and 'Awfi in particular is extensively cited by Rida-quli Khan, the author of one of the most modern and most complete works of this nature, the *Majma'u l-Fusaha* (2 vols., lith. Tihiran, A.H. 1295 = A.D. 1878). Another
Asadi's Lughat-i-Furs. ancient though somewhat scanty source of information, which at least serves to show us how many Persian-

¹ The first Codex is now in the possession of the John Rylands Library at Manchester, having been bought in August, 1901, by Mrs. Rylands from Lord Crawford and Balcarres, for whose library it was purchased at the sale of Bland's MSS. To Lord Crawford and to the Berlin Library I am deeply indebted for the liberality with which they placed these rare manuscripts at my disposal in Cambridge.

* See *J.R. A. S.* for January, 1899, pp. 42-3.

writing poets flourished before the middle of the eleventh century of our era, is the *Lughat-i-Furs*, or Persian Lexicon, of Asadi of Tus, composed about A.D. 1060, and edited from the old Vatican MS. (Pers. XXII), transcribed in A.D. 1332, by Dr. Paul Horn (Strassburg, 1897).¹ In this most valuable work verses of some seventy-eight poets, many of them otherwise unknown or scarcely known even by name, are cited.

Having now considered the sources available to us for a study of the literary phenomena presented by Persia at this period, we shall consider first the Persian- and then the Arabic-writing poets who flourished under the Tahirid, Saffarid, Samanid, and other contemporary dynasties, deriving our information concerning the former chiefly from 'Awfi's *Lubab*, and for the latter from Tha'alibi's *Yatima*. The latter work has been already sufficiently described, but, pending the publication of my edition of the latter, some account of its contents is here given.

Of the author of this work, Muhammad 'Awfi, nearly all that is known will be found on pp. 749-750 of Rieu's *Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the British Museum*. He claimed descent from 'Abdu'r Rahman b. 'Awf, one of the six Companions of the Prophet who were appointed by the dying Caliph 'Umar to choose his successor from their midst. His repeated references to poets whom he had met at different dates and in different towns in Persia show that he had travelled widely in Khurasan and the neighbouring lands about the beginning of the seventh century of the *hijra* (circ. A.D. 1200). He subsequently resided in India, first at the Court of Nasiru'd Din Qubacha, and then at that of Shamsu'd-Din Iltatmish, after the over-

¹ Another MS. was discovered by Dr. Ethe amongst the India Office Persian MSS. (No. 2516 = No. 2455 of the forthcoming *Catalogue*, cols. 1321-1335). This Asadi was the transcriber of the oldest extant Persian MS., the Vienna Codex of Abu Mansur al-Muwaffaq's *Pharmacology*, edited by Seligmann (Vienna, 1859). This Codex is dated A.H. 447 (= A.D. 1055-6).

throw of his former patron by the latter in A.H. 625 (= A.D. 1228). Besides the *Lubab* he was the author of a vast collection of stories entitled the *Jawami'u'l-Hikayat*, consisting of four books, each comprising twenty-five chapters.

The *Lubab*, notwithstanding its age, is in some ways a disappointing book, owing to the undue prominence which it gives to the poets of Khurasin, and the almost complete lack of biographical particulars. Indeed, it is rather to be regarded as a vast anthology than as a biography. It is divided as follows into twelve chapters, of which the first seven make up vol. i, and the last five the larger and more interesting vol. ii:—

Chapter	I. On the Excellence of Poetry.
„	II. Etymology of the word <i>shi'r</i> (Poetry).
„	III. Who first composed poetry.
„	IV. Who first composed poetry in Persian.
„	V. Kings and nobles who wrote verse.
„	VI. Ministers and officials who wrote verse.
„	VII. Theologians, doctors, and scholars who wrote verse.
„	VIII. Poets of the Tahiri, Saffari, and Samani dynasties.
„	IX. Poets of the Ghaznawi dynasty.
„	X. Poets of the Seljuq dynasty.
„	XI. Poets contemporary with the Author.
„	XII. Courtiers contemporary with the Author who wrote verses.

The first volume, which deals with those who were not poets by profession, contains about 122 notices; and the second, dealing with poets by profession, about 164 notices: in all, about 286 notices of poets who lived before A.H. 625 (A.D. 1228). The credit of making known to European scholars the contents of this valuable compilation belongs primarily to Nathaniel Bland, who, under the title of *The Most Ancient Persian Biography of Poets*, described at considerable length the manuscript which belonged successively to

J. B. Elliott (A.D. 1825) and Lord Crawford (1866-1901), and which has lately (August, 1901) been bought by Mrs. Rylands for the John Rylands Library at Manchester, in vol. ix (pp. 112 *et seq.*) of the *Royal Asiatic Society's Journal*; and the other known manuscript (now at Berlin) was described by Dr. Sprenger at pp. 1-6 of his *Catalogue of the . . . Manuscripts of the Library of the King of Oudh* (Calcutta, 1854).¹ Since then Dr. Ethe, of Aberystwyth, has made great use of it in a series of admirable monographs on the earlier Persian poets² which he has published in various German periodicals; and now I hope that the text will soon be available to all Persian scholars in the edition which I am about to publish. Here it will only be possible to notice a few of the most notable poets of the earliest period.³

(1) Handhala of Badghis is the only Persian poet belonging to the Tahirid period (A.D. 820-872) mentioned by 'Awfi, who cites only the two following couplets 4 :—

" Though rue-seed in the fire my sweetheart threw
Lest hurt should from the Evil Eye accrue,
I fear nor fire nor rue can aught avail
That face like fire and beauty-spot like rue I"

¹ This MS. is also described by Pertsch on pp. 596-7 of the *Berlin Catalogue of Persian MSS.* (1888).

² These are : *Rudagi, der Samanidendichter* (1873) ; *Rudagi's Vorläufer und Zeitgenossen* (1875); *Firdusi (sic) als Lyriker* (1872); *Die Lieder des Kisa'i* (1874), &c.

³ For reasons already given (p. 13, n. 3 *supra*), I exclude the verses alleged by 'Awfi to have been composed by a certain 'Abbas of Merv, in A.D. 809, in honour of the Caliph al-Ma'mun, since I agree with A. de Biberstein Kazimirski in regarding them as spurious.

⁴ The other two couplets ascribed to him in the *Haft Iqlim* (see Ethe, *Rudagi's Vorläufer*, p. 40) are really by a different poet. See p. 355 *supra*.

⁵ The seed of the wild rue (*sipand*) is burned as a fumigation against the Evil Eye or " Eye of Perfection " (*'Aynu'l Kamal*), so called because whatever is perfect of its kind is especially subject to its malevolent influence. The poet compares his sweetheart's bright face and dark beauty-spot to the fire and the rue-seed, and implies that they are too perfect to be so easily protected against the Evil Eye.

(2) *Firuz al-Mashriqi*, whom 'Awfi next mentions, lived in the time of 'Amr b. Layth the Saffarid (A.D. 878-900), Of his verses likewise only two couplets are handed down :—

*"A bird the Arrow is—strange bird of doom!
Souls are its prey, the quarry of its quest:
It borrows for its use the eagle's plume,
Thereby to claim the eaglet as its guest."*

(3) *Abu Salik of Gurgan* concludes the short list of Tahirid and Samanid poets. Two separate fragments of his verse, each consisting of two couplets, are cited by 'Awfi.

The remaining twenty-eight poets mentioned in this chapter all belong to the Samanid period, but some of them were under the patronage of the House of Buwayh (e.g., Mansur b. 'Ali al-Mantiqi ar-Razi and Abu Bakr Muhammad b. 'Ali Khusrawi of Sarakhs, both of whom were patronised by that generous minister the Sahib Isma'il b. 'Abbad), others (e.g., the last-mentioned poet, and Abu'l-Qasim Ziyda b. Muhammad Qumri of Gurgan) sung the praises of the Ziyarids of Tabaristrin, others (e.g., Daqiqi and Manjik) of the Chaghani or Farighuni rulers, and others of the early Kings of Ghazna; while some half-dozen seem to have had no special patron. Most of them are mentioned, and their extant verses cited, by Ethe¹ in his already cited article (published in Professor Fleischer's *Festschrift*, entitled *Morgenlandische Forschungen*, Leipzig, 1875, pp. 35-68), and only a few of the most notable need detain us here. Three or four are described as *Dhu'l-Lisanayn* ("Masters of the two languages"), or bilingual poets, composing verses both in Arabic and Persian : of these are Shaykh Abu'l-Hasan Shahid of Balkh, Abu Bakr Muhammad b. 'Ali Khusrawi of Sarakhs, and Abu 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. 'Abdu'llah Junaydi, who is stated by 'Awfi to be mentioned in the *Yatima*,

¹ Of the thirty-one poets included by 'Awfi in this chapter, Ethe mentions about twenty, and adds two or three more.

though I have hitherto been unable to find any notice of **him** in that work.

(4) *Shahid of Balkh*. Of this poet seven pieces of Persian verse, comprising fifteen couplets, and three couplets of Arabic are recorded by 'Awfi, as well as some verses composed on his death by Rudagi, who says that though, according to the reckoning of the eyes, one man has passed away, in the estimate of wisdom it is as though more than a thousand had died. The following translations are given as specimens of his work :—

*"The cloud doth weep as weeps the Lover, while
Like the Beloved doth the Garden smile;
Afar the thunder, like myself, doth groan,
When with the dawn I raise my piteous moan."*

*"Had sorrow smoke like fire, I do protest
The world would e'er remain in darkness drest;
Search the world through and through : thou wilt not find
One man of wit who's not by grief opprest."*

Some of his Arabic verses are said to be given in an anthology (otherwise unknown) entitled *Hamasatu'dh-Dhurafa*, compiled by Abu Muhammad 'Abdu'l-Kaff-i-Zawzani.

(5) *Abu Shu'ayb Salih b. Muhammad of Herat* is chiefly known as the author of five couplets in praise of a pretty Christian child, of which the first three are to the following effect:—

*"Face and figure meet for Heaven, holding doctrines doomed to hell,
Chain-like ringlets, cheek like tulips, eyes that shame the sweet
gazelle,
Mouth as though some Chinese painter with his brush had drawn
a line
Of vermilion on a ground of musk to form those lips of thine,
'Midst the swarthy Æthiopians could his grace divided be,
Each would have wherewith to stir the Turkish beauties' jealousy."*

(6) *Abu 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Musa al-Faralawi*¹ was a contemporary of the above-mentioned Shahid, with whom he is "bracketed" by the later and greater Rudagi, of whom we shall speak directly, in a verse cited by 'Awfi. The following fragment alone survives of his poems :—

" What greater claim on me than him to greet,
To whom I ne'er can render service meet
For service poorly rendered none I need
Save his great charity to intercede."

(7) *Abu 'Abdi'llah Ja'far b. Muhammad ar-Rawdhaki*,² commonly called *Rudaki* or *Rudagi*, is generally reckoned the first really great poet of Muhammadan Persia ; and Bal'ami, the Prime Minister of Isma'il b. Ahmad the Samanid (A.D. 892-907), and father of the translator into Persian of Tabari's Great Chronicle,³ even went so far as to declare that he was "peerless amongst the Arabs and the Persians."⁴ Amongst contemporary poets also he appears to have enjoyed a high reputation. Shahid of Balkh says in a verse cited by 'Awfi that "' Bravo !' and ' Well done !' are praise to other poets, but it would be satire to say ' Bravo !' and ' Well done !' to Rudagi." By Ma'rufi of Balkh he is called " the King of poets" (*Sultan-i-sha'iran*), and from the words ascribed to him, " Incline to no one in the world but to the Fatimid," it would appear as though he was in sympathy with the Isma'ilis, which

¹ Ethe, using only the Berlin Codex of 'Awfi, reads *Faraladi*, but the better Elliott Codex, as well as the *Majma'u'l-Fusaha*, has clearly *d*, not *w*, and this reading is confirmed by the verse of Rudagi cited by 'Awfi in which the name rhymes with *rawi*.

² In a passage from an Arabic work entitled *Ghyatu'l-Wasa'il ila Ma'rifati'l-awd'il*, which I have cited at pp. 125-6 of my *Handlist of the Muhammadan MSS. in the Library of the University of Cambridge*, Rudagi's pedigree is carried three generations further back (6. *Muhammad b. Hakim b. Abdu'r-Rahman b. Adam*), and he is described as "the first to produce fine poetry in Persian" (see p. 356 *supra*).

³ A French translation of the younger Bal'ami's version by Zotenberg was published in Paris in 1867-1874 in four volumes.

⁴ *Handlist*, p. 126, 11. 3-4.

agrees very well with the Isma'ill proclivities ascribed to his master and patron, the Samanid Prince Nasr II b. Ahmad (A.D. 913-942), by the Nidhamu'l-Mulk in his *Siyasat -nama* (ed. Schefer, pp. 188-193). Daqiqi also, the predecessor of Firdawsi, says that for him to praise one who had been the object of Rudagi's panegyrics would be "to bring dates to Hajar" (or, as we say in English, "to bring coals to Newcastle"). Even 'Unsuri, the Poet Laureate of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna, admits that in the *ghazal*, or ode, he cannot rival Rudagi.

Rudagi was born in a village near Samarqand, and is stated by 'A w f i (though Dr. Ethe" doubts the truth of this statement) to have been blind from his birth. He was not only a graceful poet but a sweet singer, and withal skilful in the use of the harp and lute; and he stood in high favour with his royal patron Nasr II. Indeed the most celebrated of his achievements (mentioned in almost every biography of Persian poets) is connected with an improvisation of which the circumstances have been already mentioned in the first chapter of this book (pp. 14-16 *supra*), and which was, apparently, sung by him before the King to the accompaniment of the harp.¹ Towards the end of his life² (possibly for reasons connected with his religious beliefs, to which allusion has already been made) he fell from favour and was overtaken by poverty, but in the heyday of his popularity he is said by 'Awff to have possessed two hundred slaves, while a hundred camels³ were required to carry his baggage. His verses, according to the same authority, filled a hundred volumes; while Jami in his *Baharistan* states,

¹ The oldest, fullest and most authentic version of this story occurs in the *Chahar Maqala* of Nidhami-i-'Arudi of Samarqand. See my translation of that work (Luzac, 1899), pp. 51-56; and also my article on the *Sources of Dawlatshah* in the *J. R. A. S.*, for January, 1899, pp. 61-69.

² He died, according to as-Sam'ani (cited by al-Manini in his commentary on the *Ta'rikhu'l-'Utbi*, Cairo ed. of A.H. 1286, vol. i, p. 52) in A.H. 329 a A.D. 940-i.

³ Jami exaggerates this number to four hundred.

on the alleged authority of the *Kitab-i-Yamini* (i.e. Utbi's history of Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna), that they amounted to one million and three hundred couplets.¹ Of these only a very small proportion have come down to our time, though many more than was formerly supposed. Thus Dr. Horn has pointed out in his excellent edition of Asadi's *Lughatu'l-Furs* (pp. 18-21) that Rudagi is cited in that work more often than any other old poet, and he gives some sixteen couplets from his lost *mathnawi* of Kalila and Dimna alone, and there are a good many inedited anthologies and similar works in the British Museum and other large libraries of Europe which would yield a very considerable quantity of his work. Dr. Ethé in his admirable monograph on Rudagi² has collected together from such sources fifty-two fragments of greater or less length, amounting in all to 242 couplets, and from the additional sources of information rendered available within the last thirty years, there is no doubt that this number could now be largely increased. As Dr. Ethé has appended German verse-translations to all the fragments of Rudagi which he has collected in the above-mentioned monograph, it appears unnecessary to give here any further specimens of his poetry for the European reader, save the two following fragments translated by my dear old teacher, Professor Cowell (= Ethé, Nos. 20 and 41) :—

*" Bring me yon wine which thou might'st call a melted ruby in its cup,
Or like a scimeter unsheathed, in the sun's noon-tide light held up.
'Tis the rose-water, thou might'st say, yea thence distilled for purity;
Its sweetness falls as sleep's own balm steals o'er the vigil-wearied eye.*

¹ The poet Rashidi of Samargand in one of his poems says that he counted Rudagi's verses, and found that they amounted to thirteen times 100,000 (i.e., one million and three hundred thousand), which is probably what Jami was thinking of.

² *Nachrichten von der Königl. Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften u. der G. A. Universität zu Göttingen*, No. 25, November 12, 1873, pp. 663-742.

*Thou mightest call the cup the cloud, the wine the raindrop
 from it cast,
 Or say the joy that fills the heart whose prayer long looked-for
 comes at last.
 Were there no wine all hearts would be a desert waste, forlorn
 and black,
 But were our last life-breath extinct, the sight of wine would
 bring it back.
 O if an eagle would but swoop, and bear the wine up to the sky,
 Far out of reach of all the base, who would not shout ' Well
 done ! ' as I ? "*

*" When I am dead, my last breath sighed away,
 And spent my latest wish with no return,
 Come by my bed and whisper der my clay,
 ' I killed thee, and 'tis I who now must mourn. ' "*

(8) *Shaykh Abu'l-'Abbas, Fadl b. 'Abbas*, a contemporary of Rudagi, mourned the patron of the latter, Nasr I I , and at the same time hailed his successor in the following lines :—

*"From us is snatched a King of noble race,
 Another, brave and high-born, takes his place.
 For him who's gone Time sorrows with one voice,
 For him now crowned the Worlds heart doth rejoice.
 Look with the eye of Wisdom, now, and say,
 ' God giveth, even when He takes away ! '
 The Lamp which shines He may extinguish, yet
 Again another in its place doth set.
 Unlucky Saturn heavy blows may deal,
 Yet Jupiter transmutes the woe to weal."*

(9) *Shaykh Abu Zura'a al-Mitammari* (or *Mi'mari*, or *Mi'mari*) of Gurgan, on being bidden by a noble of Khurasan to compose verse like Rudagi's, replied thus :—

*" Though I have not Rudagi's fortune, let that not amaze
 Nor cause you to think me behind him in sonnets and lays.
 He amassed, at the price of his eyesight, great treasure, we're told,
 But ne'er would I barter my eyesight for silver or gold I
 Of what princes gave him as gifts give one thousandth to me,
 And a thousand times sweeter than his shall my melody be."*

From the following fragment it would appear that he considered his military talents to be equal to his literary skill :—

" Where there is giving afoot, for silver gold do I fling,
And where there is speaking, hard steel to the softness of wax
I bring:
Where there are winds a-whirling, there like the wind I pass,
Now with the lute and the goblet, now with the mailed cuirass !"

Passing over Abb Ishaq Ibrahim b. Muhammad *al-Bukhari al-Jaybari*, of whose life and date 'Awfi says nothing save that he was by profession a goldsmith, but of whose verse he cites five couplets, we come to another really important poet, Firdawsi's predecessor—

(10) Abb Mansur Muhammad b. Ahmad *ad-Daqiqi* of Tus. In spite of the essentially and almost aggressively Muhammadan name of this poet, it has been contended by Ethe,¹ Noldeke,² and, less decidedly, by Horn,³ that he was a Zoroastrian, this opinion being based on the following verses with which one of his poems concludes 4 :—

" Of all that's good or evil in the world
Four things suffice to meet Daqiqi's need:
The ruby-coloured lip, the harp's lament,
The blood-red wine, and Zoroaster's creed."*

Though these verses, notwithstanding what is said by Ethe' (who only had at his disposal the Berlin manuscript of 'Awfi, which has a lacuna at this point), are not given by 'Awfi, I am not disposed to doubt their genuineness, but I think too much has been based upon them, and that Daqiqi's admiration for " Zoroaster's creed " was probably confined to one single point

¹ Rudagi's *Voriaufer und Zeitgenossen*, p. 59.

² *Das Iranische Nationalepos*, p. 18 (Separatabdruck from the *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie*, Strassburg, 1896).

³ *Gesch. d. Persische Litteratur*, p. 81 (Leipzig, 1901).

⁴ Ethe, *op. cit.*, p. 59.

—its sanction of wine-drinking ; which, as I have elsewhere remarked,¹ is still a very prominent feature in the daily life of the Persian Zoroastrian.

Daqiqi's chief claim to fame is that he was first entrusted with the versification of the Persian Epic, but when he had completed about one thousand couplets of that portion which deals with the appearance of Zoroaster and the establishment of his religion, he was stabbed by a Turkish boy who was his favourite slave.² Firdawsi, in consequence of a vision (which, probably enough, is a mere poetic figment) incorporated Daqiqi's work in his own, but not without passing a somewhat severe and ungenerous criticism on its merits—a criticism which Professor Noldeke, who has carefully compared this portion of the *Shahnama* with Firdawsi's work, very properly condemns as unfounded.³ That Daqiqi stood high in the esteem of his contemporaries is shown by the words with which As'ad the 'Amid presented Farrukhi to the Amir Abu'l-Mudhaffar, " O Sire, I bring thee a poet the like of whom the Eye of Time hath not seen since Daqiqi's face was veiled in death;"⁴ as well as by al-'Utbi's brief remarks⁵ on the most eminent poets of the reign of Nuh II b. Mansur the Samanid (A.D. 976—997).

Of Daqiqi's lyric verse, 'A w f i gives ten fragments comprising in all twenty-seven couplets, and Et he gives three additional fragments (Nos. I, 4, and 6), comprising thirteen

¹ *A Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 375-6.

² See Turner Macan's edition of the *Shahnama*, at the beginning of vol. iii (p. 1065, l. 11), where Daqiqi is made to say to Firdawsi in the vision : " I composed a thousand couplets about Gushtasp and Arjasp, when my life came to an end." The portion of the poem ascribed to Daqiqi extends from p. 1065 to p. 1103. In Viillers's edition this is equivalent to vol. iii, pp. 1495-1553 ; or 1001 couplets *minus* the prologue of 13 couplets = 988 couplets.

³ *Op. cit.*, p. 20. The criticism in question occurs in Macan's ed. on p. 1104.

⁴ See the *tirage-a-part* of my translation of the *Chahar Maqala*, p. 65.

⁵ *Ta'rikhu'l-'Utbi*, ed. Cairo, A. H. 1286, vol. ii, p. 22.

couplets, which are not to be found in 'Awfi. The following verses form part of a *qasida* in praise of the Amir Abu Sa'id Muhammad [b.] Mudhaffar [b.] Muhtaj-i-Chighani :—

*"Thy sword to guard the Empire hath God as sentry set,
Bounty its chosen agent hath made that hand of thine:
The Ear of Fate from Heaven is strained for thy command,
And gold to reach thy hand-hold emergeth from the mine."*

In another *qasida* addressed to the Samanid ruler Mansur I (A.D. 961-976) he says :—

*"O King recalling Dara's noble line,
Who dost in Saman's sky like Pole-star shine t
Should Satan see him when his wrath is stirred,
Fearing his sword, he would accept God's Word.
Nahid and Hurmuz¹ guide his soldiers feet,
While Mars and Saturn are his vanguard fleet."*

In another *qasida* addressed to Nuh II (A.D. 976-997), the successor of the king last mentioned, he says :—

*"The circling Heaven lends an eager ear
That what the King commands it swift may hear.
For fear of him Saturn, most sorely tried,
Scarce dares survey the Sky's expanses wide."*

The following lines are from one of his love-poems :—

*"O would that in the world 'twere endless day,
That from those lips I ne'er need 'bide away I
But for those scorpion curls² my Love doth wear
No smart like scorpion-sting my heart need bear."*

¹ *Nahid* (the ancient *Anahita*) is the planet Venus, and *Hurmuz* (*Ahura-Mazda*) is Jupiter, these being the two fortunate planets, as Saturn and Mars are the unlucky ones.

² The locks (*zulf*) of the Beloved, by reason of their shape, their blackness, and their power to wound, are often compared to a scorpion.

*But for the stars¹ which neath those lips do play,
I need not count nights stars till dawn of day.⁹
Were she not formed of all that is most fair
Some thought beyond her love my soul might share.
If I must pass my life without my Friend,
O God, I would my life were at an end!"*

In another verse he says :—

*" Long tarrying, I'm lightly held: away !
Even an honoured guest too long may stay:
Waters which in the well too long repose
Lose all their flavour, and their sweetness goes"*

The following verse is descriptive of wine :—

*" Wrung from the Grape which shines as shines the Light,
Yet Fire consuming is its soul and sprite:
Compounded from a Star whose setting-place
Is in the Mouth, yet rises in the Face."*

This is descriptive of a bowl of iced water :—

*" Water and ice in crystal bowl combine:
Behold these three, which like a bright lamp shine.
Two deliquescent, one hard-frozen see,
Yet all alike of hue and bright of blee"*

Of the remaining poets of this earliest epoch cited by 'Awfi (and, for the most part, by Etche also) is *Manjik*, who was patronised by the Chighani *amirs*, and whose verses seem often to have contained rare, archaic, and dialectal expressions, since in the following century we find the poet Qatran of Tabriz asking Nasir-i-Khusraw to explain and elucidate them.³

¹ This, I suppose, is a metaphor for the dimples which flash and flicker round the mouth of the Beloved.

² "To count the stars," is, both with the Persian poets and their Turkish imitators, a common expression for passing sleepless nights.

³ *Safar-nama* (ed. Schefer, Paris, 1881), p. 6 of the text = pp. 18-19 of the French translation.

Then comes *Abul-Hasan 'Ali b. Muhammad al-Ghazzali al-Lukari*, who has some very pretty verses describing a beautiful Kurdish boy, and other lines in praise of *Nuh II b. Mansur* the Samanid Prince (A.D. 976-997), and of the *wazir Abu'l-Hasan 'Ubaydu'llah b. Ahmad al-'Utbi*. Next comes *Ma'rufi* of Balkh, who has the following lines in praise of the Samanid 'Abdu'l-Malik I (A.D. 954-961):—

"O *Colocynth and Aloes* to thy foes,
But to thy friends like sugar, honey-sweet !
The use of foresight no one better knows,
Nor how to strike the first when blows are meet."

Next follows *Mansur b. 'Ali al-Mantiqi* of Ray, one of the panegyrists of the great *Sahib Isma'II b. 'Abbad*, the *wazir* of the House of Daylam (see p. 453 *supra*), to whom he alludes in the following lines :—

"Methinks the Moon of Heav'n is stricken sore,
And nightly grieveth as it wasteth more.
What late appeared a great, round, silver shield
Now like a mall-bat¹ enters heaven's field.
The *Sahib's* horse, you'd think, had galloped by,
And cast one golden horse-shoe in the sky."

The following verse, apart from the pretty hyperbole which it contains, has a certain adventitious interest :—

"One hair I stole from out thy raven locks
When thou, O sweetheart, didst thy tresses comb,
With anxious toil I bore it to my house,
As bears the ant the wheat-grain to its home.
My father when he saw me cried amain,
' Which is my son, I pray thee, of these twain f' •

According to 'Awfi's narrative, when *Badi'u'z-Zama'n* of

¹ The crescent moon is here compared to the curved head of a polo-bat.

² Meaning that his son, Mansur, was so wasted with love that he could scarce be distinguished from a hair.

Hamadin, Hariri's great rival in the writing of *Maqamat*, came to visit the Sihib at the age of twelve, the Sahib, wishing to test his skill, bade him translate these lines into Arabic verse. The youthful scholar asked what rhyme and metre he should employ, and was told to make the rhyme in *ta*" and to use the metre called *Sari* ' ("the Swift," in the variety here used : — u u — | — u u — | — u — |), whereupon he at once extemporised a very close translation in Arabic, to the following effect :—

" *I stole from his tresses a hair*
When he combed them with care in the morn ;
Then, labouring, bore it away
As the ant staggers off with the corn.
Quoth my father, ' Since either would go
Through the eye of a needle, I trow,
Inform me, I pray thee, which one
Of the twain is my son ? ' "

Such translations of Arabic into Persian verse, and *vice versa*, seem to have been a very favourite exercise with scholars and wits from this period onwards into Seljuq times, though unfortunately it is not always possible to compare the version and the original, one or other having been lost. Thus we find in two of al-Bundaris works, his abridged Arabic translation of the *Shahnama* of Firdawsi, and his *History of the Seljuqs*, numerous verse-renderings in Arabic of Persian poems,¹ which in the former instance can be compared with their originals, but in the latter, as a rule, not. And it is interesting to note that the translators considered themselves under no obligation to preserve the form, metre, or rhyme of the original, but only

¹ This Arabic version of the *Shahnama* exists only in manuscript, and is rare, but there is a fine old copy in the Cambridge University Library, and others at Paris and Berlin (see pp. 43-4 of my *Handlist of Muhammadan MSS.*) The Seljuq History has been edited in the most scholarly way by Houtsma (Brill, Leyden, 1889). Arabic verse-translations of Persian originals occur on p. 85 (verses of Abu Mansur of Aba), p. 86 (verses of the Mu'ayyidu'l-Mulk), p. 105 (verses of Abu Tahir al-Khatuni), &c

the meaning, and this though they were practically bilingual (*dhu'l-lisanayn*), and though the metrical system of the Arabs and Persians is substantially identical. On this ground alone I consider, contrary to the view of many eminent Orientalists, notably my deeply lamented friend, Mr. E. J. W. Gibb, whose great *History of Ottoman Poetry* has been already mentioned in several places, that he who seeks to render the poetry of the East into a Western tongue may most justly claim the same indulgence as these old masters of Arabic and Persian took when translating in verse from the one language into the other; and indeed, having regard to the wide differences which separate our verse-forms and laws of prosody from those of the Muhammadan nations, we are doubly justified in demanding the right to take equal liberties with the forms, though not with the substance of our originals.

With Mantiqi we notice a more artificial style, and a greater fondness for rhetorical devices, than is the case with the early poets hitherto mentioned : in particular, a fondness for the figure known as " poetical aetiology " (*husn-i-ta'lii*), as, for instance, when he ascribes the " pallor " or " sallowness " of the sun to its fear of trespassing on the realms of his patron in its passage across the sky, and that of the gold *dinar* to its dread of his lavish and prodigal hands ; or the " trembling " (or twinkling) of the stars to their dread of his far-reaching sword. This characteristic is due, I think, not so much to personal idiosyncrasy as to the fact that the Buwayhid Court of 'Iraq was, owing to its greater proximity to, and closer connection with, the metropolis of Baghdad, more directly subject to the literary influences and tendencies of Arabic-speaking and Arabic-writing men of letters than the Saminid Court of far Khurasan. For this very reason, perhaps, Khurasan is regarded (and justly so) as the cradle of the Persian Renaissance; yet that it was considered far behind 'Iraq in literary culture clearly appears from the following verses (cited in the *Yatima*, vol. iv, p. 3) of Abu Ahmad b.

Abu Bakr al-Katib (the secretary), whose father was secretary to the Samanid Prince Ismail b. Ahmad (A.D. 892-907) and *wazir* to his son and successor Ahmad b. Ismail (A.D. 907—913) :—

" *Wonder not at a man of 'Iraq in whom thou seest an ocean of learning and a treasure of culture ;
Wonder rather at one whose home is in the lands of ignorance if he be able to distinguish head from tail I*"

These lines were, of course, written before that brilliant epoch described in another passage of the *Yatima* (vol. iv, pp. 33-4 : see pp. 365-6 *supra*), but it shows that the flow of Muhammadan culture was, as we should expect, centrifugal, from Baghdad towards the periphery of the Lands of Islam.

The next poet mentioned by 'Awfi, *Abu Bakr Muhammaa b. 'All al-Khusrawi as-Sarakhsi*, was attached neither to the Samanid nor to the Buwayhid Court, but to that eminent prince of the Ziyarid dynasty of Tabaristan, Amir Shamsu'l-Ma'ali Qabus b. Washmgir (A.D. 976-1012), of whose own literary achievements we shall shortly have to speak. He too was a bilingual poet, and apparently wandered from court to court, praising now his proper patron Qabus, now the Sahib, and again the grandson of Simjur, Abu'l Hasan Muhammad. Another poet who sang the praises of Qabus was *Abu'l-Qasim Ziyad b. Muhammad al-Qumri of Gurgan*, whose few surviving verses shew taste and ingenuity, and something also of that artificiality which we have already remarked in Mantiqi. *Abu Tahir al-Khusrawani* was another Samanid poet, who has some bitter verses against "four sorts of men from whom not one atom of good accrued" to him, viz., physicians, devotees, astrologers, and charm-mongers. Somewhat better known is *Abu Shukur* of Balkh, who, in A.H. 336 (= A.D. 947-8) completed a work (now lost) called the *Afarin-nama*, and who is also the author of the following lines :—

*I ventured to glance from afar at thy face, and Behold t
Twas sufficient a wound to inflict on thy countenance sweet;
By thy glance in return was my heart smitten sore, for of old
'Tis the Law of Atonement that 'wounding for wounding is
meet.'"¹*

This verse was put into Arabic by the bilingual poet, Abu'l-Fath of Bust, while another Persian verse by the poet Abu 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Salih al-Walwalaji was similarly Arabicised by Abu'l-Qasim, the son of the wazir Abu'l-'Abbas. Abu Muhammad al-Badi 'of Balkh composed verses in praise of the Chighani Amir Abu Yahya Tahir b. Fadl of the kind known as *mulamma'* or "patch-work," i.e., half Persian, half Arabic. Abu'I-Mudhaffar Nasr al-Istighna'i of Nishapur is known to us now only by the two following couplets:—

*" Like to the Moon would she be, were it not for her raven locks;
Like unto Venus, save for her beauty-spot, fragrant as musk:
Her cheeks to the Sun I would liken, save that, unlike the Sun,
She needs not to fear an eclipse, she needs not to shrink from the
dusk."*

Abu 'Abdi'llah Muhammad al-Junaydi was another of the Sahib's bilingual poets. Abu Mansur 'Umara of Merr flourished under the last king of the House of Saman and the first of the House of Ghazna, and excelled in brief and picturesque descriptions of the spring season, wine, and the like. His is the following admonition to those who seek worldly success:—

*" Though the world should hold thee in honour, let that not fill thee
with pride:—
Many the world hath honoured and soon hath cast aside.
For the world is a venomous serpent: its seeker a charmer of
snakes:
And one day on the serpent-charmer the serpent its vengeance
takes"*

² Qur'an, v, 49.

Seven more poets whose patrons are unknown conclude 'Awfi's list of these early pre-Ghaznawi singers, of whom in all thirty-one are noticed. These seven are :

Mathal of Bukhara ; *Abu'l-Mu'ayyad* of Balkh ; his namesake of Bukhara, also called *Rawnaqi*; *Ma'nawi* of Bukhara; *Khabbazi* of Nishapur, and *Sipihri* of Transoxiana.

Leaving these poets by profession, we turn now to two royal poets of this period.

The first of these was the Samanid King Mansur II b. Nuh (A.D. 997-9), whom 'Awfi calls the last of his line, though his brother, 'Abdu'l-Malik is generally reckoned to have succeeded him. " Though he was young," says 'Awfi, "yet the dynasty had grown old, and no order (*saman*) was left in the affairs of the House of Saman, while the life of the Royal House had sunk to a mere spark. He lived at the beginning of the reign of Sultan Mahmud *Yaminu d-Dawla*. Many times did he fall a captive into the hands of his enemies, and again recovered his freedom : greatly did he strive to recover his father's kingdom, but human effort avails naught against the Decree of Heaven and the Fate preordained by God, as saith God Almighty, " *None can avert His Decree and none can postpone His command; God doth what He pleaseth and ordereth as He will.*" Of him alone amongst the Kings of the House of Saman is any verse recorded. His verses are both spontaneous and kingly. Whilst he sat on the throne of sovereignty in Bukhard, enemies rose up against him on all sides, and all his nobles were disaffected, so that night and day he was on horseback, clad in a *Zandaniji*¹ coat, while most of his life was passed in flight and fight. One day some of his companions said to him, " O King, why dost thou not get thyself fine clothes, or amuse thyself with those distractions which are one of the perquisites of royalty ? " Thereupon he

^x *Zandaniji* or *Zand-pichi* (see Vullers's *Lexicon*, vol. iii, p. 151) is a loose white garment made of very thick and strong material, probably to afford some protection against sword-cuts

composed this fragment, in the sentiments of which the signs of manly courage are apparent and evident:—

*" They ask me why fine robes I do not wear,
Nor covet stately tent with carpets rare.
'Midst clash of arms, what boots the minstrel's power ?
'Midst rush of steeds, what place for rose-girt bower ?
Nor wine nor sweet-lipped Saqi aught avail
Where blood is spattered o'er the coats of mail.
Arms, horse for me banquet and bower enow,
Tulip and lily mine the dart and bow."*

The following quatrain reproaching Heaven for its unkindness is also ascribed to him :—

*"O blue to look on, not in essence blue,
A Fire art thou, though like a Smoke to view.
Wen from thy birth thine ears were deaf to prayer,
Nor wrath nor protest aught avail with you"*

More important as a patron of letters, if not as a poet, was the Ziyarid prince of Tabaristan, Qabus b. Washmgir, entitled *Shamsu'l-Ma'ali* (" the Sun of the Heights" reigned A.D. 976-1012). To him al-B(run) dedicated his "Chronology of Ancient Nations " (*al-Atharu'l-baqiya mina'l-Quruni'l-khaliya*, edited and translated into English by Dr. Sachau), in the preface of which work he thus speaks of him (Sachau's translation, p. 2) :—

" How wonderfully hath He whose Name is to be exalted and extolled combined with the glory of his noble extraction¹ the graces of his generous character, with his valiant soul all laudable qualities, such as piety and righteousness, carefulness in defending and observing the rites of religion, justice and equity, humility and beneficence, firmness and determination, liberality and gentleness, the talent for ruling and governing, for managing and deciding, and other qualities which no fancy could comprehend and no mortal enumerate!"

² This pedigree, given in full by al-Biruni (p. 47 of Sachau's translation), traces his lineage to the Sasanian King Qubadh, the father of Anushirwan.

Ath-Tha'alibi, in the tenth and last chapter of the third volume of his *Yatima*, is equally enthusiastic in "crowning his book with some of the shining fruits of his eloquence, which is the least of his many virtues and characteristics."¹ The great Avicenna (Abu 'All ibn Sind) was another of the eminent men of learning whom Qabus protected and aided, as is fully narrated in the *Chahar Maqala*, or "Four Discourses" (pp. 121-4 of my translation), by Nidhami of Samarqand, who calls Qabus "a great and accomplished man, and a friend to men of learning." His unhappy and violent end is well known,² and ampler details of his life are to be found in Ibn Isfandiyyar's *History of Tabaristan*, of which I am now preparing an abridged translation. He composed verses both in Arabic and Persian. Amongst the former is the following :—

"Say to him who fain would taunt us with vicissitudes of Fate,
'Warreth Fate or fighteth Fortune save against the high and great t
Seest thou not the putrid corpse which Ocean to its surface flings,
While within its deep abysses lie the pearls desired of Kings ?'
Though the hands of Fate attack us, though her buffets us disarm,
Though her long-continued malice bring upon us hurt and harm,
In the sky are constellations none can count, yet of them all
On the Sun and Moon alone the dark Eclipse's shadows fall!"

And again :—

"My love is enkindled in thinking of thee,
And passionate thrills through my being do dart:
No limb of my body but speaks of thy love,
Each limb, thou would'st think, was created a heart!"

Amongst his Persian verses 'Awfi records the following :—

¹ Other passages of this encomium will be found on pp. 507-8 of the second volume of de Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikan.

² He was murdered, with his son's connivance, in the Castle of Janashk in Gurgan, where he had been imprisoned. See my edition of *Dawlatshdh*, pp. 48-9, and de Slane's translation of Ibn Khallikan, vol. ii, p. 509.

"The things of this world from end to **end are** the goal of desire and greed,
 And I set before this heart of mine the things which I most do need,
 But a score of things I have chosen out of the world's unnumbered throng,
 That in quest of these I my soul may please and speed my life along.
 Verse, and song, and minstrelsy, and wine full-flavoured and sweet,
 Backgammon, and chess, and the hunting-ground, and the falcon and cheetah fleet;
 Field, and ball, and audience-hall, and battle, and banquet rare,
 Horse, and arms, and a generous hand, and praise of my Lord and prayer."

And again :—

"Six things there be which have their home in the midst of thy raven hair ;
 Twist and tangle, curl and knot, ringlet and love-lock fair;
 Six things there be, as you may see which in my heart do reign;
 Grief and desire and sorrow dire: longing and passion and pain I"

The following quatrain is also his :—

"Mirth's King the Rose is, Wine Joy's Herald eke;
 Hence from these two do I my pleasure seek;
 Would'st thou, O Moon, inquire the cause of this
 Wine's taste thy lips recalls, the Rose thy cheek I"

Amongst other royal and noble poets of this early period 'Awfi mentions Sultan Mahmud of Ghazna (whose Court will be described at the beginning of the next volume), and his son Amir Abu Muhammad b. Yaminu'd-Dawla; Abu'l-Mudhaffar Tahir b. al-Fadl b. Muhammad Muhtij as-Saghanf (Le., of Chaghan); Amir Kayka'us the Ziyarid, son of the talented and unfortunate Qabus whom we have just been discussing, and others who need not detain us, since we have examined a sufficient amount of the poetry of this period to be able to characterise it in general terms. The

Other royal and noble poets.

General characteristics of the poetry of this period.

THE LITERATURE OF PERSIA

metrical system which underlies it is, as we have already observed, identical with that of the Arabs; though certain metres (*e.g.*, *Kamil*, *Basit*, and *Tawil*) which are common in Arabic are but rarely used in Persian, while some new metres were introduced in the latter language which were not used in the former. Dr. Forbes at pp. 132-3 of his *Persian Grammar* (4th ed. London, 1869), cites the opinion of Herr Geitlin, a German writer on the Persian language, who remarks that "the Persians and Arabs, like the Greeks and Romans, rejoice in a great variety of metres, but the Asiatic metres differ mainly in this, that the long syllables far exceed the short, which is quite in conformity with the character of the Oriental people, who are distinguished by a certain degree of gravity and sobriety in their conversation and gestures, combined with dignity and stateliness in all their movements;" and, *a propos* of this, remarks, in speaking of the five purely Arabian metres comprised in the "First Circle," that in them "the short syllables are more nearly on a par with the long; whereby we are to infer, according to Herr Geitlin's theory, that the roving Arabs are less grave and sober in their conversation and gestures than their neighbours of Persia."

As regards verse-forms, it is the *qasida*, or elegy, alone which occupies a prominent place in both languages, and which (chiefly, as it would appear, from the influence of the great Arab poet al-Mutanabbi, A.D. 905-965) attained so great a development in Persia under the Ghaznawi and succeeding dynasties, as will appear in a subsequent chapter. But at the period of which we are now speaking such long and elaborate monorhymes appear to have enjoyed little favour in Persia; and even the *ghazal*, or ode, seems to have been less popular in these early days than the *qit'a*, or fragment, and the *ruba'i du-bayti*, or quatrain. This last, indeed, was almost certainly the earliest product of the

Arabic and Persian metrical systems.

Verse-forms most favoured by the Persians in early times.

The quatrain.

Persian poetical genius. Allusion has already been made to one of the stock anecdotes given by the biographers as to the first occasion on which Persian verse was composed in Muhammadan times; the anecdote, namely, which ascribes a single *misra'* to the chance utterance of a gleeful child. In Dawlatshah's *Memoirs* (pp. 30-31 of my edition) this child is said to have been the son of Amir Ya'qub b. Layth the Saffarid; but lately I have come across a much older version of the story in the British Museum manuscript Or. 2814 of a very rare work on Persian Prosody and Rhetoric entitled *al-Mu'jam fi ma'abiri ash'ari'l-'Ajam*, composed about A.H. 617 (= A.D. 1220-1221) by Shams-i-Qays. In this version (ff. 49^b-50^b of the above-mentioned manuscript) the verse ("*ghalatan ghalatan hami rawad ta, bun-i-kh*") and the anecdote are nearly the same, but the child is unnamed and not represented as of royal patronage, while it is not the Amir Ya'qub but the poet Rudagi "or some other of the ancient poets of Persia" who is the auditor and admirer. He, according to the author, after an examination of the hemistich in question, "evolved out of the *akhrab* and *akhrām* varieties of the *hazaj* metre a measure which they call the 'Quatrain measure,'¹ and which is indeed a graceful measure and a pleasant and agreeable form of verse; in consequence of which most persons of taste and most cultivated natures have a strong inclination and leaning towards it." The quatrain, then, may safely be regarded as the most ancient essentially Persian verse-form, while next to this comes the

The Mathnawi

mathnawi) or poem in "doublets," which is generally narrative, and where the rhyme changes in each couplet. The portion of the *Shahnama* composed by Daqiqi is probably the oldest Persian *mathnawi* poem of which any considerable portion has been preserved to us, though fragments of Rudagis

¹ See Blochmann's *Prosody of the Persians*, p. 68, where the twenty-four *rubai'* metres, of which half are derived from each of these two varieties of the *hazaj* metre, are given in full.

Kalila and Dimna and other old *mathnawis* have been discovered by Dr. Paul Horn of Strassburg amongst the citations adduced by Asadi in his lexicon in proof of the meanings of rare and archaic words.

Coming now to the monorhymes, that is the *qasida*, its "fragment" (*qit'a*), and the *ghazal*, we notice a far greater simplicity in this than in the next period. The *qasidas* of 'Unsuri, Farrukhi, Asadi, Manikhihri, and other Ghaznawi poets are often nearly as artificial, and nearly as full of far-fetched conceits, as those of the Seljuq and other later periods; but the earlier fragments which we have just been examining are, as a rule, simple, natural, spontaneous and often original. The same applies to the *ghazal*, so far as this had yet come into existence, though here the contrast is less marked, because the *ghazal* never assumed so purely artificial and rhetorical a form as did the *qasida*.

Although we have not space to consider at any great length the Arabic poetry produced in Persia at this transition period, something must needs be said as to its general characteristics and peculiarities. We have already seen that, as regards language and idiom, it closely approached, if it did not actually reach, the level of the poetry produced in those countries where Arabic was the spoken language, but notwithstanding this it presents several peculiarities, some of which will now be enumerated. These peculiarities are naturally more conspicuous in the remoter and more purely Persian Courts of the Samanid and other Eastern dynasties than in the environment of the Buwayhid Princes and Amirs (notably the Sahib Ismail b. 'Abbad), who were in closer touch with the metropolis of Baghdad, and we shall therefore confine ourselves almost entirely to a consideration of the form, as depicted in the fourth and last volume of ath-Tha'alibi's *Yatima*.

Arabic poetry
produced in
Persia at this
period.

In the first place, then, we often find presupposed a knowledge of the Persian language which a non-Persian could not be expected to possess. Thus Abu 'Ali as-Saji praises the city of Mery in the following lines (*Yatima*, iii 16) :—

Knowledge of
often assumed
in the Arabic
verses produced
in Persia.

*" Earth which in fragrance ambergris excels,
A country fair, where cool, sweet waters flow:
And when the traveller seeks its bounds to quit
Its very name commands him not to go I"*

The last line alludes to the fact that the letters M. R. W. which spells the name of the town in question can also be read as *ma-raw*, which in Persian signifies " do not go ! " To an Arab, of course, unless he knew Persian, the point of the verse would be entirely lost.¹ Similar verses, of which the point lies in a " popular etymology," were composed about other towns, like Bukhara (*Yatima* iii, 8, 9), but in the epigram on Bukhard the sense is uncomplimentary, and the etymology Arabic, not Persian.

Secondly, we meet with numerous verses composed on the occasion of one of the great Persian festivals, Nawruz and Mihragan (which correspond respectively with the Spring and Autumn equinoxes), whereof the last is also called the " Day of Rim "; the twenty-first day of every Persian month, but most particularly the 21st day of the month of Mihr (i.e., Mihragan) being so named.² Concerning this *Ram-ruz* we find in the *Yatima* (iii, 10) two pairs of verses, each containing a Persian expression which (whether because the text is corrupt or the words obsolete) is, unfortunately, unintelligible to me. Numerous similar introductions of Persian words and sentences into the

Allusions to
Persian festivals
and customs.

¹ Another similar word-play on *dih-khudha* (the Persian word for a landowner or squire) will be found in a verse by Abu' 1-Qasim al-'Alawi al-Utrush cited at the top of p. 280 of vol. iii of the *Yatima*.

² See Sachau's translation of al-Biruni's *Chronology of Ancient Nations*, p. 209.

Arabic verses produced in Persia at this period might no doubt be found by a more careful examination of the still somewhat inaccessible sources of information on this subject.

Thirdly, we find occasional use made by Persian poets who wrote in Arabic of verse-forms essentially Persian, notably the *mathnawi* and the *ghazal*. A good instance of the former (called in Arabic *muzdawija*) is to be found at p. 23 of vol. iii of the *Yatima*, in the notice of Abu'l-Fadl as-Sukkari (?) al-Marwazi, who, we are told, "was very fond of translating Persian proverbs into Arabic. These proverbs are here strung together into a genuine *mathnawi* poem, such as I do not remember to have seen elsewhere in Arabic, and the original of many of the paraphrases can be easily recognised, e.g., " *Al-laylu hubla; laysa yudra ma yalid*" ("The night is pregnant: it is not known what it will bring forth) = " *Shab abistan-ast: farda chi ziyad ?* " And again :—

*Idha 'l-ma' fawqa ghariqin tama
Fa-qab" qandūn wa alfun siwa.*

("When the water surges over the drowning man, then a fathom [lit. the cast of a javelin] and a thousand are alike") = " *Chu ab az sar dar guzasht, chi yak niza, chi sad niza.*" As instances of Arabic *ghazals* or *pseudo-ghazals*, it is sufficient to refer to two short poems occupying the upper part of p. 23 of the third volume of the *Yatima*, of which the second especially is quite in the Persian style as regards sentiments ; and another on p. 113 of the same volume. Of the existence of true quatrains composed in Arabic I am less certain ; but two pieces of verse by Abu' l-'Ala as-Sarwi, describing the narcissus and the apple respectively (*Yatima*, vol. iii, p. 281), at least closely resemble this essentially Persian form of composition, and more particularly accord with a fashion prevalent amongst the Persian poets of this period of describing in a quatrain or short " fragment " some particular fruit, flower, or other natural object.

This large and interesting question as to the characteristics of the Arabic verse produced in Persia cannot be further discussed here, but it well merits a systematic examination by some scholar who has a thoroughly competent knowledge, not only of both languages, but of both literatures. Unfortunately it is but very rarely that a scholar arises whose chief interest is in Persian literature, and who yet has a complete mastery of the Arabic language. The Arabist, as a rule, slightes this branch of Arabic literature as exotic, even when he does not condemn it as post-classical; while the student of Persian seldom realises till too late that for literary and historical purposes the point of view of the comparative philologist is entirely misleading, and that he need not so much to concern himself with Sanskrit and other Aryan languages as with Arabic.

Of the Persian prose literature of this period, which must have been of some extent, few specimens, unfortunately, remain to us ; while even of what has been preserved the greater part is translated from the Arabic. Four works of importance, one historical, one medical, and two exegetical, all composed probably during the reign of the Samanid King Mansur I b. Nuh (A.D. 961-976), have come down to us. Two of them are abridged translations of the great history and the great commentary of Tabarī; the third is the Pharmacology of Abu Mansur Muwaflaq of Herat; the last is the now celebrated old Persian commentary on the Qur'dn, of which the second volume is preserved in a unique and ancient MS. in the Cambridge University Library. All these are written in a simple, straightforward and archaic language, of which I have discussed the peculiarities at some length in the article in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* for 1894 (pp. 417-524) where I first made known the existence of the Cambridge Codex of the old Persian Commentary, which bears a date equivalent to Feb-

Persian prose
literature.

ruary 12, A.D. 1231. The Pharmacology (*Kitabi'l-Abniya 'an Haqa'iqi'l'Adwiya*) is preserved in the unique Vienna Codex, a still more ancient MS. (in fact the oldest extant Persian MS.) dated Shawwal, A.H. 447 (= January, A.D. 1056), which derives a special interest from the fact that it was transcribed by the poet 'Ali b. Ahmad of Tus, better known by his pen-name Asadi, the nephew of the great Firdawsi. This work has been beautifully printed in its entirety, with a preface, notes, and facsimiles of three leaves, by Dr. Seligmann (Vienna, 1859), while a German translation of it has been published with notes by Abdul-Chalig Achundow (i.e., 'Abdu 'l-Khaliq, son of the *Akhund* or schoolmaster) of Baku. Bal'amis Persian translation of Ta barfs history exists in many fine old MSS., of which several are enumerated in the preface (pp. v-vii) to the first volume of M. Hermann Zotenberg's *Chronique de Abou-Djafar Mohammed ben Djarir ben Tezid Tabarij traduite sur la version persane d' Abou 'Ali Mohammed Bel'ami d'apres les manuscrits de Paris, de Gotha, de Londres et de Canterbury* (Paris, 4 vols., 1867-1874). Of the Persian translation of Tabari's Commentary, made about the same time as Bal'ami's translation of the same great scholar's History, there is a manuscript (ADD. 7601) dated A.H. 883 (A.D. 1478) in the British Museum.

There exists a rare Persian work known as the *Marzuban-nama*, of which extracts have been published by the late M. Charles Schefer in his *Chrestomathie Persane* (Paris, 1885; vol. ii, pp. 194-211 of the Notes, and pp. 172-199 of the texts). This is a translation made by Sa'd of Warawin towards the end of the twelfth century of our era from an original composed in the Mazandarani dialect by the Ispahbad Marzuban somewhere about A.H. 400 (= A.D. 1009-1010). To the same writer is ascribed a poem entitled *Niki-nama*; and it is interesting to note the considerable use made in literature (of which there is a good deal of scattered evidence) of this and other cognate dialects, and to compare the similar state of things which pre-

The oldest
extant Persian
MS.

The Marzuban-
nama.

vailed in England after the Norman Conquest before victory was assured to the Mercian dialect, and while the other dialects were still contending for the position of literary idioms.

There is another branch of Persian literature (that of the Persian Jews, written in the Persian language but in the Hebrew character) of which one (and that the

Judæo-Persian
literature.

most interesting) monument may possibly go back to the ninth or tenth century of our era, though Darmesteter and other authorities place it in the Mongol period (thirteenth century of our era), while Munk puts it a century earlier. To this literature (represented by a considerable number of MSS., of which some twenty are in the Bibliothèque Nationale at Paris) attention was first called by Munk in the *Bible de Cahn* (ix, pp. 134-159), and it has since been discussed pretty fully by Zotenberg (Merx's *Archiv*, vol. i, Halle, 1870, pp. 385-427), who there published and translated the Apocrypha of Daniel, concerning which we are about to speak ; Paul de Lagarde (*Persische Studien*, Gottingen, 1884) ; Darmesteter (*Revue Critique* for June, 1882 : new series, vol. xiii, pp. 450—454 ; and *Milanges Renier*, Paris, 1887, pp. 405—420) ; Salemann, and other scholars. Most of this Judæo-Persian literature is, except from the philological point of view, of little value, consisting merely of vocabularies of Hebrew words explained in Persian, translations of the Pentateuch and other

Hebrew books, and some poems; but the Apocrypha of Daniel (No. 128 of the Hebrew and Samaritan MSS. of the Bibliothèque Nationale),

which, if not itself original, yet represents a lost Chaldaean original, is of an altogether different order. This Apocrypha is divided by Darmesteter into three parts, viz.: (1) A series of legends relating to Daniel, some biblical, some rabbinical; (2) a pseudo-prophetic sketch of historical events, in which the first definitely recognisable figure is the Prophet Muhammad and the last the Caliph al-Ma'mun (t A.D. 833) ; (3) one of those fanciful descriptions of Messianic times which are so frequent in Jewish works.

The Apocrypha
of Daniel.

To those who believed in **the** prophetic inspiration of this document the last portion was no doubt the most interesting, but to such as judge by the ordinary standards of [criticism it is the second—containing what Darmesteter happily terms, "Phis-toire prophetisee"—which most appeals. The Apocrypha purports to contain the vision of things to come until the advent of the Messiah shown by God to the Prophet Daniel, and this vision or Apocalypse is introduced by the words, "O Daniel, I show thee how many kings there shall be in each nation and religion; I will inform thee how it shall be." Then follow several rather vague references, doubtfully interpreted by Darmesteter as applying to Ahasuerus, the Seleucidae, and the Sasaiians; then a prophetic description of an ungodly king who shall call himself "*Bihishti*" ("Celestial"), and by whom, as Darmesteter thinks, Nushirwin (== *Anushak-ruban* = "of Immortal Soul") is intended; and then is described "a short, red-complexioned king, who regards not God's Word, and claims to be a prophet, having been a camel driver; and who shall come forth from the south riding *on* a camel, greatly persecute the Jews, and die after a reign of eleven years. This personage is evidently intended for Muhammad, and from this point onwards until the death of al-Ma'miin (*i.e.*, from A.H. I to 218 = A.D. 622—833) the succession of Muhammadan rulers can be quite clearly traced. At this point, as Darmesteter admits, the chronological sequence of events ceases; but in the succeeding paragraphs he thinks that allusion is made to the Crusades, and in particular to Godefroy de Bouillon and his Red Cross Knights; and that is why he places the composition of the Pseudo-Apocalypse not in the tenth but in the thirteenth century of our era. Personally, I am disposed to regard these supposed references to the Crusades and the red-garbed warriors who shall come from Rum even to Damascus as too indefinite to preclude the possibility that they have no connection with real history, in which case this curious Apocrypha may well belong to the period we have been considering, if not to that previous period which we have called "the Golden Age."

A SHORT BIBLIOGRAPHY OF THE PRINCIPAL WORKS BY EUROPEAN SCHOLARS WHICH DEAL WITH THE VARIOUS MATTERS TREATED OF IN THIS VOLUME

Only such Oriental works as have been translated into some European language are, as a rule, mentioned in this place ; but the names of all those mentioned in the text are entered in the Index in italics, those actually cited being further marked by an asterisk. Many of them exist only in manuscript; and the extent to which these manuscripts can be consulted depends on the rules governing the various Libraries where they are preserved. Nearly all the great Continental Libraries are extremely generous in this matter, and freely lend their treasures to other Libraries, or even to individual scholars. Of English public Libraries, those of the India Office and the Royal Asiatic Society are the most liberal; next comes the University Library of Cambridge, then the Bodleian. The British Museum absolutely refuses, to the great detriment of scholarship, to lend manuscripts under any conditions whatever; and one or two English libraries possessing valuable collections of Oriental manuscripts even put difficulties in the way of scholars who wish to consult the manuscripts on the spot Of private collectors it would be unjust not to mention especially the extraordinary liberality of Lord Crawford, to whom the author of this book is under great obligations. Most unfortunately his fine collection of Oriental manuscripts has now passed into other and less generous hands. The books enumerated below are arranged according to subjects and periods, and only a selection of those deemed most important are mentioned, those adjudged most valuable being marked with an asterisk, The terms "Ancient" and "Modern" signify pre-Muhammadan and post-Muhammadan respectively. As a further guide I would also refer the reader to two excellent bibliographies, the first chiefly of works of Geography and Travel, given by Lord Curzon in vol. i of his great book on "Persia" (pp. 16-18); the second of works on Literature, History, and Philology in Salemann and Zhukovski's "Persische Grammatik" (pp. 105-118). Very complete bibliographies of the subjects dealt with*

in Geiger and Kuhns " *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie* " will also be found prefixed to the various sections into which that great work is divided. A very useful list of works connected with Zoroastrianism is also prefixed to Professor A. V. Williams Jackson's excellent monograph on Zoroaster (New York, 1899).

A. GENERAL HISTORY AND PHILOLOGY.

*1. *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie, unter Mitwirkung von Chr. Bartholoma, C. H. Eihh, K. F. Geldner, P. Horn, H. Hubschmann, A.V.W. Jackson, F. Justi, Th. Noldeke, C. Salemann, A. Socin, F. H. Weissbach, und E. W. West, herausgegeben von Wilhelm Geiger und Ernst Kuhn* (Strasburg, 1895 —). This invaluable work—a veritable Encyclopaedia of Persian philology—comprises three volumes; of which the *first* treats of the early history of the Iranian languages, especially the language of the Avesta, Old Persian, and Middle Persian or Pahlawi; the *second* of the literatures of those languages and of Modern Persian, with a special section on the National Epic by Professor Noldeke; and the *third* of the Geography, Ethnography, History (down to modern times), Religion, Coins, and Scripts of Iran.

*2. *Iranisches Namenbuch, von Ferdinand Justi* (Marburg, 1895). An invaluable " Dictionary of National Biography," so far as Persians bearing Iranian (as opposed to Arabic Muhammadan) names are concerned.

3. *Dictionnaire géographique, historique et littéraire de la Perse et des Contrées adjacentes, extrait du Mo'djem el-Bouldan de Yaqout . . . par C. Barbier de Meynard* (Paris, 1861).

*4. *Chronique de Tabari, traduite sur la version persane de Bel'ami . . . , par M. Hermann Zotenberg, 4 vols., Paris, 1867-74.* This book will give the European reader the best idea of Universal History, including the History of Persia, as understood by the early Muhammadan historians.

5. Sir John Malcolm's *History of Persia from the Most Early Period to the Present Time . . .* (2 vols., London, 1815).¹

6. Clement Markham's *General Sketch of the History of Persia* (1 vol., London, 1874).¹

¹ Both these books confuse Legend with History in their accounts of the earlier period, and are more or less obsolete.

*7 Darmesteter's *Etudes Iraniennes* (2 vols., Paris, 1883). The first volume contains *Etudes sur la Grammaire historique de la Langue persane*; the second, *Etudes sur la Langue, la Littérature, les Croyances de la Perse ancienne*.

8. Dr. C. E. Sachau's English translation of al-Biruni's *al-Atharu'l-baqiya, or Chronology of Ancient Nations* (London, 1879), a work of great value and interest, containing an immense amount of varied information.

9. The *Muruju'dh-Dhahab* of -Masaudi, text and French translation in nine vols. (Paris, 1861-1877), entitled *Macoudi: Les Prairies d'Or, texte et traduction par C. Barbier de Meynard et Pavet de Courteille*.

B. ANCIENT HISTORY.

*10. *Eranische Alterthumskunde, von Fr. Spiegel* (3 vols., Leipzig, 1871-1878). This excellent work treats of the History, Religions, and Antiquities of Persia from the earliest times down to the fall of the Sasanian Dynasty.

11. *Geschichte des alten Persiens, von Dr. Ferdinand Justi* (Berlin, 1879). This covers the same period as the work last mentioned, but is smaller and more popular, and contains numerous illustrations and a map.

12. *Aufsätze zur persischen Geschichte, von Th. Noldeke* (Leipzig, 1887). This is essentially an enlarged and revised German version of the article on the Ancient History of Persia (till the end of the Sasanian period) contributed by this great scholar to the ninth edition of the *Encyclopaedia Britannica*.

13. *Le Peuple et la Langue des Medes, par Jules Oppert* (Paris, 1879).

14. G. Rawlinson's *Five Great Monarchies of the Ancient Eastern World, or the History, Geography, and Antiquities of Chaldaea, Assyria, Babylon, Media, and Persia*. The first edition (London, 1862) comprises four, the second (1871) three volumes, and the two last volumes in both cases deal with Media and [Achaemenian] Persia.

15. G. Rawlinson's *Sixth Great Oriental Monarchy, or the Geography, History, and Antiquities of Parthia* (London, 1873).

16. G. Rawlinson's *Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy, or the Geography, &c, of the 435*

sasanian or New Persian Empire (London, 1876).

17. G. Rawlinson's *Parthia*, in the *Story of the Nations Series* (London, 1893).

*18. Professor Th. Noldeke's *Geschichte der Perser und Araber zu? Zeit der Sasaniden, aus der arabischen Chronik des Tabari ubersetzt, und mit ausfuhrlichen Erlciuterungen und Erglinzungen versehen* (Leyden, 1879). This is by far the best work on the Sasanian Period.

19. Professor Thomas Hyde's *Veterum Persarum et Parthorum et Medorum Religionis Historia* (first ed., Oxford, 1700; second edition, 1760). Though obsolete, this work is still interesting and suggestive.

20. W. Geiger's *Ostiranische Kultur im Altertum* (1882); English translation of the same by Darab Dastur Peshotan Sanjana: *Civilization of the Eastern Iranians in Ancient Times* (London, 1885).

C. ANCIENT PHILOLOGY.

(a) OLD PERSIAN.

21. F. Stolze's *Persepolis* (Berlin, 1882), with an Introduction by Noldeke, and many beautiful photographs of the ruins and inscriptions.

22. M. Dieulafoy : *L'Art antique de la Perse* (Paris, 1884).

*23. Fr. Spiegel: *Die Altpersischen Keilinschriften im Grundtexte, mit Uebersetzung, Grammatik und Glossar* (Leipzig, 1862 : second and enlarged edition, 1881).

*24. Dr. C. Kossowicz : *Inscnptiones Palao-Persicce Achaiment-darum* (St. Petersburg, 1872). The Inscriptions are here printed in the appropriate Cuneiform type.

(6) AVESTA.

25. Eugene Burnouf : *Vendidad Sadi, Vun des hvres de Zoroastre, lithographie dapres le Manuscrit Zend de la Bibliotheque Royale . . .* (Paris, 1829-1843).

26. H. Brockhaus : *Vendidad sade, die heihgen Schriften Zoroaster's Yacna, Vispered und Vendidad, nach den lithographirten Ausgaben von*

Paris und Bombay, mit Index und Glossar herausgegeben (Leipzig, 1850).

27. N. L. Westergaard : *Zendavesta . . . vol. i, the Zend texts* (Copenhagen, 1852-54).

28. Fr. Spiegel: *Avesta . . . im Grundtexte sammt der Huz-vUresch-Uebersetzung* (2 vols., Vienna, 1853-58).

29. K. F. Geldner : *Avesta . . .* (3 parts, Stuttgart, 1886-95).

30. Mills and Darmesteter's English translation of the **Zend Avesta** in vols, iv, xxiii, and xxxi of Professor Max Muller's *Sacred Books of the East* (Oxford, 1877, 1880, 1883, and second ed. of vol. iv in 1895).

*31. Darmesteter: *Le Zend Avesta : traduction nouvelle avec commentaire historique et philologique* (3 vols., Paris, 1892-93 : vols, xxi, xxii, and xxiv of the *Annales du Musee Guimet*).

32. C. de Harlez : *Avesta , , . traduit du Texte zend* (3 vols., Liege, 1875-1877; second edition, Paris, 1881).

33. Fr. Spiegel: *Avesta . . . uebersetzt* (3 vols., Leipzig, 1852-63). There is an English translation of this by A. Bleek (Hertford, 1864).

34. L. H. Mills : *A Study of the Five Zoroastrian Gathas* (Erlangen, 1894).

35. Ferdinand Justi : *Handbuch der Zendsprache* (Leipzig, 1864).

*36. C. de Harlez : *Manuel de la Langue de l'Avesta* (Paris, 1882).

37. A. V. W. Jackson : *An Avesta Grammar . . .* (Stuttgart, 1892); *Idem, An Avesta Reader* (1893).

38. Fr. Spiegel: *Grammatik der albaktrischen Sprache* (Leipzig, 1867).

(c) PAHLAWI AND ITS CONNECTION WITH MODERN PERSIA.

*39. Martin Hang's *Introductory Essay on the Pahlavi Language* (pp. 152), prefixed to Dastur Hoshangji Jamaspji Asa's *Old Pahlavi-Pazand Glossary* (Bombay and London, 1870).

40. C. de Harlez: *Manuel du Pehlevi des livres religieux et historiques de la Perse: Grammaire, Anihologie, Lexique* (Paris, 1880).

*41. C. Salemann, *Mittelpersische Studien in the Bulletins de l'Acad, de St. Petersbourg* for 1887, pp. 417, et seqq = *Melanges Asiatiques*, vol. ix, pp. 207 et seqq. Also the same scholar's article *Mittelpersisch* in vol. i of Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss*, pp. 249-332.

*42. West, Haug, and Dastur Hoshangji Jamaspji Asa : *The Book of Arda Viraf: Pahlavi text . . . with an English translation and Introduction . .* (Bombay and London, 1872); *Glossary and Index of the same* (1874).

43. West: *The Mainyo-i-Khard* (or " Spirit of Wisdom ") *Pazand and Sanskrit Texts (in Roman characters) . . . with an English translation. . . Sketch of Pazand Grammar and Introduction* (Stuttgart and London, 1871).

*44. F. C. Andreas: *Pahlavi text of the above, a facsimile of a MS. brought from Persia by Westergaard and preserved at Copenhagen* (Kiel, 1882).

45. Prof. Th. Noldeke : *Persische Studien I and II* in vols, cxvi and cxxvi of the *Sitzb. d. K. Ak. d. Wissenschaften in Wien, phil.-hist. Class.* (Vienna, 1888 and 1892).

46. A. Barthelemy: *Gujastak Abalish, relation dune Conference thhlogique presided par le Calife Mamoun: texte pehlvi . . . avec traduction, commentaire et lexique* (Paris, 1887).

47. P. Horn : *Grundriss der Neupersischen Etymologie* (Strassburg, 1893).

48. H. Hubschmann : *Persische Studien* (Strassburg, 1895). Idem, *Armenische Grammatik* (Leipzig, 1897).

49. Paul de Lagarde : *Persische Studien* (Gottingen, 1884).

50. Fr Spiegel: *Gramm. der Parsisprache nebst Sprachproben* (Leipzig, 1851). Idem, *Die Traditionelle Literatur der Parsen in ihrem Zusammenhange mit den angrdnzenden Literaturen* (Vienna, 1860).

*51. E. W. West: *On the extent, language, and age of Pahlavi literature*, in the *Sitzb. d. philos-philol. Classe der K. Akad. d. Wissenschaften vom 5 Mai, 1888* (pp. 396-443 : Berlin).

D. PRE-MUHAMMADAN RELIGIOUS SYSTEMS.

(a) ZOROASTRIANISM.

*52. Professor A. V. Williams Jackson : *Zoroaster, the Prophet of Ancient Iran* (New York, 1899). The reader's attention is again especially called to the excellent *List of Works connected with the Subject*, which occupies pp. xi-xv of this admirable work.

53. A. Hovelacque: *L'Avesta, Zoroastre et le Mazdisme* (Paris, 1880).

54. E. W. West: *Pahlavi Texts translated*, in vols, v, xviii, xxiv, xxxvii and xlvii of the *Sacred Books of the East*.

55. Professor C. P. Tiele : *Geschichte der Religion im Altertum bis auf Alexander den Grossen: deutsche autorisierte Ausgabe von G. Gehrich: vol. xi; Die Religion bei den iranischen Völkern: erste Hälfte*, pp. 1-187 (Gotha, 1898).

56. John Wilson : *The Parsi Religion as contained in the Zand-Avasta* (Bombay, 1843).

57. Martin Haug : *Essays on the Parsis*, 3rd ed., edited and enlarged by E. W. West (London, 1884).

58. Dosabhai Framji Karaka : *History of the Parsis* (2 vols., London, 1884).

59. Mademoiselle D. Menant: *Les Parsis, Histoire des Communautés Zoroastriennes de l'Inde: Annales du Musée Guimet, Bibliothèque d'Etudes*, vol. vii (Paris, 1898).

60. A. Houtum-Schindler : *Die Parsen in Persien, ihre Sprache und einige ihrer Gebräuche*, in vol. xxxvi (1882 : pp. 54-88) of the *Zeitschrift d. deutsch. Morgenl. Gesellsch.*

(b) CHRISTIANS UNDER SASANIAN RULE.

*61. Georg Hoffmann : *Auszüge aus Syrischen Akten persischer Märtyrer . . .* (Leipzig, 1880).

62. Dr. W. Wright: *The Chronicle of Joshua the Stylite, composed in Syriac, A.D. 507, with a translation and notes* (Cambridge, 1882).

(c) MANICHAEANS, BARDESANIANS, AND SABAEANS.

*63 Gustav Flugel: *Mani, seine Lehre und seine Schriften* (Leipzig, 1862).

64. Dr. Konrad Kessler : *Mani: Forschungen über die Manichäische Religion* (Berlin, 1889).

65. Professor A. A. Bevan : *The Hymn of the Soul, contained in the Syriac Acts of St. Thomas: re-edited with an English translation . . .* (Cambridge, 1897). Also the same *Hymn of Bardaisan* rendered (more freely) into English, by F. C. Burkitt (London, Essex House Press, 1899).

*66. Dr. D. Chwolson: *Die Ssabier und Ssabismus* (2 vols., St. Petersburg, 1856).

67, E. Rochat: *Mani et sa Doctrine* (Geneva, 1897).

E. THE PERSIAN EPIC AND NATIONAL LEGEND.

*68. Professor Th. Noldeke: *Das Iranische Nationalepos; besonderer Abdruck aus dem Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie* (Strassburg, 1896).

69. Fr. Windischmann : *Zoroastrische Studien : Abhandlungen zur Mythologie und Sagengeschichte des alten Iran* (edited by Fr. Spiegel: Berlin, 1863).

*70. The *Shahnama* of Firdawsi. There are three editions by Europeans; that of *Turner Macan (4 vols., Calcutta, 1829); that of *Jules Mohl (7 large folio vols., Paris, 1838-78), which is accompanied by a French translation and commentary; and that of Viillers and Landauer (3 vols., Leyden, 1877-84). The last is incomplete, being only carried down to Alexander, and omitting the whole Sassanian period. Mohl's translation has also been published without the text by Madame Mohl (7 vols., Paris, 1876-78). There is also a German translation by Riickert (edited by Bayer, 3 vols., Berlin, 1890-95). Of abridged translations, mention may be made of A. F. von Schack's *Heldensagen des Firdusi, in deutscher Nachbildung nebst einer Einleitung* (Stuttgart, 1877), and of the English abridgments of J. Atkinson and Helen Zimmermann.

*71. Noldeke : *Gesch. des Artachshir-i-Papakan, aus dem Pehlewi übersetzt* (Gottingen, 1879).

72. Darab Dastur Peshotan Sanjana : *The Karname-i-Artakhshir-i-Papakan . . . Pahlavi text with transliteration . . . translations into English and Gujarati, &c.* (Bombay, 1896).

*73. W. Geiger : *Das Yatkari-Zariran und sein Verhältniss zum Shah-name in the Sitzb. d. philos. philol. und histor. Cl. d. K. bayer. Ak. d. Wiss. for 1890, vol. ii, part i, pp. 43-84* (Munich, 1890). The Pahlavi text of this was published (Bombay, 1897), by Jamaspji Dastur Minocheherji Jamasp Asana, and translations into English and Gujarati (Bombay, 1899) by Jivanji Jamshedji Modi.

74. *The Desatir, or Sacred Writings of the Ancient Persian Prophets, &c.*, published by Mulla Firuz bin Kaus, with an English translation, in 2 vols. (Bombay, 1818).

75. *The Dabistan . . . translated from the original Persian* by Shea and Troyer (3 vols., Paris, 1843).

*76. *Histoire des Rois de Perse par . . . al-Tha'dlibi / texte arabe, publie et traduit par H. Zotenberg* (1 large folio vol., Paris, 1900).

F. MUHAMMAD, THE QUR'AN AND THE CALIPHATE.

*77. Ibn Hisham's (the oldest extant) Biography of the Prophet Muhammad (*Siraiu'n-Nabi*), edited in the original Arabic by F. Wustenfeld (Gottingen, 1858-60); translated into German (*Das Leben Muhammeds . . .* : Stuttgart, 1864) by Gustav Weil.

*78. The Qur'an (Coran, Alcoran): editions by Flugel, Redslob, &c.; English translations by G. Sale (1774, and numerous later editions), J. M. Rodwell (2nd ed., London, 1876), and Professor E. H. Palmer in vols. vi and ix of the *Sacred Books of the East*; French by Kazimirski (Paris, 1854) ; German by Ullmann (fourth ed., Bielefeld, 1857); Concordance (Arabic) by Flugel (Leipzig, 1842); Extracts in the original, with English translation, compiled by Sir W. Muir (London, 1880). *Noldeke's *Geschichte des Qordns* is invaluable (Gottingen, 1860). A useful little book for the general reader on *The Coran* was published by the Society for promoting Christian Knowledge.

79. Sprenger's *Leben und Lehre Mohamtneds* (3 vols., Berlin, 1869).

*80. Wellhausen's *Muhammed in Medina* ; an abridged translation of al-Waqidi's *Kitabu'l-Maghazi* (Berlin, 1882).

*81. Noldeke's *Das Leben Muhammeds, nach den Quellen popular dargestellt* (Hannover, 1863).

82. Sir William Muir. *Life of Mahomet and History of Islam* (4 vols., London, 1858-61; 3rd ed., 1895).

83. Idem, *Annals of the Early Caliphate* (London, 1883).

*84. Idem, *The Caliphate, its Rise, Decline, and Fall* (2nd ed., London, 1892).

85. Ludolf Krehl: *Das Leben und die Lehre des Muhammed* (Leipzig, 1884).

*86. Gustav Weil: *Geschichte der Chalifen* (4 vols., Mannheim and Stuttgart, 1846-62 : vol. iv, which is divided into 2 parts, treats of the 'Abbasid Caliphate in Egypt after the Mongol Invasion).

*87. Syed Ameer Ali : *The Life and Teachings of Mohammed and the Spirit of Islam* (London, 1891); Idem, *A Critical Examination of the Life and Teachings of Mohammed*, published some eighteen years earlier.

88. G. Flugel: *Geschichte der Araber bis auf den Sturz des Chalifats von Bagdad* (2nd ed., Leipzig, 1864).

89. G. Weil: *Geschichte der islamitischen Volker von Mohammed bis zur Zeit des Sultan Selim ubersichtlich dargestellt* (Stuttgart, 1866).

G. ISLAM, ITS SECTS AND ITS CIVILISATION.

*90. Dozy : *Het Islamisme* (Leyden, 1863 : Haarlem, 1880); French translation of the same by Victor Chauvin, entitled, *Essai sur l'Histoire de l'Islamisme* (Leyden-Paris, 1879).

*91. Alfred von Kremer : *Geschichte der herrschenden Ideen des Islams; der Gottesbegriff, die Prophetie und Staatsidee* (Leipzig, 1868).

*92. Idem, *Cultergeschichtliche Streifziige auf dem Gebiete des Islams* (Leipzig, 1873).

*93. Idem, *Culturgeschichte des Orients unter den Chalifen* (2 vols., Vienna, 1875-77).

*94. Dr. Ignaz Goldziher: *Muhammedanische Studien* (2 vols., Halle, 1889-90).

*95. T. W. Arnold : *The Preaching of Islam, a History of the Propagation of the Muslim Faith* (London, 1896).

*96. Shahrastani's *Kitabu'l-Milal wa'n-Nihal*, or Book of Religious and Philosophical Sects, edited by W. Cureton (London, 1846); translated into German, with Notes, by Th. Haarbrucker (Halle, 1850-51).

*97. Ibn Khaldun's *Prolegomena* (or *Muqaddamdt*) to his great history. Complete ed. in 7 vols. (Bulaq, A.H. 1284); separate ed. of the *Prolegomena* (Beyrout, 1879); text and French translation of the *Prolegomena* (the former edited by Quatremere the latter by MacGuckin de Slane) in vols. xvi-xxi of *Notices et Extraits des Manuscrits de la Bibliotheque Nationals*

*98. T. P. Hughes : *Notes on Muhammadanism* (London, 1877 and 1878); Idem, *A Dictionary of Islam, being a Cycloptdia of the Doctrines, Rites, Ceremonies and Customs, together with the technical and theological terms, of the Muhammadan Religion* (2nd ed., London, 1896).

*99. H. Steiner : *Die Mu'taziliten oder die Freidenker im Islam, and Die Mu'taziliten als Vorlaufer der islamischen Dogmatiker und Philosophen* . . ., both published in Leipzig in 1865.

*100. Brunnow : *Die Charidschiten* . . . (Leyden, 1884).

101. W. Spitta: *Zur Geschichie Abu'l-Hasan al-Ash'ari's* (Leipzig, 1876).

102. Goldziher : *Die Schule der Zahiriten, ihr Ursprung, thr System und litre Geschichie* (Leipzig, 1884).

103. S. Guyard : *Fragments relatifs a la Doctrine des Ismailis* . . . avec traduction et notes (Paris, 1874); Idem, *Un grand Maitre des Assassins* (extrait du Journal Asiatique, Paris, 1877).

*104. S. de Sacy : *Expose de la Religion des Druzes* (Paris, 1838: 2 vols.).

105. Von Hammer : *Histoire de l'Ordre des Assassins . . . traduit de l'allemand . . . par J. J. Hellert et P. A. de la Nourais* (Paris, 1833).

106. Tholuck's *Ssufismus, sive Theosophia Persarum Pantheistica* (Berlin, 1821); Idem, *Bliithensamtnlung aus der Morgenlndischen Mystik* (Berlin, 1825).

*107. Dr. Fr. Dieterici: *Die Philosophic der Araber im ix u. x Jahr. n. Chr., aus der Theologie des Aristoteles, den Abhandlungen Alfarabis und den Schriften der lantern Brilder . . . 16 Bucher* (Berlin, Leipzig, Leyden, 1858-94).

108. Professor de Goeje : *Mimoires sur les Carmathes du Bahrain et les Fatimides* (Leyden, 1886).

H. BIOGRAPHY, BIBLIOGRAPHY, LITERARY HISTORY, RHETORIC, ETC.

*109). Ibn Khallikan's *Wafayatu'l-A'yan*, Biographical Dictionary of eminent and famous Muslims : Arabic text, edited by Wustenfeld (Göttingen, 1837; 2 vols.); English translation, with Notes, by the Baron MacGuckin de Slane (4 vols., Paris and London, 1842-71).

*110. Hajji Khalfa (Khalifa)'s *Bibliographical Dictionary, the Kashfu dh-Dhunun 'an Asami'l-Kutub wa'l-Funiln*, Arabic text with Latin translation, by Gustav Flügel (7 vols., Leipzig, 1835-58). This work is indispensable for the identification of Muhammadan books, and as the author died as late as A.D. 1658, it includes all but the most modern Arabic, Persian, and Turkish literature. Flügel's edition contains full and excellent Indices.

*111. Carl Brockelmann's *Geschichte der Arabischen Litteratur* (vol. i, 1897-98; vol. ii, part 1, 1899 : Weimar). Not to be confounded with this is a more popular work by the same author and bearing the same title, which forms half of vol. vi of a series now in process of publication at Leipzig (C. F. Amelangs Verlag) entitled *Die Literaturen des Ostens in Einzeldarstellungen*. The other half of this volume (published in 1901) is formed by—

*112. Dr. Paul Horn's *Geschichte der Persischen Literatur*.

113. Pizzi, besides his *Manuale della lingua persiana* (1883), has published (in Italian) an excellent little sketch of Persian Literature from the earliest times.

114. Professor Th. Noldeke : *Beitrdge zur Kenntniss der Poesie det alien Araber* (Hannover, 1864).

*115. F. Wustenfeld: *Die Geschichtschreiber der Arabet und ihre Werke* (Gottingen, 1882).

116. I. Guidi: *Tables alphabittques du Kitdbu'l-Aghdni, comprenant (i) Index des poetes dont le " Kitab " cite des vers ; (ii) Index des rimes; (iii) Index hisiorique; (iv) Index gSographique; rtdigees avec la collaboration de MM. R. E. Brunnnow, S. Fraenkel, H. D. Van Gelder, W. Guirgass, E. Helouis, H. G. Kleyn, Er. Seybold et G. Van Vloien.* (Leyden, 1895-1900). One large, stout volume of 769 + xi pp., invaluable for such as can use the vast stores of verse and anecdote contained in the 20 volumes of the great Arabic anthology to which it forms the guide and key.

117. Darmesteter : *Les origines de la Poesie persane* (Paris, 1887).

*118. Ethe: numerous monographs on the early Persian poets (see n. 2 on p. 452 *supra*, but this list is by no means complete); article on Persian Literature in the ninth edition of the *Encyclopcedia Britannica*; and *article in vol. ii (pp 212-368) of Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss* (No. 1 *supra*).

119. Sir Gore Ouseley's *Biographical Notices of Persian Poets* (London, 1846). An entertaining and instructive, though in some respects obsolete, book.

120. A. de Biberstein Kazimirski's *Introduction to his Diwan of Minuchihri* (" Menoutchehri"), Paris, 1886.

*121. F. Wustenfeld : *Die Academien der Araber und ihre Lehrer* (Gottingen, 1837); *Geschichte der Arabischen Aerzte und Naturforscher* (1840).

*122. Francis Gladwin : *Dissertations on the Rhetoric, Prosody, and Rhyme of the Persians* (Calcutta : reprinted in London, 1801).

*123. H. Blochmann : *The Prosody of the Persians* (Calcutta, 1872).

*124. Friedrich Ruckert: *Grammatik, Poetik, und Rhetorik det Perser ... neu herausgegeben von W. Pertsch* (Gotha, 1874).

125. CI. Huart's French translation (Paris, 1875) of the *Anisu'l*

'*Ushshaq* (" Lover's Companion") of Sharafu'd-Din Rami is a valuable guide to Persian lyric verse.

126. Th. Noldeke: *Sketches from Eastern History*, translated by John Sutherland Black (London and Edinburgh, 1892).

*127. Wustenfeld's *Vergleichungs-Tabellen der Muhammedanischen und Christlichen Zeitrechnung* (Leipzig, 1854), with Supplement (*Fortsetzung*) by Dr. Ed. Mahler (Leipzig, 1887) continuing the reckoning from A.H. 1300 (A.D. 1883), where Wiistenfeld concluded his tables, to A.H. 1500 (A.D. 2077). This book is indispensable for all who have occasion to convert Muhammadan into Christian dates, or *vice versa*.

I. ARABIC AND MODERN PERSIAN LANGUAGES.

As before said, Arabic and Persian works which have not been translated into some European language are excluded from the above list, since their inclusion would have greatly increased the size of the Bibliography without advantage to the majority of readers, who are ignorant of these languages. Some readers of this class may, perhaps, desire to begin the study of one or both of these languages, and for their benefit I will add a few words as to suitable grammars, dictionaries, and other text-books; a subject on which I constantly receive inquiries, even from complete strangers.

Excellent small grammars of both languages are included in the *Porta Linguarum Orientalium* Series published by H. Reuther (Carlsruhe and Leipzig). All the volumes in this series are originally in German, but some (including the *Arabic Grammar* of Socin) exist also in English. The *Persian Grammar*, by Salemann and Zhukovski (1889), is only published in German. The earlier (1885) edition of Socin's Grammar contains a much better Chrestomathy than the later one, from which the best Arabic extracts were removed to form part of a separate *Arabic Chrestomathy*, by Brunnow (1895) in the same series. The student who wishes to get some idea of Arabic will find the 1885 edition sufficient by itself ; but if he cannot obtain it, and has to be content with the later edition, he must *get* the Chrestomathy as well.

Both of these Grammars, the *Arabic* and the *Persian*, contain excellent Bibliographies of the most important and useful books for students of the respective languages, and it is not necessary for me to repeat here the ample information on this subject which can be found in these small and inexpensive but most meritorious volumes.

For the study of Arabic the best grammar is Wright's (3rd ed., revised by W. Robertson Smith and M. J. de Goeje : 2 vols., Cambridge, 1896-98); Palmer's (London, 1874), though neither so full nor so accurate, is easier and pleasanter reading. Of Dictionaries the only small, inexpensive, and yet fairly complete one is Belot's *Vocabulaire Arabe-Francais a l'usage des Etudiants* (4th ed., Beyrout, 1896 : pp. 1,001 : price about ten shillings). There are also a *Dictionnaire Francais-Arabe* (Beyrout, 1890: pp. 1,609) and a *Cours pratique de la Langue Arabe* (Beyrout, 1896), by the same author. Fuller, larger, and even better, but about four or five times as costly, is A. de Biberstein Kazimirski's *Dictionnaire Arabe-Francais* (2 vols., pp. 1,392 and 1,638 : Paris, 1846-60). Dozy's *Supplement aux Dictionnaires Arabes* (Leyden, 1881 ; 2 vols., pp. 864 and 856) is invaluable for later Arabic writers. Lane's great *Arabic-English Lexicon* (London, 1863 —), is a magnificent torso. There are also Arabic-English Dictionaries by Steingass (London, 1884), and Salmone (London, 1890).

For Persian the number of dictionaries and grammars is legion, but it is much harder to name the best than in the case of Arabic. Persian is so simple a language that almost any decent grammar will serve the purpose, and a really scientific grammar of first-class merit yet remains to be written. In England the grammars of Forbes (4th ed., London, 1869), Mirza Ibrahim (Haileybury and London, 1843 : Fleischer's German version of the same, Leipzig, 1847 and 1875) and Platts (Part i: Accidence : London, 1894) are most used, with Rosen (English translation by Dr. E. Denison Ross) for more colloquial purposes. In French there is the truly admirable work of A. de Biberstein Kazimirski, *Dialogues francais-persans, prechdh dun precis de la Grammaire persane, et suivis d'un Vocabulaire francais-persan* (Paris, 1883), as well as the Grammars of Chodzko (1852 and 1883), Guyard (1880) and Huart (1899), with the *Dialogues persan-français* (1857), and the *Dictionnaire francais-persan* (1885-1887) of J. B. Nicolas. In German, besides the two already mentioned, there is Wahrmund (Giessen, 1875) ; in Italian, Pizzi's *Manuale* (see above, No. 113); and in Latin Vullers' *Grammatica Lingue Persica* (Giessen, 1870), written chiefly from the point of view of the Comparative Philologist.

In English the best small dictionaries (Persian-Engl. and Engl.-Persian) are by E. H. Palmer; larger ones are the Persian-Engl. Dictionary of Steingass (1,539 pp.; London, 1892) and the two English-Persian Dictionaries (a larger and a smaller, London, 1882 and 1889) of Wollaston, who was assisted by Mirza Muhammad Baqir of Bawanat (see p. 390 of this book). Vullers' *Lexicon Persico-*

Latinum Etymologicum (2 large vols., Bonn, 1855-67), though cumbersome and badly arranged, is on the whole indispensable until the student has learned enough Persian to use the native dictionaries (*Burhan-i'Qati*, *Farhang-i-Rashidi*, &c.) from which it is chiefly compiled. As a reading-book nothing on the whole excels the *Gulistan* of Sa'di, of which there are good editions (furnished with full vocabularies) and translations by Eastwick and Platts.

INDEX

In the following Index, where a large number of references occur under one heading, the more important are, as a rule, printed in thicker type. The prefixes *Abu* ("Father of . . ."), *Ibn* ("Son of . . .") are disregarded in the arrangement of Muhammadan names into which they enter: thus, for example, such names as *Abu Tahir* and *Ibn Sina* are to be sought under T and S respectively. A hyphen prefixed to a name indicates that it is properly preceded by the Arabic definite article *al-*; the letter *b*, between two names stands for *ibn*, "son of . . ." Names of books, both Oriental and European, are printed in italics, and an asterisk is prefixed to those from which citations of any considerable length occur in the text. Names of authors and other persons whose words are cited are similarly distinguished.

For typographical reasons it has been found necessary to omit in the Index the accents indicating the long vowels and the dots and dashes distinguishing the hard letters in the Arabic and Persian names and words which it comprises. The correct transliteration of such words must therefore be sought in the text.

- A
 Aaron, 409
 Ababil (birds), 178
 Abalish "the Accursed," 104, 105, 107
 Aban al-Lahiqli, 33a
 Abarsam, 138
 -'Abbas, 195, 214
 'Abbas Efendi, 311
 -'Abbas b. -Ahnaf (poet), 277
 -'Abbas b. *Amr-Ghanawi (general), 354, 402
 -'Abbas b. -Walid (Umayyad prince), 242
 'Abbas of Merv (alleged author of oldest Persian poem), 13, 340, 452
 Abu'l-'Abbas -Saffah, *q v* (first 'Abbasid Caliph), 237, 240, 241, 243, 251, 254, 257
 *Abu'l-'Abbas Fadl b. -'Abbas (Persian poet), 458
 'Abbasid Caliphs, 6, 90, 159, 168, 208, 209, 210, 214, 236-247 (rise to power), 251-253 (character of dynasty), thence onwards *passim*
 'Abdan (Carmathian), 397, 401
 'Abdu'llah b. 'Ali (great-grandson of -'Abbas), 254
 'Abdu'llah b. 'Abdu'l-Muttalib (the Prophet's father), 214
 'Abdu'llah b. 'Arar b. -'As -Zuhri (scholar), 272
 'Abdu'llah (brother of Babak), 329, 330
 'Abdu'llah b. Marwan (Umayyad prince), 244
 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun -Qadah, 393, 394, 396-398, 406-407, 409, 410
 'Abdu'llah b Saba (first to teach Divinity of 'AU), 220
 'Abdu'llah b Sa'id ('Abbasid propagandist), 310
 'Abdu'llah b Shu'ba (officer of Abu Muslim), 309
 'Abdu'llah b. Tahir (Tahirid prince), 12, 278, 330, 335, 346
 'Abdu'llah b Wahb -Rasibi (Kharijite Anti-Caliph), 222
 'Abdu'llah b Zubayr, 228-231
 Abu Abdi'llah (Carmathian *da'i*), 397
 Abu Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Khafif of Shiraz (Sufi), 315
 'Abdu'l-'Aziz (Umayyad), 215
 'Abdu'l-Khahq (Abdul Chalig) "Achundow," 478
 'Abdu'l - Malik (Umayyad Caliph), 103, 206, 215, 228, 230, 238, 263, 273, 283, 317, 318
 'Abdu'l-Malik I (Samanid), 372, 463
 'Abdu'l-Malik II (Samanid), 468
 'Abd Manaf (Qurayshite), 214
 *'Abdu'l-Masih (soothsayer), 173, 182
 'Abdu'l-Muttalib (grandfather of the Prophet), 177, 214
 Ibn 'Abd Rabbihi (historian, of Cordova), 15, 268, 366
 'Abdu'r-Rahman (founder of Umayyad dynasty of Cordova), 215, 245
 'Abdu'r-Rahman b. -Ash'ath Rebellion of —, 234
 'Abdu'r-Rahman b. 'Awf, 195, 202, 388, 450
 'Abdu'r-Rahman b. Harmala -Aslami (traditionist), 273
 'Abd Shams (Qurayshite), 214
 'Abd Zohar (coins of —), 80
 Abel, 14, 162
 Aberystwyth, 452
 Abhar (Persian town), 86
 'Abid b. Shariya of San'a (early Arab writer), 273
 Abraha (Abyssinian King), 175-178
 Abraham, 385, 408, 409, 427; — identified with Zoroaster, 113
 Abtin (father of Feridun), 115
 Abyssinians, 118, 175, 178-181, 186-188
 Achaemenes (= Hakhamanish), 92, 121
 Achremenian dynasty, 4, 8, 7, 11, 18, 19, 24, 28, 30, 38, 37, 39, 56, 60, 65, 67, 70, 78, 82, 88, 90, 94, 96, 103, 121, 127, 151, 212. See also *Old Persian*
Acts of Archelaus, 155
Acts of the Persian Martyrs, 134
 'Ad (ancient tribe), 430
 Adam, 14, 27, 162, 316, 320, 408, 409
 Adam (grandfather of Bayazid of Bistam), 427
 Adams, Sir Thomas—, 41

- Adhar- (Atur-) Farnbag, son of Farrukh-zad, 104, 105
 Adhar Gushasp (Sacred Fire), 139-140
 Adhar pād Mahraspand (Zoroastrian priest), 101
Adabul-Katib (of Ibn Qutayba), 277
 'Adudu'd-Dawla (Buwayhid), 12, 370, 371, 398
 wEschylus, 91
 AEthiopians, 271, 349, 454. See also *Zanj*.
 etiology, Poetical (Husni-taili), 465
 Afarin (minstrel), 18
Afarin-nama (of Abu Shukur), 466
 'Affan (father of the Caliph 'Uthman), 215
 Afghanistan, Afghans, 4, 28, 29
 Afrasiyab, 116
 Africa, 184, 251, 339, 349, 352, 359, 367, 397, 402
 Afrinagan (Zoroastrian doxologies), 101
 Afshin (general), 252, 323, 329-336
 Agathias, 122, 421
Agesilaus (of Xenophon), 91
 Agha Muhammad Khan (Qajar), 207
 Ahasuerus, 20, 480
 *Ahlī of Shiraz (poet), 225
 Ahlu'l-ahwa, 289
 Ahlu'l-'adl wa't-tawhid, 281. See also *Mu'tazilites*
 Ahlu's-suffa, 297
 Ahmad b. Abi Du'ad (one of Afshin's judges), 331, 335, 336
 Ahmad b. Hanbal (Sunnite Imam), 273, 284, 291, 295, 344, 345, 361
 Ahmad b. Isma'il (Samanid), 352, 466
 Ahmad b. Khidrawayh (Sufi), 424
 Ahmad-Khujistani, 355
 Ahmad b. Nasr -Khuza'i (conspirator), 285
 Ahmad (successor of Abdu'l-lah b. Maymun -Qaddah), 397, 409
 *Abu Ahmad b. Abu Bakr -Katib (poet), 465-466
 Ahriman, 35, 52, 56, 114, 146. See also *Anra Matnyush*
 -Ahsa, 403
Ahsanu't-taqasim fi ma'rifati'l-aqalim (of -Muqaddasi), 373
 Ahuna - vairyā (verse of Avesta), 98
 Ahura Mazda, 25, 32, 34, 35, 64, 65, 72, 93, 94, 95, 114, 160: —(name of the planet Jupiter), 461
 Ahwaz, 313, 347, 364, 371, 390
 Airan (= Iran, q.v.), 4
 Airyana (= Airan), 4
 Airyana Vaeja, 25, 35, 36
 'A'isha (wife of Prophet), 214, 217, 343
 'Aja'ibu'l-Hind, 368
 'Ajām, 265, 268. See also *Persian*
 Ajari (name of Manichaeans), 164
 Akasira (plural of Kisra), 127. See *Sasanians*
 Akbar, Emperor of India, 166
 *-*Akhbaru't-tiwal*, 357. See *-Dinawari*
 -Akhhafsh (grammarian), 278
 Akhshunwar (Turkish Khan-qan), 121
 -Akhtal (Arab poet), 280
 Akhu Muhsin, 411
 Akkadian language, 65, 66, 74
 Abu'l-'Ala. See *-Ma'am*
 Albategnius, 363. See *-Bat-tani*
 Albertus Magnus, 40
 Albigenes, 154, 160
 Alchemy, 274, 362, 379, 428, 430
Alchemy of Happiness (of -Ghazzali), 293
 Aleppo, 218, 302, 322, 423
 Alexander "the Great," 5, 21, 37, 60, 79, 91, 96, 97, 106, 111, 118-121, 139, 304, 305
 Alexander Romance, 118, 150
 Alexandria, 366
 Alexandrian School, 96, 97. See *-Neo-Platonism*.
 'Ali b. Abi Talib (cousin of the Prophet and First Imam of the Shi'ites), 98, 130, 133, 189, 194, 203, 210, 212, 214-224, 226-228, 281, 235, 239, 246, 252, 258, 261, 276, 283, 200, 296, 842, 843, 348, 350, 388, 391, 392, 398, 407, 408, 409. See also *Ghulat*, *Shi'ites*.
 'Ali b. -Husayn b. 'Ali. See *Zaynu'l-'Abidin*.
 'Ali Akbar, 131
 'Ali Asghar, 131
 'Ah-Rida. See *Ridajnam-*.
 'Ali b. 'Abbas -Majusi (physician), 375
 'Ali b. 'Abdu'llah b. -'Abbas, 254
 'Ali b. Buwayh, 360. See *'Imadu'd-Dawla*.
 'Ah b. Hamza-Kisa'i (grammarian), 276
 'Ali b. Harun-Shaybani (Samanid poet), 365
 'Ali b. Hisham, 334
 'Ali b. 'Isa (Wazir of -Muqtadir), 360, 429, 434
 'Ali b. Jahm -Sami (poet), 345
 'Ali b. Muhammad -Warzani (leader of Zanj rebellion), 350
 'Ab Mazdak, 247, 328
 Abu 'Ali -Bal'ami, 356, 368, 478
 'Alids ('Alawiyya, descendant* of 'Ali b. Abu Talib), 239. See *Imams*, *Shi'ites*.
 Algharh, 202
 Ibnu'l-'Alaif (poet), 363
 Allah Ta'ala (God), how regarded by heathen Arabs, 190
 Allegorical Interpretation, 285. See *Ta'wil*.
 Alptagin (founder of Ghaznawi dynasty), 372
 Alpuxarras Mountains, 9
 Alvand, Mount—, 63
 Amadana, 20. See *Hamadan*.
 Ameer Ali, Sayyid—, 188
 America, Babum in—, 311
 Amid (Diyar Bakr), 134
 Amin ('Abbasid Caliph), 252, 254, 256
 Aminu Ali Muhammad (title of Abu Muslim, q.v.), 256
 'Amiri, Muhammad b. 'Abdu'r-Rahman— (jurist), 273
 Ibn 'Amir ('Uthman's cousin), 216
 Amir Pazawari (Mazandarani poet), 83
 Amiru'l - Kafirin, -Ma'mun called—, 307
 Amir-i Sa'id (title of Nasr II the Samanid), 365
 Amiru'l Umara (title of Buwayhids), 364, 367
 Ammianus Marcellinus, 66, 75
 Ammonius, 421
 'Amr b. -'As, 218, 219
 'Amr b. Bahr. See *-Jahidh*.
 'Amr b. Layth (Saffarid), 348, 352, 354, 355, 359, 453
 'Amr b. Sa'd, 228
 'Amr b. 'Uthman - Makki (Sufi), 436
 A. M. S (Nusayri Trinity), 203
 Amshaspands, 100, 101, 160
 Anabasis of Xenophon, 91
 Anahita (Nahid, the planet Venus), 95, 461
 "Ana'l-Haqq," 361, 362
 -Andakhudi, Shamsu'd-Din Muhammad (biographer of poets), 448
 Andalusia, 263. See *Cordova*, *Spam*
 Andreas, F. C. —, 70, 78, 82, 106
 Angels, 160
 Angles, 5
 Anglo-Saxon language, 82, 95; teaching of — introduced at Cambridge, 41
 Annihilation in God (= *Fana fi'llah*, q.v.), 443
 Anoshak-rubano. See *Nushirwan*
 Anquetil du Perron, 42, 43, 45-53, 56-58, 61, 62, 67, 97
 Anra Mainyush (= *Ahriman*, q.v.), 35, 52, 56, 99, 114, 160
 Ansab. See *Genealogy*

- Ansar, 313, 215, 230, 231. See **Companions**
- Antioch, 421
- Antiochus, 21
- Anthropomorphism, 310, 311, 314, 315-316, 435
- Anusha-zadh, 136, 168, 18r
- Anushirwan. See **Nushirwan**
- Anwari (Persian poet), 389, 437
- Anwar-i-Suhayli**, 341
- Aogemadaeca, 102
- Aoj- (root), 27
- Apocrypha of Daniel**, 479, 480
- Apollodorus, 21
- Aqaba (in Surra-man-ra'a), 329
- Arab heathenism (= *Jahiliyyat*, qv.), 186-194, 212, 231, 261, 274
- Arabian Nights, 254, 277
- Arabian Science, 204
- Arabic character, 9, 10, 82; Spanish in —, 9
- Arabic language the vehicle of Muslim Science till Mongol Invasion, 340, 377; — in Persia, and Arabic literature produced by Persians, 3, 4, 211, 278, 348, 365, 445-447, 474-477; — preserved in *siyāq* notation in Persia, 67; importance of — for study of Persian, 89, 90; elements of — in Persian, 73; study of — in Europe, 39-41; — reduced to writing by command of Tamshid, 80; translations into — from Pahlawi, 76, 110, 118, 123; — written in Svnac character (Karshuni), 8, 9
- Arabic script, 10, 82
- Arabs, character of —, 180-194, 252, 404, 472; — mentioned in Behistun Inscription, 94; — learn their power, 184; influence of — on Persia, 6, 36, 37, 66; antipathy between — and Persians, 114, 130, 242, 327, 331-332, 334; pride of —, 213, 229; decline of zeal and power of —, 244, 251-252, 342, 345; minor references, 4, 63, 173, 174, 181, 357, 369, 388. See also **Conquest, Arab —, Racial feeling, Subject races, Shu'ubiyya, Mawali**
- Ibnu'l-Arabi, Shaykh Muh-yiyu'd-Din — (Sufi), 419, 420, 438
- Ibnu'l-A'rabi (grammarian), 278
- Arachosia, 35, 94
- Arakadris, 31
- Aramaic, 36, 37, 66, 73, 74, 75, 77, 80, 81, 89. See also **Chaldaean, Syriac**
- Araxes, River —, 25, 35
- Arbil, 33
- Arbitration of Dawmatu'l-Jandal, 219, 221
- Archelaus, Acts of—**, 155
- Arms of Ascent and Descent, 441
- Ardabil, 324, 325
- Ardashir-i-Babakan (founder of Sasanian Dynasty), 9, 58, 70, 97, 103, 108, 112, 117, 119-120, 121, 122, 136-151, 153, 158. See also **Artakshair-i-Papakano**
- Ardashir III (Sasanian), 174, 182
- Ardashir, Dastur —, 47
- Arda Vira', Book of—**, 43, 96, 106, 118, 157
- Ardawan, 136, 137-139, 140-145, 154
- *Arib b. Sa'd of Cordova (historian), 360, 362, 363, 428, 430, 432, 434
- Aries, Sign of —, 114, 259
- 'Arif ("Gnostic"), 424
- 'Arifuz-Zanadiqa, 159
- Aristotle (Aristu, Anstatalis), 39, 40, 119, 277, 286, 293, 305, 381
- Aristotelians, Arabian —, 289
- Ariyaramna (Achaemenian), 63, 92
- Arjasp, 460
- Armegand of Montpellier, 40
- Armenians, 8, 41, 94, 127, 201, 313
- *Arnold, Sir Edwin —, 442
- *Arnold, T. W. —, 202, 206, 207, 212, 448
- Arphaxad (Arfakhshad), 114
- Arrajan, 324, 364
- Arrows, shooting of — to determine site, 152, 153
- Arshama (Achaemenian), 63, 92, 93
- 'Arsh (Throne of God), 427
- Artabanus. See **Ardawan**
- Artai (wind), 143
- Aitakhshatr-i-Papakano, 70, 71, 93, 106, 108, 117, 122, 136-151, 153
- Artaxerxes Longimanus, 117
- Artaxerxes Mnemon, 20, 120
- "Aryan genius," 301
- Aryans (Ariya, Airiya), 4, 29, 33, 56, 80, 90, 94, 114, 419
- Aryat (Abyssinian general), 175, 176
- Arzhang (Artang) of Mani (Manes), 166
- Abu'l-As b. Umayya, 215
- Asad (tribe), 370
- Asad D 'Abdu'llah (Governor of Khurasan), 207, 352
- Asad-Amid, 460
- Asad b. Musa b. Ibrahim, 274
- Asadi (poet), 437; (lexicographer), 86, 450, 457, 474, 478
- Ibn Asakir, 264
- Asal-i-dukhta ("sewn honey," the yellow garments worn by the Guebres), 343
- Asas (term of Isma'ilis), 409, 413
- Ascetics (Zuhhad), 298
- Ashab. See Companions.**
- Ash'ari, Abu Musa —, 219; Abu'l-Hasan —, 212, 283, 285, 286, 291-292, 352, 364, 366
- Ashemaogha (heretic), Mazdak so styled, 169, 171
- Ashghaniyan, Ashkaniyan, 111, 118, 158. See also **Parthians.**
- Ibnu'l-Ashtar (General of -Mukhtar), 238
- 'Askar Mukram (place), 396
- Asma'i (philologist), 277, 350, 357
- Asman (27th day of month), 146
- Asp - i - nawbati ("sentry horse"), 317
- "Ass," Marwan II so called. See **Marwan II**
- Assassins, 54, 172, 311, 392, 395, 396, 408, 424
- Assyrians, 20, 21, 23, 36, 37, 55, 65, 66, 67, 74, 75, 81, 80, 90, 94, 109, 305, 306
- Astarabad, 448
- Astronomy, 289, 304
- Astuyages, 21
- Asura (demon) in Sanskrit = Ahura (God) in Avesta, 34
- 'Ata (name of -Muqanna', qv.), 320
- Abu V Atahiya (poet), 276, 277, 370
- 'Ata - Ghazzal (father of Wasil), 281
- A'tham - Kun (historian), 363
- ***Atharu'l-baqiya (of -Biruni. qv.)**, 154, 469
- ***Atharu'l-bilad (of-Qazwim)**, 15, 157, 257, 319, 324
- Athenaeus, 121
- Athenians, 94
- Athim (= Pers. Baza-gar, "the Sinner"), 135- See **Yazdigird I.**
- *Ibnu'l-Athir (historian), 169, 321-323, 360
- Athravan (Fire-priest), 31
- Atropatene, 19, 25, 28, 29, 30, 36, 78 See also **Azarbayjan**
- *Attar, Shaykh Faridu'd-Din — (poet and mystic), 394, 299, 361, 362, 389, 416, 424-428, 436, 437, 444
- Augustine, St. —, 155
- Averroes (Ibn Rushd), 40, 288-289, 294, 381
- Avesta, 4, 22-31, 84, 37, 42-44, 50, 83, 88-89, 63, 67-70, 88, 91, 98-102, 108, 108, 111-115, 118, 120, 143, 169, 206, 301; — meaning of term, 78; — identified with Abraham's Revealed Book (Suhuf), 113

- Avestic language (so-called "Zend" or "Old Bactrian"), 27, 39, 43, 44, 60, 62, 67, 78, 81, 89
- Avicenna (Ibn Sina), 40, 288, 289, 293, 368, 372, 375-381, 47c
- *Awfi, Muhammad — (author of *Lubabu'l-Albab* and *Jawami'u'l-hikayat*), 13, 15, 262, 283, 340, 449, 450, 452-455, 464, 403, 466, 468, 470, 471
- Awhadu'd-Din Kirmani (poet), 420
- Abu 'Awn, 245
- 'Ayn b. Ayn b. 'Ayn, 241
- 'Aynu'l-Kamal. See *Evil Eye*.
- Aywan-i-Kisra (Palace of Chosroes), 258
- Ayyam ("days," i.e., notable battles, of the Arabs), 270, 388
- Abu Ayyub-Muriyani, 258
- Az (in Talish dialect — azem, "I" in Avestic), 27
- Azarbayjan (Adharbadhagan), 19, 28, 35, 78, 79, 313, 325, 448. See *Atropatene*.
- Azhi-Dahaka, 114. See *Dahak*.
- Azraqi (historian of Mecca), 345
- Aziz, Abu Mansur Nazar (Fatimid Caliph), 373
- B
- Babak (Papak), the father of Ardashir Babakan (q.v.), 122, 137-142
- Babak (heresiarch), 247, 311, 823-831, 334, 336
- *Baba Tahir (dialect poet), 26, 27, 83
- Ibn Bawayh (Shi'ite divine), 375
- Babbagha (poet), 370
- Babis, 80, 98, 99, 100, 101, 130, 165, 170, 172, 311, 312, 407, 410, 415, 423
- Babylon, Babylonia, 21, 04, 128, 154, 158, 163, 164, 282, 301, 305, 306, 357
- Bacon, Roger —, 40
- Bactria, 4, 25, 38 — 31, 34, 35, 78, 94, 95
- Bada (heretical tenet), 311
- Badaraya, 158
- Badghis, 309, 317, 346, 452
- Badhan (Persian satrap of -Yaman), 181, 183
- Badhdh, Mountain of —, 325, 326
- Badl', Abu Muhammad — of Balkh, 467
- Badi'u'z-Zaman -Hamadhani, 463, 464
- Badr, Battle of —, 216
- Bagayadish (Old Persian month), 32
- Baghdad, 6, 163, 164, 197-198, 209, 210, 254, 258, 259, 274, 286, 289, 292, 293, 295, 300, 307, 396, 317, 329, 339-342, 346, 353, 356, 358-361, 364, 367, 377, 398, 402, 434, 446, 465, 466, 474
- Baghir (Turkish general), 342
- Baharistan* (of Jami), 417, 425, 456
- Baha'uliah, 311
- Bahlabad (minstrel of Khusraw Parwiz). See *Barbad*
- Bahman, 97, 117, 118, 137, 142. See also *Vohumano*
- Bahman Yasht*, 169
- Bahram I. (Sasanian), 154, 157-159, 163
- Bahram II. (Sasanian), 154
- Bahram V. (Sasanian), called "GUR," "the Wild Ass," 12, 262, 364
- Bahram Chubin, 109, 129, 181, 267, 352
- Bahrain, 201, 344, 402
- Balahbad. See *Barbad*
- Bakan Yasht*, 98
- Bakharzi, -Husayn b. 'Ali (biographer of poets), 358, 448
- Bakhtiyari dialect, 87
- Boko Yasht*, 97
- Abu Bakr (Caliph), 194, 195, 205, 209, 210, 214, 217, 330, 343, 391, 437
- Bakuratu's* - *Sulaytnaniyya*, 203
- Bakusaya (in Babylonia), 158
- Ba'labakk (Baalbeck), 278, 306
- Baladhuri (historian), 110, 152, 197, 199, 201, 202, 203, 208, 261, 263, 268, 323, 857
- Balaghatur's-sab'a* (Isma'ili book), 401
- Bal'ami, Abul-Fadl —, 356; Abu 'Ali — (son of the preceding), 11, no, 356, 868-869, 455, 478
- Balfour of Burleigh, 221
- Balkatagin b. Alptagin, 372
- Balkh, 4, 35, 36, 163, 207, 244, 252, 257, 315, 347, 348, 354, 425. See also *Bactria*
- Balkhi, Abu Zayd — (geographer), 315, 368, 372
- Ballad poetry, 16, 17, 18
- Baluchistan, 4, 83
- Bamdadh (father of Mazdak, q.v.), 169
- Bang, W. —, 64
- Banu'l-Ahrar (Persian settlers in -Yaman), 181, 262
- Barbad (minstrel and poet of Khusraw Parwiz), 14-18
- Barbier de Meynard, 132, 365, 368, 447
- Bardanes, 160
- Bardasians, 382, 387, 415
- Bardiya (Smerdes), 31, 32
- Barfaryad, 162
- Bar Hebraeus (Abul-Faraj), 322, 323
- Barmak (ancestor of *Barmecides*, q.v.), 257, 258
- Barmecides, 164, 252, 254, 257, 258, 276, 342
- Barsom, 52
- Barthelemy, Paul de St. —, 59
- Barthelemy, 107
- Bartholomae, 64
- Barton, Dr. — (of Oxford), 50
- Barzaentes (satrap of Darius), 91
- Bas-faruj = Abu Sufra, 263
- Bashshar b. Burd (poet and sceptic), 267, 276
- Baai'Xeioi* *Qkpai*, 122
- BaoiXuca* *drrfirnxovev-fira*, 122
- Basra, 184, 216, 219, 223, 245, 263, 270, 289, 296, 302, 349, 358, 359, 878, 885, 396, 402
- Batinis, 311, 407, 414, 422. See *Isma'ilis*, *Carnathians*, *Sect of the Swen*, &c.
- Battani, Muhammad b. Jabir b. Sinan (Albategnius), 363
- Baur, 155, 191
- Bayabak (Turkish officer), 342
- Bayan (of Babis), 101
- Bayazid of Bistam (Sufi), 352, 426-428
- Bayda (= Dizm-i-sapid, "the White Castle," in Fars), 434
- Bayhaq, 355
- Bayhaqi (historian of Ghaznawi Dynasty), 331
- Bayhaqi (author of *Kitabu'l Mahasin*, q.v.), 15, 18
- Baynun (castle in -Yaman), 175
- Baysunghar, 122
- Baytu'l-iilikma ("House of Wisdom" of the Caliph -Ma'mun), 306
- Baza-gar (= -Athim, "the Sinner," a term applied to *Yazdgird I*, q.v.), 135, 166
- Bazanes (Bishop), 172
- Beatific Vision, 285, 287, 361
- Beausobre, 155
- Bedouin, 271. See *Arabs*.
- Beer, 64
- Behbahan, 87
- Behistun (Bagastana, Bi-situn), 5, 31, 63, 66, 70, 78, 92, 93
- Bel, 10
- Benfey, Prof. —, 9, 68
- Berbers, 397
- Beresine, 27, 83
- Berlin Library, 262, 449, 45a, 464
- Bermann, 153
- Berosus, 21
- Bessus (satrap of Darius), 91
- Bevan, Prof. A. A. —, 159, 160, 165
- Bibi Shahrbanu. See *Shahrbanu*
- Bible, 37

- Bibliothèque du Roi, — Nationale (Paris), 45, 67, 374, 479
- Bighan, 20
- Bih-afaridh (Persian heresiarch), 308-310, 323
- Bihishtī (title of apocryphal king), 480
- Bihzād (father of -Sirāfi), 372
- Bilal-abadh, 324, 325
- Bilqis (Queen of Sheba), 175, 385
- Bindu'e (uncle of Khusraw Parwiz), 181
- Biographies of Persian Poets. See -*Andakhudi*, -*Awft*, -*Bakharzi*, *Chahar-Maqala*, *Dawlatshah*, -*Tha'alibi*, *Tabaqat*, *Tadhkira*, *Yatimatul d-Dahr*
- Birkul-Jumad, 272
- *-Biruru Abu Rayhan (historian and astronomer), 110, 123, 136, 154, 155, 188-189, 169, 247, 259, 268, 270, 308-309, 313, 318-319, 352, 359, 371, 419, 489, 475
- Bishr (disciple of Husayn b. Mansur -Hallaj, q.v.), 431
- Bishrb. -Harith, 424
- Bi-situn, 5. See also *Behistun*, *Old Persian Inscriptions*
- Bismi'llah, Analogy between — and Ahuna vairya formula, 98
- Bisra (meat) read as "gusht" in Pahlawi, 66, 76
- Bistam (uncle of Khusraw Parwiz), 181
- Bistam (town in Persia), 427
- Bit Dayaukku, 21
- Biward (Abiward), 242
- Black, J. Sutherland —, 347
- Black, colour of 'Abbasids, 242, 243, 244, 310
- Black Stone, 359, 367, 403, 404
- Bland, Nathaniel —, 13, 449, 451
- Blochmann, 389, 473
- Blowing on knots as magic rite, 306
- Bodleian Library, 41, 42, 44, 45
- Bogha ("the Bull," Turkish name), 342
- Bokht ("hath delivered") in Persian names, 145-146
- Bokht Yishu' (physician), 146, 344-345, 367
- Bollensen, 64
- Bologna 40
- Bombay, 48, 103, 206
- Book of Origins* (*Ghayatu'l-wasail ila marfatil-awa'il*), 356, 455
- Book of Nabathxan Agriculture*, 357
- Bopp, 68
- Boswell Smith, 188
- Bourchier (Bowcher), G. 44
- Bovcraiy* 23-24
- Brahmins, 56
- Brandt, Dr. A. J. H. W. —, 302
- "Brethren of Purity." See *Ikhwanu's-Safa*
- Brisson, Barnaby de —, 42
- British Museum Library, 374, 448, 457, 473
- Brockelmann, Carl —, 253, 267, 268, 273, 274, 276, 277, 278, 303-306, 343, 357, 388, 373-374, 375, 378, 383
- Brurmow, 212, 220, 221, 222, 232
- Buddha, Buddhism, 103, 154, 162, 163, 300, 301, 442
- Bugha (or *Bogha*, q.v.), 336, 342
- Buhturi (poet), 357
- Bukhara, 16, 17, 35, 322, 368-366, 368, 468, 475
- Bukhari (Traditionist), 351, 357
- Bundahishn*, 48, 96, 105
- Bundar (or Pindar) of Ray, 85, 86
- Bundari (historian of Seljuqs), 43, 115, 464
- Burjak and Burjatur, 146, 147
- Burjin-Mihr (Sacred Fire), 139
- Burnouf, Eugene —, 63, 67, 68
- Burns, Baba Tahir compared to —, 83
- Bur una (suburb of Herat), 17
- Bushanj, 244
- Bushaq (Abu Ishaq, poet, of Shiraz), 85
- Bushkast (grammarian), 262
- Bust (town), 378, 448
- Bustan of Sa'di, 145, 341, 423
- Buwayb, Battle of —, 6
- Buwayhid Dynasty, 6, 12, 292, 360, 364-368, 367, 370, 372, 374, 373, 376, 398, 446, 483, 468, 466, 474
- Buzurg b. Shahnyar (Persian sea-captain), 368
- Byron, 107
- Byzantines, 127, 151, 167, 168, 174, 179, 181, 182, 185, 206, 224, 302, 305
- Cadmus, 51
- Cain, 162
- Cairo, 295, 367, 399, 400
- Calendar, Zoroastrian — compared with Babi —, 100-101
- Caliphate, Caliph (Khilafat, Khalifa), 209, et seqq. See *Orthodox Caliphs*, *Umayyads*, *'Abbasids*, *Fatimids*
- Calligraphy prized by Manichaeans, 165, 362; — by Husayn b. Mansur-Hallaj, 362, 431
- Calvinism, Effects of —, 286. See *Predestination*
- Cambridge, 41, 183, 356, 446, 449, 464, 477
- Cambyses (Kambujiya), 31, 32, 55, 92
- Camel, Battle of the —, 217
- Camphor mistaken for Salt, 199
- Cappadocia, 94
- Caracalla, Emperor —, 304
- Carmathians (Qarmati, pi. Qaramita), 212, 311, 319, 339, 350, 352, 354, 356, 388-389, 362, 367, 368, 371, 891-418, 423, 434; etymology of title, 397. See also *Fatimid Caliphs*, *Ghulat*, *Isma'ilis*, *Shi'ites*
- Carra de Vaux, 356, 368
- Carrae (Harran, q.v.), 302
- Cashmere, 54
- Caspian Sea, 203, 207, 348, 304, 367
- Caste-system amongst ancient Persians, 114
- Cathares. See *icaOapoi*, *Albigenses*
- Catholics, 168
- Cayumers (properly *Gayumarth*), 55, 56
- "Celestial" as royal epithet in Sasanian times, 153
- Celtic genius, 447
- Chaghani dynasty, 453, 462, 467, 471
- Chahar-bokht ("the Four have delivered," Persian name), 146
- **Chahar-Maqala*, 15, 317, 348, 388, 359, 396, 449, 456, 460, 470
- Chaishpish (Teispes) the Achæmenian, 63, 92
- Chakhra (place mentioned in Vendidad), 35
- Chaldea (Sawad), 132, 205, 302, 382, 397
- Chaldaeian language, 40, 44, 56, 58, 70 (Chaldaeian-Pahlawi), 73, 89, 128, 479
- Changiz Khan, 6, 286. See also *Mongol Invasion*
- Charas of Mitylene, 121
- Chardin, 42, 57, 59
- Charles VI., 153
- Chatrang-namak* ("Book of Chess"), 109
- Chauvin, Victor —, 211. See under *Dozy*
- Chess, 109, no
- Chetak (chedak), 153
- China, 485, 421; — and Manichæism, 159, 164; — and Balkh, 258; visited by Bih-afarid, 308
- Chinese language, 60, 65, 80 j — paper, 431; — painting, 454
- de Chinson, Gabriel —, 4a
- Chinwat Bridge, 106
- Chithratakhma (rebel against Darius), 33
- Chosroes (Khusraw, Kiswa), 127, 128

- Christ.** See *Jesus Christ*.
 Christians under Sasanian rule, 106, 134, 135, 136, 151.
 168; despised by Nushirwan, 136, 181;—Salman the Persian joins the —, 203;—of Najran, 175;—of Abyssinia, 175;—under early Muhammadan rulers, 200, 301, 232, 234, 280;—under -Mutawakkil, 290, 343-344;—under Fatimid Caliphs, 399-400;—native — in India, 264-265;—Syrian — and heathens, 304; Christian names in -*bokht*, 145;—and Muhammadan standards, 188 *mamalahim* (Apocryphal Books), 241;—scholars in Islam, 278, 306, 345, 351.366;—influence on Muhammadan Theology, 288, 311, 426;—child addressed in verse, 454;—minor references, 170, 172, 173, 261, 274, 293, 303, 382, 384
 "Christians of St. John the Baptist," 302 See *Mandecans*, *Mughtasila*, *Sabceans*
 Christianity, 154, 162, 186, 203, 300, 301, 305;—as understood by Sufis, 443
 Chronology falsified, 119, 120
 **Chronology of Ancient Nations* (Biruni's -*Atharn'l-baqiya*, q.v., translated by Sachau), 154
 Churchill, Sidney —, 283
 Chwolson, 303, 304
 Cikathauvatish (fortress in Media), 32
 Circumcision, 333, 335
 "Cities of Iran," (Pahlavi book), 109
 Classics, 37
 "Clients," See *Mawali*
 Clement V., Pope —, 40
 Cobbe, Richard —, 44
 Coinage, Arabic — first used, 230
 Coins, Pahlavi —, 8, 71
 College de France, 40, 41
 Colourlessness, World of —, 440, 441
 "Column of Praise" of Manichaeans, 161
 "Commander of the Unfaithful," -*Ma munso* called, 307
Commentary, Old Persian — (Cambridge Codex), 12, 477
 Communism, 170. See *Mazdak*.
 "Companions" (Ashab), 228, 231, 271, 208, 349
 Conquest, Arab — of Persia, 3, 4, 6, 8, 30, 90, 109, 114, 136, 163, 173-174, 181, 185-208, 212, 275; Greek — of Persia, 5; see also Alexander the Great; Norman — of England, 95, 479
 Constantine, Emperor —, 185
 Constantinople libraries, 383
 Continuity of National History, 89
 Conversions to Islam, how effected, 202, 203, 207
 Converts to Islam, 207, 233-235, 246, 252, 352, 367
 Coppersmith See *Saffarid Dynasty*, *Ya'qub b. tayth*, *'Amr b. Layth*
 Cordova, 245, 279, 366, 398
 "Counting the Stars," 462
 de Courteille, Pavet —, 368
 Covenanters, Scottish —, 37, 221
 Cow, Chapter of the — (*Suratu'l-baqara*), 191
 Cowell, Professor —, 94, 457
 Crawford and Balcarres, Lord —, 262, 449, 452
 Creasy, Sir Edward —, 209
 Cross, Wood of the True —, 182
 de la Croix, Petits —, 42
 Crusades, 480
 Ctesias, 20, 21, 23, 91, 120
 Ctesiphon, 132, 136, 182, 183, 199, 222, 313, 324
 Cuneiform, Persian —, 7, 43, 44, 56, 59-65, 67, 78, 80, 89, 91-95 See also *Old Persian language*
 Cureton, 169. See *Shahristani*, *Kitabu'l-Milal*
 Curzon, Lord —, 151
 Cyaxares (Huvakhshatara), 21, 33
CyroPadia, 91
 Cyrus, 5, 22, 31, 32, 55, 60, 91, 92, 95, 96, 113, 121
- D
- Dabil (Armenian prince), 201
Dabistan, 54-56, 270
 Daevas (devas), 25, 34, 160
 Dahak (Azhidahaka, Zohak), 114-115, 150
 Da'i (pi. du'at, propagandist), 236, 240, 247, 310, 314, 395-397, 402, 407, 409, 410, 411-415, 434. See also *Da'wa*
 Daitya, The Good — (river, identified with Araxes), 25, 35
 Dakhma ("Tower of Silence"), 48
 Dakn, silks of —, 266
 Damascius (Neo-Platonist philosopher), 421
 Damascus, 210, 219, 224, 233, 245, 280, 282, 283, 342, 445, 480
 Damawand, Mount —, 115
 Dandan (Zaydan), 407
Daniel, Apocrypha of —, 479, 480
Daniel, Book of —, 61
 Danishwar the, dihqan, 122
 Dapir (scribe) 9; Dapirih (secretarial art), 262
 Daqiql (Persian poet), 123, 372, 453, 456, 459-462
 Dara, 117, 118, 119, 139, 140, 461
 Darab, Dastur —, 47, 58
 Abu'd-Darda (traditionist), 272
 Dari (Deri) dialect, 26
 Darius, 5, 31, 32, 33, 61-64, 78, 79, 91-94, 96, 119, 121
 Darmesteter, Professor James —, 18, 22, 24-26, 28, 29, 31, 33, 50, 57-59, 68-70, 78, 81, 95-97, 141, 146, 161, 167, 255, 348, 479, 480
Dasatir (Desatir), 53, 56
 Dastobar (Dastur), 9, 47, 58. See also *Zoroastrian Priests*
 Datik (legal portion of Avesta), 97
Datistan-i-Dinik, 105
 Da'ud b. 'Ali-Dhahin (theologian), 357
 Da'ud b. 'Ali b. Khalaf -Isfahani (jurist), 386
 Da'ud -Ta'i (Sufi), 298, 418, 424
 "Daughter of Desire" (*lbnatu'l-iirs*) in Manichaean system, 162
 David, 113, 440
 Da'wa (Propaganda) of 'Abbasids, 236, 238-247, 410; — of Isma'ilis, 395; Organisation of —, 240
 Dawidar ("Keeper of the Seals"), 197
 Dawlatshah, 12, 14, 15, 16, 346, 347; Sources of —, 447, 449, 456, 470, 473
 Dawmatu'l-Jandal, Arbitration of —, 219, 291
 Dayaukku (Aq'iojeqq), 21
 Daylam, 203, 207, 276, 313, 364, 448, 463. See also *Buwayhtids*
 Dd = nd, 160
 Deioces, 21
 Democracy of Arabs, 130
 Demons, 112, 114. See *Daevas*, *Div-band*, *Jinn*.
 Dervishes, 300; "Dancing" — 438
Destruction of Philosophers (Tahafutu'l - Falastfa) of -Ghazzali, 289
 Devil tempts Dahak, 115; verses ascribed to —, 14. See also *Daevas*, *Demons*
 Devil-worshippers (Yazidis), 304
 Devotees (~*ubbad*), 298
 -Dhahabi (historian), 436
 Dhahiriyya (externalists"), 212, 357, 422
 Dhahir (Zahir) of Faryab, 389
 -Dharifi, Abu Nasr — (Samanid poet), 365
 Dhaqliyya (sect), 311
 Abu Dharr -Ghifan, 217, 288
 Dhu Jadan (iiimyariye poet), 175-176

- Dhu'l-lisanayn (bilingual poets), 453, 465
 Dhu'n-Nun (Sufi), 298, 345, 357, 424
 Dhu Nuwas (poet), 174-176
 Dhu Qar, Battle of —, 6, 184, 186
 Dhu'l-Qarnayn ("the Two-homed"), X19
 Dhu'r-Rumma (poet), 261
 Dhu Shanatir (iiimyarite King), 174
 Dhu'l- Yaminayn ("Ambi-dexter"), 346
 Dialects, Persian —, 26, 27, 43, 83-87, 348, 478, 479
 Drbil (poet), 345
 Dieterici, 292, 293, 294, 364, 369, 379, 380, 381
 Dieulafoy, 64
 Dihistan, 448
 Dih-khuda, 448
 Dihqans, 150, 233, 246, 267, 329
 Diki (digi) in Shapur's inscription, 153
 Diku'l-Jmn (poet), 278, 345
 Dilaram (mistress of Bahram Gur), 12
 Dinawar (town), 313
 *Dinawari (historian), 103, 109, 113, 114, 129, 136, 152, 169, 203, 229, 236, 237, 238, 241, 242, 315, 317, 323, 328, 857
 Dinkard (Pahlawi book), 97, 105, 157
 Diogenes (Neo-Platonist philosopher), 421
Dirakht-i-Asuriq ("Tree of Assyria"), 109
 Diraz-dast, 117, 137, 142. See *Longimanus*,
 Div-band ("Binder of Demons," title of the mythical Persian King Tahmurath), 80, 112
 Divine Right, Theory of — in Persia, 128-130, 391
 Diwans, Organisation of the —, 204-205
 Diyar Bakr, 134
 Dizh-i-sapid (= -Bayda, "the White Castle"), 434
 Dorn, 83, 86, 314
 Dove, Form of White — assumed, 314
 Dozy's *Islamisme (Chauvin's transl.), 185-188, uio, 204, 211, 220, 224, 231, 234-235, 232, 282, 286-288, 290, 291-292, 298, 299, 300, 315-316: — *subfument*, 342; — *Histoire des Musulmans de l'Espagne*, 394
 "Dragon" in mystical poem), 363
 Drangiana, 94
 Druj (demon), 160
 Druzes, 393, 398, 400
 Ibn Abi Du'ad (one of Afshim's judges), 331, 335, 336
 Dualism, 157, 160, 186, 387, 414. See also *Manichæism*
 Du bayti. See *Ruba'i*
 Dubeux, 369
 Dugat, 39, 41, 212
 Dukha (*diki*, q.v.), 153
 Abu Dulama (court jester), 276
Dumyatu! IrQasr (of -Bakhar), 448
 Dunbawand (Damawand) 115
 Duncker, 96
 Ibn Abi'd-Dunya (author), 357
 Ibn Durayd (philologist), 269, 366
 -Duruzi (after whom are named the *Druzes*, q.v.), 400
 Dussaud, Rene —, 395
 Duvitataranam, 92
- ## E
- Eagle in Persian legend, 121
 Ecbatana (Hagmatana, Hamadan), 19, 32, 78
 Eckhart, 297, 421
 Eclipses, 470
 Ecole des Langues Orientales Vivantes (Paris), 447
 Edessa, 134
 Edward (King of England), 33
 Egypt, 71, 94, 209, 218, 220, 223, 224, 227, 234, 245, 263, 266, 272, 298, 339, 352, 367, 371, 395, 396, 397, 400, 401, 404
 Egyptian hieroglyphics, 65; — version of Alexander-legend, 118
 Eight Gates of Paradise, 412
 Elburz Mountains, 35, 348
 Elephant, People of the — (Ashabu'l-Fil), 178
 Elephant, Year of the —, 173, 174, 178
 Elliott, J. B. —, 13, 449, 452
 Emesa (Hims, in Syria), 218, 396
 Emmanuel College, Cambridge, 43
 Emmett (Irish patriot), 346
 Encyclopaedia Britannica, 10
 Encyclopaedists. See *Ikjivanu's-Safa*.
 England, 4, 5, 37, 245, 301, 446, 479
 English people, 50, 118; — and Irish, 346; — and Scotch, 33; — in India, 264
 English language, 4, 5
Enneads (of Plotinus), 420
 Ephrem, Patriarch, 399
Epistles, Forms of— (Pahlawi book), 109
 Epos, Persian —, 91, uo-123. See *Shah-nama*
 Eran, 4. See *Iran, Persia*
 Eran-vej, 25
 Eran-shahr, 115
 Erskine, 48, 54
 Esar-Haddon, 20
 Escorial, 272
- Esoteric Doctrine. See *Ba-tints, Ta'limis, I'a'wil*.
Esther, Book of—, 20
 Ethe, Dr. H. —, 13, 301, 340, 349, 416, 450, 452, 453, 456, 457, 459, 460, 462
 Etymologies, Persian popular —, 270
 Euagrius, 168
 Eulalius (Neo-Platonist philosopher), 421
Euphuism (*Ilmu'l-Badayi'*), 389
 Europe, 185
 Eusebius, 21
 Eutyehius (Sa'id b. -Batriq), 169, 366
 Eve, 162
 Evil Eye, 452
 Evil, Mystery of —, 440, 441
 Ezra, 61
- Fa'al-i-Mutlaq ("Absolute Agent," i.e., God), 419
 Fadlullah -Hurufi, 423
 Abu'l b. Sahl, 255, 276, 284
 Fadl b. Yahya (the Barmecide), 257
 Fadl (poetess of Yamama), 345, 351
 Abu'l-Fadl -Bal'ami, 356
 Abu'l-Fadl -Sukkari, 476
 Fahlabad (Pahlapat), 15. See *Barbad*.
 Fahlavivyyat (Persian dialect verses), 80, 85
 *Fakhn (historian). 188-189, 194-200, 204-205, 217, 219, 221-223, 226, 227-228, 230, 231, 235, 241, 242, 243, 252-253, 256, 258, 314, 315, 316, 322-323
 Fakhru'd-Dawla (Buwayhid), 374
 -Fakihi (historian of Mecca), 357
 Falaku'd-Din Muhammad b. Aydamir, 197
 Faludhaj (= Paludak), a kind of porridge, 329
 Fana fi'llah ("Annihilation in God"), 441, 443
 Fana- (= Panah-) Khusraw, 448
 Fani, Muhsin-i. —, 54
 *Ibnu'l- Faqih -Hamadhani (geographer), 14, 15, 358, 432433
 Faqirs, 438. See *Dervishes*
 -Farabi (philosopher) 40, 288, 868, 381
 Abu'l-Faraj (*Barhebreceus*, q.v.), 322
 Abu'l-Faraj -Isfahani (author of *Kitabu'l-Aghani*), 15, 371
 Abu'l-Faraj (Harranian), 304
 -Faral.iwi, Abu 'Abd'llah Muhammad b. Musa —, 455
 Farasu'n-nawba ("Sentry-horse"), 317

- Fargard (chapters of Vendidad, so named), 99
Farhang-i-Pahlavik (Pahlavi glossary), 109
 Ibnu'l-Fand (mystic poet), 419, 438
 Faridu'd-Din 'Attar, Shaykh — (Persian mystic and Poet) See *'Attar*.
 Farighuni Dynasty, 453
 Farr-i-Kayani ("Royal Splendour"), 128, 143, 144
 -Farra (grammarian), 277
 Farrash ("carpet-spreader"), 354
 Farrukh Hurmazd (Ispahbadh of Khurasan), 182
 Farrukh i (Persian poet), 389, 460, 474
 Farrukh-zad, 104
 Farrukh-zadh-Khusraw (Sasanian King), 174
Fare (Parsa, Persis, q.v.), 4, 8, 19, 200, 360, 371, 432, 434, 448
 Fasa (near Shiraz), 170
 Abu'l-Fath-Busti, 371, 467
 Abu'l-Fath Mahmud, 253, 371
 See *Ibn Kushajim*
 -Fatiha (opening chapter of -Quran), 98
 Fatima (daughter of the Prophet and wife of 'AU), 130, 131, 132, 214, 224, 229, 239, 350, 392, 397, 393, 399, 408
 Fatima (daughter of Abu Muslim), 247, 328
 Fatima of Nishapur, 434
Fatimi (= Ismaili, q.v.), 407
 Fatimid Caliphs, 214, 339, 349, 352, 889, 367, 371, 373, 393, 896, 397, 398 (their pedigree discussed), 899, 100, 401, 402, 404, 409, 455. See also *Carmatians*, *Istna'itis*, *Sect of the Seven*
 Fawkes, Guy —, 203
 -Fayyum, 71, 104
 Fendun, 115, 116, 268
 Abu'l-Fida (historian), 169, 290
 Pida'is (Assassins), 424
 **Fihrist*, 76, 109, n.o., 123, 155, 156, 157, 159, 183-164, 165, 247, 268, 278, 302, 308, 310, 312-313, 315, 323, 324, 327, 328, 332, 350, 362, 873, 874, 378, 888-887, 394, 396, 401, 407, 416, 418, 420, 428-429
 Finance department of early Caliphs modelled on Persian lines, 205
 Fiorillo, 60
 Abu Firas (poet), 370, 371, 446
 **Firdawsi*, 15, 79, 80, n.o., 111, 114, 118, 122, 128, 136, 138, 140-142, 143, 144-148, 146, 147-180, 169, 848, 372, 389, 137, 452, 456, 460. See also *Shahnama*
 Fires, Sacred —, 139. See also *Adhar Gushasp*, *Frobag* or *Farnbag* *Fire (Kharrad)*, and *Burjin-Mihr*
 Fire-temples, 206
 Fire-worshippers. See *Guebres*, *Zoroastrians*
 Firuz-Daylami, 262
 Firuz (son of Abu Muslim's daughter Fatima), called *Kudak-i-dana* ("the Wise Child"), 328
 Firuz-i-Mashriqi (Persian poet), 355, 453
 Firuz, Mulla —, 53
 Fitzgerald, Lord Edward —, 346
 Five Principles of the Isma'ilis, 408
 Fleischer, 169, 453
 Flower, Samuel —, 42, 59
 Fliigel, 157, 159, 161, 163, 164, 292, 373, 378, 383
 Forbes, Dr —, 472
 Foy, 64
 Francis V of France, 40
 Frank, Hermann —, 417
 Fravartish (Phraortes), 21, 32
 Frazer, 44
 French East India Company, 45
 Frobag Fire, 139
 Fudayl b. 'Iyad (or 'Ayyad), 298, 418, 424, 426
 Fuqaym (Arab tribe), 176
 Furat (general), 238
 "Furs-i-qadim," 80
 Fustat, 399
Fususu'l-Hikam (by Shaykh Muhyiyu'd-Din b. al-'Arabi), 420
 Futtaq (Patecius), father of Manes, 157
 **Futuhsul-Buldan*. See *-Baladhuri*
 Gabra (=mard), 74
 Gabri dialect (Yazd and Kirman), 43, 86, 109. See also *Dialects*
 Gabriel, Archangel —, 316, 427
 Gahs (Zoroastrian), 5, 52
 Galen (Jalinus), 305, 381
 Gandara (country), 94
 Ganneau, Charles —, 76
 Garmapada (Old Persian month), 32
 Gasanik (liturgical portion of Avesta), 97
 Gathas (Avesta), 28, 30, 78, 88, 95, 97;—(days added to year), 100
 Gaub- (Old Persian root), 27
 Gamaata the Magian, 31, 32
 Gava (the blacksmith), 115
 Gayumarth (Gayo Mareta, "Cayumers"), 55, 56, 112, 122
 "Gazelle" (name given by -Husayn to his wife the daughter of Yazdigird III), 131, 229
 Geiger and Kuhn's *Grundriss*, 25, 31, 35, 57, 59, 63, 68, 69, 83, 88, 96, 108, n., 138
 Geitlin, Herr —, 472
 Geldner, 57, 69, 95, 06, 97, 98, 99
 Genealogy (*Ansab*), 267, 269, 270
 Geography, 271
 Gerard of Cremona, 40
 Germans, 185, 301;—Mystics of xiv cent., 297
 Ghada'iri of Ray (Persian poet), 437
 Ghassan, 173, 174, 388
 **Ghayatu'l-wasa il ila ma'rat-fati'awa'il*, 455
 Ghaylan the Qadari, 283
 Ghazal form of poetry, 472, 474, 476
Ghazala ("Gazelle" q.v.), 131, 229
 Ghazna, 448
 Ghaznawi Dynasty, 341, 353, 360, 371, 377, 467, 468, 472, 474
 *Ghazzali (Divine and Philosopher), 40, 289, 298-294, 362, 419, 422, 436, 437
 -Ghulat (plural of Ghali: the "extremists" of the Shi'a party), 240, 279, 810-311, 328, 362, 386, 396
 Ghumdan (castle), 176
 Ghur, 376; Dynasty of —, 449
 Gibb, E. J. W. —, 389, 390, 423, 444, 465
Gibbon's Decline and Fall, 154, 167, 168, 421
 Gibraltar, 204
 Gilaki dialect, 348
 Gilan, 83, 86, 364, 368
 Ginza (Book of the Mandaeans), 302
 Gladwin, 389
 Glover (Persianized as *Gulavar*), 270
 Gnosis, 424
 Gnosticism, 96, 159, 161, 202, 432
 Gobineau, 64, 130
 God, Persian Kings regarded as —, 128
 Godefrey de Bouillon, 480
 *de Goeje, Professor —, 10, 119, 270, 272, 276, 360, 367, 372, 373, 394, 390, 397, 398, 399, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 407, 432, 434
 *Goldziher, 190, 212, 260-263, 267-270, 272, 273, 336, 350, 357, 358
 Gordian, Emperor —, 420, 421
 Gospels, 113, 401
 Goupil (commandant at Pondichery), 46
 Gozan, River —, 20
 Graf, 423

Grammarians, Early Arab —, 275-278. See also *Sibawayhi*
 Gravesend, 49
 Greece, Greeks, 4, 5, 8, 9, 20, 37, 39, 58, 61, 70, 79, 80, 91, 117, 127, 128, 129, 140, 167, 169, 261, 262, 266, 209, 271, 277, 284, 288, 292, 301, 304, 305, 306, 325, 345, 363, 382, 426, 446, 472
 Grotefend, 59, 60, 62, 63, 70
 Guebres (Gabrs), 27, 86. See *Magians, Zoroastrians*
 Guftan ("to say"), 27
 Guirgass, 169. See *-Dinawari*
Gujastak Abalish natnak, 104, 107
 Guierati, 9
 Gular, Castle —, 146
Gulistan (of 'Sadi'), 341
 Gulnar, 143
***Gulshan-i-Raz (of Mahmud Shabistari), 282, 444**
 Gunde-Shapur, 10, 158, 167. See also *Junde-Shapur*
 Gurgan, 16, 35, 367, 458, 470
 Gushasp, Adhar — (Sacred Fire), 139
 Gushnaspedeh, 174
 Gushasp (Vishtaspa), 25, 28, 61, 95, 116, 118, 123, 142, 460; *Shahnama-i — (= Pahlavi Yatkari-Zanran), 108*
 Gushyar (astronomer), 368
 Gutschmid, 96, 178
 Guyard, Stanislas —, 54, 396, 399, 407, 408

 H
 H (Persian) = S (Sanskrit), 34
 Ha (or haiti, the name given to the divisions of the Yasna), 99
 Ha (= 5 = Bab), 100
 Haarbrucker (translator of *Shahristani, q.v.*), 169
 Habib b. Maslama -Fihri, 201, 272
 Habor, 20
 -Hadi ('Abbasid Caliph), 254, 259, 307, 317
 Hadith (tradition of the Prophet), 80, 85, 225, 283, 285, 341, 361, 389, 428, 437, 444
 Hadramawt, 180
 Haedumant, 35
 Hafidh (Hafiz, the poet), 80, 85, 225, 283, 285, 34 361, 389, 428, 437, 444
 Hafsa, 214, 343
 Haftan -bokht (Haftawad), 137, 145, 145
Hafi Iqlm, 452
 Hagmatana, 19, 78. See *Ecbatana, Hamadan*
 Hajar (in Bahrayn), 201, 354; "to carry dates to —" (= "to carry coals to Newcastle"), 456

Hajl-abad, Shapur's inscription at —, 93, 151-153
 Hajjaj b. Yusuf, 205, 206, 230, 234, 283
Hajji Babab (by Morier), 423
 Hakam b. Abi'As b. Umayya, 215
 Hakhmanish (Achcemenes), 63, 92
 Hakimatu'd - Dahr ("the World-Wise"), 162
 -Hakim bi-amri'llah (Fatimid Caliph and Deity of Druze sect), 398-400
 Halah, 20
 Halani-stones, 267
 Halevy, 29, 64
 -Hallaj, Husayn b. Mansur (Sufi heretic), 361, 433. See *Husayn b. Mansur*
 Ham (son of Noah), 116
 Hamadan, 19, 20, 22, 78, 79, 83 (dialect), 158, 313. See also *Ecbatana, Hagmatana*
 -Hamadhani (geographer), 14, 15, 432, 433
 -Hamadhani, Badi'u'z-Zaman — (author of *Maqamat*), 463-464
Hatnasa, 278, 447
Hamasa'u'dh-Dhuraqa, 454
 Hamdan, House of —, 446
 Hamdan b. -Ash'ath-Qarmat, 396, 397, 401, 408, 410. See *Carmathians*
 Hamdu'llah Mustawfi -Qazwini (Persian historian and geographer), 15, 27, 80, 85
 Hamdun b. Isma'il, 336
 Hamid (wazir of -Muqtadir), 430-432
 Hammad (father of Manes), 155
 Hammad b. Sabur -Rawiya (editor of *Mu'allaqat*), 276
 von Hammer, 369, 407
 Hamza (minister of -Hakim bi-amri'llah), 400
 Hamza of Isfahan (historian), no, 123, 169, 269
 Abu Hamza (Kharijite rebel), 263
 Hanafi sect or school, 276, 294, 295
 -Hanafiyya (wife of 'Ali), 214
 Ibnu'l-Hanafiyya (son of above), 214, 228, 229, 239, 392
 Ibn Hanbal (founder of Hanbali school), 273, 284, 291, 298, 344, 345, 361
 Hanbali sect or school, 294, 295, 361, 364
 *Handhala of Badghis (Persian poet), 346, 355, 452
 Abu Hanifa-Nu'man (founder of Hanafi sect, 276, 280, 294-298, 386
 Hapta - Hindu ("Seven Rivers"), 35
 Harahwaiti (Arachosia), 35
 Haraiva (Herat), 94

Harar (daughter of Yazdigird III), 229. See " *Gaztkr*
 Harb b. Umayya, 215
 -Hariri (author of *Maqamat*),
 -Harith b. 'Abdu'llah -Ja'di (poet), 242
 de Hailez, 22, 28, 68
 Haroyu (Herat), 35
 Harpers, 16, 17, 18
 Harran (Carrhae), 302-306, 358, 372, 387
 -Harthami, Abu Nasr — (Samanid poet), 365
 Harun b. 'Isa b. -Mansur, 331
 Harun -Rashid ('Abbasid Caliph), 13, 163, 168, 210, 252-254, 259, 276, 277, 305, 307, 317
 Harura, 222
 -Hasan b. 'Ali (second Imam of the Shi'a), 132, 133, 214, 224, 228, 229, 392, 409
 -Hasan b. 'Ali -Utrush (Sayyid of Tabaristan), 207, 359
 -Hasan -Basri, 272, 281, 298, 299, 432
 Hasan -Sabbah (founder of Assassins), 408
 -Hasan b. Sahl (father-in-law of -Ma'mun), 255
 -Hasan b. Zayd (called *Jali bu'l-hifara, Sayyid of Tabaristan*), 3481
 Abu'l-Hasan -Ash'ari, 283. See *-Ash'ari*
 Abu'l-Hasan Muhammad (grandson of Simjur), 466
 Abu'l-Hasan -Musawi, 365
 Hashim, 214, 239
 Hashim, b. Hakim, 318. See *-Muqanna'*
 Abu Hashim the Sufi, 298, 417
 Abu Hashim (son of Ibnu'l-Hanafiyya), 239
 Hashimi (Hashimite), 213, 214, 216, 218, 221, 246, 431
 Hashimiyya (sect), 239
 Hashimiyya (town), 316
 Hashishi (Assassin), 408
 Hashwiyya (sect), 386
 Hastings, Battle of —, 95
 Hatak Mansarik (philosophical portion of Avesta), 97, 108
 Hatim-Ta'l, 265
 Abu Hatim -Sijistani, 350
 Hatokht-nosk, 97, 102
 Haug, Dr. Martin —, 57, 59, 68, 70, 72, 73, 74, 77, 81, 103, 109, 151, 152, 153, 157
 Haumavarka, 94
 Ibn Hawqal (geographer), 372
Haydar (= Afshar, q.v.), 334
 Haydara (disciple of -Hallaj), 431, 435
 -Haytham b. Mu'awiya, 316
 Hayyan the druggist ('Abbasid propagandist), 236, 239
 Ibn Hazm, 279
 Hebrew character, 9, 37, 103, 479

- Hebrew language, 40, 41, 42, 479
- Hellenism, Influence on Persia of —, 6
- Hellenopolis (A.C.), 304
- Helmand River, 35
- Henry III of France, 41
- Herat, 16, 35, 94, 123, 242, 244, 317, 347, 355
- Herbads (order of Zoroastrian priests), 309
- Herodotus, 20, 21, 23, 26, 33, 78, 91, 92
- Hezekiah, 66
- hieroglyphics, 65
- Hijaz, 184, 196, 243, 272, 314, 448
- Hikmatu'l-Ishraq (by -Suhrawardi)**, 423
- Himalayas, 185
- Hims (Emsa), 218, 396
- Himyarī, -Sayyid —, 276
- Himyarites, 175, 178, 179, 181, 271
- Hindus, 34, 114
- Hippocrates, 305
- Hira, 174, 179, 262, 264, 306, 388
- Hisham (Umayyad Caliph), 164, 240, 245, 266, 283
- Hisham b. -Kalbi (historian), 275, 277
- * Ibn Hisham (biographer of Prophet), 128-129, 186-188, 193, 203, 262, 269, 272, 276, 277
- Historical science, Origin of — amongst Arabs, 270-273
- Hitzig, 64
- Hoffmann, Georg —, 134
- Homes, H. A —, 293
- Horn, Dr. Paul —, 86, 340, 450, 457, 459, 474
- Hoshang, Dastur —, 109
- Hoshea, 20
- Houris, 107
- Houtsma, 169, 464
- Houtum-Schindler, 83, 206, 207
- Huart, Clement —, 26, 27, 83
- Hubaysh, 306
- Hubschmann, 64
- Hud (prophet), 387
- Hudhayl (Arab tribe), 192, 193; Diwan of —, 357
- Hughes, Dictionary of Islam**, 277
- Hujjat ("Proof," a title used by Isma'ilis), 409, 410, 414
- Hujjat-i-Khurasan (title of *Nasir-i-Khusraw*, q.v.), 399
- Hulagu Khan (Mongol), 6, 209, 210, 286
- Hulul (Incarnation, q.v.)**, 279, 310-311, 328
- Huma (mythical bird), 121
- Humay (or Khumani), Queen —, 117
- Humayma (place in Syria), 236, 243
- Hunayn b. Ishaq of Hira, 1306, 351, 356
- Hunt, Dr. — (of Oxford), 50, 51
- Abu Hurayra, 272
- Hurmazd (Hurmuzd, Hurmuz, Hurmizd), name of the Planet Jupiter, 461
- Hurmazd I, 138, 154, 157, 158, 161
- Hurmazd IV, 174, 181
- Hurmazd V, 174
- Hurmuzan, 215, 266
- Hurufi, Sect, 26, 43, 86, 405, 423
- Husayn b. 'AH (†third Imam), 130-133, 214, 224, 226-228, 229, 239, 200, 322, 343, 892, 393, 409
- Husayn b. Mansur -Hallaj, 361-363, 367, 423, 428-437
- Abu'l-Husayn-Basri (Mu'tazilite), 289
- Abu'l-Husayn b. Faris (philologist), 269
- Abu'l - Husayn -Mu'ayyad bi'llah, Sayyid —, 348
- Hushang (legendary King of Persia), 54, 112, 113
- Hushangji, Dastur —, 81
- Husn-i-ta'ail (poetical etiology), 465
- Husparam-yash, 98, 99**
- Hukht, Huvarsh, Humat ("Good Words," "Good Deeds," "Good Thoughts"), 165
- Huvakhshatara (Cyaxares), 21, 33
- Huzvares, 7, 66, 71, 78, 78, 77, 80, 81, 103
- Hyde, Dr. —, 19, 41, 42, 43, 52, 59, 60
- Hyrcania (Vehrkana, Gurgan), 26, 35
- Hystaspes (Vishtaspa, Gush-tasp), 61, 92, 95, 96, 121
- Iatu'ii (Yaksum, q.v., Abyssinian King of Yaman), 178
- Iblis, 320 See Devil.
- Ibnatu'l-Hirs ("Daughter of Desire"), 162
- Ibrahim (Patriarch). See **Abraham**.
- Ibrahim (Umayyad Caliph), 215, 318
- Ibrahim ('Abbasid Imam), 240, 242, 243, 254
- Ibrahim-Mawsili (minstrel), 345
- Ibrahim b. Adham (Sufi), 298, 418, 424, 425
- Ibrahim b. Hilal -Sabi (historian), 372
- Ibrahim b. -Mahdi ('Abbasid prince), 254
- Ibrahim b. Sinan b. Thabit b. Qurra, 304, 367
- Ibrahim-Sindi, 165
- Ideograms, 65-67. See also **Huzvares**
- Idolatry, Sufi explanation of —, 443-444
- Ijli, 279
- Ijma'u's-Sunnat, 391
- Ikhsid, House of —, 397
- Ikhwān'u's-Safa ("Brethren of Purity"), 292-294, 339, 364, 378-381
- Abu 'Ikrima the Saddler ('Abbasid da'i), 236, 239
- Ilah (God), Attitudes of worshippers in Prayer spell —, 412
- Ilaqi (poet), 468
- Iliad, 153
- Iltatmish, Shamsu'd-Din —, 450
- 'Imadu'd-Dawla (Buwayhid), 360, 364
- *Imadu'd-Din -Katib -Isfahani (historian), 448
- Imamate, Doctrine of —, 296. See **Shi'ites, Sect of the Seven, Sect of the Twelve, Ghulai, &c.**
- Imamiyya (sect), 386. See **Shi'ites, &c.**
- Imams, 180, 134, 214, 224, 229, 238-239, 246, 252, 284, 296, 310-311, 313, 315, 358, 891-415) — of 'Abbasides, 237; — of Sunnis, 276, 277, 295; — of History, 361
- Imperialism, 232, 235, 328
- Abu 'Imran (Jawidan b. Suhrak), 325, 326, 328
- Incarnation (hulul, q.v.), 279, 313, 316, 318, 320, 322, 327, 362, 363, 396, 398, 399, 428, 429, 435
- India, Persian literature of —, 3; — and Zoroaster, 34, Influence of — in formation of Sufi doctrines, 300-301, 419, 426, 442; *Marvels of* —, 368; Natives of — who contributed to Arabic literature, 306, 371; — invaded by Mahmud, 376; — visited by Manes, 158, 159, 163; — by -Hallaj, 431, 434, 435; ~ Office Library, 450; minor references, 42, 45, 46, 54, 79, 94, 102, no, 138, 140, 179, 227, 258, 278, 306, 382, 387
- Indianists, 300, 301, 419
- Indians and Iranians, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 56, 111, 113
- Injil. See *Gospel*
- Inquisition against Manichaeans, 163
- Ionians, 94
- Iqna'* (work on Prosody by the Sahib Isma'il b. 'Abbad), 374
- 'Iqdaniyya (Council of Carmathians), 404
- Iraj (son of Feridun), 115, 116

Iran, 4, 5, 115, 139; — (proper name = Arphaxad), 114, 128.
See also *Persia*
Iranophiles, 269
'Iraq, 19, 131, 163, 195, 196, 199, 219, 233, 239, 251, 266, 272, 282, 446, 448, 465, 466
'Iraqi (Persian poet), 420
Irfan (Gnosis), 424
Irish patriots, 346
'Isa b. Musa ('Abbasid Prince), 254
'Isa b. 'AU (Christian physician), 368
'Isa b. Ja'far (Shi'ite), 343
'Isa b. Muhammad (general), 323
'Isa b. 'Umar-Thaqafi (gram-marian), 275
Isfahan (Ispahan), 4, 19, 79, 83, 139, 203, 311, 313, 315, 364, 376, 448
Isfandiyar (Isfandiyadh), 116, 117, 142, 147, 150, 269
Ibn Isfandiyar, 348, 470
Isfara'ini, Shaykh Abu'l-Mud-haffar Tahir —, 322
Ishaq b. Alptagin, 372
Ishaq (great-grandson of Thabit b. Qurra), 304
Ishaq b. Hassan-Khurrami (Persian Shu'ubi), 268
Ishaq b. Hunayn, 306, 363
Ishaq b. Ibrahim (governor of Baghdad), 284, 330, 334
Ishaq b. Ibrahim -Mawsili (musician), 345
Ishaq "the Turk," 247, 313, 314
Abu Ishaq (biographer of the Prophet), 283, 272, 276, 277
Abu Ishaq- Farsi (Samanid poet), 365
Abu Ishaq (of Shiraz, gastro-nomic poet), 85
Ishmael, 409
Isidore (Neo-Platonist philo-sopher), 421
Islam, Introduction into Persia of —, 8, 11, 36, 90, 181, 194-208 : attitude of — to-wards Magians, 113 ; Mani-chxans in —, 159, 162, 163 : — contrasted with Arab paganism, 188-194, 212-213; meaning of —, 384
Isma'ilis, 86, 101, 130, 159, 172, 268, 295, 312, 312, 339, 352, 359, 362, 386, 391-415 421-423, 437, 455, 456. See also *Carmathians*, *Fattids*, *Ghulat*, *Sect of the Seven*, &c.
Isma'il, Imam —, 296, 393, 396, 407, 409
Isma'il b. 'Abbad. See *-Sahib*
Isma'il b. Ahmad (Samanid), 348, 354, 466
Isma'il b. Yasar, 266
Isnad (of Traditions), 271
Ispa (dialect-word for dog), 26

Ispahbads of Tabaristan, 8, 200, 334
Israfil (Angel), 427
Istakhr (Stakhar Papakan), 19, 432
-Istakhri (geographer), 368, 372
Istighna'i, Abu'l- Mudhaffar Nasr —, 467
Istikhraj ("squeezing" dis-missed governors), 233
LOTOQ (=chetak), 153
Ithna-'ashariyya. See *Sect of the Twelve*
Izads (Angels), 100, 101
'Izzu'd- Din of Hamadan (dialect poet), 86

J

Jabalqa, 246
Jabir b. Hayyan, 274, 276
Jackson, Professor A. V. W. —, 30, 31
Jacquet, 64
Ja'd b. Dirham, 164
-Ja'di, -Hanth b. 'Abdu'llah —, 242
Ja'far b. Abi Talib, 187
Ja'far -Barmaki (the Barme-cide), 254, 257
Ja'far -Sadiq, Imam —, 296, 393, 394, 396, 409
Abu Ja'far (Abbasid Imam), 240, 243
Abu Ja'far b. -'Abbas b. -Hasan, 365
Abu Ja'far Muhammad b. Musa -Musawi, 365
-Jahidh, 'Amr b. Bahr —, 15, no, 165, 260, 267, 268, 306, 351
-Jahiliyyat, 190, 261. See also *Arabian Heathenism*
Abu'l- Jahm (Wazir), 257
Jahwar b. Marrar (general), 314
Jalalu'd- Din Rumi, 294, 389, 416, 423, 434, 437, 441, 444
Jahbu'l-hijara, Hasan b. Zayd (Sayyid of Tabastan), 348
Jahnus. See *Galen*
Jalula, 199, 203, 204
Jamasp (brother of Kawadh), 171
Jamasp-natnak (**Pahlawi** work), 107
Jamhara (of Ibn Durayd), 366
*Jami (Persian poet and mystic), 298, 299, 362, 417, 418, 420, 423-426, 437-489, 441-442, 1 44, 45", 457
Jam't-u't- Tawarikh (of Rashidu'd- Din Fadlu'llah), 392, 393
Jamshid (=Yima of Avesta), 56, 80, 112-114, 268, 388
Janashk, 470
-Jannabi (Carmathian leader), 359, 367, 402, 403, 405

Japhet, 116
Jargh (place), 35
-Jarrah, Abu 'U bayda —, 297
Ibnu'l-Jarrah, 261
Jawamul-' Hikayat (of 'Awfi), 283
Jawidan-i-Kabir (Hurufi book), 26, 27, 86
Jawidan (master of Babak), 325-328
*Ibnu'l-Jawzi (historian), 434, 435
Taxartes (river), 204
Jazir (in sense of *trihman-dar*), 326
Jerusalem, 378
Jesus Christ, 113, 154, 162, 163, 288, 311, 387, 408, 409, 427, 432, 434
"Jesus Patabilis" (of Gnos-tics), 161
Jewish-Persian, 9, 277, 479-480
Jews, 4, 20, 29, 39, 106, 113, 127, 151, 288, 303, 382, 384, 388, 395; religion of — hated by Manes, 158, 162 ; — in Yemen, 175 ; — under Islam, 200-201, 232, 290, 311, 343-344; apocryphal books of —, 241 ; — and heathen Arabs, 261, 274; — in Arabic and Persian literature, 276, 306, 479-480
ibn b. Bokht-Yishu', 367
mn(genies), 112, 431
izya (poll-tax), 164, 201, 234
ohn the Baptist, 409
bhn of Damascus, 282
bhn Malalas, 169, 172
ones, Sir William —, 49-58, 113
de Jong. See *Lata'ifu'l-Ma'arif*
Joseph II., 153
Jubba (garment), 297
-Jubba'i (Mu'tazilite doctor), 291
Judaism, 162, 301
"Judcn-hasse," 29
Julaha of Abhar (dialect poet), 86
Julian the Apostate, 304
-Jumahi, Abu "Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Sallam, 278, 344, 447
Junayd of Baghdad (Sufi), 298, 363, 367, 427, 428, 434, 436
Junaydi, Abu 'Abdi'llah Muhammad b. Abdu'llah (bi-lingual poet), 453, 467
Junde-Shapur, 10, 158, 167, 305, 344. See also *Gnnde-Shapur*
Jupiter (planet), 458, 461
Jurjan, 448. See *Gurgan*
"Just King," 166. See *Nushirwan*
Tusti, 68, 91, 314, 325
Justinian, 167, 421
Jutes, 5

-Juybari, Abu Ishaq Ibrahim b. Muhammad -Bukhari — (Persian poet), 459
Ju-yi-Muliyān, 16

K

Ka', Amir—, 86
Ka'ba, 177, 226, 231, 314, 403
Kabul, 35
Kafir (for Kafir), 244
Kafi of Karaj (dialect poet), 86

Kafi of -Kulayni (Shi'ite theological work), 367

Kafir-kubat, 244
Kaikobad Adarbad Nosherwan, 9, 108

Kalam. See *Scholastic Philosophy*.

Kalbatakin (Turkish officer), 342

Ibnul-Kalbi (historian and genealogist), 272, 275, 277

Kali la and Dimna, Book of —, 76, 110, 275, 332; Rudagi's Persian version, 457, 474

-Kalini (-Kulayni: Shi'ite divine), 367

Kalwaddha 397

Kam-baksh, Cambyes explained as —, 55

Kambujiya, (CambyesJ, 31 55,92

Kamil of -Mubarrad, 221

***Kamilu'i-Tawarikh (of Ibnul-Athir)**, 360-361, 375

Kanheri Buddhist Caves, 103
Kamu'l - Ihya (Manichsean book), 156

Kar- (Persian root), 27
Karach. 360

Karde (divisions of *Vispered* so called), 99

Karim b. Shahriyar, 207
Karkas, 94

***Kar-namak-i-Artakhshtar-Papakano**, 9, 106, 108, 122, 136, 137-151

Karshuni (Arabic written in Syriac character), 8

Kashan, 26, 27, 80, 83, 86, 315

Kashifi, Husayn Wa'idh —, 52

Kashsh (in Transoxiana), 244, 321

-Kashshaf (of -Zamakhshari), 289

KaOapoi (e Ketzer), 160

***Katibi** of Nishapur (Persian poet), 225

Ka'us, Dastur —, 47; Mulla

Ka'us, Kay—(mythical king), 116

Kawad, 134, 169, 171. See also *Qubad*.

Kawaem Hwareno (= Farr-i-Kayani, or "Royal Splendour"), 143

Kawa Husrawa, 55. See *Kay Khusrav*.

Kawakimardan (near Merv), 318

Kawatan, Khusrav-i—, 107. See *Nushirwan*.

Kayani Dynasty, 115-117, H9, 121, 128

Kay Ka'us (legendary king), 116

Kay Ka'us (Ziyarid prince), 471

Kay Qubad, 116

Kayt (or Kayd), King of India), 138

Kazarun, 364

Kazimirski, A. de Biberstein — 331, 340, 369, 452

Kaysaniyya (Shi'a sect), 392

Kenoma, 408, 410

Kerbela, 226-228, 231, 291, 343

Kern, 64

Keshe (dialect of—), 27

Kessler, 155

Ketzer (= *KaOapoi*), 160

**** Keys of the Sciences**, 372

Khabbazi of Nishapur (Persian poet), 468

-Khala. See *Kenoma*

Ibn Khalawayh (grammarian), 370

Ibn Khaldun, 76, 275

Khalid b. 'Abdullah -Qasri, 163, 233, 239

Khalid b. Barmak, 258

Khalid b. Fayyad (Arab poet), 14, 17

Khalid b. Yazid (Umayyad Prince), 274

Khalifa. Khalafat. See *Caliph*.

Caliphate

Khalil b. Ahmad (grammarian), 275, 276

*Ibn Khallikan (biographer, cited generally in de Slane's translation), 208, 267, 279, 293, 299, 316, 320-321, 324, 330, 331, 363, 370, 374. 445. 448, 470

Khanikoff, 206

Khaqan of Turks, 163, 268, 318

Khaqani (Persian poet), 389, 437

Khariidatu'd-Dahr (anthology), 448

Kharijites (Khawarij), 212, 220-224, 228, 231-232, 240, 263, 279, 280, 350, 386

Kharrad (= Frobag) Fire, 140

Khartum, 245

Khash (brother of Afshin), 334

Khatt-i-badi' (Babi writing), 165

Khatabiyya sect, 396

Khayr-i-Mahd ("Absolute Good"), 438

Khayyam. See *'Umar Khayyam*

-Khayzuran (wife of Caliph-Mahdi), 217

Khazim b. Khuzayma (general), 317

Khifara (blackmail levied by Carmathian8), 359

Khorda Avesta, 101

Khouabir, Cups with Mandaeen inscriptions found at —, 302

Khrastar (unclean animals so called), 160

Khsaeta (= -shid), 113

Khshayarsha, 56, 92. See *Xerxes*

Khshayathiya Khshayathiyanam (= Shahanshah, "King of Kings"), 66

Khudhay - namak, 107, 123.

See also *Shahnama* and *Kings, Book of*—

Khujustan, 355

Khumani (Humay, Queen—), 117

Khurasan, 13, 35, 146, 148, 164, 189, 200, 207, 237, 239-244, 247, 252, 258, 263, 265, 276, 278, 310, 316, 319, 321, 329, 340, 342, 346, 351, 352, 355, 305, 367, 371, 372, 397, 399, 432, 434, 445-448, 450, 451, 458, 465

Ibn Khurdadhbih (geographer), 35, 344

Khurra-i-Khuda'ih. See *Fart-i-Kayani*

Khurra-Khusraw (satrap of Yemen), 262

Khurrama (wife of Mazdak), 313

Khurrami sect, 240, 246, 247, 311-313, 315, 323-325, 328, 387

Khurramabad, 315

Khurra-zadh Khusrav, 174

Khusrawani (minstrel), 18

*Khusrawani, Abu Tahir — (Samanid poet), 466-467

Khusrawi of Sarakhs, Abu Bakr Muhammad b. 'AU — (poet of Qabus b. Washm-gir) 453, 466

Khusrav Firuz, 448

Khusrav Kawadnan and his Page, Story of —, 9

Khusrav - i - Mihr - Gushnasp (Sasanian king), 174

Khusrav Parwiz (Sasanian king), 6. See *Parwiz*

Khutba, 244

Khuttal (in Transoxiana), 220

Khuzayna (Governor of Khurasan), 237

Khuzistan, 19, 305, 370, 402

Khvetu-das (next-of-kin marriages), 117 309

Khwaf, 308, 355

Khwarazm, 94, 446, 448

-Khwarazmi, Abu 'Abdillah Muhammad b. Ahmad b. Yusuf — (author of *Ma-fatihu'l-'ulum*, q.v.), 372, 378

Kimiya-i-Sa'adal (of -Ghaz-zah), 293
 -Kindi (Arab philosopher), 278, 288, 356, 357, 372, 381
 "King of the Paradises of Light," 162, 165
Kings, Book of —. 135. See **Sahnama**
 Kirman, 27, 83, 87, 105, 109, 138, 145, 207, 343, 347, 364, 371, 448
 -Kisa'i (grammarian), 276, 277
 Kisa'i (Persian poet), 368, 452
 Kisra (= Khusraw, Chosroes), 127-129. See also **Nushtr-wan**
 Kisra (Khusraw) son of Hur-mazd, 268
 -Kisrawi (historian), no
KHabu'l-abntya an haqa'tqi'l-adwiyā, 478
 —'l'Aghani, 15, 245, 262,
 —'l-Awatl, 356
 —'l-Bayan wa't-Tibyan, 260, 351
 —'l-Bukhala, 267, 351
 —'l-Buldan (of Ya'qubi, q.v.), 314, 321
 —'l-Futuh, 152, 357. See **Baladhuri**
 —'l-Hayawan (of -Jahidh, q.v.), 15
 —'l-Huda wa't-Tadbir, 156
 —'l-Ishara bi -Hlmi'l-Ibarā, 274
 —'l-Jawatmi, 274
 —'l-Ma'arif (of Ibn Qutayba, q.v.), 169, 277, 324, 357, 887-388
 —'l-Mahastn wa'l-Addad, 15, 18
 —man la yahdumhu'l-Faqih, 375
 —UMasalik wa'l-Mamalik, 344
 —'UMilal (of Shahnstani, q.v.), 169, 220, 396, 420
 —'l-Mu'ammari, 350
 —'l-Mushtarik (of Yaqut, q.v.), 321
 —Rahati's-Sudur, 85
 —sh-Shubhat (of Yaqut), 321
 —'t-Taj, 372
 —'t-Tanbih wa'l-Ishraf (of -Mas'udi, q.v.), 119, 127, 328, 368
 —'l-Uyun (of Ibn Miskawayhi), 362, 428, 430
 —'l-Yamini, 457
 —'z-Zuhd, 274
 Kitchener, Lord —, 245
 Kleuker, 57
 Knots, Blowing on —, 366
 Knowledge, Travel in search of —, 271, 272
 Krehi 188
 *von Kremer, 90, 201, 203, 206, 211, 213, 220, 221, 234, 247, 255, 289, 261, 267, 278,

279, 280, 282, 288, 300, 307, 370-371, 373, 419, 426
 Kudak-i-dana ("the Wise Child"), 328
 Kudiyya sect, 311
 Kufa, 196, 199, 203, 210, 216, 218, 219, 222, 224, 230, 234, 243, 244, 263, 298, 359, 363, 370, 385, 396, 403, 405
 Kufic character, 103
 Kuh-i-Bibi Shahr-banu, 131
 Kuhistan, 428, 429, 448
 Kun- (Persian root), 27
 Kunik, 304
(cuwv, 26
 Kurdistan, 19, 83, 87
 Kurds, 137, 139, 388, 463
 Kurush, 92. See **Cyrus**
 Ibn Kushajim (poet), 253, 371
 Kushiya, 94
 Kushti (sacred girdle), 99
 Kuthayyir (poet), 235
 Kyuprulu-zade Library (Con-stantinople), 276, 383

La (In Pahlawi), 58
 de Lagarde, Paul —, 19, 260, 479
 -Lahham, Abu'l-Hasan — (Samanid poet), 365
 Lahiq ("the Subsequent" in Isma'ili system), 414
 Lahma (= nan, "bread," in Pahlawi), 66, 76
 La hukma ilia li'llah (Kharijite war-cry), 222
 Lakhi'a Dhu Shanatir (King of Yaman), 174
 Lalla Rookh (of Moore), 318
 Lama'at (of 'Iraqi), 420
 Lane-Poole, Stanley —, 214, 254, 364, 371
 Lar (town in Persia), 294
 Lassen (of Bonn), 63, 64, 67
Lata'ifu'l-Ma'arif (of -Tha'libi), 255, 317, 354
Latifa-i-ghaybiyya, 283
 Latin verses, 446
 Laud, Archbishop —, 41
 Laudian Professor of Arabic, 19, 41
 Lawh-i-Mahfudh ("Preserved Tablet"), 427
 Layla (wife of -Husayn, mother of 'Ah Akbar), 131
 Layla (the beloved of Majnun), 84
 Layth, House of See **Saffarids**
 Legend, National — of Persia, in. See **Shahnama**, &c.
 Le Strange, Guy —, 367
 Levy (of Breslau), 103
 Leyden library, 383
***Light of Asia**, 442-443
 Lingam, 52
 Lisānu'l-Ghayb, 225. See **Hafidh**

Lisānu'l-Mulk, 170, 312
 Literatures, Arabic and Persian, comparative value of —, 211
 Loftus, 64
 K6yoQ 0eloc» 97
 Longimanus, 137, *4*- See **Artaxerxes, Bahrnan, Diraz-dast, MctKpoxeip**
 Lord, Henry —, 42
 L'Orient, 46
 Love, typal and real —, 442
***Lubabu'l-albab (of 'Awfi, qv.)**, 13, 262, 449-451
Lushat-i-Furs (of Asadi, q.v.), 86, 450, 457
 Lukari, Abu'l-Hasan 'Ali b. Muhammad - Ghazzali — (Persian poet), 463
 Abu Lulu'a (assassin of the Caliph 'Umar), 203, 215
 Lull, Raymond —, 40
 Luri dialect, 83
 Luristan, 19, 87
 Lydians, 21

M

-Ma'arri, Abu'l-'Ala — (philosophical poet), 320, 321, 371
 Ma'bad -Juhani, 282
 Macedon, 219
 Machiya (people), 94
 Mada, 77. See **Media, Mah-**
Mada'in, 132, 199, 222, 311, 324. See **Ctesiphon**
 -Mada'ini, 278
 -Madina, 36, 132, 133, 183, 189, 195, 196, 199, 203, 205, 210, 213, 218, 224, 226, 228, 230, 245, 271, 274, 277, 295, 299-300, 307
 Madrid, 294
 Abu'l-Mafakhir of Ray, 437
***Mafathu'l-'ulum ("Keys of the Sciences")**, 372, 378, 382-383
 Magi (tribe of —), 30
 Magians (Magush, Majus), 12, 22, 23, 28, 31, 282, 209, 314, 347, 362, 367, 372, 426, 434, 443, 448. See **Guebres, Zoroastrians**
 Magic, 320, 379, 436; "Lawful —," 366
 Magopat (Mubad), 9. See **Zoroastrian priests**
 Mahabadian Dynasty, 55
 Mahabeli, 55
 Ibn Mahabzud (Mah-afzud), 448
 Mahafarid (wife of Iraj), n6
 Mahan (= Maymun), 263
 Mah- (as prefix, in Man-Basra, Mah-Nahawand, &c.), 19, 42, 77
 Mahbul, 55
 Mahdi, 241, 395, 397; -Saffah so considered, 244; — of Sudan, 245; Abu Muslim

- so considered, 246; Fatimid —, 397. See also *Messianic Idea*
- Mahdi (/Abbasid Caliph), 159, 162, 207, 254, 267, 276, 307, 317, 318, 322, 328
- Mahdiyya (city of —), 353, 359, 397
- Mahfurudhin, 308
- Mahmud of Ghazna, 111, 337, 339, 371, 376, 456, 457, 468, 471
- Mahmud Shabistari (poet and mystic), 262, 444
- Mahmud Warr<tiq (Persian poet), 355
- Mahmud (elephant), 177
- Mah - S a z a n d a ("Moon maker"), 319. See -*Muqanna'*
- Mahyar b. Marzuya-Daylami, 448
- Matnyo-i-Khirad, 82, 106, 159
- Ibn Maja, 357
- Majalisu'l-Mu'minin (of Sayyid Nuru'llah -Shushtari), 349, 437
- Majaz ("the Metaphorical"), 442
- Abu'l-Majid Rayagani (dialect poet), 86
- Majnta'u'l-Fusaha, 449, 455
- Majnun, 84
- Majusi, 'AU b. -'Abbas (physician), 375
- Makbul (traditionist), 272
- Maicpoxsip, 117. See *Longitanus*
- Mala. See *Pleroma*
- Malabar Coast, 103
- Malahida. 408. See *Assassins*
- Malahim (Apocryphal books), 241
- Malalas, John —, 169, 172
- Malcolm, Sir John —, 212
- Malik b. Anas, 274, 276, 277, 295, 298, 386
- Malikite sect, 294, 295, 298
- Malka, Malkan-malka, 58, 66, 71, 76
- Ma'mari, Abu Mansur — (author of Persian prose version of *Book of Kings*), 123
- Mamelukes, 209
- Ma'mun ('Abbasid Caliph), 13, 104, 105, 164, 166, 168, 282, 284, 288, 289, 267, 276, 288, 284, 288, 302-303, 307, 323, 336, 339, 340, 343, 346, 351, 352, 452, 479, 480
- Manaqtbu'sh-Sh'ara, 449
- Ma'navi of Bukhara (Persian poet), 468
- Manchester Library, 452
- Manda'ans, 158, 302
- Manes (Mani), 136, 137, 184-189, 308, 415, 422; Gate of —, 158
- Manichaeans, 43, 104, 106, 184-166, 170, 172, 202, 207, 301, 307, 362, 382, 387, 431, 443. See also *Zindiq*
- Manini (commentator of -'Utbi), 456
- Manjak (dialect poet), 453, 462
- Mansur ('Abbasid Caliph), 254, 257, 258, 265, 276, 288, 295, 305, 313-317, 343, 344
- Mansur (Fatimid Caliph), 403
- Mansur-i-Hallaj. See *Husayn b. Mansur*
- Mansur b. Ishaq (Samanid), 363
- Mansur b. -Mahdi ('Abbasid), 254
- Mansur I b. Nuh (Samanid), 11, 356, 368, 455, 461, 477
- Mansur II b. Nuh (Samanid), 468
- Abu Mansur of Aba (Persian poet), 464
- Abu Mansur 'Abdu'l-Malik. See *Tha'alibi*
- Abu Mansur b. 'Abdu'r-Razzaq, 123
- Abu Mansur-Ma'mari, 123
- Ibn Mansur (disciple of -Hallaj), 435
- Mansuri* (of -Razi), 363
- *Mantiqi of Ray, Mansur 6. 'Ali — (Buwayhid poet), 453, 463, 465, 466
- Mantiq'u't-Tayt* (of 'Attar, q-v), 444
- Manuchihr (legendary Persian King), 116
- Manuchihi, Dastur —, 47
- Manushchihar (author of *Dattstan-t-Dinik*, 105)
- Manuchihi (poet). See *Minuthihri*
- Manuscript, Oldest Post-Muhammadan Persian —, 11
- Maqamat* (of Hatiri), 464
- Maqdisi (geographer), 293
- Mara-bokht (name), 145
- Marcion, 160
- Marcionites, 382, 387
- Mardanshah (Persian general), 200
- Mardanshah - i - Zadan-i-Farrukh (Persian accountant), 205
- Mardan-Sina, 129
- Mardawij b. Ziyar, 359, 360, 365
- Mardin, 302
- Mananus (alchemist), 274
- Maria Theresa, 153
- Markham, Clements —, 212
- Marriage Contract, Form of* —, 109
- Mars (Planet), 461
- Martyn, Henry —, 423
- Ma'ruf-Karkhi (Sufi), 298, 424
- *Ma'rufi of Balkh (Samanid, poet), 463
- Marv, Marw. See *Merv*
- Marv-Dasht, 70
- Marvels of India* ('Aja'ibu'l-Hind), 368
- Marwan I. (Umayyad), 215, 263
- Marwan II. (Umayyad), "the Ass," 215, 240-245, 265
- Marwan b. Abi Hafsa (poet), 276
- Marwarudh, 242, 244
- Maryam, Suratu* — (ch. xix of Qu'ran), 187
- Maryam Utakhim (mother of Manes), 158
- Marzuban (Ispahbad), 478
- Marzuban b. Rustam (Ispahbad), 159
- Marzuban-nama*, 478
- Abu Ma'shar (astronomer), 357
- Ma siwa'a'llah ("What is beside God"), 438
- Masjid-i-Madar-i-Sulayman, 113
- Masruq (Abyssinian King), 178
- Masrur (executioner), 254
- Ibn Mas'ud (Companion), 217
- *-Mas'udi (historian), 14, 109, no., 119-120, 127-128, 169, 217, 218, 230, 257, 267, 297, 314, 324, 328, 368, 417
- Abu'l-Mathal of Bukhara (Persian poet), 468
- Mathalib (satires), 269
- Mathematics, 380, 382, 386
- Mathnawi form of verse, 18, 473-474, 476
- Mathnawi* (of Jalalu'd-Din Rumi), 423, 434, 437, 440, 441, 444
- Matn (text of a tradition), 271
- Ibn Matran, Abu Muhammad — (Samanid poet), 365
- Maturidi (theologian), 367
- Mawali ("Clients," pl. of Mawla), 229, 230, 232-235, 242, 247, 260, 263, 264, 206. See *Racial Prejudice, Subject Races*
- Ma wara'u'n-Nahr. See *Transoxiana*
- Max Muller, 33-34, 57
- Maymadh (or Mimad), 324
- Maymuniiyya (sect) 396
- Mays (mother of Manes), 158
- Maysara -'Abdi ('Abbasid da'i), 236
- Mazamir* (*Psalms of David*, qv), 113
- Mazandaran, 19, 26, 83, 86; Dialect of —, 348, 478
- Mazda. See *Ahura Mazda, Hurmazd*
- Mazdak, 135, 136, 137, 166-172, 202, 247, 312-313, 516, 318, 323, 324, 326, 328, 382, 387
- Mazdak-nama*, 169, 332
- Mazyar, 330-331, 334-336
- Mecca, 173, 174, 176-178, 186, 189, 213, 216, 224, 228, 230, 231, 245, 261, 270, 307, 316, 345, 357, 358, 359, 367, 402, 403, 405

- Ziyarid Dynasty, 359, 364-365, 367, 371, 376, 446, 453, 466, 469, 471
- Zohak, Zuhak, Zahhak. See *Dahak*
- Zopyrus, 121
- Zoroaster, 4, 25, 28-31, 34, 105, 54, 56, 58, 88, 95, 96, 102, 116, 118, 120, 123, 127, 154, 159, 162, 163, 173, 200, 201, 206, 046, 247, 263, 309, 310, 315, 334: — identified with Abraham. 113; name of — changed to Muhammad on conversion to Islam, 263
- Zoroastrian Literature, 7, 8, 43, 44, 46, 118
- Zoroastrian Priests, 135, 166, 169, 202, 206
- Zoroastrian Religion, 6, 9, 23, 24, 30, 34, 30, 42, 45-47, 127, 161, 165, 167, 170, 171, 202, 203, 206, 301, 414, 459-460
- Zoroastrians, 200-202, 206-207, 232, 303, 343, 352, 375 448, 459 See also *Gucbics Magians*
- Zoroastrian sympathies imputed to Barmecides, 259
- Zotenberg, H. —, 369, 455, 478, 479
- Zubayr, 217, 388
- Ibn-Zubayr, 228-231
- Zubur. See *Psalms of David*
- Zuhri (theologian), 363, 272, 273
- Zuwarishn, 7, 73. See *hznzvaicsh*

- Medes. **10-24**, 26, **28**, 30, 31, 33, 37, **41**, 65, 90, 121; Language of —, 22-24, 77-78
- Media, 5, 20, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 31, 32, 42, 94, 96
- Medicine, 289, 304, 305, 307, 381, 382, 430
- Meiners, 57
- Menant, Professor J. —, 64 ; Mademoiselle —, 102
- Mercia, 5 ; Dialect of —, 479
- Mercurius, St. —, Church of — 399
- Merv, 13, 35, 237, 242, **244**, 295, 318, 320, 340, 428, 452, 467, 475
- Mesopotamia, 305, **402**, **421**, 448
- Messiah, 162, 395, 480. See also *Jesus Christ*
- Messianic Idea, 232, 241, 479
- Metempsychosis, 279, 311, 316. See *Tanasukh*
- Metrical system of Persians and Arabs, 472
- Meyer, W. —, 59
- de Meynard, Barbier —, 365, 368, 447
- Michael, Archangel —, 427
- Microcosm, 412
- Middle Persian, 7, 80, 82. See *Pahlawi*
- Mihriyya (sect of Manichaeans), 165
- Mihrgan, Festival of —, 259, 475
- Mihrijani, Abu Ahmad —, 293
- Mihyar, Abu'l-Hasan —, 207
- Abu Mikhnaf Lut b. Yahya, -Azdi, 273
- Milky Way, 161
- Milton, 37
- Mim b. Mim b. Mim, 241
- Mimad (or Maymad), 325
- *-Mi'marl (or -Mu'ammari), Shaykh Abu Zura'a — (Persian poet), 458-459
- Mino ("celestial," meaning "Royal"), 153
- Minuchihri (Persian poet), 12, 13, 331, 340, 369. **474**— (The allusions are all to A. de Biberstein Kazimirski's Preface to his edition of the *Diwan*)
- Miqlassiyya (sect of Manichaeans), 165
- Mishkatn'l-Anwar* (of -Ghazali), 362, 436
- Mission. See *Da'wa*
- Missionary driven from Persia by name, 270 ; Missionary's dislike of Sufis, 423 ; Reason of Missionaries' failure in Asia, 265
- Mithr (Mihir) Fire, 139, 140
- Mithra, Zoroastrian worship of —, 95, 101
- Mithrak (Mihrak), adversary of Ardashir Babakan, 138
- "Modern Medic" (of M. Cl. Huart), 27
- Modern (*i.e.*, Post-Muhammadan), Persian, g. 8, 11, 39, 89 : — defined, 82
- Mogul, Great —, 209
- Mogutbish ("Magicide"), 31
- Mohl, Jules —, 369
- Mohsan (Muhsin) Fani, 54
- Molten Brass Ordeal, 157
- Mongol Invasion, **6**, **82**, **197-198**, **209-211**, **274**, **275**, **286**, **377**, 391-479
- Monophysites, 168
- Moody, 43
- Moon (Beauty), 320, 321
- " Moon-maker" (Mah-sazanda), 319. See *Muqanna'*
- Moore, Thomas — (Irish poet), 318, 447
- Moors, 9, 39, 275, 334, 335- See also *Spain, Africa, Umayyads of Cordova, &c.*
- Morality at 'Abbasid Court, 251-252
- Mordecai, 21
- Morier, 423
- Morocco, 340. See also *Moors*
- Morris, Lewis —, 447
- Moses, 29, 113, 119, 188, 288, 408, 409, 427, 430, 436, **440**
- Moses of Khorene, 117
- Mosheim, 155
- " Most Great Name," 314
- " Mother of Nine Imams," 131, 132
- Mu'allaqat*, 276, 369-370
- Mu'almhun (grade of Manichaeans), 164
- Mu'awiya I (Umayyad Caliph), 212, 215, 217-219, 221, 223-225, 261, 291
- Mu'awiya II (Umayyad Caliph), 215
- Mu'awiya b. Hisham, 215
- Mu'ayyidu'd-Dawla (Buwayhid), 374
- Mu'ayyidu'l-Mulk (Persian poet), 464
- Abu'l-Mu'ayyad of Balkh (Persian poet), 468
- Abu'l-Mu'ayyad of Bukhara (Persian poet), 468
- Mubad (Magopat), 309, 331. See *Zoroastrian Priests*
- Mubarrad, 221, 350, 357, 375
- Mubayyida (= Sapid-Jamagan, the "White-clad" heretics), 3rd-313. 318, 319, 322, 323
- Abu'l-Mudhaffar, Amir —, 460
- *Abu'l - Mudhaffar Nasr -Istighna'i (Persian poet), 467
- Abu'l-Mudhaffar Tahir b. Fadl b. Muhammad Muhtaj -Saghani (Chaghani), 471
- Mufaddal -Dabb'i, 276, 278
- Mufaddaliyyat, 276
- Mufid (the 'Pre-existent' in the Isma'ili system), 414
- Mughhammas (place near Mecca), 177
- Mughtasila, 158, 303. See also *Mandaans, Sabaans*
- Muhajirun, 186, 213, 220
- Muhamraadan Religion. See *Islam*
- Muhammad (the Prophet), birth of —, 173, 214 ; threatened by Khusrav Parwiz 183, aim and achievement of —, 186-190, 104, 212-213, 234 ; — and Abu Talib, 193 ; — and Magians, 201-202, 206 : — and spoils of war, 205 ; dislike of — for Persian legends, 269 ; — in Isma'ili system, 408, 409, 412-414 ; — and Sufism, 418 ; — in Apocrypha of Daniel, 470-480 ; minor references, 113, 130, 132, 166, 177, 181, 200, 203, 209, 210, 216, 229, 275, 276, 287, 297, 299, 408, 409, 430
- Muhammad b. 'Abdu'llah b. . . . 'Abbas, 254
- b. —b. Azdi, 276
- b. —b. Maymun, 397, 409
- b. 'Abdu'l - Malik. See *Ibnu'z-Zayyat*
- b. 'Abdu'r - Rahman -'Amiri, 273
- b. Abdu's-Samad (Sahibu'sh-Shurta), 432
- b. Ahmad -Farsi (= *Hallaj*, q.v.), 431
- b. 'Ali b. 'Abdullah b. 'Abbas, 236, 237, 240
- b. —b. 'Umar -Salimi, 274
- b. Baqir, Imam —, 409
- b. —b. Mirza, of Bawanat. 390
- b. Darabi, 283, 285
- b. Hasan -Shaybani, 276
- b. Humayd, 323
- b. Husayn, Mir, 54
- b. Ishaq (author of *Fihrist*, q.v.), 76, 110
- b. Isma'il, 206, 393, 394, 397, 404, 408, 409, 414. See also *Istia'ilis, &c.*
- b. Khalid b. Barmak, 164
- b. Khunays ('Abbasid da'i), 236
- b. Marwan (Umayyad Prince), 215
- b. Mu'tasim ('Abbasid Prince), 254
- b. -Rawwad -Azdi, 325
- b. Sa'ib -Kalbi, 275
- b. Shirin, 274
- b. -Zayyat. See *Ibnu's-Zayyat*
- Abu Muhammad b. Yaminu'd-Dawla -Ghaznawi, 471
- Muhammira ("those who wear Red as their badge"), 311-313, 323, 329
- Muharram, 227
- Muhasibi (Sufi), 345, **424**
- Muhit (of the *Shahib Isma'il b. Abbad*, q.v.), 374

- Muhtit'ul Muhtit (Arabic Dictionary), 326
 -Muhtadi ('Abbasid Caliph), 254, 345
 *Muir, Sir William —, 188, 191, 192, 210, 211, 219, 220, 222, 224, 226, 227, 229, 240, 251, 317, 342, 345
 Mu'izzu'd-Dawla (Buwayhid), 164, 364, 367
 -Mu'izz (Fatimid Caliph), 367, 399
 Mujallidi, Sharif— of Gurgan, 15, 16
 -Mu'jam ft Ma'abiri Ash'ari 'Ajami, 473
Mujmalu't-Tawarikh, no
 -Mukhtar, 228, 229, 231, 233, 234, 238
 -Mukhtah ('Abbasid Caliph), 357, 358
 Mulamma' poetry, 467
 Ibn Muljam, 224
 Muller, Friedrich —, 64, 153
 Muller, Joseph —, 64, 72
 Muluku t-Tawa'if, 79, 111, 118.
See also Parthians
 Mundhir (King of Hira), 179, 262
 Munk, 479
 ***Munqidh mina'd-Dalal** (of -Ghazzali), 422
 -Muntasir ('Abbasid Caliph), 254, 345
 Munter, 60
 -Muqaddasi (geographer), 293
 Ibnu'l-Muqaffa', 76, 110, 113, 128, 169, 207-208, 275, 306, 319, 832
 -Muqanna' ("Veiled Prophet of Khurasan"), 247, 309, 311, 313, 313-328
 Ibn Muqla, 76, 275, 364
 -Muqtadir ('Abbasid Caliph), 164, 358-360, 363, 304, 428, 429, 431
 Murghab, 113
 -Muriyani, Abu Ayyub —, 258
 -Murriya (sect), 279-281, 386
 Abu Murra, b. 'Urwa-Thaqafi, 131
 Murshid (spiritual director), 424
 ***Muruju. dh~Dhab**(of -Mas'udi, q.v.), 169, 230, 257, 267, 297, 324, 868, 417
 Muruwwa ("Virtue," as conceived by Pagan Arabs), 190, 193
 Musa b. 'Ali . . . b. 'Abbas, 254
 Musa -Kadhm (Seventh Imam of "Sect of the Twelve"), 296, 393
 Abu Musa -Ash'ari, 216, 219
 Abu Musa b. Nusayr, 263
 Mus'ab b. Zubayr, 228, 229
 Musawwida ("Those who wear Black as their badge," i.e., the partisans of the 'Abbasids), 242, 243
Mushabbiha. See Anthropomorphism.
 Mushammasun (grade of Manichaeans), 164
 Music, 380, 382, 383
 Muslim -Nishaburi († traditionist), 351
 Muslim b. -Walid (poet), 276
 Abu Muslim, 240-244, 246, 247, 256, 308-310, 313-315, 317, 320, 322, 328, 392, 410.
 Muslimiyya (the Sect of Abu Muslim), 313, 315
 -Mustafid ("the Subsequent" in the Isma'ili system), 414
 -Musta'in ('Abbasid Caliph), 254, 345
 Mustakfi ('Abbasid Caliph), 364
 -Mustansir (Fatimid Caliph), 400
 -Musta'sim bi'llah (last 'Abbasid Caliph of Baghdad), 6, 164, 209, 210
 -Mu'tadid ('Abbasid Caliph), 254, 358, 405
 Mutahhar b. Fatima (the grandson of Abu Muslim), 328
 -Mu'tamid ('Abbasid Caliph), 254, 350, 353, 354-356, 388
 -Mutanabbi (the poet), 369, 446, 472
 -Mu'tasim ('Abbasid Caliph), 252, 254, 278, 329, 336, 342
 Mutawakkil ('Abbasid Caliph), 253, 254, 259, 289-291, 332, 337, 339, 341-345, 347
 Mutazihite sect, 254-285, 279, 281-289, 291-292, 294, 298, 306, 342, 344, 351, 852, 366, 386, 395, 423, 430, 437
 -Mu'tazz ('Abbasid Caliph), 254, 345, 347
 Ibnu'l-Mu'tazz (son of the above), 254, 358, 363
 Muthanna b. Haritha (one of the "Companions" and early conquerors of Persia), 195
 -Muti' ('Abbasid Caliph), 367, 371
 Muti' b. Ayas (poet and Manichaeans), 307
 -Muttaqi ('Abbasid Caliph), 304
 -Muwatfaq ('Abbasid prince), 254
 Muwaffaq, Abu Mansur — (author of old Persian pharmacology), 11, 450
 -Muwatta' (title of two works on Law), 273-274
 Muzdawija (= Mathnawi poetry), 476
 Mystics, 296-301. **See Sufis.**
 Mystics, Vaughan's classification of —, 424
N
 Nabathaeans, 247, 266, 306, 324, 328
 Nabidh (Date-wine), 285, 329
 Nadr b. -Harith -'Abdari, 269
 -Nadim -Warraq -Baghdad! (author of -Fihrist, q.v.),
 ***Nafahatu'l-Uns** (of Jami), 299, 362, 417, 418, 423, 425, 437
 Nahawand, 79; Battle of —, 200, 247
 Nahid (Venus), 461
 -Nahrjuri, Abu Ahmad — (one of the Ikhwann 's-Safa, q.v.), 293
 Nahr Bashir, 197
 Nahrwan, 222, 432
 Na'ila ('Uthman's wife), 217
 Na'in (dialect), 86
 -Najashi (Negush, the ruler of Abyssinia), 175, 186-188
 Najda the Kharijite, 228
 Najmud-Din-Rawandi, 85
 Najran, Christians of —, 175
 Nakhshab, 244, 318, 319
 -Nairn (poet), 370
 Napper Tandy (Irish patriot), 346
 Naqibs (in 'Abbasid propaganda), 240
 Naqsh-i-Rajab, 44, 151
 Naqsh-i-Rustam, 5, 70, 150, 151
 Nariman, 116
 Narshakhi (historian of Bukhara), 368
 Nasa, 35, 242
 -Nasa'-i († traditionist), 351, 363
 Nasaf, 244. **See also Nakhshab**
 -Nashi (poet), 370
Nasikhut-Tawankh, 170
 Nasimi (Turkish poet and Hurufi), 423-424
 Nasir-i-Khusraw, 86, 268, 278, 295, 389, 399, 400, 401, 437, 462
 Nasiru'd-Din Qubacha, 450
 Nasiru'd-Din Shah Qajar, 172
 Nasiru'l-Haqq (Sayyid ruler of Tabaristan), 207
 Nasr I b. Ahmad (Samanid), 352
 Nasr II b. Ahmad (Samanid), 13, 16, 359, 365, 456, 458
 Nasr b. Sayyar (Umayyad governor of Khurasan), 232, 241-244, 265
 Ibn Nasr -Qushuri, 433
 Abu Nasr -Farabi (Samanid)
 Abu Nasr -Dharifi (Samanid poet), 365
 Abu Nasr, Shaykh —, 446
 Nassau Lees, Capt. —, 299
 Nat' (executioner's carpet), 435
 Natanz, 26
 Natiq (in Isma'ili system), 408, 409, 413, 414
 Natural Science, 289
 Nawbahar (in Balkh), 257
 Nawbandajan, 364
 Naw-ruz, 114, 259, 475

- Nazar, -'Aziz Abu Mansur — (Fatimid Caliph), 371
 Nazuk (Captain of the Guard), 435
 Nehemiah, 61
 -Nejashi (— *-Najashi*, q. v.), 175, 186-188
 Nejran *Cm Najran*, q. v.), 175
 Neo-Platonists, 96, 167, 300, 301, 304, 381, 420-421, 441
 Neo-Pythagoreans, 381
 Neriosengh, 63, 67, 68, 106
 Newcastle, Coals to —, 456
 Nicaya, 32, 35
 Nicholson, 167, 699,
 420, 421, 440
 Nidhami -'Arudi -Samarqandi
 (author of *Chahar Maqala*,
 q.v.), 15-17, 317, 449, 456,
 470
 Nidhami of Ganja, 15, 18, 52,
 119
 Nidhamiyya College, 293
 Nidhamu 'I-Mulk, 169, 171, 172,
 313-314, 328, 349, 353, 401,
 456
 Niebuhr, 59, 62
 **Nihayatu'l-Irab fi Akhbari'l-*
Furs wa'l-'Arab, 183
Niki-nama (poem in Tabari
 dialect), 478
 Nile, 400
 Nine (number), 410
 Nineteen (number), 98, 100,
 101
 Nineveh, 21
Ntrangstan, 99, 102
 Nirvana, 443
 Nishapur, 12, 244, 308, 309,
 314, 347, 351, 355, 368, 400,
 428, 445
 Noah, 114, 320, 408, 409, 430
 Noble, Sons of the — (*Banu'l-*
Ahrar), 181,
 *Noldeke, Prof. Th. —, 6, 9,
 10, 22, 24, 70, 75, 106, 108,
 109, 111, 115, 117, 120-123,
 129, 134, 135, 137, 138, 140,
 141, 145, 146, 150, 152, 154,
 166, 168, 170, 180, 183, 188,
 221, 241, 262, 302, 312, 332,
 347, 349, 350, 353, 459, 460
 Nominalism, 294
 Normans, 95
 Northumbria, 5
 Noskes (of Avesta), ax, 97-99.
 108
 "Nouer l'aiguillette," 366
 Ibn Nubata, 373
 Nudhar, 121
 Nudnud (Babak's execu-
 tioner), 329
 Nufayl, 177
 Nuh. See *Noah*
 Nuh I b. Nasr II (Samanid),
 365
 Nuh II b. Mansur (Samanid),
 123, 371, 374, 375, 460, 463
 Nu'man, King of Hira, 264
 Numbers, Signification of —,
 310, 408. See also *Seven*,
Twelve, *Nine*, *Nineteen*
 181-183: language, 7, 10-11,
 37, 56, 69, 79-81, 205-206;
 — literature, 7-8, 9, 68, 81-
 82, 89, 91, 103-110, 117, 118,
 121-123, 165, 168, 169, 340;
 "Modern" — ("Pehlevi-
 Musulman" of Huart), 28-
 28, 80-81, 86-87; — script,
 7-10, 66-67, 72-77, 80, 81-82,
 152, 165, 205-206
 Palestine, 245
 Palmer, Professor E. H. —,
 254, 255
 Pamirs, 25, 35
 Panah-Khusraw (Fana-Khus-
 raw) 448
 Panjab, 33, 35, 376
 Pantheism, 297, 300, 427, 428,
 436, 438-444
 Papak (father of *Artakhshatr-*
i-Papakan or *Ardashir*
Babakan, q.v.), 70, 71, 93
 122, 137, 139-142, 153
 Paraclete, 395
 "Paradise of Light" (Mani
 chrean), 161
 Paris, 40, 41, 45, 447, 464
 Parsa, 4, 26, 32, 105, 128, 137,
 139, 143, 170, 200, 264, 347,
 360. See also *Fars*, *Persis*
 Parsi (Parsee), 4, 25, 42, 69,
 72, 96, 102, 206. See *Guebre*,
Magian, *Zoroastnan*
 "Parsi language." 81, 82
 Parthia (Parthava, Pahlava,
 Fahlal), 5, 36, 79, 94
 Parthians, 5, 41, 79, 81, 90, 96,
 103, 111, 119, 121, 136, 137,
 154, 158
 Parwiz, Khusraw —, 6, 12, 15,
 17, 107, 122, 129, 174, 181,
 182, 183, 194, 218, 266, 269
 Pashmina-push("Wool-clad"
 =Sufi), 297, 417
 Pashto (Pakhto), 28
 "Passing of Shahr-banu," 131
 Pataka, Patecius, *Uarhicioc*,
 Patricius, 157
 "Path" (Tariqat) of the
 Sufis, 441
 Paulus, H. E. G. —, 54
 Payne, John —, 444
 Pazend, 69, 77, 81, 8a, 101,
 106, 107
 Pazawan, Amir — (Mazan-
 daran poet), 83
 "Pehlevi - Musulman" (of
 Huart), 26, 27. See also
Pahlavi, *Modern* —
 Pentateuch, 29, 113, 479
 de Perceval, Caussin —, 212
 Persae (of Aeschylus), 91
 Persepolis, 5, 56, 62, 64, 66, 70
 93, 112-113, 118, 153
 Persian contributions to
 Arabic Literature and
 Science, 3-4, 204, 275, 278,
 445-448
 Persian influence on Arabs,
 251, 252, 255, 260, 278, 300
 Persian language, 5-7, and
passim

- Persian literature, Birth of modern —, 11-14, 340-341**
Persian Martyrs, Acts of the —, See Acts
"Persian," Meaning of the term —, 4-5
Persian scholar, Qualifications of —, 377
Περσαι (Persai), 122
Persis (=Parsa, Fars, q.v.), 4, 5, 25, 30, 79, 105
Pertsch, 449, 452
Petermann, 302
Pharaoh, 333, 334, 44°
Pharmacology, See Māḥallāq
Phatecius, 157
"Phil-Hellenes," 79
Philip III of France, 40
Philip of Macedon, 119
Philo-Judeus, 97, 381
Philology, Arabic —, 260, 269, 270, 275
Philology, Dangers of —, 36-
"Philosopher of the Arabs," 356. See al-Kindi
Philosophers, Neo-Platouist — in Persia, 167
Philosophy, 284, 288-289, 292-294, 804-307, 363, 364, 378-881, 437
Phoitiu, 21
Phraortes (Fravartish), 21
Pigeons, Carrier —, 396
Pindar (or Bundar) of Ray, 85, 86, 348, 437
Pir (spiritual director), 424
Piruz (Peroz, Firuz), 75, 121, 158
Piruz - i - Gushnaspdeh, 174, 182
Pishawar, 372
Pishdadi Dynasty, 55, 111-115, 119
Pisiyauvada, 31
Pits, People of the —, 175
Plato, 167
Pleroma, 408, 410
Plotinus, 420
Pluto, 114
Pococke, 41
Poetry, Origins of Persian —, 12-15, 18, 110
Pognon, M —, 302
"Point" (Nuqta), 98
Polak, 26, 27, 172
Poll-tax, 201. See fizya
Polo, 138; —bat, crescent moon compared to —, 463
Polygamy, 186, 288
Polyhistor, 21
"Polyphony," 72
Polytheists (Mushrikun), Mu'tazilites call their opponents —, 281
Pondichery, 46
Porphyry, 420
Portents of Fall of Persian Empire, 173
Portsmouth, 48
Portuguese, 302
Postel, William —, 40
Predestination, 981-283, 285-286, 386
"Pre-existent" (in Ismālli system), 414
Primal Matter (Hayyula), 408-409
Priscian (Neo-Platonist Philosopher), 421
Procopius, 169
Profanation of Tombs, 245
Proper names Arabicized, 263
Prosody, 275, 389, 471-474
Psalm of David, 113
Pseudo-Callisthenes, 118
PseudoSabeans of Harran (q.v.), 301-306
Ptolemy, 381
Pulwar River, 70
Puran - Dukht (Sasanian Queen), 174, 182
Puran, daughter of Hasan b. Sahl, and wife of al-Ma'mun, 255
Puritans, 37
Putiya, 94
Qaba'il = "Arabs" (as opposed to Shu'ub, "Gentiles"), 265
Qabus b. Washmgir, 371, 446, 466, 469, 470-471
Qabusiyya Dynasty, 207
Qadariyya sect, 279, 281-283
-Qaddah. See 'Abdu'llah b. Maymun
Qadisiyya, Battle of —, 6, 117, 174, 182, 195-197, 200, 202, 221, 247
-Qahir ('Abbasid Caliph), 364
Qahira. See Cairo
Qahataba, 244
-Qa'im (= -Māḥdi, q.v.), 408, 414
-Qa'im (Fatimid Caliph), 403
Qajar, 207
Qalansuwa (Persian hat, pi. Qalanis), 259, 330
Qaren, 121
Qarmat, Hamdan —, 396
Qarmati, Qirmati, 408. See Carmathians, Isma'ilis, Sect of the Seven
Qasida, 472, 474
-Qasim b. Burhan, 208
Abu'l-Qasim b. Abu'l-'Abbas, 467
Abu'l-Qasim -Dinawari, 365
Abu'l-Qasim Hibatu'llah b. Sina'u'l-Mulk, 321
Qasr-i-Shirin, 12
Qatran of Tabriz (Persian poet), 86, 462
Qazwin, 80, 86, 325
Qazwini (geographer), 14, 157, 287-258, 319-820, 323
Qississun (class of Manicheans), 164
Qizil, 472, 474
Qiwami of Ray (Persian poet), 437
Qiyam (the upright position in Prayer), 412
Qohrud (dialect), 26, 27, 80, 86
Quakers, 297, 417
Quatrain. 18. See Ruba'i
Quatremere, 76, 399
Qubad (or Kawad, q.v.), 134
-Qubawi (translator of Narshakhi), 368
Quhyar (brother of Maeyar, Q-v.), 334
Quietism, 297, 300, 427, 428
Qum, History of —, 374
Qumis, 314, 448
Qumri of Gurgan, Abu'l-Qasim Ziyad b. Muhammad — (Persian poet), 453, 466
-Qunna'i (disciple of -Hallaj), 431
***Qur'an, 12, 98, 102, 113, 119,* 166, 175,* 178,* 187, 191,* 200, 201,* 206, 213,* 217, 219, 220, 221, 228, 230*, 231, 236, 242, 260, 261, 265, 270, 271, 272, 274, 288, 289, 293, 303, 320,* 333,* 347, 357, 366, 374, 377, 379, 385, 387, 388, 406, 412-414,* 418, 432, 435, 442, 467, 477; —, created or uncreate, 284-285, 287, 290, 295**
Quraysh, 177, 213, 214, 216, 221, 260, 261, 264, 267, 295
Qurratu'l-'Ayn (the Babi heroine), 172
-Qushayri, 297
Qushuri, Ibn Nasr —, 433
Quss Bahram, 396
Qussu'n-Natif, Battle of — 200
Susta b. Luqa, 278, 306, 345
Sibn Qutayba, 15, 110, 169, 262, 268; 277, 324, 110, 887-388, 447
Qutrub, 277
Rabi'a (Tribe of), 242
Rabi'a-Adawiyya, 299, 300, 418, 424, 426
Rabshekeh, 66
Racial feeling, 114, 232-233, 242, 264-265. See also Subject Races
-Kadi ('Abbasid Caliph), 364
-Radi, -Sharif — (poet), 448
-Raffa' (poet), 370
Rafidi (pi. Rawafid), 314, 360-361. See Ghulat, Sect of the Seven, Sect of the Twelve, Shi'ites, &c.
Rafsinjan, 87.
'Rayi, 35- See Ranha, Ray
Raiaz (form of verse), 173
Rajputs, 372
Rakhsh, 316, 317
Ram (typifying the Farr-i-Kayani, or "Royal Splendour"), 137
Ram (Festival of —), 259, 475

- Ram-Hurtmifc (or -Hurmazd), 157, 347, 368
 Ranha, 26, 35. See *Ray*.
 Raqqa, 276
 Rashidi of Samarqand (Persian poet), 457
 Rashidu'd-Din Fadlu'llah (Persian historian), 392
 Rashidu'd-Din Sinan (grand master of the Syrian Assassins), 396
 "Ravens" (Blacks), 179
 Rawand (place), 315
 Rawandiyya or Rawandis, 240, 315-316
 Rawfaryad, 162
 Rawlinson, 63, 91, 92
 Rawnaqi (Persian poet), 468
 Rawdatu's-Safa (Persian history), 170
 Ray, 23, 32, 35, 79, 85, 86, 109, 131, 132, 137, 143, 145, 247, 313, 314, 350, 428, 448
 Abu Rayhan. See *-Biruni*
 -Razi, Abu Bakr Muhammad b. Zakariyya (physician), known in Europe as *Rhazes* 363
 "Readers" (Qurra), 228
 Realism, 294
 Recurrence of Ideas in Persia, 98-99, 100-101
 Red as a badge, 311, 312. See *Muhammii a*
 Red Cross Knights, 480
 Reid (missionary so named), 270
 Re-incarnation, 311. See *Return, Rij'at, Metempsychosis*
 Religion, Eastern and Western conceptions of—, 405, 406
Religious Systems of the Works (work of reference), 439, 442, 444
 Remanatlo, 380
 Renaissance, Persian —, 352, 375-376, 465
 "Renegades" (Ahlu'r-Ridda) 194
 "Return" (Rij'at), 310-311, 323, 327-328, 363, 435
 Rhagae, 26. See *Ray*
 Rhazes, 363. See *-Razi*
 Rhetoric, 389, 473
 Rich, Claude J —, 64
 Richardson (Persian lexicographer), 57
 Rida, Imam 'Ali —, 284, 429
 Rida-quli Khan (Persian historian and writer), 170, 312, 449
 Rida-quli Khan of Behbahan (dialect poet), 87
 -Rida, -Sharif —, 207. See *-Radi*
 Rieu, 54, 450
 Rija b. -Walid -Iafahani (Samanid poet), 365
Rij'at, See Return, Metempsychosis.
Risala-i-Hawraiyya, 416
Risala-i-Qushayriyya, 417
 Rivayats (Zoroastrian), 48, 105
 Roman, Alexander the —, 118, 139 See also *Alexander the Great*.
 Romans, 305
 Rome, 40, 382, 472
 Rope-trick, 431
 Rosen, Baron Victor —, 15
 Rosenzweig, 444
 Rosenzweig-Schwannau, 361
 Roth, 68
 "Royal Splendour" (Farr-i Kayani), 128, 137, 143, 144
 Ruba'i, 472-473, 476. See *Quatrain*
 Ruckert, 389
 *Rudagi (Persian poet), 13, 18-17, 82, 340, 865 356, 359, 368, 452, 454, 488-488, 473
 Rue (sipand), used as a fumigation against the Evil Eye, 452
 Ru'in Dizh ("the Brazen Fortress"), 147
 Ru'in-tan (epithet of Isfandiyar), 150
 Ruknu'd-Dawla (Buwayhid), 364
 Ruku' (position in prayer), 412
 Rum, 480
Rumi See Jalalu'd-Din
 Ibnu'r-Rumi (poet), 357
 Ruqayya (daughter of the Prophet), 214
 Ibn Rushd, 40. See *Avertoa*
 Rustam (mythical hero), 116, 117, 269; — (general), 117, 182, 194-195, 197-198
 Rustami, Abu Said — (poet), 268, 374
 Rylands Library, 449, 452
 S (Sanskrit) = H, Persian), 34
 Sabseans, 302-306, 384, 387
 Sabalan (mountain), 325
 Sabat Abi Nuh (place), 396
 Sabbath = Shanbadh, 160
 -Sabi ("the Sabzean"), Ibiahim b. Hilal —, 372
 Sab'i, Sab'iyya, 407. See *Istna'ilis, Sect of the Seven, &c.*
 -Sabiq ("the Pre-Existent"), 414
 Sabuktagin, 371, 372, 376
 Sachau, Dr. E. —, 123, 154, 158, 163 169, 247, 308, 318, 352, 469
 Sacrament of Babak, 327
 de Sacy, Silvestre —, 53, 57, 58, 59, 61, 63, 70, 71, 393, 407, 410-415
 Sa'd b. Abi Waqqas, 194, 196-199, 388
 Sa'd of Warawin, 478
 Ibn Sa'd (secretary of -Waqidi), 284, 345
 Sadah (Festival of), 112
 Sadaqat (Alms), 201
 Sad Dar (Zoroastrian Catechism), 43, 109
 *Sa'di (Persian writer), 52, 85, 188, 145, 294, 343, 389, 423, 487
***Safar-nama of Nasir-i-Khusraw, 86, 400**
 Safawi Dynasty, 294
 -Saffah, '2x0. See *Abut-Abbas*.
 Saffari Dynasty, 6, 13, 341, 346-349, 352-355, 359, 445, 450, 451, 453, 473
 Sag (dog), 26
 Sagartia, 33
 Saghani (Chaghani) Dynasty, 244
Sagstan (Sistan), Wonders of—, 109. See also *Sistan*
 Sahibu'l-Amr, 414. See also *Mahdi*
 -Sahib Isma'il b. 'Abbad, 374, 375, 446, 453, 463, 464, 460, 467, 474
 Sahibu'l-Khal, 402
 Sahibu'n-Naqa, 402
 Sahibu'sh-Shama, 402
 Sahibu'sh-Shurta (Captain of the Guard), 432
 Sahibu'z-Zaman, 408. See also *Mahdi*
 Sahibu'z-Zanadiqa (Inquisitor appointed to detect Manichaeans), 158, 307
Sahih (of -Bukhari), 351
 Sahl b. 'Abdu'llah of Shushtar (mystic), 357
 Sahl b. Harun (-Ma'muns librarian), 267
 Ibn Sahl. See *Hasan b. Sahl and Fadl b. Sahl*
 Abu Sahl -Nawbakhti, 429
 Said [b. 'Abdu'l-'Aziz . . .], governor of Khurasan, 237
 -Sa'id, -Amir —. See *Nos II b. Ahmad*
 Said b. -'As, 216
 Sa'id b. Batnq, 366. See *Eutychiuss*
 Said, grandson of -Qaddah, 409. See *'Ubaydu'llah -Mahdi*
 -Sa'id -Harashi (general), 322
 Sa'id b. -Musayyib (traditionist), 273
 Abu Sa'id b. Abu'l-Khayr (Persian mystic and poet), 371, 416, 437
 Abu Sa'id Hasan b. Bahrain, 402. See *-Jannabi*.
 Abu Sa'id Muhammad b. Mudhaffar b. Muhtaj -Saghani (Chaghani), 461
 Abu Sa'id -Naqqash (author of a *History of ike Sufis*), 436
 Abu Sa'id -Rustam! (poet), 268, 374

- Saint-Martin, 63
 -Saji, Abu 'All — (poet), 475
 -Sajjad. See *Zaynu'l-'Abtam*
 Saka, 94
 Sakisa (harper), 18
 Sal'a, 192
 Saladin (Salahu'd-Din), 54, 398
 Salamanca, 40
 Salamiyya (in Syria), 40
 Sale's *Alcoran*, 187, 188
 Salemann, 70, 83, 107, 479
 Salih (prophet), 387
 Salin (Persian accountant), 205
 Salih b. 'Abdu'l-Quddus (poet), 307
 Abu Salik of Gurgan (Persian poet), 355, 453
 Salisbury, E. —, 203
 Salm, 115, 116, 128
 Abu Salma (Abbasid propagandist), 243, 246, 257
 Salman the Persian, 203, 204, 297
 Salman Sawaji (Persian poet), 437
 Salmonassar-Sargon, 20
 Salsette, 103
 Sam. See *Shem*
 Sam (the son of Nariman), 116
 Saman, 207, 352, 461, 467, 468
 Samani, Dynasty, 6, 15, 16, 123, 207, 317, 341, 346, 348-352, 354, 355, 358, 359, 363, 365, 307, 368, 371, 372, 374-376, 396, 445, 446, 450, 451, 453, 455, 456, 460, 461, 463, 465, 467, 474, 477
 -Sam'ani, 456
 Samaria, 20
 Samarqand, 164, 456,
 Samarra, 342. See *Surra-man-ra'a*
 Samawa, Vale of —, 174
 Samit (in Isma'ili system), 409, 413
 Samma' ("Listener," "Auditor," a grade of the Mani chaeans), 159, 165
 Samnan, 86
 San'a (in -Yaman), 176, 273
 Sana'i (Persian mystical poet), 416, 437
 Sanam (stronghold of -*Muqanna'*, q.v.), 321
 Sanl'a (a governor's following), 233
Sanjan, Story of —, 47, 109
 Sanskrit, 34, 37, 56, 59, 63, 64, 67-69, 89, 106, 167, 419, 477
 Sapid-Jamagan ("the White-clad"), 318. See -*Mubayyida*
 Sara, Saraw (in Azarbayjan), 325
 Sarakhs, 35, 244
 Sargon, 21
 Abu Sarh, 216
 Sari-Raffa (poet), 306-307.
 Sarv (or Surv), 115
 -Sarvi (or-Sarwi), AbuVala — (poet), 476
 Sasan, 117, 118, 12a, 137, 139-142, 268
 Sasanian Dynasty, 4-7, 9-12, 14-18, 31, 36, 87, 39, 57-88, 61, 67, 70-71, 78, 79, 80, 91, 93, 96, 97, 103, '04, 108, 111, 117-122, 127-184, 212, 220, 283, 259, 262, 305, 364, 388". 392, 419, 480
 Satagydae, 94
 Satih (soothsayer), 173-174
 Saturn (planet), 458, 461
 Savary de Breves, 41
 Sawa, Lake of —, 173-174; — Town, 244
 Sawad, 196. See *Chaldeea*
 Sawad b. 'Amr, 192
 Saxons, 5
 Sayce, Professor —, 64
 Sayf b. Dhu Yazan, 178-181, 262
 Sayfu'd-Dawla, 370-372, 446
 Saysaniyya (Bih-afaridh's followers so called), 310
 -Sayyid-Himyari, 276
 Sayyidu't-Ta'ifa (Junayd so called), 427
 Say y ids, 101
 Schefer, 85, 86, 169, 171, 312, 313, 353, 374, 400, 456, 478
 Schmidt, C. —, 160
 Schmolders, 212
 Scholastic Philosophy, 381, 382, 386, 422
 Schultz, 63
 Sciences, Classification of —, 379-383
 Scorpion, Tresses compared to —, 461
 Scot, Michael —, 40
 Scotch and English, 33
 Script and creed associated in East, 8-9
 Sebeos, 168
 "Sect of the Seven," 130, 229, 296, 352, 391-415. See also *Carmathians, Ghulat, Isma'its, Fatimid Caliphs, &c.*
 "Sect of the Twelve," 130 I 229, 246, 283, 296, 392, 393, 413, 429. See *Shi'ites*.
 Sects of Islam, 279. See also *Ibn Haunt, Shahrstani*
 Seleucidae, 480
 Seligmann, 12, 450, 478
 Selim I (Ottoman Sultan), 209
 Seljuqi Dynasty, 6, 312, 348, 449, 451, 464, 474
 Semitic influences on Persians, 36, 37
 Sennacharib, 20
 Ibn Serapion, 367
 Serpent, World compared to —, 467
 Seth, 162
 Seven, The Number —, 146, 310, 408-412
 Severus, Bishop —, 399
 Shabdiz (horse of Khusraw Parwiz), 17, 18
 Shabib b. Dah (one of Abu Muslim's *da'is*), 310
 Shabib b. Yazid-Shaybani, 232
 Shabistari, Mahmud — (author of the *Gulshan-i-Raz*), 444
 Shaburqan (book of Manes composed for Shapur), 154, 156, 158, 163, 105
 Shaft 'i, -Imam —, 277, 295, 386
 Shafi'ite school, 294-295
 Shahan-shah, Title of —, 66, 71, 75, 76
 *Shahid of Balkh (Persian poet), 453, 484, 455
 Shah-i-Zanan, 131. See *Shahrbanu*.
 *Shahnama ("Book of Kings") of Firdaws, 15, 69, 79, 88, 108, 110-128, 136-138, 140-142, 144-148, 147-180, 151, 166, 169, 372, 460, 464; Arabic translation of — by -Bundari, 43, 115 464; of Daqiqi, 372, 460, 473; other Persian versions of —, 123, — of Gushtasp (= *Yathar-i-Zanran*, q.v.), 108. See also *Khuday-nama*
 Shah-Parand (grand-daughter of Yazdigird III), 317-318
 -Shahrzuri (biographer of Philosophers), 293
 Shahr-banu, Bibi — (daughter of Yazdigird III, said to have been married to -Husayn b. 'Ali, the 'Ihrid Imam, and therefore called "Mother of Nine Imans"), 130-133
 Shahr-baraz (usurper), 129, 174, 182
 Shau-i-gir, 147, 150
 *Shahnstani (author of the *Ki tabu'l-Milalwa 'n-Nihal*), 188, 169, 220, 221, 279, 289, 296, 810-811, 312, 313, 314, 322, 323, 328, 396, 420
 Shahriyar (father of Yazdigird III), 195
 Shakespear, 13, 82
 Snakir (*da't* of -*Hallai*, q.v.), 431
 Ibn Shakir, 331
 Abu Shalala, 397
 Shamanists, 163
 Shamsa (in Pahlawi), 58
 Shams-i-Qays (Persian writer on Prosody and Rhyme), 473
 Shams-i-Tabriz (Persian mystic and poet), 167, 420, 440
 Shamsu'd - Din - Andakhudi (author of an Anthology of "post-classical" Arabic poets), 448
 Shamsu'd-Din Iltatmish, 450
 Shamsu'l-Ma'ali. See *Qabus b. Washmghir*
 Shanbadh (- Sabbath), 160
 Shapur (place in Fars), 123, 151
 Shapur I, 10, 93, 103, 138, 150-159, 366

- Shapur II, 75, 96, 97, 101
 Shaiq of Balkh (mystic), 299
 -Sha'rani (*da'i* of -Hallaj, q.v.), 435
 Shargh (or Targh ? = Chakhra of Vendidad), 35
 *Sharif-i-Mujallidi (Persian poet), 15, 16
 Ibn Sharwin (Prince of Tabaristan), 329
 Shathil (Seth), 162
 -Shaybani, 'Ali b. Harun — (Samanid poet), 365
 -Shaykhu'l-Yunani, Plotinus so called by the Muslims, 420
 Shea, 54
 Sheba, Queen of —, 385. See *Btqlts*.
 Shell, Lady —, 312
 Shekina, 128
 Shem, 114, 116, 409
 -Shibli (Sufi), 298, 367, 433-434
 Shibli b. -Munaqqa-Azdi, 32 s
 Shid (= Khshaeta), 113
 Shihabu'd-Din Suhrawardi, 423
 Shi'ites, 98, 100, 101, 130, 131, 203, 214, 220, 226-229, 231, 232, 236, 238-240, 243, 246, 247, 282, 276, 278, 279-280, 288-285, 292, 295-296, 310, 311, 314, 315, 328, 342, 343, 345, 348, 349-350, 332, 358, 360, 362-363, 364, 367, 375, 386, 391-415 *passim*, 429, 430, 437. See also *Carmatham*., *Fatimid Caliphs*, *Ghulat*, *Isma'iths*, "*Sect of the Seven*," "*Sect of the Twelve*"
 Shikand-gumantk-vijar (Pahlawi book), 106, 157
 Shimr, 225, 226, 228, 230
 Shi'r (Poetry), Etymology of the word, 451
 Shiraz, 19, 70, 85, 364, 437
 Shinn (mistress of Khusr. tw Parwiz), 17
 Shirin (Sirin), one of the captives of Jalula and his sons, 204, 263
 Shiyu'e, 56, 113, 174, 181
 *Abu Shu'ayb Salih b. Muhammad of Herat (Persian poet), 454
 *Abu Shukur of Balkh (Persian poet), 466-467
 Shurat ("Sellers of their lives"), 221. See *Khartjites*
 Shushtar, 434
 Shu'biyya, 265-269, 277, 278, 336, 345, 357
 Sibawayhi I (grammarian), 261, 276-278
 Si-bokht, 146
Siddhanta (= *Sindhind*), 160
 -Siddiq (name of a class of Manichaeans and origin of name *Zindiq*, q.v.), 160, 165
Sidm Rabba (book of Manicheans), 302
 Sifatiiyya (sect), 279
 Siffin, Battle of —, 218-219, 221
Sifru'l-Asfar (Manichaean book), 156
Sifru'l Jababira (Manichaean book), 156
 Signacula oris, manuum et sinus, 165
Stkandar- (or *Iskandar-*) *Nama* of Nidhami of Ganja, 119
 Ibnu's- Sikkit (grammarian and Shi'ite), 343, 345
 Silhin (fortress in -Yaman), 175
 -Simari (disciple of -Hallaj), 431-432
 Simuir, 66
 Simplicius (Neo-Platonist), 421
 Simurgh (mythical bird), 121
 Ibn Sina, 40. See *Avicenna*
 Sinan, Abu Sa'id — Harrani, 304
 Sinan b. Thabit b. Qurra, 367
 Sinbadh the Magian, 311, 313, 314, 323
 Sind (= Hind), 34, 347
Sindhind (= *Siddhanta*), 160
 Sinimmar (Sinnimar), 175
 Sipand (= *Rue*, qv), 452
 Sipihi (Persian poet), 468
 Siqadanj (near Merv), 242
 -Sirafi (grammarian), 372
 -Sirat, Bridge of —, 107
 Sirawand (near Nishapur), 308
 Sirri -Sagati (Sufi), 424
St-ruxa (Zoroastrian), 48, 101
 Sistan (Sagistan, Sajistan), 87, 109, 116, 117, 123, 205, 317, 346, 347, 350, 359, 448
 Siwand (dialect of —), 26-27, 87
 Siyamak, 112
 Siyaq (form of cypher), 67
 **Siyasat-nama* ("Treatise on Government") of the Nidhamu'l-Mulk, 169, 171-172, 312, 313, 323, 324, 328, 349, 383, 401, 456
 Skudra, 94
 de Slane, Baron McGuckin —, 208, 320. See *Ibn Khallikan*
 Slavery, 186
 Smerdes (= Bardiya), 31, 32
Social Code of Zoroastrians, 108
 Socialism, 170
 Socin, 83
 Solomon, 112-114, 385
 Sol-takm, 263
 "Sons of Tenderness," 164 ;
 "— of Knowledge," 164 ;
 "— of Understanding," 164-165 ;
 "— of the Unseen," 165 ;
 "— of Intelligence," 165. See also *Manichaans*, who are divided into these five grades
 "Sons of the Nobles" (*Banu'l-Ahrar*), Persian Settlers in -Yaman so named, 181
 Sophists, 382
 σοφός, 269, 417
 Spain, 9, 215, 245, 251, 266, 279, 294, 340, 381
 σπᾶσα (Medic word for "dog"), 26
 Span (Avestic word for "dog"), 26
 Spada, 64, 94
 Spencer, Mr. —, 47, 50
 Spendedat (Isfandiyyadh, Isfandiyyar), 116
 Spiegel, 33, 36, 62, 63, 66, 68, 91, 116, 155, 161, 162
 Spitta, 290, 291
 Sprenger, 188, 452
Sufismus (by Tholuck), 362
 Stakhar Papakano (= Istakhr), 97, 118, 139
 Stanley Lane-Poole, 214, 254. See also *Lane-Poole*
 Steiner, 279, 281, 282, 288, 289, 293
 Steinschnelder, 368
 Stolze, 64, 153
Stat-yaskt, 97
 Strabo, 5
 Στρυωνία, 23-24
 Stylite, Joshua the —, 134
 Subject Races, 235, 237, 241, 247. See also *Mawali*, *Racial Feeling*
 "Sub-Parthian, coins, 80
 "Subsequent" (in Isma'ili System), 414
 Suf ("wool"), 297
 Sufi System, Brief outline of
 Sufis', 167-168, 282, 908, 296-801, 312, 881-383, 367, 873, 386, 416-444
Sufis, History of—, by Abu Sald-Naqqash, 436
 Sufyan-Thawri (Sufi), 417, 418, 424-426, 434
 Abu Sufyan, 215, 261
 Sughd, 35, 94, 164, 268, 322, 331, 333
 Suhrab (Rustam's son), 116
 Suhrak, 325
 Suhuf (of Abraham), 113
 Sujud (position in Prayer), 412
 Ibn Sukkara, 348
 -Sukkari (philologist), 357
 -Sukkari, Abu'i-Fadl — (poet), 476
 -Sulafa (one of the names given to *Shahr-banu*, q.v.), 131
 Sulayman Mountains, 372
 Sulayman. See *Solomon*
 Sulayman (Umayyad Caliph), 215
 Sulayman b. 'Ali (uncle of -Saffah, the first 'Abbasid Caliph), 254
 Abu Sulayman Muhammad b. Nasr -Bust! -Muqaddadi (one of the *IkhwamisSa'a*, q.v.), 293

- Suli, Abu Ishaq Ibrahim—
(poet), 263, 310
-Suli (historian), 367, 430, 435
Sumenan, 23
Sunnis 224, 276-277, 280,
284, 286, 290, 294-295, 298,
3". 343, 348, 351, 423, 429,
430, 437
Surat, 44, 46-48, 206
Surkh'alam ("Red-Stan-
dards"), 323 See *Muham-
mirda, Red as a Badge*
Surra-man-ra'a (=Samarra),
329, 336, 342
Sus (place), 430, 434
Sus (in Isma'ili System), 409,
413
Susa, Susiana, 19, 64, 94
Syncellus, 21
Syria, 128, 218, **223**, **224**, 236,
238, 243, 251, 263, 272, 276,
278, 283, 298, 305, 358, 388,
396, 398, 400, 402, 410, 445,
448
Syriac, 14, 21, 41, 42, 73, 78, 89,
117, 118, 127, 134, 135, 160,
163, 165, 304
Syrian Desert, 173
Syrian heathens. 395. See
Harran, Sabceans
Syrians, 4, 8, 103, 134, 266,
305, 345, 373, 396; —as par-
tisans of Umayyads, 217,
218, 221, 238
Swinton, Dr.—, 50
- Ta'abbata Sharran (heathen
Arab poet). 191-193
Tabaqatu'l-Kabir (of Ibn
Sa'd), 278
Tabaqatu'sh-Shu'ara (Bio-
ographies of Poets), 278, 345,
358, 447, 449
*Tabari (the historian), **10**,
14, 110, 114, 121, 138, 152,
158, 169, 175, 183, **233**, 258,
270, 284, 285, 290, 307, 314,
315, 316, 317, 318, 321, 323,
327, 328, 329, 336, 343, **360-**
861, 380, 428, 429, 455, 477,
478; Persian translation of
—s History, n, no, 356,
369, 455, 477-478; —s Com-
mentary on the Qur'an, 478
Tabaristan, 8, 10, 103, 200, 207,
314, 330, 334, 347, 348, 359,
371, 392, 446, 453, 466, 469,
470. See also *Gilan, Mazan-*
daran.
Tabi'un. See *Followers*
Tableau littéraire du Khor-
assan., 365
Tabriz, 86, 98, 325
Tabrizi (commentator of
-*Hamas*), **278**
Tadhkira'u'l-Awliya (of
'Attar), 362
Tadhkiras (Memoirs) of Per-
sian poets, 449
Taft, 131
- Taghazghaz, 164
Tahirid Dynasty, 6, 12, 278,
341, 340-347, 355, 450, 452,
453
Tahir "Dhu'l Yaminayn"
(founder of Tahirid
Dynasty), 346
Tahir (grandson of 'Amr b
Layth the Saffarid), 359
Tahir, Baba —, 26. See *Baba*
Tahir
Abu Tahir -Jannabi, 402, 403.
See -*Jannabi*
Abu Tahir -Khatuni, 12, 449,
Ibn Abi Tahir, 246
Tahmurath (legendary Pei-
sian king), 80, 112, 115
Takht-i-Jamshid, 113. See
Persetolis
Takht-i-Sulayman, 113
Talaqan, 244, 397, 428
Talha, 217, 201, 388
-Ta'i ('Abbasid Caliph) 371
Tali ("the Subsequent" in the
Isma'ili system), 414
Tajaribu't-Umam (of Ibn
Miskawayh), 361
Abu Talib, 193, 214
Ta'lim ("Teaching" in
Isma'iii system), 408
Tahmi, 407. See Carnathians,
Isma'ilis, Sect of the Seven
Tahish (dialect), 27, 86
Talmud, 256
Tamerlane (Timur-i-lang, i.e.,
Lame Timur), 86, 122, 423
Tamil character, 103
Tamim (tribe of —), 221
Tamim b. Muizz (Fatmid
poet), 373
Abu Tammam (poet), 265, 278,
330, 336
Tanasukh-i-arwah (Transmi-
gration of Souls), 279, 287,
311, 320, 327, 328. See also
Metempsychosis, Return,
Rij'at, Re-incarnation
Ta'rikh-i-Bayhaq, 331
Ta'rikh-i-Guzida, 157
Tanqat ("the Path" of the
Suas), 441
Tartar (Tatar more correctlj),
197. See *Mongol*
Tarun, 266
Tasawwuf. See *Sufism*
Tashbih. See Anthropolom-
orphism
Tasnifs (Ballads), 17
de Tassy Garcin —, **444**
Tauler, 297, 421
Tavernier, 42
Tawhid (Sufi), 439
Ta'wil (Allegorical Interpre-
tation of Isma'ilis), 159, 285,
393, 394, 414
Tawm (Angel), 158
Tawrat. See Pentateuch
Taylasan, 335, 343
Tayy, Tribe of —, 265
Ta'ziyas, 131, 132, 227
Teispes, 92. See *Chaispish*
- Ten, Number —, 412
Tennyson, Lord Alfred —, **210**
Teresh, 20
Texeira, 42
*Tha'alibi, 14, 255, 317, 354,
358, **388-368**, 368, 374, **445**,
450, 470, 474
Thabit, Abu'l-Hasan —,
(grandson of Thabit b.
Qurra), 304
Thabit b. Qurra, 304, 306, 358,
367
Thamud (tribe), 430
Thatagush (Satagydae), 94
Thawr, Cave of —, 330
Theodore Abucara, 282
Theodosius, Bishop —, 351
Theophanes, 169, 172
Theophilus, 329
Theresa, Santa —, 299, 421
Thevenot, 42
Thibet, 159
Ibn Abi Thiyab, Abu Muham-
mad —, 365
Tholuck, 362, 444
Thomas (Pahlawi numis-
matologist), 151, 152
Thousand and One Nights
("Arabian Nights"), 254,
277
Thraetaona (Traitana, Feri-
dun), 115
Thucydides, 94
Thumb, 64
Tiglath Pileser, 20
Tigrakhuda, 94
Tigris, 173, 184, '97, 199, 336,
343, 429, 432, 434
Tihran, 19, 2b, 35, 115, 131
Timotheus the Persian, 172
Timur-i-lang. See *Tameilanc*
-Tirmidhi (traditionist), 351
Toledo, 40
Tornberg, 360
Traditions, 12. See *Ifadilh*.
Transoxiana, 163, 247, 252,
314, 315, 321, 322, 335, 340,
365, 376, 434
ov *TrkXeia*, **153**
Trinity, how understood by
Sufis, 443
Troyer, 54
Trumpp, 300
Truthfulness of Persians, 167
Tubba's (Kings of -Yaman),
174
Tuj, 128. See also *Tur*
Tukharistan, 244, 347
Tur (son of Fencun), 115, 116.
See also *Tuj*
Turanian, 23, 24, 25, 74, 79
116, 121
Turkey, 227, 437
Turkish guards, slaves, and
vassals, 6, 291, 339, 342, 345,
372, 460
Turkish influence on Islam,
251, 254-255, 263, 292, 294,
318, 322, 342, 351, 364, 368,
375-376, 424, 454
Turkish language, 41, 42, 00,
379; — written in Arme-

man and Greek character, 8,9
 Turkish peoples, Persian literature produced by —, 3; antipathy between — and Persians, 116,128, 266, 334-335
 Turkistan, 434
 Tus (town in Khurasan), 123 : — identified with Urva of the Avesta, 35
 Twelve Gospels (Manichæan), 156
 Twelve, The Number —, 408, 414
 Tychem, 57, 58, 60,61, 71
 Typal Love, 442
 Typography, Oriental —, 41

U

'Ubayd-i-Zakani (Persian satirical poet), 389
 Abu 'Ubayda -Jarrah, 297
 Abu' 'Ubayda Ma'mar b -Muthanna (Iranophile scholar), 269, 277
 'Ubaydu'llah the [Fatimul] Mahdi, 359, 409
 'Ubaydu'llah b. Tibril b. Bokht-Yishu' (physician), 367
 'Ubaydu'llah b. 'Umar, 215
 'Ubayf, 334
 'Ulatna-t-Islam (Zoroastrian work), 109
 Ultra-Shi'ites. See *Ghulat*
 'Ulumu'l-Awwalin ("Sciences of the Ancients"), 414
 'Uman, 201, 359
 'Umar b. -Khatab (Orthodox Caliph), 51,130,133. 174,194. 195, 196, 199, 202, 203, 205, 210, 213, 214, 215, 229, 235 361, 297, 343, 349. 391, 437. 450
 'Umar b. 'Abdu'l-Aziz (Umayyad Caliph), 215, 219, 234-236
 *Umara, Abu Mansur — of Merv (Persian poet), 467
 'Umayr (officer of 'Abdu'l-Malik), 238
 Umayya, 214
 Umayyad Caliphs, 103, 163, 208, 209-247, 251, 263, 265, 266, 273, 274, 279, 281, 283, 313; — of Spāhain, 215, 245, 251, 398
 Umm Kulthum, 214
 Unity (Wahid= 19 in Babi system), 98
 Universal Reason, Universal Soul, 408, 409
 Unsuri (Persian poet), 389, 456, 474
 Uqba, 216
 Ibn 'Uqba (biographer of Prophet), 275
 'Urfa, 134
 Urva (of Vendidad identified With Tus), 35

Ushhanj, 112. See *Hushang*
 Ushmunayn, Bishopric of —, 399
 Ustadsis (heresiarch), 247, 317
 Ustrushna, 252, 331, 333
 Utamish, 342
 Utanj Rayhani (or Zanjani), dialect poet, 86
 -'Utbi (historian of Gbazzawi Dynasty), 456, 457, 460, 463
 'Uthman (Orthodox Caliph), 194, 195, 210, 212-218, 220, 222, 258, 261, 262, 349, 391
 'Uthman b. Nahik, 316
 Abu 'Uthman Sa'id b. Humayd b. Bakhtagan (Shu'ubi writer), 268
 -Utrush, Sayyid — of Tabaristan, 359, 475
 'Uyumu'l-Akhbar (of Ibn Qutayba), 15, 277

Vach- (root), 27
 Vaekereta (of Vendidad, identified with Kabul), 35
 Valerian (Emperor), 151
 Van, 63
 Vanishun (dialect of —), 27
 •Van Vloten, 212, 230, 232, 233. 235, 239-243, 245, 246 267, 318, 361. 372,378
 Varena, The "Four-cornered" —, 26, 35, 114
 Vatican (Library), 450
 Vaughan's *Hours with the Mystics*, 421, 424, 444
 Vedanta philosophy, 300, 301, 419
 Vedas, 34, 69, 301
 Yedic period, 28
 Vegetarianism amongst ancient Persians, 115
 Vehrkanā (Hyrcania, Gurgan), 26, 35
 "Veiled Prophet of Khurasan," 247, 318-323. See *-Muqantut'*
 Vendidad, 25, 26, 28, 34, 44, 45. 47, 48, 97-99, 141, 169
 Venus (Anahita, Nahid), 95, 461, 467
 Verse-forms of Persians and Arabs, 471-474
 Verse-translations from Arabic into Persian and vice versa, 463-465. 467
 Vicar of Bray, 280
 Vienna (Library), 383, 450, 478
 Villon Society, 444
 Virtues of the Turks, Treatise by -Jahidh on —, 351
 Vishtaspa (=Gushtasb, Hystaspes, q.v.), 28, 61, 02, 92-95. 116, 142
 Vispcrd, 48, 99
 Vivanha, Vivanjhan, 114
 Vlyakhna (month), 31

Vizier. See *Wazir*.
 Vohu-mano, 97,1x7. See also *Bahman*
 Vologeses (Balasb), 96, 97
 Vullers, 460, 468

W

Ibn Wadih, 150. See *-Ya'qubi*.
 Wabb b. If unabbih, 373
 Wahhabi sect, 221
 Wahid (Babi "Unity" of 19), 98
 Wahriz (Persian general), 152, 180,181
 Ibnu'l- Wabshiyya, 357
 Wales, 446
 -Walid (Umayyad Caliph), 163, 215, 231, 317
 Wahd b. 'Uqba, 216, 218
 -Walwalaji, Abu 'Abdi Hah Muhammad b. Salih — (Persian poet), 467
 Wamiq and 'Adhra, Romance of —, 12, 347
 Waqid b. 'Amr-Tamimi, 324-325
 -Waqidi (historian), 261, 277, 278, 284, 345
 "War of the Methods" (Philological and Traditional), 68
 Warzanin, 350
 Washngir, 365
 Wasif (Turkish officer), 342
 Wasil b. 'Ata-Ghazzal (founder of Mu'tazilite sect), 281
 -Wasit (town), 302, 349, 433,
 -Wathiq ('Abbasid Caliph), 251, 254, 284, 285, 290, 336
 Wayak (in Haji-abad inscription), 153
 Wazir, Office of —, 255-357
 Weil, Dr. Gustav —, 211, 272
 Wessex, 5
 West, Dr. E. W. —, 57, 59,68, 70, 81, 98,103-106, 109, 151, 159,169
 Westergaard, 43, 64, 68
 Wheelock, Abraham —, 19,41
 Whinfield, 282, 441, 444
 White as a colour-badge, 311, 312. See *Mubayyida, Sapid-Jamagan*
 Wickham (place), 48, 49
 "Widow," "Son of the—" (in Manichæan System), 162
 William the Conqueror, 118
 Wind, Calling the—, 366
 Windischmann, 68
 Wine-drinking, 459-460
 Wine, Poetical description of —, 462
 "Wise Child" (Kudak-i-dana), 328
 Wives, Community of —. See *Mazdak*
 Wizards, 366
 Wolfe Tone (Irish patriot), 346

- 1 typirymtfreounclaton, 414,430- See *Pashmina*
- World compared to agake,
- "World-wise" (Hakimatu'd-Dahr in Manichaean system), 162
- Worm of Kirman, 138, 115-
- Wright, Dr. W. —, 134, 169, 191, 221, 375
- Writing, Art of—amongst ancient Arabs, ; — amongst ancient Persians, 9; — highly valued by Manichwans, 165; cf. 431
- Wistenfeld, 169, 372, 973,381, 387
- Xenophon, 91
- Xerxes, 56, 61, 79,92, 113
- Yafil, 424
- Yahya-Barmald ("the Barmecide"), 259, 277
- Yahya b. Bitriq, 277
- Yahya b. Ma'adh of Ray (mystic), 323, 418
- Yahya b. Masawayh, 345
- Yahya b. Zayd (great-grandson of -Husayn), 322
- Abu Yahya Tahir b. -Fadl -Saghani (Chaghani), Amir —, 467
- Yaksum (Abyssinian King), 178
- Varna (in Hindu mythology), 56,80, 113
- Yaman (-Yemen), 152, 173-176, 178, 180, 181, 183, 192, 201, 244, 262, 203, 358, 382, 388, 402, 405
- Yaminu'd -Dawbu See *Mahmud of Ghaxna*
- Yaminud -Din Faryumadi (Persian poet), 437
- Ya'qub b. Layth -Saffari, 13, 346-348,349, 352-354,473
- Ya'qub (grandson of Amr b.' Layth-Saffari), 359
- *-Ya'qubi (historian), 110,, 131, 180-181, 188-187, 158, 169,229,230, 231, 239, 241; 244, 246, 307, 314, 317, 318, 321,333,167-888
- Yaqut (geographer), 14. 15, 321
- Yasar (Persian captive), 263, 266
- Yaants, 97,100
- Yasna, 44, 48, 63, 67, 68, 99, 104
- Yathrib (ancient name of -Madina, q.v.), 132
- *Fatimatu'd-Dakr (of-Tha'-Zamsama ("imimbling" el Zandakih, 150. See also Zandaniji (or Zand-pichi), 468
- Zanj Rebellion, 349-330, 356, 401
- Zanjan (town), 325, 378
- Zanjani (-Zinjani), Abu'l-Hasan 'All b. Harun — (one, of the *Ikhwanu 's-Safa*, q.v.), 393
- Zaradusht. See *Zoroaster*
- Zaradushtakan, Sect of —, 169. See *Mazdak*
- Zarattlsht. See *Zoroaster*
- Zaratusht-Khurragan (master „ of *Maxdak*, q.v.), 169, 170
- Zaratushtnama*, 43,100 ' ,
- Zrowp (old Persian book), 336
- Zargun (near Persepolis), 70
- Zariadras, Romance of —, 121
- Zarir, Romance of — 9, 108, X21, 138
- Zarwan Akarana ("Boundless Time"), 4x4
- Zawzan, 308
- Zawzani, Abu 'Ali — (Samanid poet), 365
- Zawzani, Abu Muhammad 'Abdu'l-Kafi — (author of *Hamasatu 'dh - Dhurafa*), 454
- Zayd-'Alawi, 3x5 ' ,
- Zayd b. Rifa'a (one of the *Ikhwanu 's-Safa*), 293
- Abu Zayd (Governor of 'Uman), 201
- Abu Zayd-Balkhi (geographer), 372
- Zaydan (or Dandan), 407
- Zaydi sect (of Shi'itea), 392
- Zaynu'l 'A'bidin (fourth Imam of the Shites), 229, 239, 409
- Zaynatu'x Zaman* (Biography of poets by -Andakhudi), 448
- Ibnu's -Zayyat, 164, 253, 331-333, 351
- Zefre (dialect of —), 27
- Zend*, 22-25, 43-44 56, 58, 78, 79, 81. See *Avesta*,
- Zhukovskii, Valentin —, 27, 83,416
- Zikrawayhi (Carmathian leader), 358, 359,402
- Zindiq (pl. *Zanadiqa*), 155, 159, 303, 307, 422, 436; Meaning and etymology of the terra —, 159- See also *Manichcums*
- Zlyad b. Iariya-Tapitmi, 272
- Ziyad b. tabid, abs
- Ibn Zlyad, 'Ubaydtrllah —, 225,226,228,230
- Ibn Ziyad, father of Jafar,
- Yathar-i-Zariran* (Phalawi romance), 9,108, 121, 138
- Yard, 26, 27, 83, 86, 100, 343
- Yazdan-Gushnasp, 129
- Yazdigird 1,135,166
- Yasdigird 11118,120,122,180-188,168. 174,188,108, 800, 880,817
- Yazid I (Umayyad Caliph), 818,281-888,888,230
- Yazid II (Umayyad Caliph), 818,888
- Yazid III (Umayyad Caliph), 818,318
- Yadd b. -Muhallab (general), 263
- Yaxidi sect ("Devil-worshippers") 304
- "Year of the Ass," 241
- "Year of the Elephant," 173, 174
- Yeats (Irish poet), 447
- Yellow garments prescribed for unbelievers, 343. See also *'Asal-i dukhta*
- Yima (=Zama, Jamshid, q.v.), 56, 80, 113
- Yishu' -bokht, 145
- Yudan - Yim (Zoroastrian priest), 105
- Yuhanna b. Masawayhi (translator), 305
- Yusuf-Barm (heresiarch), 247, 318
- Yusuf b. 'Umax (Governor of 'Iraq), 233
- *Yusuf u *Zulaykha* (of Jaml), * 180,448,444
- AbuYusuf, 349
- Abu Yusuf Ya'qub-Ansari (Hanafite doctor), 276
- Abu Yusuf Ya'qub b. Ishaq -Kindi, 356. *Het-Kindi*
- Abu Yusuf-Qatil, 302
- (river), 245, 247
- Ibn Zabala (historian of -Madina), 277
- Zabulistan, 116
- Zadan, son of Farrukh (Persian accountant), 205
- Zagros Mountains, 19
- Zahi (poet), 370
- Zahir (Dhahir) of Faryab (Persian poet), 389
- Zahiri (or zahirite) school, 357. See also *Dhahiri*
- Zahra ("the Bright," ix., *Fatima*.q.v.), 131, 132 ..
- Ibn Abi Zakariyya (heretic), 359,367
- Zal (father of Rustam), 116, 121
- Zaroakhshari (commentator), 269,289,292

